Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada
Office de la Propriété Intellectuelle du Canada

Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada
Canadian Intellectual Property Office

CA 3090892 C 2023/01/17

(11)(21) 3 090 892

(12) BREVET CANADIEN
CANADIAN PATENT

(13) C

(86) Date de dépôt PCT/PCT Filing Date: 2019/03/13
(87) Date publication PCT/PCT Publication Date: 2019/09/19
(45) Date de délivrance/Issue Date: 2023/01/17
(85) Entrée phase nationale/National Entry: 2020/08/10
(86) N° demande PCT/PCT Application No.: US 2019/021963
(87) N° publication PCT/PCT Publication No.: 2019/178172
(30) Priorité/Priority: 2018/03/14 (US62/642,732)

(51) Cl.Int./Int.Cl. *B60P 1/02* (2006.01), *B60P 1/16* (2006.01), *B60P 1/44* (2006.01), *B60P 1/64* (2006.01)

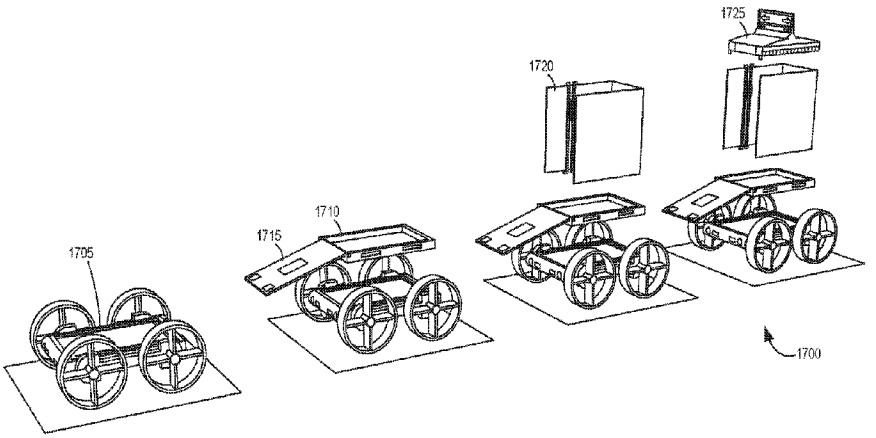
(72) Inventeurs/Inventors:
SKAAKSRUD, OLE-PETTER, US;
MAYFIELD, FRANK, US;
GATES, DANIEL, US

(73) Propriétaire/Owner:
FEDEX CORPORATE SERVICES, INC., US

(74) Agent: OYEN WIGGS GREEN & MUTALA LLP

(54) Titre : ENSEMBLE APPAREIL ROBOT AUTONOME MODULAIRE POUR TRANSPORTER UN ARTICLE EN COURS D'EXPEDITION

(54) Title: A MODULAR AUTONOMOUS BOT APPARATUS ASSEMBLY FOR TRANSPORTING AN ITEM BEING SHIPPED



(57) Abrégé/Abstract:
A modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly is described for transporting an item being shipped. The assembly includes a modular mobility base having propulsion, steering, sensors for collision avoidance, and suspension actuators; a modular auxiliary power module with a power source and cargo door; a modular cargo storage system with folding structural walls and a latching system; and a modular mobile autonomy module that covers the cargo storage system and provides human interaction interfaces, externals sensors, a wireless interface, and an autonomous controller with interfacing circuitry coupled to the human interaction interfaces and sensors on the mobile autonomy module. The assembly has a power and data transport bus that provides a communication and power conduit across the different modular components. A method for on-demand assembly of such a bot apparatus is further described with steps for authenticating the different modular components during assembly.

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau

(43) International Publication Date
19 September 2019 (19.09.2019)

WIPO | PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 2019/178172 A1

(51) International Patent Classification:
B60P 1/02 (2006.01) *B60P 1/44* (2006.01)
B60P 1/16 (2006.01) *B60P 1/64* (2006.01)

(21) International Application Number:
PCT/US2019/021963

(22) International Filing Date:
13 March 2019 (13.03.2019)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
62/642,732 14 March 2018 (14.03.2018) US

(71) Applicant: **FEDEX CORPORATE SERVICES, INC.** [US/US]; 30 Fedex Parkway, 1st Floor Vertical, Collierville, TN 38017 (US).

(72) Inventors: **SKAAKSRUD, Ole-Petter**; P.O. Box 38025, Germantown, TN 38183 (US). **MAYFIELD, Frank**; 1864 Almadale Farms Parkway, Collierville, TN 38017 (US). **GATES, Daniel**; 1849 Oliver Avenue, Memphis, TN 38114 (US).

(74) Agent: **BESSENGER III, F., Leslie**; Withers & Keys, LLC, P.O. Box 2049, McDonough, GA 30253 (US).

(81) Designated States *(unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available)*: AE, AG, AL, AM, AO, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BN, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CL, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DJ, DK, DM, DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IR, IS, JO, JP, KE, KG, KH, KN, KP, KR, KW, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LU, LY, MA, MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PA, PE, PG, PH, PL, PT, QA, RO, RS, RU, RW, SA,

(54) Title: A MODULAR AUTONOMOUS BOT APPARATUS ASSEMBLY FOR TRANSPORTING AN ITEM BEING SHIPPED

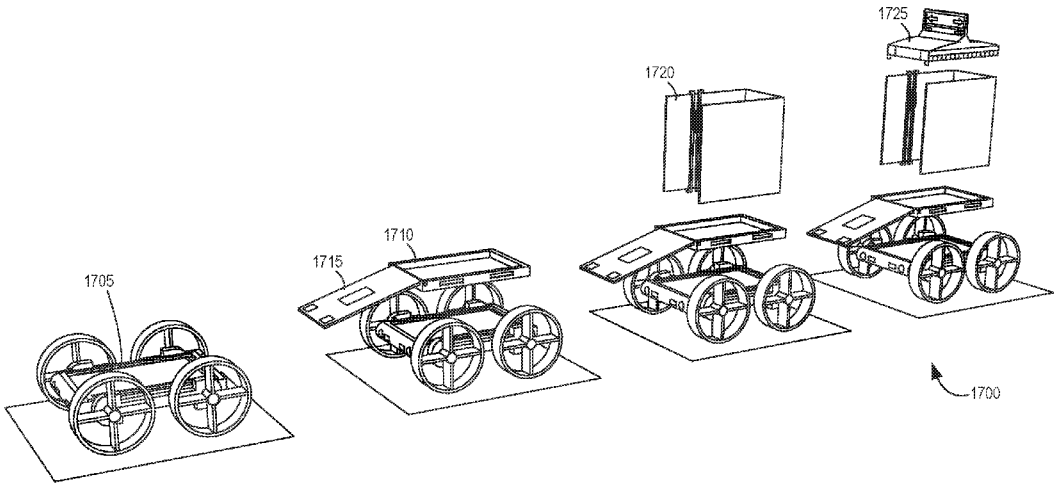


Fig. 17

(57) Abstract: A modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly is described for transporting an item being shipped. The assembly includes a modular mobility base having propulsion, steering, sensors for collision avoidance, and suspension actuators; a modular auxiliary power module with a power source and cargo door; a modular cargo storage system with folding structural walls and a latching system; and a modular mobile autonomy module that covers the cargo storage system and provides human interaction interfaces, externals sensors, a wireless interface, and an autonomous controller with interfacing circuitry coupled to the human interaction interfaces and sensors on the mobile autonomy module. The assembly has a power and data transport bus that provides a communication and power conduit across the different modular components. A method for on-demand assembly of such a bot apparatus is further described with steps for authenticating the different modular components during assembly.

WO 2019/178172 A1

[Continued on next page]

WO 2019/178172 A1

SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, ST, SV, SY, TH, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) **Designated States** *(unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available)*: ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LR, LS, MW, MZ, NA, RW, SD, SL, ST, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, RU, TJ, TM), European (AL, AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MK, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, RS, SE, SI, SK, SM, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, KM, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

— *with international search report (Art. 21(3))*

DEMANDE OU BREVET VOLUMINEUX

LA PRÉSENTE PARTIE DE CETTE DEMANDE OU CE BREVET COMPREND PLUS D'UN TOME.

CECI EST LE TOME 1 DE 3
CONTENANT LES PAGES 1 À 247

NOTE : Pour les tomes additionels, veuillez contacter le Bureau canadien des brevets

JUMBO APPLICATIONS/PATENTS

THIS SECTION OF THE APPLICATION/PATENT CONTAINS MORE THAN ONE VOLUME

THIS IS VOLUME 1 OF 3
CONTAINING PAGES 1 TO 247

NOTE: For additional volumes, please contact the Canadian Patent Office

NOM DU FICHIER / FILE NAME :

NOTE POUR LE TOME / VOLUME NOTE:

A MODULAR AUTONOMOUS BOT APPARATUS ASSEMBLY FOR TRANSPORTING AN ITEM BEING SHIPPED

PRIORITY AND RELATED APPLICATIONS

[001] The present application hereby claims the benefit of priority to related Provisional Patent Application No. 62/642,732 filed on March 14, 2018 and entitled "Enhanced Apparatus, Assemblies, and Systems Involving a Modular Autonomous Logistics Vehicle Transport and Methods of Operating the Same."

[002] The present application is also related in subject matter to the following concurrently filed non-provisional patent applications where each also claims the benefit of priority to the same above-referenced provisional patent application: (1) Non-Provisional Patent Application No. __/___,___ entitled "*A Modular Mobility Base for a Modular Autonomous Logistics Vehicle Transport Apparatus*"; (2) Non-Provisional Patent Application No. __/___,___ entitled "*A Modular Multiple Mobility Base Assembly Apparatus for Transporting an Item Being Shipped*"; (3) Non-Provisional Patent Application No. __/___,___ entitled "*A Modular Auxiliary Power Module for a Modular Autonomous Bot Apparatus that Transports an Item Being Shipped*"; (4) Non-Provisional Patent Application No. __/___,___ entitled "*A Modular Cargo Storage Apparatus for use on a Base Platform of a Modular Autonomous Bot Apparatus that Transports an Item Being Shipped*"; (5) Non-Provisional Patent Application No. __/___,___ entitled "*A Detachable Modular Mobile Autonomy Control Module for a Modular Autonomous Bot Apparatus that Transports an Item Being Shipped*"; (6) Non-Provisional Patent Application No. __/___,___ entitled "*Methods of Performing a Dispatched Logistics Operation Related to an Item Being Shipped and Using a Modular Autonomous Bot Apparatus Assembly and a Dispatch Server*"; (7) Non-Provisional Patent Application No. __/___,___ entitled "*Methods of Performing an Inventory Management Related Dispatched Logistics Operation for an Inventory Item and Using a Modular Autonomous Bot Apparatus Assembly and a Dispatch Server*"; (8) Non-Provisional Patent Application No. __/___,___ entitled "*Methods of Performing a Dispatched Store-to-Consumer Logistics Operation Related to an Ordered Item and Using a Modular Autonomous Bot Apparatus Assembly and a Dispatch Server*"; (9) Non-Provisional

Patent Application No. __/___,___ entitled " *Methods of Performing a Dispatched Consumer-to-Store Logistics Operation Related to an Item Being Replaced Using a Modular Autonomous Bot Apparatus Assembly and a Dispatch Server*"; (10) Non-Provisional Patent Application No. __/___,___ entitled " *Methods of Performing a Dispatched Medial Logistics Operation Related to a Diagnosis Kit for Treating a Patient and Using a Modular Autonomous Bot Apparatus Assembly and a Dispatch Server*"; (11) Non-Provisional Patent Application No. __/___,___ entitled "*Apparatus and Systems of a Modular Autonomous Cart Apparatus Assembly for Transporting an Item Being Shipped*"; (12) Non-Provisional Patent Application No. __/___,___ entitled "*Apparatus, Systems, and Methods for Performing a Dispatched Logistics Operation for a Deliverable Item from a Hold-at-Location Logistics Facility Using a Modular Autonomous Bot Apparatus Assembly, a Dispatch Server and an Enhanced Remotely Actuated Logistics Receptacle Apparatus*"; and (13) Non-Provisional Patent Application No. __/___,___ entitled "*Methods and Systems for Navigating to a Designated Shipping Location as Part of a Multi-Leg Logistics Operations using a Wireless Node Network and Multiple Node-Enabled Autonomous Transport Vehicles in the Network*".

FIELD OF THE DISCLOSURE

[003] The present disclosure generally relates to systems, apparatus, assemblies, and methods in the field of logistics and, more particularly, to various aspects of enhanced systems, apparatus, assemblies, and methods related to deployment and use of a highly autonomous transport system that may include and leverage uses of elements of a multi-purpose type of modular autonomous logistics vehicle transport (MALVT) or node-enabled autonomous transport vehicle (AV), an assembly of such a multi-purpose type of modular autonomous logistics vehicle transport (MALVT) or node-enabled autonomous transport vehicle (AV), and systems that involve a multi-purpose type of modular autonomous logistics vehicle transport (MALVT) or node-enabled autonomous transport vehicle (AV).

BACKGROUND

[004] In the technical field of logistics involving delivery and pickup of items and objects for transport between locations, existing systems have deployed delivery vans and courier personnel that manage and implement dispatched logistics operations to deliver and

pickup of such items and objects from businesses and residential locations. However, deploying manually controlled logistics delivery vehicles and systems may incur

[005] In general, autonomous and semi-autonomous vehicles that can move and maneuver from an origin location to a different location exist, but are not without problems in the field of logistics. For example, common autonomous or semi-autonomous logistics systems are less adaptive than needed. A particular autonomous logistics delivery vehicle may lack compatibility for specifically tasked logistics operations or the ability to efficiently handle a wide variety of different sized items/objects. Furthermore, known autonomous logistics delivery solutions may incur undesired waste involved with dispatching oversized delivery vehicles for a given logistics operation. The lack of interoperability with a location's facilities and pathway obstacles are also problems that face common logistics delivery vehicles that are autonomously controlled.

[006] To address these requirements and present further enhanced and improved devices, assemblies, systems, and methods for autonomous delivery or pickup of items/objects being shipped, there remains a need for improved systems that may provide more extensive, robust, adaptive, and interactive autonomous logistics vehicles that address such problems with a modular autonomous logistics bot apparatus as individual modular components of an assembly, as a particular assembly of such components, and systems of modular autonomous logistics vehicles that do so in a cost effective, dynamic, innovative solution that addresses such problems in practical applications that leverage such modular components and modular autonomous logistics vehicles using such components.

SUMMARY

[007] In the following description, certain aspects and embodiments will become evident. It should be understood that the aspects and embodiments, in their broadest sense, could be practiced without having one or more features of these aspects and embodiments. It should be understood that these aspects and embodiments are merely exemplary.

[008] In the following description, certain aspects and embodiments will become evident. It should be understood that the aspects and embodiments, in their broadest sense, could be practiced without having one or more features of these aspects and embodiments. It should be understood that these aspects and embodiments are merely exemplary.

[009] One aspect of the disclosure relates to a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly for transporting an item being shipped. In this aspect, the assembly includes a modular mobility base, a modular auxiliary power module, a modular cargo storage system or module, and a modular mobile autonomy control module that are interfaced with a common power and command/data transport bus and modularly coupled together. The modular mobility base has steerable powered base platform responsive to navigation inputs to cause changes to a movement and path of the steerable powered base platform; base sensors disposed on the steerable powered base platform that generate base feedback sensor data on an object in the path of the modular mobility base; actuators for tilting an orientation of the steerable powered base platform relative to the ground; a mobility controller coupled to the base sensors and the set of actuators, and operative to receive the base feedback sensor data and generate the navigation inputs; and an interface to the common power and data transport bus. The modular auxiliary power module is detachably connected to the modular mobility base, and has a base adapter platform with a payload area on top of the base adapter platform; an auxiliary power source disposed as part of the base adapter platform; an articulating cargo door extending from a side of the base adapter platform; and its own interface to the common power and data transport bus. The modular cargo storage module is detachably connected to the modular auxiliary power module, and has a set of folding structural walls assembled on the base adapter platform of the auxiliary power module to partially enclose a payload area with the articulating cargo door of the modular auxiliary power module. The modular cargo storage module also has a locking handle that causes the modular cargo storage system to latch to the base adapter platform, and its own interface to the common power and data transport bus. The modular mobile autonomy module is detachably connected to a top of the folding structure walls of the modular cargo storage module, and has human interaction interfaces (*e.g.*, displays, multi-element light panels), sensors, a wireless communication interface, and an autonomous controller with interfacing circuitry coupled to the human interaction interfaces and the sensors on the modular mobile autonomy module. The autonomous controller of the modular mobile autonomy control module is programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to at least receive base feedback sensor data information from the mobility controller through the common power and data transport bus; receive onboard sensor data from the sensors on the modular mobile autonomy module; generate a steering control command and a propulsion control command based at least upon the location data from

the location circuitry, the received information on the base feedback sensor data from the mobility controller, the onboard sensor data as received by the autonomous controller from the autonomy module sensors, and destination information data maintained by the autonomous controller; transmit the steering control command and the propulsion control command through the common modular component power and data transport bus to the mobility controller; and generate transport and delivery information to provide on the human interaction interfaces. In this aspect, the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module are each authenticated modular components based upon a component-to-component secure handshaking between proximately attached ones of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module.

[010] In yet another aspect, a method is described for on-demand building of a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly that transports an item being shipped. In this additional aspect, the method involves having an assembly server receiving a request for assembly of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly; having the assembly server generating an assigned dispatch use profile that identifies a type of each of a modular mobility base, a modular auxiliary power module, a modular cargo storage system, and a modular mobile autonomy control module to be used as authorized parts of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly based on the request for assembly; detachably mounting a selected modular mobility base to a selected modular auxiliary power module using an interlocking alignment interface disposed on each of the selected modular mobility base and the selected modular auxiliary power module; detachably mounting a selected modular cargo storage system to a top of the selected modular auxiliary power module; detachably mounting a selected modular mobile autonomy control module to a top of the selected modular cargo storage system; securing the selected modular cargo storage system to each of the selected modular auxiliary power module and the selected modular mobile autonomy control module using a locking handle actuating at least one set of actuated latches disposed on the selected modular cargo storage system; having the assembly server send the assigned dispatch use profile for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly to the selected modular mobile autonomy control module; and authenticating each of the selected modular mobility base, the selected modular auxiliary power module, the selected modular cargo storage system according to authentication information in the assigned dispatch use profile.

[011] Each of these aspects and features of such aspects respectively effect improvements to the technology of autonomous logistics vehicles. Additional advantages of this and other aspects of the disclosed embodiments and examples will be set forth in part in the description which follows, and in part will be obvious from the description, or may be learned by practice of the invention. It is to be understood that both the foregoing general description and the following detailed description are exemplary and explanatory only and are not restrictive of the invention, as claimed.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

[012] The accompanying drawings, which are incorporated in and constitute a part of this specification, illustrate several embodiments according to one or more principles of the invention and together with the description, serve to explain one or more principles of the invention. In the drawings,

[013] Figure 1 is a diagram of an exemplary wireless node network as known in the art;

[014] Figure 2 is a more detailed diagram of an exemplary wireless node network as known in the art;

[015] Figure 3 is a more detailed diagram of an exemplary ID node device as known in the art;

[016] Figure 4 is a more detailed diagram of an exemplary master node device as known in the art;

[017] Figure 5 is a more detailed diagram of an exemplary server as known in the art;

[018] Figure 6 is a diagram illustrating the structure or format of an exemplary advertisement data packet as known in the art;

[019] Figure 7 is a diagram illustrating sample content for an exemplary advertisement data packet as known in the art;

[020] Figure 8 is a state diagram illustrating exemplary states and transitions between the states as part of operations by an exemplary node as known in the art;

[021] Figure 9 is a diagram illustrating exemplary components of a wireless node network during an exemplary master-to-ID node association as known in the art;

[022] Figure 10 is a diagram illustrating exemplary components of a wireless node network during an exemplary ID-to-ID node association as known in the art;

[023] Figure 11 is a diagram illustrating exemplary components of a wireless node network during an exemplary ID-to-master node query as known in the art;

[024] Figure 12 is a diagram illustrating exemplary components of a wireless node network during an exemplary alert advertising mode as known in the art;

[025] Figure 13 is a diagram illustrating an exemplary location determination using master node advertise as known in the art;

[026] Figure 14 is a diagram illustrating an exemplary location determination using ID node advertise as known in the art;

[027] Figure 15 is a diagram illustrating an exemplary location determination through triangulation as known in the art;

[028] Figure 16 is a diagram illustrating an exemplary location determination through chaining triangulation as known in the art;

[029] Figure 17 is a diagram of an exemplary assembly of different exemplary modular autonomous logistics transport vehicle apparatus (MALVT bot apparatus) and components thereof in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[030] Figure 18A is a diagram of an exemplary modular mobility base (MB) unit component of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[031] Figure 18B is an additional diagram of the exemplary modular mobility base unit component of Figure 18A shown in a tilted configuration in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[032] Figure 18C is a block diagram showing further details of an exemplary modular mobility base unit component in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[033] Figure 19 is a diagram of an exemplary assembly of multiple modular mobility base unit components paired with an exemplary base adapter plate module (BAPM) in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[034] Figure 20A is a diagram of an exemplary modular mobility base (MB) unit component paired with an exemplary modular auxiliary power module (APM) in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[035] Figure 20B is a block diagram showing further details of an exemplary modular auxiliary power module in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[036] Figure 20C is a diagram of an exemplary modular auxiliary power module having different actuated belt surfaces as a type of articulated object manipulation system that may be deployed on the exemplary modular auxiliary power module in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[037] Figure 20D is a diagram of an exemplary modular auxiliary power module having different actuated sliding arm as a type of articulated object manipulation system that may be deployed on the exemplary modular auxiliary power module in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[038] Figure 20E is a diagram of an exemplary modular auxiliary power module having different actuated grabbing arm as a type of articulated object manipulation system that may be deployed on the exemplary modular auxiliary power module in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[039] Figure 21 is a diagram of an exemplary assembly of an exemplary mobility base (MB) unit component paired with an exemplary modular auxiliary power module (APM) and an exemplary modular cargo storage system (CSS) in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[040] Figure 22A is a diagram of an alternative view of the exemplary assembly of Figure 21 having an exemplary modular mobility base (MB) unit component paired with an exemplary modular auxiliary power module (APM) and an exemplary modular cargo storage system (CSS) in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[041] Figure 22B is a block diagram showing further details of an exemplary modular cargo storage system component in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[042] Figure 23 is a diagram showing a folded configuration for an exemplary modular cargo storage system (CSS) in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[043] Figure 24 is a diagram showing a folded configuration for multiple exemplary modular cargo storage system components in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[044] Figure 25 is a diagram showing different exemplary form factors for different exemplary modular cargo storage system components in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[045] Figure 26 is a diagram of an alternative embodiment of an exemplary modular cargo storage system (CSS) having an exemplary actuated cargo door in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[046] Figures 27A-27B are diagrams of an embodiment of an exemplary modular cargo storage system (CSS) having an exemplary actuated sliding arm disposed on one of the walls of the CSS in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[047] Figure 27C is a diagram of an embodiment of an exemplary modular cargo storage system (CSS) having an exemplary actuated grabbing arm disposed on one of the walls of the CSS in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[048] Figure 28 is a front view of an exemplary modular mobile autonomy module (MAM) in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[049] Figure 29 is a rear view of the exemplary modular mobile autonomy module (MAM) of Figure 28 in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[050] Figures 30A-30B are diagrams of different bottom views of the exemplary modular mobile autonomy module (MAM) of Figure 28 in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[051] Figure 31 is a block diagram showing further details of an exemplary modular mobile autonomy module (MAM) in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[052] Figure 32 is a diagram of an exemplary assembly of an exemplary modular mobility base (MB) unit component shown in conjunction with an exemplary modular auxiliary power module (APM), an exemplary modular storage system (CSS), and an exemplary modular mobile autonomy module (MAM) in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[053] Figure 33 is a diagram of an exemplary system having exemplary modular mobile autonomy module (MAM) within an exemplary modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly where the MAM is in communication with an exemplary server and mobile external wireless nodes in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[054] Figure 34 is a diagram of two exemplary modular components during assembly of an exemplary modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly where authentication of the modular components is performed during assembly in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[055] Figure 35 is a diagram illustrating an exemplary smart latching and interface configuration used with another embodiment of an exemplary cargo storage system (CSS) in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[056] Figure 36 is a diagram illustrating an exemplary fastening configuration used with an exemplary cargo storage unit (CSS) in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[057] Figure 37 is a diagram of an exemplary modular autonomous logistics transport vehicle apparatus (MALVT bot apparatus) in a configuration having a cargo door extended and in a forward tilted orientation in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[058] Figure 38 is a diagram of an exemplary modular autonomous logistics transport vehicle apparatus (MALVT bot apparatus) in a configuration having a cargo door extended and in a "standup" mode orientation in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[059] Figure 39 is a front view diagram of an exemplary modular autonomous logistics transport vehicle apparatus (MALVT bot apparatus) in a configuration having a cargo door extended and in a lifted orientation in accordance with an embodiment of the invention; and

[060] Figure 40 is a rear view diagram of an exemplary modular autonomous logistics transport vehicle apparatus (MALVT bot apparatus) in a configuration having a cargo door extended and in a lifted orientation in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[061] Figure 41 is a flow diagram of an exemplary method for on-demand building of a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly that transports an item being shipped in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[062] Figure 42 is a diagram of an exemplary system involved in assembling an modular autonomous logistics transport vehicle apparatus (MALVT bot apparatus) in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[063] Figures 43A-43F are diagrams of an exemplary modular autonomous logistics transport vehicle apparatus (MALVT bot apparatus) in various stages of an exemplary dispatched logistics operation in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[064] Figure 44 is a flow diagram of an exemplary method for performing a dispatched logistics operation involving delivery of an item being shipped using a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (MALVT bot apparatus assembly) and a dispatch server in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[065] Figure 45 is a flow diagram of another embodiment of an exemplary method for performing a dispatched logistics operation involving pickup of an item being shipped using a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (MALVT bot apparatus assembly) and a dispatch server in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[066] Figure 46 is a flow diagram of another embodiment of an exemplary method for performing a dispatched logistics operation involving pickup, holding at an object holding location, and delivery of an item being shipped using a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (MALVT bot apparatus assembly) and a dispatch server in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[067] Figure 47A-47B are diagrams of an exemplary system involving an exemplary modular autonomous logistics transport vehicle apparatus (MALVT bot apparatus) the performs an inventory management related dispatched logistics operation related to an inventory item at an inventory hub location and one of multiple remote business locations in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[068] Figures 48A-48D are diagrams of an exemplary modular autonomous logistics transport vehicle apparatus (MALVT bot apparatus) interfacing and interacting with an exemplary node-enabled shelving system to pickup/drop-off an inventory item in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[069] Figure 49 is a flow diagram of an embodiment of an exemplary method for performing an inventory management related dispatched logistics operation involving an inventory item using a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (MALVT bot apparatus assembly) and a dispatch server in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[070] Figures 50A-50B are parts of a flow diagram of an alternative embodiment of an exemplary method for performing an inventory management related dispatched logistics operation involving an inventory item using a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (MALVT bot apparatus assembly) and an inventory management server in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[071] Figure 51 is a flow diagram of an embodiment of an exemplary method for performing a dispatched store-to-consumer logistics operation related to an ordered item and using a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (MALVT bot apparatus assembly) and a dispatch server in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[072] Figures 52A-52F are diagrams of an exemplary modular autonomous logistics transport vehicle apparatus (MALVT bot apparatus) interfacing and interacting with an exemplary node-enabled pick and place machine in a warehousing location in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[073] Figure 53 is a flow diagram of an alternative embodiment of an exemplary method for performing a dispatched store-to-consumer logistics operation related to an ordered item and using a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (MALVT bot apparatus assembly) and a dispatch server in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[074] Figure 54 is a flow diagram of an embodiment of an exemplary method for performing a dispatched consumer-to-store logistics operation related to an item being replaced and using a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (MALVT bot apparatus assembly) and a dispatch server in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[075] Figure 55 is a flow diagram of an embodiment of an exemplary method for performing a dispatched swap logistics operation related to an item being replaced that is swapped for a replacement item and using a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (MALVT bot apparatus assembly) and a dispatch server in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[076] Figures 56A-56B are parts of a flow diagram of an embodiment of an exemplary method for performing an medical related dispatched logistics operation involving a diagnosis kit for treating a patient and using a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (MALVT bot apparatus assembly) and an dispatch server in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[077] Figure 57A is a diagram of an exemplary modular autonomous cart apparatus assembly in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[078] Figure 57B is a more detailed diagram of the exemplary modular autonomous cart apparatus assembly from Figure 57A in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[079] Figure 58 is a diagram of the exemplary modular autonomous cart apparatus assembly that uses a mobility base sub-assembly having an extended base adapter plate and two mobility base units in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[080] Figures 59A-59C are diagrams of an exemplary modular autonomous cart apparatus assembly as deployed and used in different operating modes with an exemplary wireless mobile courier node in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[081] Figures 60-61 are diagrams of an exemplary system of multiple modular autonomous cart apparatus assemblies for transporting different items in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[082] Figure 62 is a diagram of an exemplary modular autonomous logistics transport vehicle apparatus (MALVT bot apparatus assembly) at an exemplary hold-at-location logistics facility in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[083] Figure 63 is a flow diagram of an embodiment of an exemplary method for performing a dispatched logistics operation for a deliverable item from a hold-at-location logistics facility having a secured storage and using a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (MALVT bot apparatus assembly) and a dispatch server in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[084] Figures 64A-64H are diagrams of an exemplary modular autonomous logistics transport vehicle apparatus (MALVT bot apparatus assembly) interfacing and interacting with an exemplary remotely-actuated logistics receptacle that may be located at a hold-at-location logistics facility in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[085] Figures 65A-65B are a flow diagram of an embodiment of an exemplary method for performing a dispatched logistics operation for a deliverable item maintained within a remotely-actuated logistics receptacle and using a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (MALVT bot apparatus assembly) and a dispatch server in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[086] Figure 66 is a flow diagram of an embodiment of an exemplary method for performing a dispatched hold-at-location logistics operation for a deliverable item from an origin location using a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly operating as a temporary hold-at-location logistics receptacle and a dispatch server in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[087] Figure 67 is a diagram of multiple exemplary node-enabled autonomous transport vehicles in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[088] Figures 68A-68E are diagrams of an exemplary system using multiple exemplary node-enabled autonomous transport vehicles when navigating between an exemplary courier transport vehicle and a designated shipping location with an item being shipped as part of a

multi-leg autonomous logistics operation for the item being shipped in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[089] Figures 69A-69B are flow diagrams of an embodiment of an exemplary method for navigating to a designated shipping location as part of a multi-leg logistics operation using multiple nodes in a wireless node network, a server in the network, and multiple node-enabled autonomous transport vehicles in the network in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

[090] Figure 70 is a flow diagram of an embodiment of an exemplary method for navigating to a designated shipping location as part of a multi-leg logistics operation using multiple nodes in a wireless node network, a server in the network, a first node-enabled autonomous transport vehicle in the network, and a selected one of a group of other node-enabled autonomous transport vehicles in accordance with an embodiment of the invention; and

[091] Figure 71 is a flow diagram of an embodiment of another exemplary method for navigating to a designated shipping location as part of a multi-leg logistics operation using multiple nodes in a wireless node network, a server in the network, and multiple node-enabled autonomous transport vehicles in the network where one of the node-enabled autonomous transport vehicles operates as master to control at least docking and transferring operations as part of the multi-leg logistics operation in accordance with an embodiment of the invention.

DESCRIPTION OF THE EMBODIMENTS

[092] Reference will now be made in detail to exemplary embodiments. Wherever possible, the same reference numbers are used in the drawings and the description to refer to the same or like parts. However, those skilled in the art will appreciate that different embodiments may implement a particular part in different ways according to the needs of the intended deployment and operating environment for the respective embodiments.

[093] Reference will also be made throughout this description to wireless node-based network devices (*e.g.,* ID nodes, master nodes, container nodes, and servers that operate in a wireless node network), exemplary techniques that use such node-based devices, and interactions with such devices in the logistics delivery field as explained in more detail within U.S. Application No. 14/445,523 (now issued as U.S. Patent No. 8,989,053), U.S. Application No. 14/979,685 (published as U.S. Patent Application Publication No. US 2016/01232481), and U.S.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

Application No. 15/433,023 (published as U.S. Patent Application Publication No. US 2017/0279892). The information disclosed in U.S. Application No. 14/445,523 (now issued as U.S. Patent No. 8,989,053), U.S. Application No. 14/979,685 (published as U.S. Patent Application Publication No. US 2016/01232481), and U.S. Application No. 15/433,023 (published as U.S. Patent Application Publication No. US 2017/0279892) is collectively referred to as TRON Network Reference Information or more generally referenced as TRON technology within the present description. In particular, those skilled in the art will appreciate that the description of such node-based devices, how they interact and communicate, how they associate with other nodes to establish secure communications and information sharing, and how they use various node locating techniques to determine the location of a particular node in the network provides a foundational teaching of building block elements that may be used as control elements that may interact with each other in embodiments of exemplary modular autonomous logistics transport vehicle apparatus (MALVT bot apparatus) and components thereof as described in more detail below.

[094] In general, the following description begins with a broad overview of the TRON technology referenced above that may be used in implementations of different embodiments involving modular autonomous logistics bots, assemblies, components, vehicles, and systems. Embodiments of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus are presented and explained as respective modular components of such an apparatus and as a modular assembly of compatible components that may be assembled to form an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus for use in a logistics operation (*e.g.,* delivery of an item/object, pickup of an item/object). Further embodiments are described about different practical use applications that involve the use of one or more components and/or one or more exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assemblies deployed in varying types of logistics operations. Finally, embodiments are presented that involve multiple autonomous logistics vehicle transports that may be deployed for different legs of a single multi-leg logistics operation.

Overview of TRON Wireless Node Network Technology

[095] In more detail, the following description along with Figures 1-16 provide a background overview of a known type of wireless node network with one or more lower level devices or nodes (*e.g.,* an ID node) that rely on shorter-range communication with a higher level

Date reçue / Date received 2021-11-03

device or node (*e.g.,* a master node), which is operative to communicate with a server over a different communication interface while the lower level node is unable to communicate directly with the server. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that such a hierarchy of different functional communicating network components (generally referred to as network devices) may be characterized as a network of nodes. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that in some embodiments, the wireless node network may include the server as well as different wireless nodes despite the fact that the server may not be a dedicated wireless component. In other embodiments, the network may include similar types of wireless nodes or different types of wireless nodes.

[096] Those skilled in the art will understand through the following detailed description that the nodes may be associated with items (*e.g.,* an object, a package, a person, a piece of equipment) and may be used to identify and locate the items while being dynamically programmed during operation of the network and while the items move along an anticipated path (*e.g.,* a transit path from an origin point to a destination point). Those skilled in the art will further understand through the following detailed description that these known type of nodes may be deployed as control systems, control electronics, controllers, processors, control modules, or other control elements that may wirelessly communicate with other nodes (*e.g.,* a controller in a modular mobility base component and an autonomous control system in a modular mobile autonomous control module), receive input from sensors, generate output messaging and display information as well as generate control signals that manage and control an autonomous delivery vehicle.

[097] Again, Figures 1-16 provide background information on such known types of wireless nodes that may be programmed to interact to detect other nodes, associate with other nodes, receive and respond to sensor data, generate control signals, manage other nodes, and locate other nodes in a hierarchical manner. Figure 1 illustrates a basic diagram of an exemplary wireless node network. The exemplary network shown in Figure 1 comprises a server 100 connected to a network 105, which is also operatively connected to different network components, such as a master node 110a and indirectly to an ID node 120a through master node 110a. Master node 110a is typically connected to an ID node 120a via short-range wireless communications (*e.g.,* Bluetooth® formatted communications). Master node 110a is typically connected to server 100 through network 105 via longer-range wireless communication (*e.g.,*

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

cellular) and/or medium range wireless communication (*e.g.,* wireless local area data networks or Wi-Fi). ID node 120a is typically a low cost device that may be easily placed into a package, be integrated as part of packaging, or otherwise associated with an item to be tracked and located, such as package 130, a person, or object (*e.g.,* vehicle, etc.). Generally, an ID node is capable of communicating directly with a master node but incapable of communicating directly with the server, while a master node is capable of communicating directly with the server and separately and directly communicating with other nodes (such as an ID node or another master node). The ability to deploy a hierarchy of nodes within an exemplary wireless node network to distribute tasks and functions at the different levels in an efficient and economical manner helps to facilitate a wide variety of adaptive locating, tracking, managing, and reporting applications using such a network of nodes as discussed in more detail below.

[098] In general, the lower cost, lower complexity ID node 120a is managed by the higher complexity master node 110a and server 100 as part of keeping track of the location of ID node 120a (and the associated item), thereby providing intelligent, robust, and broad visibility about the location and status of ID node 120a. In a typical deployment example, ID node 120a is first associated with an item (*e.g.,* package 130, a person, or object). As ID node 120a moves with the item, the ID node 120a becomes associated with the master node 110a, and the server 100 is updated with such information. Further movement of the ID node 120a and item may cause the ID node 120a to disassociate with master node 110a and be handed off to become associated another master node (not shown), after which the server 100 is again updated. As such, the server 100 generally operates to coordinate and manage information related to the ID node 120a as the item physically moves from one location to another. Further details of the architecture and functionality of an exemplary ID node and master node as described below in more detail with respect to Figures 3 and 4, while exemplary server 100 is described below in more detail with respect to Figure 5.

[099] While server 100 is shown connecting through network 105, those skilled in the art will appreciate that server 100 may have a more direct or dedicated connections to other components illustrated in Figure 1, such as master node, depending upon implementation details and desired communication paths. Furthermore, those skilled in the art will appreciate that an exemplary server may contain a collection of information in a database (not shown in Figure 1), while multiple databases maintained on multiple server platforms or network storage servers may

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

be used in other embodiments to maintain such a collection of information. Furthermore, those skilled in the art will appreciate that a database may be implemented with cloud technology that essentially provides networked storage of collections of information that may be directly accessible to devices, such as master node 110a.

[0100] Network 105 may be a general data communication network involving a variety of communication networks or paths. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that such exemplary networks or paths may be implemented with hard wired structures (*e.g.,* LAN, WAN, telecommunication lines, telecommunication support structures and telecommunication processing equipment, etc.), wireless structures (*e.g.,* antennas, receivers, modems, routers, repeaters, etc.) and/or a combination of both depending upon the desired implementation of a network that interconnects server 100 and other components shown in Figure 1 in an embodiment of the present invention.

[0101] Master node 110a and ID node 120a are types of nodes. A node is generally an apparatus or device used to perform one or more tasks as part of a network of components. An embodiment of a node may have a unique identifier, such as a Media Access Control (MAC) address or an address assigned to a hardware radio like an Internet Protocol 6 (IPv6) identifier. In some embodiments, the node's unique identifier may be correlated to a shipment identifier (*e.g.,* a shipment tracking number in one example), or may itself be a shipment's tracking reference.

[0102] An ID node, such as ID node 120a, is generally a low cost active wireless device. In one embodiment, an exemplary ID node is a transceiver-based processing or logic unit having a short-range radio with variable RF characteristics (*e.g.,* programmable RF output power range, programmable receiver sensitivity), memory accessible by the processing unit, a timer operatively coupled to the processing unit, and a power source (*e.g.,* a battery) that provides power for the circuitry of the ID node. For example, the physical implementation of an exemplary ID node may be small, and, thus, amenable to integration into a package, label, container, or other type of object. In some implementations of an ID node, the node is rechargeable while other implementations do not permit recharging the power source for the ID node. In other implementations, the ID node is environmentally self-contained or sealed so as to enable robust and reliable operations in a variety of environmentally harsh conditions.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

[0103] A master node, such as master node 110a, generally serves as an intelligent bridge between the ID node 120a and the server 100. Accordingly, a master node is generally more sophisticated than an ID node. In one example, an exemplary master node is a device having a processing or logic unit, a short-range radio (with may have variable RF characteristics) used for communicating with other nodes (ID nodes and other master nodes), a medium and/or long-range radio for communication with the server 100, memory accessible by the processing unit, a timer operatively coupled to the processing unit, and a power source (*e.g.,* a battery or a wired power supply connection) that provides power for the circuitry of the master node. The exemplary master node, such as master node 110a, may be positioned in a known fixed location or, alternatively, be a mobile unit having dedicated location positioning circuitry (*e.g.,* GPS circuitry) to allow the master node to determine its location by itself.

[0104] While the example illustrated in Figure 1 shows only a single master node and a single ID node, those skilled in the art will appreciate that a wireless network may include a wide array of similar or different master nodes that each communicate with the server 100 and/or other master nodes, and a wide variety of similar or different ID nodes. Thus, the exemplary network shown in Figure 1 is a basic example, while the exemplary network shown in Figure 2 is a more detailed exemplary wireless node network.

[0105] Referring now to Figure 2, another exemplary wireless node network is shown including server 100 and network 105. Here, master nodes 110a, 110b, 110c are deployed and connected to network 105 (and by virtue of those respective connections, to server 100) as well as to each other. ID nodes 120a, 120b, 120e are shown as connectable or operative to communicate via different paths to various master nodes. However, ID nodes 120c and 120d are shown in Figure 2 connected to ID node 120b but not to any of the master nodes. This may be the case if, for example, ID nodes 120b, 120c, 120d are associated with different items (*e.g.,* packages) within a larger container 210 (or grouped together on a pallet). In such an example, only ID node 120b may remain within the wireless communication range of any master node. This may, for example, be because of the positions of the different ID nodes within the container relative to the closest master node, adverse RF shielding caused by the container, adverse RF shielding caused by packaging of the item, or adverse RF shielding caused by other proximate material that interferes with radio transmissions (*e.g.,* several packages of metal items between the ID node and any master node outside the container). Thus, in the illustrated configuration of

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

the exemplary network shown in Figure 2, ID nodes 120c and 120d may be out of range from the master nodes, yet still have an operative communication path to a master node through ID node 120b.

[0106] Indeed, in one example, prior to placement within container 210, ID node 120b may actually be a master node but the changed RF environment when placing it in container 210 may interfere with the master node's ability to locate itself via location signals (*e.g.,* GPS signals) and cause the master node to temporarily operate as an ID node while still providing communications and data sharing with other ID nodes in container 210.

[0107] User access devices 200, 205 are also illustrated in Figure 2 as being able to connect to network 105, master nodes, and ID nodes. Generally, user access devices 200 and 205 are types of external wireless nodes that allow a user to interact with one or more components of a wireless node network. In various examples, user access devices 200, 205, may be implemented using a desktop computer, a laptop computer, a tablet (such as an Apple iPad® touchscreen tablet), a personal area network device (such as a Bluetooth® device), a smartphone (such as an Apple iPhone®), a smart wearable device (such as a Samsung Galaxy Gear™ smartwatch device, or a Google Glass™ wearable smart optics) or other such devices capable of communicating over network 105 with server 100, over a wired or wireless communication path to master node and ID nodes.

[0108] As shown in Figure 2, user access devices 200, 205 are coupled and in communication with network 105, but each of them may also be in communication with each other or other network components in a more direct manner (*e.g.,* via near field communication (NFC), over a Bluetooth® wireless connection, over a Wi-Fi network, dedicated wired connection, or other communication path).

[0109] In one example, a user access device, such as device 200 or 205, may facilitate associating an ID node (such as ID node 120a) with the tracking number of a package at the start of a shipment process, coordinating with the server 100 to check on the status and/or location of the package and associated ID node during transit, and possibly retrieving data from a master node or ID node related to the shipped package. Thus, those skilled in the art will appreciate that a user access device, such as devices 200, 205, are essentially interactive communication platforms by which a user may initiate shipment of an item, track an item, determine the status

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

and location of an item, retrieve information about an item, as well as initiate dispatch of a logistics operation or interact with other nodes as part of a dispatched operation.

[0110] An example user access device, such as device 200 or 205, may include sufficient hardware and code (*e.g.,* an app or other program code section or sections) to operate as a master node or an ID node in various embodiments as discussed in more detail below. For example, device 200 may be implemented as a mobile smartphone and functionally may operate as an exemplary ID node that broadcasts advertising packet messages to other ID nodes or master nodes for association and sharing data with such nodes. In another example, device 200 is implemented as a mobile smartphone and may operate as an exemplary master node that communicates and associates with ID nodes and other master nodes, as described herein, and communicates with the server 100. Thus, those skilled in the art will appreciate an exemplary ID node in Figure 3 and an exemplary master node in Figure 4, and their respective parts, code and program modules, may be implemented with an appropriately programmed user access device, such as device 200 or 205. Thus, the following description of an exemplary ID node in Figure 3 and an exemplary master node in Figure 4 will be applicable to a user access device operating as an ID node or a master node, respectively.

ID NODE

[0111] Figure 3 is a more detailed diagram of an exemplary ID node device. As previously described, one example of an ID node includes a transceiver-based processing or logic unit having a short-range radio with variable RF characteristics (*e.g.,* programmable RF output power range, programmable receiver sensitivity), memory accessible by the processing unit, a timer operatively coupled to the processing unit, and a power source (*e.g.,* a battery) that provides power for the circuitry of the ID node. Referring now to the more detailed embodiment of Figure 3, exemplary ID node 120a is shown to comprise a processing or logic unit 300 coupled to a variable power short-range communication interface 375, memory storage 315, volatile memory 320, timer 370, and battery 355. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that processing unit 300 is logic, such as a low power consumption microcontroller, that generally performs computations on data and executes operational and application program code and other program modules or sections thereof within the ID node 120a. As such, exemplary processing unit 300 operates as a transceiver-based processing core of ID node 120a.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

[0112] Those skilled in the art will also appreciate that exemplary ID node 120a is a hardware-based component that may be implemented with a single processor or logic unit, such as unit 300. In one embodiment, processing unit 300 may be implemented with an Intel® 8051 CPU Core and associated peripheral circuitry as dictated by the needs of the particular application. Less complex microcontrollers or discrete circuitry may be used to implement processing unit 300 as well as more complex and sophisticated microprocessors. Additionally, exemplary processing unit 300 may be integrated into a single chip transceiver used as a core of ID node 120a.

[0113] The variable power short-range communication interface 375 of ID node 120a is generally a programmable radio and an omni-directional antenna coupled to the processing unit 300. In other embodiments, interface 375 may use an antenna with a different antenna profile when directionality may be desired. Examples of variable power short-range communication interface 375 may include other interfacing hardware (not shown) for operatively coupling the device to a specific short-range communication path (*e.g.,* a Bluetooth® Low Energy (BLE) connection path communicating at 2.4 GHz).

[0114] In one example, various RF characteristics of the radio's transceiver, such as the RF output power and/or the RF receiver sensitivity may be dynamically and programmatically varied under control of processing unit 300. In other examples, further RF characteristics of the radio's transceiver may be programmatically varied, such as frequency, duty cycle, timing, modulation schemes, spread spectrum frequency hopping aspects, etc., as needed to flexibly adjust the RF output signal depending upon a desired implementation and anticipated use of ID node 120a. As will be explained in more detail below, some embodiments may use Broadcast Profile having parameters that may be programmatically altered or adjusted. In other words, embodiments of ID node 120a (or any other ID node) may have programmatically adjustable RF characteristics (such as an adjustable RF output signal power, an adjustable RF receiver sensitivity, the ability to switch to a different frequency or frequency band, etc.).

[0115] The battery 355 for ID node 120a is a type of power source that generally powers the circuitry implementing ID node 120a. In one embodiment, battery 355 may be a rechargeable power source. In other embodiments, battery 355 may be a non-rechargeable power source intended to be disposed of after use. In some examples of an ID node, the power source may involve alternative energy generation, such as a solar cell.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

[0116] The timer 370 for ID node 120a generally provides one or more timing circuits used in, for example, time delay, pulse generation, and oscillator applications. In an example where ID node 120a conserves power by entering a sleep or dormant state for a predetermined time period as part of overall power conservation techniques, timer 370 assists processing unit 300 in managing timing operations. Additionally, an example may allow an ID node to share data to synchronize different nodes with respect to timer 370 and a common timing reference between nodes and the server.

[0117] An example may implement ID node 120a to optionally include a basic user interface (UI) 305 indicating status and allowing basic interaction like start/stop. In one embodiment, the UI 305 may be implemented with status lights, such as multi-mode LEDs. Different colors of the lights may indicate a different status or mode for the ID node 120a (*e.g.,* an advertising mode (broadcasting), a scanning mode (listening), a current power status, a battery level status, an association status, an error, as sensed condition (*e.g.,* exceeding a temperature threshold, exceeding a moisture threshold, and the like)). Other examples of an ID node may implement UI 305 in a more sophisticated manner with a graphics display or the like where such status or mode information may be displayed as well as one or more prompts.

[0118] In a further example, an exemplary status light used as part of the UI 305 of an ID node may also indicate a shipment state. In more detail, an exemplary shipment state may include a status of the shipped item or a status of the item's current shipment journey from an origin to a destination.

[0119] An example may also implement ID node 120a to optionally include one or more sensors 360. In some examples, an ID node implemented with one or more sensors 360 may be referred to as a sensor node. Examples of sensor 360 may include one or more environmental sensors (*e.g.,* pressure, movement, light, temperature, humidity, magnetic field, altitude, attitude, orientation, acceleration, etc.) and dedicated location sensors (*e.g.,* GPS sensor, IR sensor, proximity sensor, etc.). Those skilled in the art will understand that additional types of sensors that measure other characteristics are contemplated for use as sensor 360. Additionally, those skilled in the art will understand that a sensor node may include additional program features to manage the collection, storage, sharing, and publication of the captured sensor data.

[0120] An example may further implement ID node 120a to optionally include one or more magnetic switches 365. A magnetic switch 365, such as a reed switch, generally operates

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

to close or open an electrical path or connection in response to an applied magnetic field. In other words, magnetic switch 365 is actuated by the presence of a magnetic field or the removal of a magnetic field. Various applications, as discussed in other examples described in more detail below, may involve the operation of ID node 120a having magnetic switch 365.

[0121] Consistent with the example shown in Figure 3, exemplary ID node 120a may be implemented based upon a Texas Instruments CC2540 Bluetooth® Low Energy (BLE) System-on-Chip, which includes various peripherals (*e.g.,* timer circuitry, USB, USART, general-purpose I/O pins, IR interface circuitry, DMA circuitry) to operate as an ID node and, if necessary, to interface with different possible sensors and other circuitry (*e.g.,* additional logic chips, relays, magnetic switches) that make up the ID node.

[0122] In additional examples, one skilled in the art will appreciate that similar functionality in an ID node may be implemented in other types of hardware. For example, ID node 120a may be implemented with specially optimized hardware (*e.g.,* a particular application specific integrated circuit (ASIC) having the same operational control and functionality as node control and management code, as described below, discrete logic, or a combination of hardware and firmware depending upon requirements of the ID node, such as power, processing speed, level of adjustability for the RF characteristics, number of memory storage units coupled to the processor(s), cost, space, etc.

[0123] As noted above, ID node 120a includes memory accessible by the processing unit 300. Memory storage 315 and volatile memory 320 are each operatively coupled to processing unit 300. Both memory components provide programming and data elements used by processing unit 300. In the embodiment shown in Figure 3, memory storage 315 maintains a variety of program code (*e.g.,* node control and management code 325) and other data elements (*e.g.,* profile data 330, security data 335, association data 340, shared data 345, sensor data 350, and the like). Memory storage 315 is a tangible, non-transient computer readable medium on which information (*e.g.,* executable code/modules, node data, sensor measurements, etc.) may be kept in a non-volatile and non-transitory manner. Examples of such memory storage 315 may include a hard disk drive, ROM, flash memory, or other media structure that allows long term, non-volatile storage of information. In contrast, volatile memory 320 is typically a random access memory (RAM) structure used by processing unit 300 during operation of the ID node 120a. Upon power up of ID node 120a, volatile memory 320 may be populated with an operational

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

program (such as node control and management code 325) or specific program modules that help facilitate particular operations of ID node 120a. And during operation of ID node 120a, volatile memory 320 may also include certain data (*e.g.,* profile data 330, security data 335, association data 340, shared data 345, sensor data 350, and the like) generated as the ID node 120a executes instructions as programmed or loaded from memory storage 315. However, those skilled in the art will appreciate that not all data elements illustrated in Figure 3 must appear in memory storage 315 and volatile memory 320 at the same time.

Node Control & Management Code

[0124] Generally, an example of node control and management code 325 is a collection of software features implemented as programmatic functions or program modules that generally control the behavior of a node, such as ID node 120a. In an example, the functionality of code 325 may be generally similar as implemented in different types of nodes, such as a master node, an ID node, and a sensor node. However, those skilled in the art will appreciate that while some principles of operation are similar between such nodes, other examples may implement the functionality with some degree of specialization or in a different manner depending on the desired application and use of the node.

[0125] In a general example, exemplary node control and management code 325 may generally comprise several programmatic functions or program modules including (1) a node advertise and query (scan) logic manager (also referred to herein as a node communications manager), which manages how and when a node communicates; (2) an information control and exchange manager, which manages whether and how information may be exchanged between nodes; (3) a node power manager, which manages power consumption and aspects of RF output signal power and/or receiver sensitivity for variable short-range communications; and (4) an association manager focusing on how the node associates with other nodes. What follows is description of various examples of these basic program modules used by nodes.

Node Communications Manager - Advertising & Scanning

[0126] In an example, the node advertise and query (scan) logic manager for a node governs how and when the node should advertise (transmit) its address or query (scan) for the address of neighboring nodes. Advertising is generally done with a message, which may have

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

different information in various parts (*e.g.,* headers, fields, flags, etc.). The message may be a single or multiple packets.

[0127] In the example, the "advertise" mode (as opposed to "query" or "scan" mode) is a default mode for an ID Node and has the node broadcasting or transmitting a message with its address and related metadata regarding the node. For example, exemplary metadata may include information such as the RF output power level, a reference number, a status flag, a battery level, and a manufacturer name for the node.

[0128] Figure 6 is a diagram illustrating the structure or format of an exemplary advertisement data packet. Referring now to Figure 6, the structure of an exemplary advertisement data packet 600 broadcast as a signal or message from an ID node, such as ID node 120a, is shown. Packet 600 appears with an increasing level of detail showing exemplary metadata and a format that separately maintains distinct types of metadata in different parts of the packet. Different examples may include different types of metadata depending on the deployed application of the ID node.

[0129] Figure 7 is a diagram illustrating sample content for an exemplary advertisement data packet. Referring now to Figure 7, an exemplary advertisement data packet 700 is illustrated with exemplary metadata including showing sample information such as the RF Output Power level (*e.g.,* "TX Power Level"), a reference number (*e.g.,* "'FDX ID' (ASCII Short Name)", a status flag (*e.g.,* "Status Flag Value (indicates 'Ack Requested')"), a battery level (*e.g.,* "Battery Level Value (Indicates 73% charge)", and a manufacturer name for the node (*e.g.,* "Company Identifier (currently undefined for FedEx)"). In one example, those skilled in the art will appreciate that the reference number may be omitted or obfuscated for security purposes.

[0130] In one example, an exemplary advertising data packet may include the RF Output power level, as noted above in Figure 7, to enable one way to help identify the type of node doing the broadcasting and the location of the broadcasting node. However, if the broadcast RF output power level is fixed and known by the node type, only the node type need be identifiable from an exemplary advertising data packet, such as packet 700.

[0131] Regarding how a node communicates, an exemplary node may be in one of several different communication modes. A node in an advertising (or transmit or broadcast) mode is visible to any other node set in a query (or scan or listen) mode. In an example, the frequency and length of advertising may be application and power dependent. For example, in

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

normal operations, an exemplary node will generally advertise in a periodic manner and expect to make an active connection to another node at certain intervals, which may be dictated by conditions set by server 100. In an example, such conditions may be set individually for a node by the server or a higher level node in the network.

[0132] If an exemplary node has not received acknowledgement for an advertising packet within a particular period, it may enter one or more alert stages. For example, if an exemplary node has not received acknowledgement from another node for an advertising packet broadcast by the exemplary node within a particular time period (also generally referred to as an Alert Interval), the exemplary node will enter an Alert Stage 1 status. This prompts the exemplary node to issue a follow-up advertising packet having one or more parts of it altered to indicate the Alert Stage 1 status. In more detail, this exemplary follow-up advertising packet may have a different advertising alert header instructing nearby nodes to send a SCAN_REQ message upon receiving an advertisement packet.

[0133] If an exemplary node has not received acknowledgement from a master node for an advertising packet broadcast by the exemplary node within another time period (*e.g.,* a request from the master node to actively connect and a success connection made), it will enter another alert stage, such as an Alert Stage 2 status. This prompts the exemplary node to issue a follow-up advertising packet having one or more parts of it altered to indicate the Alert Stage 2 status. In more detail, this exemplary follow-up advertising packet may have a different advertising alert header instructing nearby master nodes to send a SCAN_REQ message upon receiving an advertisement packet.

[0134] If an exemplary node has data to upload to the backend, it may also enter another type of alert stage. In one example, for example, if an exemplary node has sensor data collected by the exemplary node (or received from one or more other nodes that have communicated with the exemplary node), and the data needs to be uploaded to server 100, the exemplary node may enter an update alert stage, such as an Alert Stage 3. This prompts the exemplary node to issue a follow-up advertising packet having one or more parts of it altered to indicate the Alert Stage 3 status. In more detail, this exemplary follow-up advertising packet may have a different advertising alert header instructing nearby master nodes to make a connection with the exemplary node so that the data (*e.g.,* sensor data 350) may be transmitted from the exemplary node (*e.g.,* ID node 120a) to a nearby master node (*e.g.,* master node 110a). The transmitted data

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

may then be stored by the nearby master node as sensor data 450 in either or both of the master node's volatile memory 420 and memory storage 415. Subsequent to that storage operation, the nearby master node will transfer the data (*e.g.,* sensor data 450) to server 100.

[0135] As illustrated in Figure 7 and explained in the above description of alert level stages, a status flag in a header of an exemplary advertising data packet is a field used in the association logic in one or more examples. For example, in one example, the existence of a status flag in the advertising data packet allows a first node to communicate its status to a second node, and for the second node to report that status to the backend server, such as server 100, without an active direct connection from the first node to the server. In other words, the status flag helps facilitate passive interactions between nodes (such as passive associations).

[0136] In a more detailed example, several exemplary status types are established with respect to communications with other nodes. For example, the exemplary status types may comprise the following:

- Alert Level 0 - no issue, operating normal;
- Alert Level 1 – The advertising node is requesting that any available node acknowledge the receipt of its advertisement packet;
- Alert Level 2 - The advertising node is requesting that any available master node acknowledge the receipt of its advertisement packet;
- Alert Level 3 - Data for Upload – node has captured data available for upload through a master node; and
- Synchronize – The advertising node requests to connect with a device or sensor that can synchronize data (such as timer or location information).

[0137] By broadcasting the status via, for example, a portion of a header in an advertising data packet, one or more nodes within range of the broadcasting node can determine the node's status and initiate active connections if requested in the status message.

[0138] A request for more information from the advertising node may, in some examples, come in the form of a SCAN_REQ message. In general, an exemplary SCAN_REQ is a message sent from a scanning (listening) master node to an advertising node requesting additional information from the advertising node. In this example, the alert status bit may indicate to the scanning master node, for example, at an application layer, whether the advertising node is in a mode that will or will not accept a SCAN_REQ. In one example, the

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

non-connectable and discoverable modes of node advertising are in compliance with Bluetooth® Low Energy (BLE) standards.

[0139] In another example, a node may have further different modes of operation while scanning or listening for other nodes. For example, a node's query or scanning mode may be active or passive. When a node is scanning while passive, the node will receive advertising data packets, but will not acknowledge and send SCAN_REQ. However, when a node is scanning while active, the node will receive advertising data packets, and will acknowledge receipt by sending a SCAN_REQ. A more detailed example may provide the passive and active modes of scanning or inquiry in compliance with Bluetooth® Low Energy (BLE) standards.

[0140] In an example, an exemplary node is scanning as it listens for other wireless nodes broadcasting on the short-range radio. An exemplary scanning node may capture, for example, a MAC address of the advertising node, a signal strength of the RF output signal transmitted from the advertising node, and any other metadata published by the advertising node (*e.g.,* other information in the advertising data packet). Those skilled in the art will appreciate that the scope of "listening" when a node is scanning may vary. For example, the query may be limited. In other words, the scope of what a node is particularly interested in and for which it is listening may be focused or otherwise limited. In such a case, for example, the information collected may be limited to particular information from a targeted population of short-range wireless nodes advertising; but the information collection may be considered "open" where information from any advertising device is collected.

[0141] When nodes are advertising or scanning, an example may make further use of status flags and additional modes when advertising or scanning as part of how nodes communicate and may be managed. In one example, when a scanning (listening) node receives an advertising data packet with the status flag indicating an Alert Level 1 or 2 status, and the scanning node is in "Passive" scanning mode, the node will switch to "Active" scanning mode for some interval. However, when the scanning node in this situation is already in an "Active" scanning mode, the node will send the SCAN_REQ message and receive a SCAN_RSP from the advertising node (*e.g.,* a message providing the additional information requested from the advertising node). The scanning node will then switch back to a "Passive" scanning mode.

[0142] In another example, when an advertising (broadcasting) node receives a SCAN_REQ from a scanning node, the advertising node will consider that its advertising data

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

packet has been acknowledged. Further, the advertising node will reset its "Alert" status flag back to an Alert Level 0 status. This allows the advertising node to effectively receive an acknowledgement to its advertisement without ever making a connection to the scanning node, which advantageously and significantly saves on power consumption.

[0143] In yet another example, when a scanning node receives an advertising data packet with an Alert Level 3 status flag set, the scanning node will attempt to make a connection with the advertising device. Once the connection is made, the advertising device will attempt to upload its data to the connected device

[0144] Thus, an example of the node advertise and query (scan) logic manager of code 325 may rely upon one or more status flags, advertising modes, scanning modes, as nodes communicate with each other in various advantageous manners.

Node Information Control & Exchange Manager

[0145] In an example, the information control and exchange manager part of node control and management code 325 determines whether and how information may be exchanged between nodes. In the example, the information control and exchange manager establishes different node operational states where information may be changed according to a desired paradigm for the state. In more detail, an example of information control and exchange manager may establish different levels of information exchange between nodes with a "non-connectable advertising" state or mode of operation, a "discoverable advertising" state or mode, and a "general advertising" state or mode operation. When a node is in the "non-connectable advertising" mode, the node information exchange is limited. For example, the advertising node may broadcast information that is captured by one or more querying (scanning) nodes, but no two-way exchange of information happens.

[0146] When a node is in the "discoverable advertising" mode and a scanning node is in "Active" mode, the node information exchange in enabled both ways. For example, the advertising node sends the advertising packet, and in response the scanning node sends the SCAN_REQ packet. After the advertising node receives the SCAN_REQ requesting additional information, the advertising node sends the SCAN_RSP with the requested information. Thus, in the "discoverable advertising" mode there is a two-way exchange of information, but no active connection is made between the two nodes exchanging information.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

[0147] Finally, for advanced two-way information exchange, an active connection may be used between nodes and information may be exchanged both ways to and from different nodes. In a more detailed example, at this level of two-way information exchange, nodes are first identified and then authenticated as part of establishing the active connection. Once authenticated and thereafter actively connected to each other, the nodes may securely share information back and forth. In one example, a sensor node uploading previously captured environmental information to a master node may be in this mode or state. In another example, an ID node uploading the stored results of a node scanning operation to a master node may be in this mode or state. In yet another example, a master node sharing a timer and/or location information with corresponding nodes may be in this mode or state.

Node Power Manager

[0148] In an example, the node power manager part of node control and management code 325 focuses on managing power consumption and the advantageous use of power (*e.g.*, an adjustable level of RF output signal power) in a node. In general, nodes are either powered by a battery (such as battery 355 in an ID node), or by an interface (such as battery/power interface 470 in a master node) to an external power source. Examples of an external power source may include, in some examples, power supplied from an outlet or power connection within a facility, or power generated onboard a conveyance (*e.g.*, automobile, truck, train, aircraft, ship, etc.). Those skilled in the art will appreciate that an interface to an external power source will be generally referred to as a "wired" power connection, and that node power manager may be informed whether a node is wired or powered off a battery, such as battery 355. Further examples may implement an interface to an external power source with wireless power transmission, such as via inductive coils.

[0149] In one example, a node may manage power used when performing tasks. For example, a node may manage power when determining which node should perform a particular task. In more detail, the collective power consumption of a group of devices may be managed by electing to employ wired nodes, when feasible or desired, to accomplish a particular task, and saving the battery-powered nodes for other less energy burdensome or taxing tasks. In another example, historic data may inform the system of the power needed to accomplish a particular task, and the system may make a determination of which node should accomplish the particular

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

task based upon such historic data. In other examples, profile data may also be used to inform the system of the power needed to accomplish a particular task (*e.g.,* a sensor profile that describes power requirements for operation of a sensor node that gathers sensor data over a certain period of time and under certain conditions). The system may also make a determination of which node should accomplish the particular task based upon such profile data.

[0150] In another example, the exemplary node power manager may manage power when determining how to best to use and adjust power to more accurately accomplish a particular task. In one example, an RF signal output from a node (such as a short-range RF output signal from an ID node) may periodically move through a range of output power or simply switch between two or more settings that differ in a detectable manner. As disclosed in more detail below, the variability and dynamic adjustment of RF output signal power may allow other nodes (such as one or more master nodes) to see each node at the upper range of the RF output signal power, and only see nodes physically close to the advertising node at the lower range of signal power.

[0151] In another example, the exemplary node power manager may cause a change to a characteristic of its RF output signal power when the node has been associated to a physical place or another node by virtue of context data (such as context data 560 and association logic that utilizes that type of information). In one example, the node may be instructed to change how often the node communicates and/or a characteristic of its RF output power to preserve power.

[0152] In yet another example, all advertising nodes may have their respective node power managers periodically cause each respective node to broadcast at a maximum RF output signal power level to ensure they still are within range of a scanning ID Node or Master Node. Doing so may increase the chance of being in communication range and allows the individual nodes to be properly located and managed within the network. The broadcast duration may be set or dynamically changed to allow pairing to occur if needed.

[0153] Rather than adjust the RF output signal power level, the exemplary node power manager may, in some examples, adjust the RF receiver sensitivity of a node. This allows for an adjustable range of reception (as opposed to merely an adjustable range of broadcast), which may similarly be used to manage power and enhance location determinations as discussed herein.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

[0154] In yet another example, a combination approach may be used in which the node power manager may concurrently and independently adjust more than one RF characteristic of a node. For example, an exemplary node power manager may adjust an RF output signal power level and also adjust the RF receiver sensitivity of a node as the node is located and associated with other nodes. Those skilled in the art will realize that this may be especially useful in an area with an unusually dense concentration of nodes, and a combination of changing RF output signal power levels.

[0155] An example of the exemplary node manager may refer to a power profile (*e.g.,* an exemplary type of profile data 330, 430) when adjusting a node's power characteristics (*e.g.,* consumption of power, use of power, output signal frequency, duty cycle of the output put signal, timing, power levels, etc.).

Node Association Manager

[0156] In an exemplary example, the node association manager part of node control and management code 325 focuses on how the nodes associate with other nodes in conjunction and consistent with the server-side association manager in code 525, as discussed in more detail below. Thus, exemplary node association manager, when executing in a node, directs how the node associates (*e.g.,* enters an active connection mode) with one or more other nodes with input from the server.

[0157] The exemplary node association manager for a node may indicate through a Status Flag if the node requires an acknowledgement or connection, or if it has information available for upload to the backend. Thus, while a node may not be associated or actively connected yet to another node, a status of the node may be inferred from, for example, the status information in the node's broadcast header.

[0158] Regarding connections between nodes, there are generally secure connections and unsecure connections. While an example may allow unsecure connections between one or more sets of nodes, other examples rely upon secure connections or authenticate pairings of nodes. In one example, for a node to pair with another node, the exemplary node association manager first identifies the nodes to be associated and transmits an association request to the server. The request may include a specific request to pair the nodes and ask for the corresponding pairing credentials from the server, such as server 100. The server 100 may have staged pairing

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

credentials on particular nodes based on information indicating the nodes would be within wireless proximity and future pairing may occur. Visibility to the node relationship may have been determined through scan-advertising, or 3rd party data such as barcode scan information indicating the nodes to be within proximity currently or at a future state.

[0159] When connecting or not connecting to exchange information under the exemplary node information exchange modes described above, nodes generally operate in a number of states, which make up an exemplary advertise cycle for an exemplary ID node. Such an exemplary advertise cycle for a node is further explained below with reference to Figure 8 and in conjunction and consistent with the server-side association manager in code 525, as discussed in more detail below.

Airborne Mode Program Module

[0160] In one example, node control and management code 325 may also include an airborne mode program module (not shown). In another example, the airborne mode program module may be implemented as a part of the node power manager program module of code 325. An exemplary airborne mode program module generally operates to manage the output power of the ID node's variable power short-range communication interface 375 when the ID node is operating in an aircraft. Operating a wireless device within an aircraft may, in some circumstances, have an unintentional impact on other electronic systems on the aircraft. In more detail, an example of the airborne mode program module may operate to transition the ID node from different states or modes depending upon particular operations and/or operational conditions of the aircraft. For example, an exemplary airborne mode program module may operate to transition the ID node from one state or mode (*e.g.,* a normal mode prior to takeoff, a disabled mode during takeoff, an airborne mode while aloft, a disabled mode during descent, and a normal mode after landing) based upon detected environmental conditions (*e.g.,* pressure, altitude) and/or flight detail information associated with the aircraft. In this way, an ID node may be allowed to normally operate when onboard an aircraft, be disabled from operating at all in some circumstances, and be able to operate in an airplane mode that allows sensing and sensor data capture, but that may limit transmission of an RF output signal to avoid interference with the aircraft's onboard electronics. Further information related to a method of managing a wireless device (such as an ID node) in an aircraft is disclosed in greater detail in U.S. Patent

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

Application Serial No. 12/761,963 entitled "*System and Method for Management of Wireless Devices Aboard an Aircraft*".

Node Data

[0161] As previously noted, volatile memory 320 may also include certain data (*e.g.,* profile data 330, security data 335, association data 340, shared data 345, sensor data, and the like) generated as the ID node 120a executes instructions as programmed or loaded from memory storage 315. In general, data used on a node, such as an ID node, may be received from other nodes or generated by the node during operations.

[0162] In one example, profile data 330 is a type of data that defines a general type of behavior for an ID node, such as a Broadcast Profile (discussed in more detail below). In another example where ID node 120a is a BLE device, profile data 330 may include a Bluetooth® compatible profile related to battery service (exposing the state of a battery within a device), proximity between BLE devices, or messaging between BLE devices. Thus, exemplary profile data 330 may exist in volatile memory 320 and/or memory storage 315 as a type of data that defines parameters of node behavior.

[0163] In one example, it may be desired to allow secured pairings of nodes. As will be explained in more detail below, as part of secure pairing of nodes, a request for pairing credentials is generated and sent to server 100. Thus, exemplary security data 335 (*e.g.,* PIN data, security certificates, keys, etc.) may exist in volatile memory 320 and/or memory storage 315 as a type of data associated with providing secured relationships between nodes, such as the requested security credentials.

[0164] Association data, such as association data 340, generally identifies a connected relationship between nodes. For example, ID node 120a may become associated with the master node 110a as the ID node 120a moves within range of the master node 110a and after the server directs the two nodes to associate (with authorization). As a result, information identifying the relationship between ID node 120a and master node 110a may be generated and provided to server 100 and may be provided, as some point, to each of ID node 120a and master node 110a. Thus, exemplary association data 340 may exist in volatile memory 320 and/or memory storage 315 as a type of data identifying associations between nodes and may be generated locally as part of associating between nodes.

Date reçue / Date received 2021-11-03

[0165] Shared data 345 may exist in volatile memory 320 and/or memory storage 315 as a type of data exchanged between nodes. For example, context data (such as environmental data or historic data) may be a type of shared data 345.

[0166] Sensor data 350 may also exist in volatile memory 320 and/or memory storage 315 as a type of data recorded and collected from an onboard sensor or from another node. For example, sensor data 350 may include temperature readings from a temperature sensor onboard an ID node and/or humidity readings from a humidity sensor in another ID node (*e.g.,* from another of the ID nodes within container 210 as shown in Figure 2).

[0167] Thus, an ID node (such as node 120a shown in Figure 3) is a lower cost wireless node that communicates with other ID nodes and master nodes via a short-range radio with variable RF characteristics, can be associated with other nodes, can broadcast to and scan for other nodes, associated with other nodes, and store/exchange information with other nodes.

MASTER NODE

[0168] A master node, such as master node 110a shown in more detail in Figure 4, shares many ID node features but generally expands upon them in order to function as a bridge to the server 100. In general, while an ID node is a type of lower level node in an exemplary wireless node network, a master node is a type of higher level node. An exemplary master node may be in a fixed location or otherwise stationary, while other example master nodes may be implemented as movable and mobile devices.

[0169] Referring now to Figure 4, exemplary master node 110a comprises a processing or logic unit 400 coupled to a short-range communication interface 485, memory storage 415, volatile memory 420, clock/timer 460, and battery/power interface 470. In some examples, the short-range communication interface 485 may have variable power characteristics, such as receiver sensitivity and RF output power level. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that processing unit 400 is logic, such as a microprocessor or microcontroller, which generally performs computations on data and executes operational and application program code and other program modules within the master node 110a.

[0170] In general, those skilled in the art will appreciate that the description of hardware with respect to master node 110a in Figure 4 applies to the similar hardware and software features appearing in each type of node, including a master node. Those skilled in the art will

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

appreciate that exemplary master node 110a is a hardware-based component that may implement processor 400 with a single processor or logic unit, a more powerful multi-core processor, or multiple processors depending upon the desired implementation. In one example, processing unit 400 may be implemented with a low power microprocessor and associated peripheral circuitry. Less complex microcontrollers or discrete circuitry may be used to implement processing unit 400 as well as more complex and sophisticated general purpose or dedicated purpose processors.

[0171] In yet another example, exemplary processing unit 400 may be implemented by a low power ARM1176JZ-F application processor used as part of a single-board computer, such as the Raspberry Pi Computer Model B-Rev-2. The ARM application processor is embedded within a Broadcom® BCM2835 system-on-chip (SoC) deployed in the Raspberry Pi Computer. In this example, the Raspberry Pi Computer device operates as a core of exemplary master node 110a and includes a Secure Digital memory card slot and flash memory card operating as memory storage 415, a 512 Mbyte RAM memory storage operating as volatile memory 420, an operating system (such as Linux) stored on memory storage 415 and running in volatile memory 420, and peripherals that implement clock/timer 460, and a power supply operating as a power interface 470.

[0172] Like short-range interface 375 in ID node 120a, exemplary master node 110a includes a short-range communication interface 480 as a programmable radio and an omni-directional antenna coupled to the processing unit 400. In some examples, the short-range communication interface 480 may have variable RF power characteristics, such as receiver sensitivity and/or RF output signal power level. In some examples, interface 480 may use an antenna with a different antenna profile when directionality may be desired. Examples of short-range communication interface 480 may include other hardware (not shown) for operatively coupling the device to a specific short-range communication path (*e.g.,* a Bluetooth® Low Energy (BLE) connection path communicating at 2.4 GHz). While BLE is used in one example to enable a short-range communication protocol, variable power short-range interface 480 may be implemented with other low power, short-range communication protocols, such as ultra-low power communication protocols used with ultra-wideband impulse radio communications, ZigBee protocols, IEEE 802.15.4 standard communication protocols, and the like.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

[0173] In one example, various RF characteristics of the radio's transceiver, such as the RF output power and the RF receiver sensitivity may be dynamically and programmatically varied under control of processing unit 400. In other examples, further RF characteristics of the radio's transceiver may be programmatically varied, such as frequency, duty cycle, timing, modulation schemes, spread spectrum frequency hopping aspects, etc., as needed to flexibly adjust the RF output signal as needed depending upon a desired implementation and anticipated use of exemplary master node 110a. In other words, examples of master node 110a (or any other master node) may have programmatically adjustable RF characteristics (such as an adjustable RF output signal power, an adjustable RF receiver sensitivity, the ability to switch to a different frequency or frequency band, etc.).

[0174] In addition to the short-range communication interface 480, exemplary master node 110a includes a medium and/or long-range communication interface 485 to provide a communication path to server 100 via network 105. In one example, communication interface 485 may be implemented with a medium range radio in the form of an IEEE 802.11g compliant Wi-Fi transceiver. In another example, communication interface 485 may be implemented with a longer range radio in the form of a cellular radio. In yet another example, both a Wi-Fi transceiver and a cellular radio may be used when best available or according to a priority (*e.g.,* first attempt to use the Wi-Fi transceiver if available due to possible lower costs; and if not, then rely on the cellular radio). In other words, an example may rely upon the longer range cellular radio part of interface 485 as an alternative to the medium range Wi-Fi transceiver radio, or when the medium range radio is out of reach from a connecting infrastructure radio within network 105. In still another example, the short-range communication interface 480 and/or the medium/long-range communication interface 485 may be implemented with a wireless radio transceiver (*e.g.,* a hardware radio, a wireless transceiver implemented with a combination of hardware and software, or a software defined radio (SDR) implementation of a wireless radio transceiver capable of providing the functionality of both interface 480 and 485).

[0175] Thus, in these examples, medium and/or long-range communication interface 485 may be used to communicate captured node information (*e.g.,* profile data 430, association data 440, shared data 445, sensor data 450, and location data 455) to server 100.

[0176] The battery/power interface 470 for master node 110a generally powers the circuitry implementing master node 110a. In one example, battery/power interface 470 may be a

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

rechargeable power source. For example, a master node may have a rechargeable power source along with a solar panel that charges the power source in order to help facilitate deployment of the master in a remote location. In another example, battery/power interface 470 may be a non-rechargeable power source intended to be disposed of after use. In yet another example, battery/power interface 470 may be a power interface connector (such as a power cord and internal power supply on master node 110a). Thus, when an exemplary master node is in a fixed or stationary configuration, it may be powered by a power cord connected to an electrical outlet, which is coupled to an external power source. However, other mobile master nodes may use an internal power source, such as a battery.

[0177] The clock/timer 460 for master node 110a generally provides one or more timing circuits used in, for example, time delay, pulse generation, and oscillator applications. In an example where master node 110a conserves power by entering a sleep or dormant state for a predetermined time period as part of overall power conservation techniques, clock/timer 460 assists processing unit 400 in managing timing operations.

[0178] Optionally, an example may also implement master node 110a as including one or more sensors 465 (similar to sensors deployed on ID node based Sensor nodes and described above with respect to Figure 3). Additionally, an example of master node 110a may also provide a user interface 405 to indicate status and allow basic interaction for review of captured node data and interaction with nodes and server 100. In one example, user interface 405 may provide a display, interactive buttons or soft keys, and a pointing device to facilitate interaction with the display. In a further example, a data entry device may also be used as part of the user interface 405. In other examples, user interface 405 may take the form of one or more lights (*e.g.,* status lights), audible input and output devices (*e.g.,* a microphone and speaker), or touchscreen.

[0179] As previously noted, an exemplary master node, such as master node 110a, may be positioned in a known fixed location or, alternatively, includes dedicated location positioning circuitry 475 (*e.g.,* GPS circuitry) to allow the master node self-determine its location or to determine its location by itself. In other examples, alternative circuitry and techniques may be relied upon for location circuitry 475 (rather than GPS), such as location circuitry compatible with other satellite-based systems (*e.g.,* the European Galileo system, the Russian GLONASS system, the Chinese Compass system), terrestrial radio-based positioning systems (*e.g.,* cell

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

phone tower-based or Wi-Fi-based systems), infrared positioning systems, visible light based positioning systems, and ultrasound-based positioning systems).

[0180] Regarding memory storage 415 and volatile memory 420, both are operatively coupled to processing unit 400 in exemplary master node 110a. Both memory components provide program elements used by processing unit 400 and maintain and store data elements accessible to processing unit 400 (similar to the possible data elements stored in memory storage 315 and volatile memory 320 for exemplary ID node 120a).

[0181] In the example shown in Figure 4, memory storage 415 maintains a variety of executable program code (*e.g.,* master control and management code 425), data similar to that kept in an ID node's memory storage 315 (*e.g.,* profile data 430, security data 435, association data 440, shared data 445, sensor data 450, and the like) as well as other data more specific to the operation of master node 110a (*e.g.,* location data 455 that is related to the location of a particular node). Like memory storage 315, memory storage 415 is a tangible, non-transient computer readable medium on which information (*e.g.,* executable code/modules, node data, sensor measurements, etc.) may be kept in a non-volatile and non-transitory manner.

[0182] Like volatile memory 320 in ID node 120a, volatile memory 420 is typically a random access memory (RAM) structure used by processing unit 400 during operation of the master node 110a. Upon power up of master node 110a, volatile memory 120 may be populated with an operational program (such as master control and management code 425) or specific program modules that help facilitate particular operations of master node 110a. And during operation of master 110a, volatile memory 420 may also include certain data (*e.g.,* profile data 430, security data 435, association data 440, shared data 445, sensor data 450, and the like) generated as the master node 110a executes instructions as programmed or loaded from memory storage 415.

Master Control & Management Code

[0183] Generally, an example of master control and management code 425 is a collection of software features implemented as programmatic functions or program modules that generally control the behavior of a master node, such as master node 110a. In one example, master control and management code 425 generally comprises several programmatic functions or program modules including (1) a node advertise and query (scan) logic manager, which manages how and

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

when a node communicates; (2) an information control and exchange manager, which manages whether and how information may be exchanged between nodes; (3) a node power manager, which manages power consumption and aspects of RF output signal power and/or receiver sensitivity for variable short-range communications; (4) an association manager focusing on how the node associates with other nodes; and (5) a location aware/capture module to determine node location.

Master Node Program Modules and ID Node Modules

[0184] In an exemplary example, program modules (1) – (4) of master node control and management code 425 generally align with the functionality of similarly named program modules (1) – (4) of node control and management code 325 as described above with respect to Figure 3. Additionally, as node control and management code 325 may also comprise an airborne mode program module, those skilled in the art will appreciate and understand that master node control and management code 425 may also comprise a similar functionality airborne mode program module in order to allow advantageous operations of a master node while airborne. However, and consistent with examples set forth below, such modules may have some differences when in a master node compared with those controlling an ID node.

Location Aware/Capture Module

[0185] In addition to exemplary program modules (1) – (4) of code 425, an exemplary example of master node control and management code 425 will further comprise an exemplary location aware/capture module related to node location (more generally referred to as a location manager module for a master node). In general, the exemplary location aware/capture module deployed in an exemplary master node may determine its own location and, in some examples, the location of a connected node. Examples of the exemplary location aware/capture module may work in conjunction with location manager program code residing and operating in a server (*e.g.,* as part of server control and management code 525) when determining node locations of other nodes, as discussed in more detail herein.

[0186] In one example, a master node may be positioned in a known, fixed location. In such an example, the exemplary location aware/capture module may be aware that the master node location is a known, fixed location, which may be defined in a fixed, preset, or

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

preprogrammed part of memory storage 415 (*e.g.,* information in the location data 455 maintained in memory storage 415). Examples of such location information may include conventional location coordinates or other descriptive specifics that identify the location of the master node. In another example where the master node may not be inherently known or a fixed location at all times (*e.g.,* for a mobile master node), the exemplary location aware/capture module may communicate with location circuitry, such as GPS circuitry 475 on a master node, to determine the current location of the master node.

[0187] In an example, the location of the master node may be communicated to the server, which may use this location information as part of managing and tracking nodes in the wireless node network. For example, if an exemplary master node is mobile and has determined a new current location using location circuitry 475, the master node may provide that new current location for the master node to the server. Additionally, when the master node's exemplary location aware/capture module determines the location of a node associated with the master node, the master node may also provide the location of that node associated with the master node to the server.

SERVER

[0188] While Figures 3 and 4 illustrate details of hardware and software aspects of an exemplary ID node and exemplary master node, respectively, Figure 5 provides a more detailed diagram of an exemplary server that may operate as part of an exemplary wireless node network. In an exemplary example, server 100 may be referred to as an Association and Data Management Server (ADMS) that manages the nodes, collects information from the nodes, stores the collected information from the nodes, maintains or has access to context data related to the environment in which the nodes are operating, and may provide information about the nodes (*e.g.,* status, sensor information, etc.) to requesting entities. Further details on various examples that take advantage of this functionality are explained below. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that node density, geographic installation characterization, and network connectively are all types of examples of factors that may impact a final architecture desired for an example of a wireless node network. Additionally, in embodiments described in more detail below, a server that may interact with master nodes and ID nodes as described here may be implemented and deployed as a dispatch server that is responsive to dispatch requests and transmits dispatch commands to

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

different nodes (such as a master node operating as an autonomous controller within a modular mobile autonomous control module (also referred to as an exemplar MAM component).

[0189] Referring now to Figure 5, exemplary server 100 is shown as a networked computing platform capable of connecting to and interacting with at least the wireless master nodes. In other examples, exemplary server 100 is also capable of connecting to and interacting with one or more user access devices. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that exemplary server 100 is a hardware-based component that may be implemented in a wide variety of ways. For example, server 100 may use a single processor or may be implemented as one or more part of a multi-processor component that communicates with devices (such as user access devices 200, 205) and wireless nodes (such as master node 110a).

[0190] In general, those skilled in the art will further appreciate that server 100 may be implemented as a single computing system, a distributed server (*e.g.,* separate servers for separate server related tasks), a hierarchical server (*e.g.,* a server implemented with multiple levels where information may be maintained at different levels and tasks performed at different levels depending on implementation), or a server farm that logically allows multiple distinct components to function as one server computing platform device from the perspective of a client device (*e.g.,* devices 200, 205 or master node 110a). In some regional deployments, an exemplary server may include servers dedicated for specific geographic regions as information collected within different regions may include and be subject to different regulatory controls and requirements implemented on respective regional servers.

[0191] Likewise, while the example shown in Figure 5 illustrates a single memory storage 515, exemplary server 100 may deploy more than one memory storage media. And memory storage media may be in differing non-transitory forms (*e.g.,* conventional hard disk drives, solid state memory such as flash memory, optical drives, RAID systems, cloud storage configured memory, network storage appliances, etc.).

[0192] At its core, exemplary server 100 shown in Figure 5 comprises a processing or logic unit 500 coupled to a network interface 590, which facilitates and enables operative connections and communications through network 105 with one or more master nodes as well as, in some examples, user access devices, such as devices 200, 205. In one example, server 100 may include a medium and/or long-range communication interface 595 with which to more directly communicate with one or more master nodes. Using these communication paths as well

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

as program code or program modules (such as server control and management code 525), the server 100 generally operates to coordinate and manage information related to an ID node as an item associated with the ID node physically moves from one location to another.

[0193] As a computing platform, the processing unit 500 of exemplary server 100 is operatively coupled to memory storage 515 and volatile memory 520, which collectively store and provide a variety of executable program code (*e.g.,* server control and management code 525), data similar to that kept in a master or ID node's respective memory storage (*e.g.,* profile data 530, security data 535, association data 540, shared data 545, sensor data 550, location data 555) and context data 560 related to the environment in which the nodes are operating (*e.g.,* information generated from within the wireless node network and information created external to the wireless node network).

[0194] Like memory storage 315 and storage 415, memory storage 515 is a tangible, non-transient computer readable medium on which information (*e.g.,* executable code/modules (*e.g.,* server control and management code 525), node-related data (*e.g.,* profile data 530, security data 535, association data 540, location data 555, etc.), measurement information (*e.g.,* a type of shared data 545, sensor data 550, etc.), and information on the contextual environment for the nodes (*e.g.,* context data 560) may be kept in a non-volatile and non-transitory manner.

[0195] Those skilled in the art will appreciate that the above identification of particular program code and data are not exhaustive and that examples may include further executable program code or modules as well as other data relevant to operations of a processing-based device, such as an ID node, a master node, and a server.

Context Data

[0196] As noted above, server 100 may access context data 560 as part of managing nodes in the wireless node network. The exemplary server 100 may contain a collection of such context data 560 in a context database 565 according to an example. As illustrated in Figure 5, exemplary context database 565 is a single database accessible by processing unit 500 internal to server 100. Those skilled in the art will readily understand that other configurations that provide an accessible collection of context data 560 are possible and contemplated within the scope and principles of examples of the invention. For example, context database 565 may be an externally accessible database (or multiple databases), such as an accessible storage maintained outside the

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

server 100 via a dedicated interface or a network storage device (or network attached storage (NAS) unit). In yet another example, the context database may be separately maintained by an external database server (not shown) that is distinct from server 100, but accessible through a communication path from server 100 to a separate database server (*e.g.,* via network 105). Furthermore, those skilled in the art will appreciate that context database 565 may be implemented with cloud technology that essentially provides a distributed networked storage of collections of information (such as context data 560, sensor data 550, shared data 545, etc.) accessible to server 100.

[0197] Within context database 565, an exemplary example of the collection of context data 560 may be maintained that generally relates to an environment in which the nodes are operating or anticipated to be operating. In more detail, the context data 560 may generally relate to what a similar node has experienced in a similar environment to what a given node is presently experiencing or is anticipated to experience as the given node moves.

[0198] In a general example, an environment in which a node may be actually or anticipated to be operating may include different types of environments – for example, an electronic communication environment (*e.g.,* an RF environment that may be cluttered with signals or include materials or structure that may impede or otherwise shield RF communications), a physical environment of an anticipated path along with the identified node moves (*e.g.,* temperature, humidity, security, and other physical characteristics), a conveyance environment related to how a node may move or be anticipated to be moving (*e.g.,* speed and other parameters of a truck, airplane, conveyor system), and a density environment related to the density of nodes within an area near a particular node (*e.g.,* how many nodes are anticipated to occupy a corridor or a storage facility through which a particular ID node is anticipated to transit on its shipping path).

[0199] In light of these different aspects of a node's operating environment, exemplary context data 560 may provide information related to different structures and conditions related to movement of an item (*e.g.,* a particular type of courier device, vehicle, facility, transportation container, etc.). Such information may be generated by an entity operating the wireless node network, such as a shipping company. Additionally, exemplary context data 560 may include third party data generated external to the wireless node network. Thus, context data, such as data 560, may include a wide variety of data that generally relates to the environment in which the

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

nodes are operating and may be used to advantageously provide enhanced node management capabilities.

[0200] In general, Figure 5 illustrates exemplary types of context data 560 being maintained in database 565 and in volatile memory 520. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that context data 560 may also be maintained in other data structures, in addition to or instead of maintaining such information in a database. As illustrated in Figure 5, exemplary types of context data 560 may include but are not limited to scan data 570, historic data 575, shipment data 580, layout data 585, RF data 587, and 3rd party data.

[0201] Scan data 570 is generally data collected for a particular item related to an event. For example, when an item is placed in a package (such as package 130), a label may be generated and placed on the exterior of the package. The label may include a visual identifier that, when scanned by an appropriate scanning device capable of capturing, identifies the package. The information generated in response to scanning the identifier (a type of event), may be considered a type of scan data. Other scan data 570 may include, for example, general inventory data generated upon manual entry of information related to the package; captured package custodial control data; and bar code scan data.

[0202] Historic data 575 is generally data previously collected and/or analyzed related to a common characteristic. Historic data 575 embodies operational knowledge and know-how for a particular characteristic relevant to operations of the wireless node network. For example, the common characteristic may be a particular event (*e.g.,* movement of an item from an open air environment to within a particular closed environment, such as a building), a type of item (*e.g.,* a type of package, a type of content being shipped, a location, a shipment path, etc.), a success rate with a particular item (*e.g.,* successful shipment), and the like. Another example of historic data 575 may include processing information associated with how an item has been historically processed as it is moved from one location to another (*e.g.,* when moving within a particular facility, processing information may indicate the item is on a particular conveyor and may include information about the conveyor (such as speed and how long it is anticipated the item will be on the conveyor)).

[0203] Shipment data 580 is generally data related to an item being moved from one location to another location. In one example, shipment data 580 may comprise a tracking number, content information for an item being shipped, address information related to an origin

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

and destination locations, and other characteristics of the item being moved. Shipment data may further comprise authentication related information for an item (*e.g.,* identifier information on an authorized delivery recipient for the item).

[0204] Layout data 585 is generally data related to the physical area of one or more parts of an anticipated path. For example, an example of layout data 585 may include building schematics and physical dimensions of portions of a building in which a node may be transiting. An example may further include density information associated with physical areas to be transited and anticipated numbers of potential nodes in those areas as types of layout data. In another example, an example of layout data may include a configuration of how a group of packages may be assembled on a pallet, placed into a shipping container (*e.g.,* a unit load device (ULD)) that helps move a collection of items on various forms with single mode or intermodal transport.

[0205] RF data 587 is generally signal degradation information about a signal path environment for a particular type of node and may relate to particular adverse RF conditions that may cause signal fluctuations, interference, or other degradation from the otherwise optimal signal path environment for that type of node. For example, RF data may include shielding effects when using a particular packaging or location, shielding effects when the package is within a particular type of container or assembled as part of a palletized shipment, shielding effects when particular content is shipped, and other physical and electronic interference factors.

[0206] Third party data 589 is an additional type of context data 560 that generally includes data generated outside the network. For example, third party data may include weather information associated with particular areas to be transited as the item is moved along an anticipated path from one location to another. Those skilled in the art will appreciate other types of third party data that relate to physical and environmental conditions to be faced by an item being moved from one location to another may also be considered context data 560.

[0207] The use of context data, such as context data 560 described above, advantageously helps server 100 (and other nodes) better manage movement of items, provide better location determination, enhance intelligent operation and management of different levels of the wireless node network, and provide enhanced visibility to the current location and status of the item during operation of the wireless node network. In one example, server control and

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

management code 525 may provide such functionality that enables the wireless node network to be contextually aware and responsive.

Server Control & Management Code

[0208] Generally, server control and management code 525 controls operations of exemplary server 100. In an example, server control and management code 525 is a collection of software features implemented as programmatic functions in code or separate program modules that generally control the behavior of server 100. Thus, exemplary server control and management code 525 may be implemented with several programmatic functions or program modules including, but not limited to, (1) a server-side association manager, which provides a framework for more robust and intelligent management of nodes in the wireless node network; (2) a context-based node manager, which enhances management of nodes in the wireless node network based upon context data; (3) a security manager, which manages secure pairing aspects of node management; (4) a node update manager, which provides updated or different programming for a particular node and shares information with nodes; (5) a location manager for determining and tracking the location of nodes in the network; and (6) an information update manager, which services requests for information related to the current status of a node or generally providing information about a node or collected from a node

Server-Side Association Manager

[0209] The server-side association manager (also referred to as a server-side association management function) is generally a program module in exemplary code 525 that is responsible for intelligently managing the nodes in the wireless node network using a secure information framework. In an example, this framework may be implemented to be a context-driven, learning sensor platform. The framework may also enable a way for information (such as RF scan, location, date/time, and sensor data) to be securely shared across nodes, a way to change the behavior of a node, and for a node to know it is considered "missing." The framework established during operation of the server-side association manager allows the network of nodes to be managed as a system with enhanced and optimized accuracy of determining the physical location of each ID Node. Further information regarding particular examples of such an association management framework and methods are explained below in more detail

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

Context-Based Association Manager

[0210] The context-based node manager is generally a program module in exemplary code 525 that is responsible for incorporating context data as part of management operations to provide an enhanced data foundation upon which visibility of the nodes may be provided. In some examples, the context-based node manager may be implemented as part of the server-side association manager while other examples may implement the context-based node manager as a separate program module.

[0211] In one example, the enhanced data foundation relies upon context data, such as context data 560 (*e.g.,* scan data 570, historic data 575, shipment data 580, layout data 585, and other third party contextual data providing information regarding the conditions and environment surrounding an item and ID node moving from one location to another). Such context data (*e.g.,* the network know-how, building layouts, and operational knowledge of nodes and shipping paths used with the wireless node network) may provide the enhanced building blocks that allow the server 100 to manage tracking and locating of nodes in a robustly enriched contextual environment. In an example, context-based management provides visibility to the system through data analysis for when and how associations should be expected as the nodes travel through the wireless node network. In other examples, it may provide the foundation for better understanding RF signal degradation, which can be caused by the operating environment, packaging, package content, and/or other packages related to an item and its ID node

Security Manager

[0212] The security manager module, which may be implemented separately or as part of the association manager module in exemplary server control and management code 525, helps with associating two nodes in the wireless node network by managing aspects of secure pairing of the nodes. In one example, security manager module provides the appropriate pairing credentials to allow a node to securely connect to another node. Thus, when a node desires to connect to another node, an example requires appropriate pairing credentials be generated by the server, provided to the nodes, and observed within the nodes to allow for a successful connection or association of nodes.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

[0213] In operation, a node (such as master node 110a) identifies the address of the node (such as ID node 120a) to whom it desires to connect. With this address, the node prepares a pairing request and sends the request to the server 100. The server 100 operates under the control of the security manager module of the association manager, and determines whether the requesting node should be connected or otherwise associated with the other node. If not, the server does not issue the requested security credentials. If so and in accordance with the desired association management paradigm set by the association manager of code 525, server provides the requested credentials necessary for a successful wireless pairing and the establishment of secure communications between the associated nodes.

Node Update manager

[0214] The exemplary server control and management code 525 may include a node update manager module that provides updated programming information to nodes within the wireless node network and collects information from such nodes (*e.g.,* shared data 545, sensor data 550). The node update module may be implemented separately or as part of the association manager module in exemplary server control and management code 525.

[0215] Providing an update to a node's programming may facilitate and enable distribution of node functions to save power and better manage the nodes as a system. For example, one example may alter the functional responsibility of different nodes depending on the context or association situation by temporarily offloading responsibility for a particular function from one node to another node. Typically, the server directs other nodes to change functional responsibility. However, in some examples, a master node may direct other nodes to alter functional responsibility.

[0216] Sharing information between nodes and with server (*e.g.,* via an exemplary node update manager) facilitates collecting information from a node and sharing information with other nodes as part of an association management function of server 100. For example, one example may collect and share RF scan data (a type of shared data 545), information about a node's location (a type of location data 555), system information about date/time (another type of shared data 545), and sensor measurements collected from sensor nodes (a type of sensor data 550)

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

Location Manager

[0217] The exemplary server control and management code 525 may include a location manager module that helps determine and track node locations. In a general example, the location of a node may be determined by the node itself (*e.g.,* a master node's ability to determine its own location via location circuitry 475), by a node associated with that node (*e.g.,* where a master node may determine the location of an ID node), by the server itself (*e.g.,* using location information determined by one or more techniques implemented as part of code 525), and by a combined effort of a master node and the server.

[0218] In general, an exemplary ID node may be directly or indirectly dependent on a master node to determine its actual physical location. Examples may use one or more methodologies to determine node location. For example and as more specifically described below, possible methods for determining node location may relate to controlling an RF characteristic of a node (*e.g.,* an RF output signal level and/or RF receiver sensitivity level), determining relative proximity, considering association information, considering location adjustments for context information and an RF environment, chaining triangulation, as well as hierarchical and adaptive methods that combine various location methodologies. Further information and examples of how an exemplary location manager module may determine a node's location in accordance with such exemplary techniques are provided in more detail below.

[0219] Additionally, those skilled in the art will appreciate that it may also be possible to determine what constitutes an actionable location versus actual location based upon contextual information about the item being tracked. For example, a larger item may require relatively less location accuracy than a small item such that operational decisions and status updates may be easier implemented with knowledge of context. If the size of the item is known, the location accuracy can be tuned accordingly. Thus, if a larger item is to be tracked, or if the system's contextual awareness of it is such that lower location accuracy can be used, a stronger signal and thus wider area of scanning may be employed, which may help in situations where RF interference or shielding is an issue.

Information Update Manager

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

[0220] The exemplary server control and management code 525 may include an information update manager module that provides information related to operations of the wireless node network and status of nodes. Such information may be provided in response to a request from a device outside the wireless node network (such as user access device 200). For example, someone shipping an item may inquire about the current status of the item via their laptop or smartphone (types of user access devices), which would connect to server 100 and request such information. In response, the information update manager module may service such a request by determining which node is associated with the item, gathering status information related to the item (*e.g.,* location data, etc.), and provide the requested information in a form that is targeted, timely, and useful to the inquiring entity.

[0221] In another example, a user access device may connect to server 100 and request particular sensor data from a particular node. In response, information update manager may coordinate with node update manager, and provide the gathered sensor data 545 as requested to the user access device.

Node Filtering Manager

[0222] An example of exemplary server control and management code 525 may optionally comprise a node filtering manager, which helps manage the traffic of nodes with a multi-level filtering mechanism. The filtering essentially sets up rules that limit potential associations and communications. An example of such a node filtering management may define different levels or modes of filtering for a master node (*e.g.,* which ID nodes can be managed by a master node as a way of limiting the communication and management burdens on a master node).

[0223] In one example, a "local" mode may be defined where the ID node only communicates and is managed by the assigned master node at the location where the last wireless node contact back to server 100 and/or where third party data indicates the assigned master node and ID node are in physical and wireless proximity. Thus, for the "local" mode of traffic filtering, only the assigned master node communicates and processes information from a proximately close and assigned ID node.

[0224] Moving up to a less restrictive filtering mode, a "regional" mode of filtering may be defined where the ID node may communicate and be managed by any master node at the

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

location last reported back to server 100 and/or where third party data indicates the ID node is located. Thus, for the "regional" mode of traffic filtering, any master node near the ID node may communicate and process information from that ID node. This may be useful, for example, when desiring to implement a limit on associations and pairings to within a particular facility.

[0225] At the least restrictive filtering mode, a "global" mode of filtering may be defined as essentially system-wide communication where the ID node may be allowed to communicate and be managed by any master node. In other words, the "global" mode of traffic filtering allows any ID node within the wireless node network to communicate information through a particular master node near the ID node may communicate and process information from that ID node.

[0226] Thus, with such exemplary filtering modes, an ID node in a certain condition (*e.g.,* distress, adverse environmental conditions, adverse conditions of the node, etc.) may signal the need to bypass any filtering mechanism in place that helps manage communications and association by using the "Alert" Status Flag. In such an example, this would operate to override any filtering rules set at the Master Node level in order to allow an ID node to be "found" and connect to another node.

[0227] Thus, exemplary server 100 is operative, when executing code 525 and having access to the types of data described above, to manage the nodes, collect information from the nodes, store the collected information from the nodes, maintain or have access to context data related to the environment in which the nodes are operating, and provide information about the nodes (*e.g.,* status, sensor information, etc.) to a requesting entity.

Node Communication & Association Examples

[0228] To better illustrate how exemplary management and communication principles may be implemented within an exemplary wireless node network, Figures 8-12 provide several examples of how exemplary components of the wireless node network may generally communicate (advertising & scanning), associate, and exchange information during different types of operations in various examples. Figures 22A-C also provide a more detailed application of such exemplary association and communication activities when an exemplary ID node moves along a transit path (*e.g.,* through a corridor) and is tracked and managed by different master nodes and a server in an example.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

Node Advertising Cycle Example

[0229] As generally explained above, a node may have several different types of advertising states in which the node may be connectable with other nodes and may communicate with other nodes (such as when a master node implementing an autonomous controller within an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus detects other nodes (*e.g.,* an ID node implemented with an elevator or actuated door) and wants to connect to such other nodes and securely communicate with such other nodes). And as a node moves within a wireless node network, the node's state of advertising and connection may change as the node disassociates with a previously connected node, associates with a new node, or finds itself not associated with other nodes. In some situations, a node may be fine and in normal operation not be connected or associated with another node. However, in other situations, a node may raise an issue with potentially being lost if it has not connected with any other node in a very long period of time. As such, a node may go through different types of advertising states in these different operational situations.

[0230] Generally, a node may be in a state where it is not connectable with other nodes for a certain period of time (also referred to as a non-connectable interval). But later, in another state, the node may want to be connected and advertises as such for a defined connectable period (also referred to as a connectable interval). As the node advertises to be connected, the node may expect to be connected at some point. In other words, there may be a selectable time period within which a node expects to be connected to another node. However, if the node is not connected to another node within that period of time (referred to as an Alert Interval), the node may need to take specific or urgent action depending upon the circumstances. For example, if a node has not been connected to another node for 30 minutes (*e.g.,* an example alert interval), the node may change operation internally to look "harder" for other nodes with which to connect. More specifically, the node may change its status flag from an Alert Level 0 (no issue, operating normal) to Alert Level 2 in order to request that any available master node acknowledge receipt of the advertisement packet broadcasted by the node seeking a connection.

[0231] Figure 8 is a diagram illustrating exemplary advertising states (or information exchange and node connectability states) and factors involved in transitions between the states by an exemplary ID node in a wireless node network. Referring now to Figure 8, three exemplary states for a node are illustrated as part of an exemplary advertising cycle for the node

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

– namely, an ID Node Non-Connectable Advertising state 805, an ID Node Discoverable Advertising state 815, and an ID Node General Advertising state 830. Transitions between these states will depend on factors related to expirations of the types of intervals described above. In an example, the duration of each of these intervals will depend upon the system implementation and the contextual environment within which the ID node is operating. Such time intervals may, for example, be set by server 100 as part of data (*e.g.,* profile data, association data, context data) provided to the node when updating the node and managing operations of the node.

[0232] Referring to the example illustrated in Figure 8, an exemplary ID node may have an alert interval set at, for example, 30 minutes, and be in ID Node Non-Connectable Advertising state 805 with a non-connectable interval set at 5 minutes. In state 805, the ID node may broadcast or advertise, but is not connectable and will not receive a SCAN_REQ message (a type of request for more information sent to the advertising node from another node). Thus, the ID node in state 805 in this example may advertise in a non-connectable manner for at least 5 minutes but expects to be connected within 30 minutes.

[0233] If the alert interval has not yet elapsed (factor 810) and the non-connectable interval is still running (factor 825), the ID node simply stays in state 805. However, if the alert interval has not elapsed (factor 810) and the non-connectable interval elapses (factor 825), the ID node will enter a mode where it wants to try to connect to another node for a period of time (*e.g.,* a 1 minute connectable interval) and will move to the ID Node General Advertising state 830 in the exemplary advertising cycle of Figure 8. In state 830, as long as the connectable interval is running, the ID node will stay in this state where it is connectable to another node and will receive SCAN_REQ types of requests from other nodes in response to the advertising packets the ID node is broadcasting. However, when the connectable interval (*e.g.,* the 1 min period) elapses or expires (factor 835), the ID node returns back to the Non-connectable Advertising state 805 for either the next time the non-connectable interval elapses (and the ID node again tries to connect in state 830) or the alert interval finally elapses (and the ID node finds itself in a situation where it has not connected to another node despite its efforts to connect in state 830).

[0234] When the alert interval finally elapses (factor 810), the ID node moves to the ID Node Discoverable Advertising state 815. Here, the ID node is not yet connectable but will receive a SCAN_REQ type of request from other nodes in response to advertising packets the ID node is broadcasting. In this state 815, the exemplary ID node may alter its status flag to indicate

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

and reflect that its alert interval has expired and that the node is now no longer in normal operation. In other words, the ID node may change the status flag to a type of alert status being broadcasted to indicate the ID node urgently needs to connect with another node. For example, the status flag of the advertising packet broadcast by the ID node may be changed to one of the higher Alert Levels depending on whether the node needs to upload data (*e.g.,* Alert Level 3 status) or synchronize timer or other data with another node (*e.g.,* Synchronize status). With this change in status flag, and the ID node in state 815 broadcasting, the ID node awaits to receive a request from another node that has received the broadcast and requested more information via a SCAN_REQ message (factor 820) sent to the ID node from that other node. Once a SCAN_REQ message has been received by the ID node (factor 820), the ID node that went into the alert mode because it had not connected with another node within the alert interval can connect with that other node, upload or share data as needed, and then shift back to state 805 and restart the alert interval and non-connectable intervals.

Master Node to ID Node Association Example

[0235] Advertising (broadcasting) and scanning (listening) are ways nodes may communicate during association operations. Figures 9-12 provide examples of how network elements of a wireless node network (*e.g.,* ID nodes, master nodes, and a server) may communicate and operate when connecting and associating as part of several exemplary wireless node network operations.

[0236] Figure 9 is a diagram illustrating exemplary components of a wireless node network during an exemplary master-to-ID node association. Referring now to Figure 9, exemplary master node M1 910a is illustrated within communication range of exemplary ID node A 920a. Master node M1 910a also has a communication path back to server 900. As shown, master node M1 910a is in a scanning or listening mode (*e.g.,* indicated by the "$M1_{scan}$" label) while ID node A 920a is in an advertising or broadcasting mode (*e.g.,* indicated by the "A_{adv}" label). In this example, M1 master node 910a has captured the address of ID node A 920a through A's advertising of at least one advertising data packet, and has reported it to the server 900. In this manner, the capturing and reporting operations effectively create a "passive" association between the nodes and proximity-based custodial control. Such an association may

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

be recorded in the server, such as server 900, as part of association data, such as association data 540.

[0237] In another example, passive association between a master node and ID node may be extended to an "active" association or connection. For example, with reference to the example shown in Figure 9, server 900 may instruct master node M1 910a to associate, connect, or otherwise pair with ID node A 920a, and forwards the required security information (*e.g.,* PIN credentials, security certificates, keys) to master node M1 910a. Depending on the advertising state of ID node A 920a, ID node A 910a may only be visible (discoverable) but not connectable. In such a situation, the master node M1 910a must wait until ID node A 920a is in a connectable state (*e.g.,* the ID Node General Advertising state) and can be paired. As discussed above with reference to Figure 8, each ID node has a certain time window during each time period where it can be paired or connected.

[0238] In this example, when the ID node A 920a is successfully paired with master node M1 910a, ID node A 920a may no longer advertise its address. By default, only an unassociated device will advertise its address. A paired or associated node will only advertise its address if instructed to do so.

ID Node to ID Node Association Example

[0239] In various examples, an ID node may associate with or connect to other ID nodes. Figure 10 is a diagram illustrating exemplary components of a wireless node network during an exemplary ID-to-ID node association. Referring now to Figure 10, exemplary master node M1 910a, ID node A 920a, and server 900 are similarly disposed as shown in Figure 9, but with the addition of ID node B 920b, which is within communication range of ID node A 920a. In this example, ID node A 920a is running in query (scan) mode (*e.g.,* A_{scan}) listening for ID node B 920b. When ID node A 910a detects ID node B 920b advertising (*e.g.,* B_{adv}) with one or more advertising data packets as part of an advertised message from ID node B 920b, ID node A 920a identifies a status flag from the message indicating ID node B 920b has, for example, data (*e.g.,* sensor data 350) for upload. As a result, ID node A 920a logs the scan result (*e.g.,* as a type of association data 340) and, when next connected to master node M1 910a, ID node A 920a uploads the captured scan log information to the server 900. In this manner, the ID node scanning, capturing, and reporting operations effectively create a "passive" association between

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

the different ID nodes. Such a passive association may be recorded in the server 900 as part of association data 540.

[0240] In another example, passive association between two ID nodes may be extended to an "active" association or connection. For example, with reference to the example shown in Figure 10, based upon the captured status flag and uploaded information about ID node B 920b under that mode, the server 900 may issue a request to ID node A 920a through master node M1 910a to actively connect or pair with ID node B 920b for the purpose of downloading information from ID node B 920b. In one example, security credentials that authorize the active connection between ID node A 920a and ID node B 920b are downloaded to ID node A 920a from master node M1 910a, which received them from server 900. In another example, the requisite security credentials may have been pre-staged at ID node A 920a. And rather than rely upon an ID node to ID node connection, master node M1 may have connected directly with ID node B 920b if M1 was within communication range of ID node B 920b.

Information Query ID Node to Master Node Example

[0241] An exemplary ID Node may also issue queries to other nodes, both master nodes and ID nodes. Figure 11 is a diagram illustrating exemplary components of a wireless node network during an exemplary ID-to-master node query. Referring now to Figure 11, a similar group of nodes as shown in Figure 9 appears, except that exemplary master node M1 910a is in an advertising or broadcasting mode (*e.g.,* $M1_{adv}$) while ID node A 920a is in a scanning mode (*e.g.,* A_{scan}). In this configuration, ID node A 920a may query master node M1 910a for information. In one example, the query may be initiated through the ID node setting its status flag. The requested information may be information to be shared, such as a current time, location, or environmental information held by the master node M1 910a.

[0242] In a passive association example, ID node A 920a in A_{scan} mode may have captured the address of master node M1 910a. However, since an ID node cannot directly connect to the server 900 to request pairing security credentials (*e.g.,* security pin information that authorizes an active connection between ID node A 920a and master node M1 910a), a passive association and corresponding pairing will have been initiated from the master node. In another example, it may be possible for ID node A 920a to have the pairing credentials stored as

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

security data 335 from a previous connection. This would allow ID node A 920a then to initiate the active association with master node M1 910a after a passive association.

Alert Level Advertising Example

[0243] As previously noted, a node may enter an alert stage or level in one or more examples. For example, if a node has not received an acknowledgement from a master node for an advertising packet within a set period (*e.g.,* an Alert Interval as described in some examples), the node will enter a particular alert stage for more specialized advertising so that it may be "found" or pass along information. Figure 12 is a diagram illustrating exemplary components of a wireless node network during an exemplary alert advertising mode. Referring now to Figure 12, a similar group of nodes as shown in Figure 9 appears, with the addition of another master node (master node M2 910b) and another ID node (ID node B 920b). Exemplary ID node A 920a is in an advertising or broadcasting mode (*e.g.,* A_{adv}) while nodes M1, M2, and B are each in scanning mode (*e.g.,* $M1_{scan}$, $M2_{scan}$, and B_{scan}). In this example and configuration as shown in Figure 12, the status flag in an advertising message from ID node A 920a has been set to a particular alert level (*e.g.,* Alert Level 2) in the header of the message, requesting any nearby master node to acknowledge it. In one example, this mode may be entered if ID node A 920a has not connected with another node for a set period or time. In another example, ID node A 920a may enter this specialized advertising mode upon received instructions (*e.g.,* from server 900 or another nearby node) or a triggered condition (other than time), such as when a sensor input (such as light) is detected or otherwise registered and the node issues continuous updates of its address as a security feature. The ID node A 920a set at this alert level and in this specialized advertising mode is thus set in an active pairing mode, waiting for pairing credentials.

[0244] From a passive association perspective, any node in scanning mode can passively associate with such an advertising node (*e.g.,* ID node A 920a in this alert mode). Thus, in an example, the Alert Level 2 status flag in the advertising header broadcast by ID node A 920a indicates that urgent and active intervention is requested, rather than merely passively associate without an active connection.

[0245] From an active association perspective, any node that uploads the special advertising header of ID node A 920a may be forwarded the security credentials from the server

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

900. This would allow for the node receiving such credentials to actively associate or pair with ID node A 920a.

Node Location Determination Methodologies

[0246] As part of managing and operating a wireless node network in accordance with one or more examples of the invention, a node may determine its own location or the location of another node. Figures 13-16 provide some exemplary diagrams illustrating some methods in which a node's location may be determined. Some nodes, as noted above, include location circuitry and can self-locate using, for example, GPS positioning, Wi-Fi triangulation, and the like. And as explained above, an exemplary ID node may be directly or indirectly dependent on a master node (which can self-locate) to determine its location. In the examples discussed and described herein, a location of a node may generally encompass a current or past location. For example, an example that determines a node's location may be a current location if the node is not moving, but may necessarily determine the location as a past location should the node be in a state of motion.

[0247] Likewise, the term location alone may include a position with varying degrees of precision. For example, a location may encompass an actual position with defined coordinates in three-dimensional space, but use of the term location may also include merely a relative position. Thus, the term location is intended to have a general meaning unless otherwise expressly limited to a more specific type of location.

[0248] Determining node location may done by a master node alone, the server alone, or the master node working together with the server. And on such devices, examples may use one or more methodologies to determine a node's location and further refine the location. Such example methodologies may include, but are not limited to, determining node location may relate to controlling an RF characteristic of a node (*e.g.,* an RF output signal level and/or RF receiver sensitivity level), determining relative proximity, considering association information, considering location adjustments for context information and an RF environment, chaining triangulation, as well as hierarchical and adaptive methods that combine various location methodologies. A more detailed description of these exemplary node location determination techniques is provided below.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

Location Through Proximity

[0249] In one example, a signal strength measurement between two or more nodes may be used to determine the proximity of the nodes. If neither node's actual location is known, one example may infer a location relationship of the two nodes through proximity.

Proximity When Varying Power Characteristics

[0250] For example, an exemplary method of determining a node's location in a wireless node network of nodes may involve varying a node's power characteristic, such as the output power of one of the nodes. Generally and as explained with reference to Figure 13, the power characteristic may be varied to identify closer ones of the nodes to the node broadcasting. The node broadcasting may transmit one or a series of signals while other nodes may report receiving one or more of the signals. Those other nodes that receive at least one signal broadcast from the transmitting node may be deemed part of a close group of nodes. And as the power characteristic is varied (increased or decreased or both), a closest group of nodes (or single node) may be identified as the smallest group of nodes of those that receive at least one signal from the broadcasting node. Accordingly, while not absolute, a type of location for the broadcasting node may be determined based on the closest one or group of nodes. This may be repeated for neighboring nodes to yield a set of closest node information for each of the nodes. In more detail, an exemplary set of closest node information for each of the nodes may include which nodes are closest (via the lowest power characteristic) and more robustly supplement this information with which other nodes are incrementally further away (via increasingly larger power characteristics). Thus, the set of closest node information provides the basis for a determination of how close the nodes in the network are to each other, which provides a type of location determination for each node.

[0251] Additionally, context data may be referenced in certain examples to further enhance determining how close the nodes are to each other. For example, combining the set of closest node information with context data, such as scan information that registers when an item changes custodial control in a delivery system, may further refine how to determine the location of the nodes. Scan and other context information will help determine if one or more of the nodes, for example, are known to be in the same container, vehicle or moving on a belt together. Thus, this type of context data may be integrated into a further step of refining how close the nodes are to each other based upon the context data.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

[0252] In general, a location of a node based upon proximity may be determined when a power characteristic of nodes is changed or varied in a wireless node network. An exemplary method of doing so may being with instructing a first of the nodes to vary the power characteristic for one or more signals broadcast by the first node. In a more detailed example, such an instruction may cause the first node, for example, to incrementally decrease or incrementally increase the power characteristic (such as an output power level) between values.

[0253] Next, the method continues by identifying a first group of other nodes in the wireless node network that are near the first node based upon those of the other nodes that received at least one of the signals broadcast by the first node as the first node varies the power characteristic. In a further example, this step may incrementally identifying which of the first group of other nodes are receiving at least one of the broadcast signals as the first node incrementally varies the output power level of the signals broadcast. The incrementally identified nodes may be deemed a set of increasingly close nodes to the first node.

[0254] The method then continues by identifying a closest one or more of the other nodes as a smallest group of the other nodes that received at least one of the one or more signals broadcast by the first node as the first node varies the power characteristic.

[0255] The method then concludes by determining a location of the first node based upon the closest one or more of the other nodes. Thus, as the power characteristic is varied, the group of nodes that have received at least one of the signals broadcast by the first node may change and the smallest such group being a closest group of nodes (even if just one node) to the first node. In a more detailed example, the final step may comprise determining the location of the first node based upon the closest one or more of the other nodes and the set of increasingly close nodes to the first node as the set of increasingly close nodes provides more detailed proximity information for a refined location determination.

[0256] For example, referring to Figure 14, the set of increasingly close nodes to the ID node F 920f may include node M3 as being farthest away and M1 being closer than M3. When the power characteristic of ID node F incrementally decreases, and its output power level changes from P1 to P2, M3 can no longer receive the signal, but M1 and M2 still do. And as the power characteristic of ID node F continues to incrementally decrease, and its output power level is changed from P2 to P3, M1 can no longer receive the signal, but only M2 does as the last of the nodes closest to ID node F. Thus, in this example, determining the location of ID node F

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

may be based upon the fact that M2 is the closest node and the set of increasingly close nodes include M1 and M3 with M1 being closer than M3.

[0257] In another example, one or more further refinements to the first nodes location may be performed. In one example, the method's steps may be repeated where a second of the nodes is instructed to vary the power characteristic for one or more signals broadcast by the second node, and then the method may further refine the location of the first node based upon a location of the second node. In a more detailed example, the method's steps may be repeated where a second of the nodes is instructed to vary the power characteristic for one or more signals broadcast by the second node, and then the method may further the location of the first node based upon a location of the second node and a set of increasingly close nodes to the second node. With this increasingly cross-related information on what nodes are closer to other nodes and to what degree, which may be further repeated for additional nodes, examples may further refine the location of the first node within the network.

[0258] This method may further include determining context data related to the first node, and refining the location of the first node based upon the context data. In an example where the power characteristic is output power level, the incremental changes in the output power level of the broadcast signal may be set according to the context data.

[0259] This method may also determine the context data to be related to the closest node to the first node, and refine the location of the first node based upon the context data. In still another example, this method may determine the context data to be related to the incrementally identified nodes in the set of increasingly close nodes to the first node, and refining the location of the first node based upon the context data. For example, the closest node and the set of increasingly close nodes may have scan data that indicate they are within the same container. This exemplary context data may be used to further refine the location of the node being located, which may help efficiently determine that node is near the container. As such, those skilled in the will appreciate that context data for the node being located as well as nodes identified to be close to that node may provide relevant input to advantageously help further refine the location of the node.

[0260] Those skilled in the art will appreciate that such a location method as disclosed and explained above in various examples may be implemented on a server apparatus, such as server 100 illustrated in Figure 5, running one or more parts of server control and management

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

code 525 (*e.g.,* the location manager). Such code may be stored on a non-transitory computer-readable medium such as memory storage 515 on server 100. Thus, when executing code 525, the server's processing unit 500 may be operative to perform operations or steps from the exemplary methods disclosed above and variations of that method.

[0261] An example of such a server apparatus may include a server (such as server 100) operative to communicate with a plurality of nodes in the wireless node network. As explained with respect to Figure 5, the server generally includes a server processing unit, a server volatile memory, a server memory storage, and at least one communication interface. In this example, the volatile memory, memory storage, and communication interface are each coupled to the processing unit. The memory storage maintains at least a program code section and location data related to a location of one or more of the nodes. The communication interface provides a communication path operatively coupling the server with the nodes.

[0262] The server processing unit, as mentioned above, is operative when running the program code section, to perform the steps and operations as described above relative to this method and variations of that method described above.

Proximity When Observing Signal Patterns and Strengths Over a Time Period

[0263] In another example, an improved method for determining a node's location through proximity may include analyzing the signal patterns and strengths between an advertising node and a listening node. In one example, a threshold may be set for association based on an observed message count and/or recorded signal strength within a specific time period may improve the ability to locate a node (*e.g.,* an ID node) to that of another node (*e.g.,* a master node). In some examples, the observed message count may be implemented as an averaged count over a repeated time periods. Further still, other examples may filter outlying observations in the observation data set to help improve the quality of data relied upon for setting a threshold for association and, as a result, determine a node's location.

[0264] In a more detailed example, an improved method for determining a node's location through proximity may show captured advertising message counts as a component for a node's location and determining a node's direction of travel. In this example, two exemplary master nodes (*e.g.,* master node M1 910a and M2 910b) may capture advertising messages from one ID node (*e.g.,* ID node A 920a). Master node M1 may observe and capture (*e.g.,* record

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

information related to the observation) 60 messages from ID node A within a 2 minute period, while master node M2 only observes and captures 7 advertising messages from ID node A within that same period. Based upon the difference in how often messages are observed from ID node A by master node M1 compared to those observed by master node M2, the system is able to determine that ID node A would more proximate to master node M1, and it's known location.

[0265] In a further example, comparing the average time stamp of the captured records may allow the system can make a more accurate determination of location. For example, if the average captured message found on master node M2 is increasingly growing larger (*e.g.,* taking longer for messages to go from ID node A to master node M2), this indicates ID node A is moving away from master node M2. If the average captured message found on master node M2 is growing increasingly larger while the average captured message found on master node M1 is increasingly growing smaller, this indicates ID node A is moving away from master node M2 and toward master node M1. Thus, over a number of observed time periods, the change in message timing (transmission to reception) may also be relied upon to enhance or refine a node's location.

[0266] In yet another example, the observed signal strength may be a component in location determination and estimating direction of travel and may allow the system can make a more accurate determination of location. For example, two master nodes (M1 910a and M2 920b) may be capturing advertising messages from a node (ID node A 920a). M1 captures 60 messages from ID node A within 2 minutes, while M2 captures only 7 messages. The average signal strength observed for signals from ID node A by master node M1 is higher compared to the average signal strength observed by master node M2. Based upon this observed signal strength information, the system would determine that ID node A to be at M1, but a predicted path may indicate ID node A is heading towards M2. As the master nodes M1 and M2 continue to capture records, the system (*e.g.,* management code 524 operating on server 900, which is in communication with M1 and M2) processes the continued feed of capture records from M1 and M2. With this observed signal strength information, the server 900 would expect that the count and average signal strength of messages from ID node A over the time period observed (2 minutes) to increase for observations at M2 and to decrease for observations at M1 when ID node A is physically moving closer to M2 and away from M1. Thus, the change in observed

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

powers levels and in how often messages are observed may indicate actual node movement in an example.

[0267] Basing node proximity location and node directional determinations on observed signal patterns and characteristic strengths over a period of time has the advantage of reducing the likelihood of unwanted and spurious signal anomalies causing an ID node's location to be incorrectly determined. And the above exemplary methods for determining movement characteristics of a node (*e.g.,* moving closer to one node, moving closer to one but away from another, etc.) as part of refining the node location may be applied in combination with the various examples for determining node location described herein.

[0268] In an example, such an improved method based on node proximity location and node directional determinations on observed signal patterns and characteristic strengths over a period of time may begin by instructing a first and a second other nodes to detect any message broadcast from the one node over a period of time. The period of time may be set based upon a variety of factors, such as context data. In more detail, the period of time may be dynamically changed based upon context data as the one node moves into different contextual environments.

[0269] The method has the server receiving a first indication from the first other node and receiving a second indication from the second other node. Finally, the method determines a location of the one node based upon a difference in the first indication and the second indication. The first indication is related to a characteristic of messages broadcast from the one node that are detected by the first other node during the period of time. Likewise, the second indication is related to the characteristic of messages broadcast from the one node that are detected by the second other node during the period of time. These indications may include, for example, a count of messages received by the respective other nodes, a transit time factor (*e.g.,* an average transit time for a message to be detected after broadcast), and an average signal strength.

[0270] In one example, the first indication may be a first count of messages broadcast from the one node that are detected by the first other node during the period of time, and the second indication may be a second count of messages broadcast from the one node that are detected by the second other node during the period of time. As such, determining the location of the one node may be the location that is closer to the first other node than the second other node when the first count is greater than the second count. Additionally, the method may further include determining an actual node movement direction for the one node based upon comparing

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

the first count and the second count over a plurality of time periods. For example, the method may repeat observations over several of these time periods and track the first count and second count over time to determine which is increasing, which is decreasing, and determine movement of the one node based upon these measurements over time.

[0271] In another detailed example, the first indication may be a first time factor of messages broadcast from the one node that are detected by the first other node during the predetermined time period, and the second indication may be a second time factor of messages broadcast from the one node that are detected by the second other node during the period of time. And an actual node movement direction for the one node may be based upon comparing the first time factor and the second time factor. In a more detailed example, the first time factor may be an average transit time for a message detected at the first other node to go from the one node to the first other node, and the second time factor is an average transit time for a message detected at the second other node to go from the one node to the second other node. As such, determining the location of the one node may be that the location is closer to the first other node than the second other node when the first time factor is less than the second time factor.

[0272] In yet another example, the first indication may be a first average signal strength of messages broadcast from the one node that are detected by the first other node during the period of time, and the second indication may be a second average signal strength of messages broadcast from the one node that are detected by the second other node during the period of time. As such, determining the location of the one node may be that the location is closer to the first other node than the second other node when the first average signal strength is greater than the second average signal strength.

[0273] The improved method described above may also include, in an example, observing a degree of change in the first average signal strength and a degree of change in the second average signal strength over repeated time periods, and determining an actual node movement direction for the one node based upon comparing the degree of change in the first average signal strength and the degree of change in the second average signal strength.

[0274] In another example, the method may also refine the determined location of the one node. In this example, the method may further comprise refining the location of the one node based upon at least one of a first updated location received from the first other node and a second updated location received from the second other node. For example, when first other

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

node is a mobile master node and it is the closer of the two nodes to the one node being located, the example can take advantage of the location signaling onboard the first other node that provides the current location of the first other node. That current location data may be transmitted by the first other node to the server to update the server in its calculation of the location for the one node.

[0275] In still another example, the improved method may layer context data with the determined location to refine the location of the node. Context data related to the one node may be determined by the server, and so the location of the one node may be refined based upon that context data. In another example, context data related to the closer of the first other node and the second other node when compared to the location of the one node. For example, the server may be aware that a particular master node is closer to the one node compared to a second master node, and that the particular master node is within a container. With this additional context data related to the particular master node, the server may refine the location of the one node based upon the context data. Other exemplary types of relevant context data may be relied upon when refining the location of the one node, such as context data of a particular shielding associated with the environment near the particular master node (*e.g.,* a particular type of ULD having known RF shielding characteristics, etc.).

[0276] Additionally, the method may involve looking to see if the one node is behaving as expected. More specifically, a further example of the method may further compare the location of the one node to a predicted path of the one node to determine if the one node is located outside the predicted path. This may allow the server to use learned, historic data when creating a predicted path, and keep track of the one node relative to being within an acceptable range associated with this predicted path. The method may also generate a notification if the one node is outside the predicted path. In this manner, actionable tasks can then be taken to locate the one node – *e.g.,* changing filter mode options for nodes in that general area, etc.

[0277] Those skilled in the art will appreciate that such an improved node locating method as disclosed and explained above in various examples may be implemented on a server, such as server 100 illustrated in Figure 5, running one or more parts of server control and management code 525 (*e.g.,* the location manager). Such code may be stored on a non-transitory computer-readable medium such as memory storage 515 on server 100. Thus, when executing

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

code 525, the server's processing unit 500 may be operative to perform operations or steps from the exemplary methods disclosed above and variations of that method.

Association Driven Locating with Variable RF Characteristics

[0278] As noted above, a signal strength measurement between two or more nodes may be used to determine relative distance between nodes. If one of the nodes has a known location (such as master node M1 910a), a relative location of one or more nodes within a range of the known location node is generally a function of how accurate the system may determine a distance between the node with known location and associated nodes. In other words, an example may identify a relative location of an item and its related node by relying upon association-driven variable low-power RF output signals to determine a distance the node is from a known location.

Location Determination Through Master Node Advertise

[0279] As generally mentioned above, determining node location may relate to controlling an RF characteristic of a node (*e.g.,* an RF output signal level and/or RF receiver sensitivity level) and, more specifically, may involve aspects of controlling master node advertising. Figure 13 is a diagram illustrating an exemplary location determination using master node advertise. In the illustrated example shown in Figure 13, a master node, such as master node M1 910a, with a known location is broadcasting an advertising message at varying RF output power levels. Figure 13 illustrates the exemplary different RF output power levels as concentric ranges 1305-1315 about master node M1 910a. Thus, master node M1 910a may broadcast at a maximum power P1, related to range 1305, but may control the RF output power level and dynamically change the RF output power level to P2 and broadcast at a smaller range 1310, or to P3 and broadcast to an even smaller range 1315.

[0280] In the illustrated example, receiving ID nodes A-E 920a-920e are in query (scan) mode and can each use the received signal at different levels to determine how far away from the transmitting M1 they are located. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that while the illustrated example shown in Figure 13 has the receiving nodes all as ID nodes, other examples may have receiving nodes be either master or ID nodes or a mixture.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

[0281] In the exemplary example of Figure 13, the location for nodes A-E may be determined based upon the known location of master node M1 910a. That location, plus a range measurement when each of respective receiving nodes A-E last receives a signal from node M1, and factoring in a confidence factor of the range measurement, provides a location determination for the nodes according to variable RF signal power. Depending on a quality of the range measurement, the individual receiving nodes may or may not have an individually calculated location. In yet another example, if third party or context data, such as scan information, is available, a refined location may be determined using such data as an additional confidence factor. As the communication range of M1 is limited from P1 to P3, the accuracy of location by association goes up.

[0282] In the illustrated example of Figure 13, an exemplary method of determining a node's location may be described that uses master node advertising. First, when the master node M1's variable power short range communication interface 480 is set to P1, its maximum output, master node M1 910a is seen by each of ID nodes A-E 920a-920e. Based upon analytics or historic measurements, the open air performance (optimal range) of the radio in M1's variable power short range communication interface 480 at P1 power level may have been previously been found to be approximately 30 feet. Thus, without the need to examine RSSI levels from the individual ID nodes A-E 920a-920e and without the need for active calibration phases, the system may know that ID nodes A-E are within 30 feet of master node M1 910a.

[0283] Next, when the master node M1's variable power short range communication interface 480 is set to P2, a medium output level in this example, master node M1 is seen by nodes A and B. From previous analytics or historic measurements, it was determined the open air performance (optimal range) of the master node M1's variable power short range communication interface 480 running at P2 power level is approximately 15 feet. Thus, without the need to examine RSSI levels from the individual nodes, we know ID nodes A 920a and B 920b are within 15 feet of master node M1. Furthermore, we know the ID nodes no longer receiving the broadcasted RF signal from master node M1 910a (*e.g.,* ID nodes C 920c, D 920d, and E 920e) are somewhere within 30 feet of master node M1 910a, but probably more than 15 feet away from M1.

[0284] And when the master node M1's variable power short range communication interface 480 is set to P3, its minimum output level in this example, it is seen by ID node B 920b.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

From previous analytics or historic measurements, it was determined the open air performance (optimal range) of the master node M1's variable power short range communication interface 480 running at P3 power level is approximately 5 feet. Thus, without the need to examine RSSI levels from the individual ID nodes, we know the location of ID node B 920b is within 5 feet of the known location of master node M1 910a.

[0285] The ranging steps, as discussed in the example above, may then be repeated for any of the identified nodes in order to build a more accurate picture of the relative location of each node. The granularity of RF characteristic settings (*e.g.,* the RF output signal power level setting) will provide more granularity of location differentiation when performing the ranging steps. In one example, the ranging steps may be performed over a set of gross RF characteristics settings (*e.g.,* few settings over a wide range), and similar steps may then be performed over more select ranges for the RF characteristics settings.

[0286] An example of such a method for location determination using one or more associations of nodes in a wireless node network is described below. This method begins where a first of the nodes broadcasts one or more first messages at a first anticipated or predicted range distance. In one example, the first anticipated range distance is an optimal range for the first node. For example, the first node's radio in its communication interface may have a maximum setting to allow the node to broadcast at maximized range assuming a clear environment. Such a setting provides a known anticipated range distance. In the example of Figure 13, master node M1 910a may be broadcasting at a maximum power level P1 that reaches a first range distance from node M1. However, if node M1 is known to be within an adverse RF shielding environment, the first anticipated range distance may be a distance adjusted to account for the contextual environment of such shielding (*e.g.,* a type of context data). Anticipated range distances may be adjusted depending upon one or more types of relevant context (*e.g.,* one or more types of context data related to how an RF output signal from the node may be impeded).

[0287] Next, the method identifies which of the nodes associated with the first node received at least one of the first messages. In one example, the first node may be able to access and review association data in its onboard memory storage as part of identifying which are the nodes associated with it. In one example, the associations with the first node may be passive associations (*e.g.,* not actively paired and securely connected) or active associations (*e.g.,*

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

actively paired and able to securely connect and share data), or a combination of both types of associations.

[0288] Next, the first node broadcasts one or more second messages at a second anticipated range distance, which is incrementally smaller than the first anticipated range distance. In the example of Figure 13, master node M1 910a may be the first node and now is broadcasting at a medium power level P2 that reaches a second anticipated range distance from node M1. By incrementally changing the RF power level in this manner, master node M1 910a now no longer can reach nodes C-E as shown in Figure 13.

[0289] The method then concludes by determining a location of one or more of the identified associated nodes that did not receive any of the second messages but received at least one of the first messages, where the location is between the first and second anticipated range distances from the first node. Again, in the example of Figure 13, master node M1 910a may determine the location of nodes C-E (given they did not receive the message sent out the second anticipated range distance at RF power level P2) to between the first anticipated range distance (when master node M1 was broadcasting at power level P1) and the second anticipated range distance (when master node M1 was broadcasting at power level P2) from the known location of master node M1.

[0290] In one example, the method may also have the first node broadcasting one or more third messages at a third anticipated range distance (incrementally smaller range than the second anticipated range distance), and determining a location of one or more of the identified associated nodes that did not receive any of the third messages but received at least one of the second messages, where the location is approximately near the second anticipated range distance from the first node. Again, in the example of Figure 13, by incrementally changing the power level down to P1 and broadcasting a third message at an anticipated range distance for that P1 level, the master node M1 can determine the location of node A (as node A received the second message but did not receive the third message) to be approximately near the anticipated range distance for P2 from the location of master node M1.

[0291] Additional examples of the method may also refine such determined locations by updating the location of the first node. In one example, the first node may be a mobile node. As such, refining may involve determining a current mobile location of the first node, and refining the location of the one or more of the identified associated nodes that did not receive any of the

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

second messages but received at least one of the first messages based upon the current mobile location of the first node. Thus, as the first node moves and updates its own location (*e.g.,* via GPS signals received by location circuitry 475 on a master node), the first node is able to leverage its own updated location and advantageously refine the location of nodes associated with it.

[0292] And, in some examples, the refined location of associated nodes may be transmitted to a server. This provides an update to the server, and aids in tracking and managing the location of nodes in the network. Again, referring back to the example of Figure 13, master node M1 910a may take advantage of such a method for locating associated nodes, such as the locations of ID nodes A-E 920a-920e, and update server 100 with this new location data related to the current location of node M1 and any of the nodes associated with node M1.

[0293] Those skilled in the art will appreciate that this exemplary method as disclosed and explained above in various examples may be implemented on a node (*e.g.,* master node 110a in Figure 4, master node M1 910a in Figure 13) running one or more parts of master control and management code 425 (*e.g.,* the location aware/capture module). Such code may be stored on a non-transitory computer-readable medium, such as memory storage 415 on master node 110a. Thus, when executing code 425, the master node's processing unit 400 may be operative to perform operations or steps from the exemplary methods disclosed above and variations of that method.

[0294] In another example, a node apparatus is described in a wireless node network that uses location determination by association as described with reference to the steps related to the above-described method. As mentioned above, such as node apparatus may be implemented with a master node having a node processing unit, a node volatile memory, a node memory storage, and a first and second communication interface. Each of the memories and communication interfaces are coupled to the node processing unit. Further, the node memory storage maintains at least a program code section, association data, and location data and, at times, shipping information. The first communication interface provides a first communication path operatively coupling the node with a plurality of other nodes in the network, while the second communication interface provides a second communication path operatively and separately coupling the node with a server in the network.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

[0295] In this example, the node processing unit is operative to transmit one or more first messages via the first communication interface at a first anticipated range distance, and identify which of the others nodes that are associated with the first node received at least one of the first messages. In one example, the node processing unit may be operative to access the association data in the node memory storage when identifying which of the nodes associated (*e.g.,* passive, active, or both types of associations) with the first node received at least one of the first messages.

[0296] The first anticipated range distance may be an optimal transmission range for the first communication interface and, in a more detailed example, may be adjusted based upon context data (*e.g.,* RF shielding inherent from the surrounding environment of the node). In yet another example, the first anticipated range distance and the second anticipated range distance may be adjusted based upon one or more types of context data related to how an RF output signal transmit from the first communication interface may be impeded by an environment of the node.

[0297] The node processing unit is also operative to transmit one or more second messages via the first communication interface at a second anticipate range distance (incrementally smaller than the first anticipated range distance) and determine a location of one or more of the identified associated nodes that did not receive any of the second messages but received at least one of the first messages. That location is between the first anticipate range distance from a known location of the node and the second anticipated range distance from the known location of the node. In a further example, the node processing unit may be operative to store the determined location in the node memory storage as part of the location data.

[0298] The node processing unit may also be operative to transmit one or more third messages via the first communication interface at a third anticipated range distance (incrementally smaller range than the second anticipated range distance) and determine a location of one or more of the identified associated nodes that did not receive any of the third messages but received at least one of the second messages, where the location is between the second anticipated range distance from the known location of the node and the third anticipated range distance from the known location of the node.

[0299] In another example, the node may be mobile and the node processing unit may be further operative to refine the location of the one or more of the identified associated nodes that did not receive the second message but received the first message by updating a location of the

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

first node. In more detail, the node processing unit may be operative to determine a current mobile location of the first node (*e.g.,* check with location circuitry onboard the node for valid GPS signals and a location lock based on such signals), and refine the location of the one or more of the identified associated nodes that did not receive any of the second messages but received at least one of the first messages based upon the current mobile location of the first node. The node processing unit may also be operative to transmit the refined location to the server over the second communication interface.

Location Determination through ID Node Advertise

[0300] While Figure 13 provides an example of location determination through master node advertising, Figure 14 focuses on location determination through ID node advertising. In particular, Figure 14 is a diagram illustrating an exemplary location determination using ID node advertise. In the illustrated example shown in Figure 14, exemplary ID node F 920f is in an advertising mode but is without a known location. As with Figure 13, Figure 14 illustrates the exemplary different RF output power levels from ID node F 920f as concentric ranges 1405-1415 about ID node F 920f. Thus, ID node F 920f may broadcast at a maximum power P1, related to range 1405, but may control the RF output power level and dynamically change the RF output power level to P2 and broadcast at a smaller range 1410, or to P3 and broadcast to an even smaller range 1415. Master nodes M1-M3 910a-910c are disposed in various known locations relatively near ID node F 920f, which has an unknown location. As such, ID node F 920f may take advantage of the ability to adjust an RF characteristic, such as RF output signal power level, of its own short-range communication interface as part of how the system may determine location of ID node F through ID node advertising.

[0301] In the illustrated example, an RF output signal power level of ID node F 920f may be varied or dynamically adjusted via programmable settings (such as profile settings or parameters) related to operations of variable power short range communication interface 375. Additionally, while an actual communication range may vary with the surrounding environment, a maximum anticipated communication range of the ID node's transmitter at each power level is known assuming an optimal operating environment or no substantial RF shielding or interference. Thus, a particular power level setting for a broadcasting node is inherently associated with a corresponding anticipated range distance.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

[0302] In an exemplary method of determining a nodes location using ID node advertising, the RF output signal power level may be varied across multiple power levels to improve location through master node association. In more detail, when the ID node F's variable power short range communication interface 375 is set to P1, its maximum output, ID node F 920f is seen by each of master nodes M1-3 910a-910c. The anticipated open air performance or range distance (optimal range, or range based upon analytics or historic measurements) of the radio in ID node F's variable power short range communication interface 375 at P1 power level may have been previously been found to be approximately 30 feet. Thus, without any examination of RSSI levels from the individual master nodes, the system knows ID Node F is within 30 feet of master nodes M1-M3.

[0303] Next, when the ID node F's variable power short range communication interface 375 is set to P2, a medium output level in this example, ID node F 920f is seen by master nodes M1 910a and M2 910b. The anticipated open air performance or range distance (optimal range, or range based upon analytics or historic measurements) of the radio in ID node F's variable power short range communication interface 375 at running at P2 power level is approximately 15 feet. Thus, without any examination of RSSI levels from the individual nodes, we know master nodes M1 910a and M2 910b are within 15 feet of ID node F 920f in this example. Furthermore, we know the master node no longer receiving the broadcasted RF signal from ID node F 920f (*e.g.,* master node M3 910c) is somewhere within 30 feet of ID node F 920f, but probably more than 15 feet away from node F in this example.

[0304] And when ID node F's variable power short range communication interface 375 is set to P3, its minimum output level in this example, ID node F 920f is seen by only master node M2 910b. The anticipated open air performance or range distance (optimal range, or range based upon analytics or historic measurements) of the radio in ID node F's variable power short range communication interface 375 at P3 power level is approximately 5 feet. Thus, without any examination of RSSI levels from the master nodes, we know the location of ID node F 920f is within 5 feet of the known location of master node M2 910b in this example.

[0305] The ranging steps with respect to the changed RF characteristics of an advertising ID node, as discussed in the example above, may then be repeated for any of the identified nodes in order to building a more complete picture of the relative location of each node.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

[0306] Furthermore, the timing between such ranging steps may vary dynamically depending upon whether the node is moving. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that when moving, a quicker flow through such ranging steps will help to provide better accuracy given the movement of nodes. Thus, the time interval between instructing a node to broadcast one or more messages at a particular power level and then instructing that node to broadcast one or more messages at a different power level may be desired to be shorter when the node is moving, which can be determined based upon context data. For example, the context data may indicate the node is within a node package an on a moving conveyor system. As such, the node is moving relative to fixed master nodes that may be positioned along the conveyor system. Thus, server may have the first node perform the ranging steps where power is varied in relative quick succession compared to a situation where the context data indicates the node is not moving or is substantially stationary.

[0307] An example of such a method for location determination using one or more associations of nodes in a wireless node network is described as follows, and explains a particular way to locate a node using associations and master node one or more master node advertising techniques. The example method begins by instructing a first of the nodes to broadcast one or more first messages at a first power level, the first power level being related to a first anticipated range distance. In one example, the first anticipated range distance may be an optimal range for the first of the nodes (*e.g.,* a transmission range that assumes there are no obstructions and a clear signal path between nodes). In another example, the first anticipated range distance may be an optimal range for the first node adjusted based upon context data (*e.g.,* data related to the surrounding RF environment of the first node).

[0308] Next, the method identifies which of the nodes associated with the first node have known locations. For example, this type of identification may be accomplished by reviewing association data that indicates which of the nodes are associated with the first node (*e.g.,* via passive association, via active association, or via a combination of both), determining which of the nodes are associated with the first node based upon the reviewed association data, and identifying which of those associated nodes have known locations.

[0309] The method continues by determining which of the identified associated nodes received at least one of the first messages. Next, the method instructs the first node to broadcast one or more second messages at a second power level, where the second power level is related to

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

a second anticipated range distance and the second power level incrementally smaller than the first power level. In a further example, the first anticipated range distance and the second anticipated range distance may be adjusted based upon one or more types of context data related to how an RF output signal from the first node may be impeded.

[0310] The method then determines which of the identified associated nodes received at least one of the second messages. The method concludes by determining a location of the first node to be at or between the first anticipated range distance and the second anticipated range distance from each of the identified associated nodes that did not receive at least one of the second messages but received at least one of the first messages.

[0311] As mentioned above, determining the node's location may be improved when accounting for movement. As such, an example of this method may instruct the first node to broadcast the one or more second messages within a time interval after instructing the first node to broadcast the one or more first messages. The time interval may be predetermined in some implementations, but also may be a dynamically set parameter in other implementations based upon context data related to the first node. In more detail, the time interval may be reduced from a prior value when the context data related to the first node indicates the first node is moving, but may be increased from a prior value when the context data related to the first node indicates the first node is substantially stationary.

[0312] In another example, the method may further include instructing the first node to broadcast one or more third messages at a third power level. Such a third power level is related to a third anticipated range distance and incrementally smaller range than the second anticipated range distance. Thereafter, the method may determining the location of the first node to be at or between the second anticipated range distance and the third anticipated range distance from each of the identified associated nodes that did not receive any of the third messages but received at least one of the second messages.

[0313] In another example, the method may comprise refining the location of the first node with an updated location of one or more of the identified associated nodes that did not receive at least one of the second messages but received at least one of the first messages. For example, if the first node is associated with a mobile master node, the location of the first node may be refined with an updated location of the mobile master node (which may be closer to the first node than previously determined).

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

[0314] In a further example, the first node in the operation of the method described above may not be self-aware of its own location. In another example, the first node may have been previously self-aware of the location of the first node but may no longer be self-aware of the location of the first node prior to broadcasting the one or more first messages. In more detail, the first node may no longer be self-aware of the location of the first node prior to broadcasting the first message because of a change in the environment surrounding the first node. Such a change in the environment may be, for example, when the first node has moved inside a structure (*e.g.,* building, vehicle, aircraft, container, hallway, tunnel, etc.) that blocks location signals from being received by the first node.

[0315] Those skilled in the art will appreciate that such a method as disclosed and explained above in various examples may be implemented on a node (*e.g.,* master node 110a in Figure 4) running one or more parts of master control and management code 425 (*e.g.,* the location aware/capture module) to control operations of an ID node (such as ID node F in Figure 14) as part of location determination via ID node advertising. Such code may be stored on a non-transitory computer-readable medium, such as memory storage 415 on master node 110a. Thus, when executing code 425, the master node's processing unit 400 may be operative to perform operations or steps from the exemplary methods disclosed above and variations of that method.

[0316] From an apparatus perspective, an exemplary node apparatus in a wireless node network that uses location determination by association may comprises a node processing unit, node memory coupled to and used by the node processing unit (*e.g.,* a node volatile memory and a node memory storage). The node memory storage maintains at least a program code section, association data, and location data. The node apparatus further includes a first communication interface that provides a first communication path coupled to the node processing unit and operatively coupling the node with a plurality of other nodes in the network. For example, the master node 110a illustrated in Figure 4 includes such types of operational structure.

[0317] The node processing unit (*e.g.,* processing unit 400 of master node 110a), when executing at least the program code section resident in the node volatile memory, is operative to perform specific functions or steps. In particular, the node processing unit is operative to communicate an instruction to a first of the other nodes (*e.g.,* an ID node or master node temporarily operating as an ID node) via the first communication interface to cause the first other

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

node to broadcast one or more first messages at a first power level, where the first power level is related to a first anticipated range distance.

[0318] The first anticipated range distance may be an optimal range for the first of the nodes and, in more detail, an optimal range for the first of the nodes adjusted based upon context data. In even more detail, the first anticipated range distance and the second anticipated range distance may be adjusted based upon one or more types of context data related to how an RF output signal broadcast from the first node may be impeded.

[0319] The node processing unit is also operative to identify which of the nodes associated with the first node have known locations. To do this, the node processing unit may access and review association data stored on the node memory storage (*e.g.,* data indicating what nodes are passively or actively associated with the first other node), may determine which of the remaining other nodes are associated with the first other node based upon the reviewed association data, and may identify which of the remaining other nodes determined to be associated with the first other node have known locations.

[0320] The node processing unit is also operative to determine which of the identified associated nodes received at least one of the first messages, and to communicate another instruction via the first communication interface to the first node to cause the first node to broadcast one or more second messages at a second power level, where the second power level being is to a second anticipated range distance and incrementally smaller than the first power level.

[0321] Finally, the node processing unit is operative to determine which of the identified associated nodes received at least one of the second messages, and then determine a location of the first node to be at or between the first anticipated range distance and the second anticipated range distance from each of the identified associated nodes that did not receive at least one of the second messages but received at least one of the first messages.

[0322] In a further example, the node processing unit may be operative to communicate a third instruction via the first communication interface to the first node to cause the first node to broadcast one or more third messages at a third power level. The third power level is related to a third anticipated range distance and incrementally smaller range than the second anticipated range distance. Additionally, the node processing unit may then be operative to determine the location of the first node to be at or between the second anticipated range distance and the third

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

anticipated range distance from each of the identified associated nodes that did not receive any of the third messages but received at least one of the second messages.

[0323] In still another example, the node processing unit is able to account for movement of the first node with a time interval between instructions sent to the first node. In particular, the node processing unit may be further operative to communicate another instruction via the first communication interface to the first node to broadcast the second messages within a time interval after instructing the first node to broadcast the first messages. In a more detailed example, the time interval may be dynamically set based upon context data related to the first node. In even more detail, the time interval may be programmatically reduced from a prior value when the context data related to the first node indicates the first node is moving (*e.g.,* the first node is on a moving conveyor system) and/or the time value of the interval may be increased from a prior value when the context data related to the first node indicates the first node is substantially stationary (*e.g.,* the node is within a node package recently placed in a storage area).

[0324] The node processing unit, in a further example, may be operative to refine the location of the first other node with an updated location of one or more of the identified associated nodes that did not receive at least one of the second messages but received at least one of the first messages, and cause a second communication interface (*e.g.,* medium/long range communication interface 485 coupled to processing unit 400) to transmit the refined location to the server.

[0325] From a server perspective, another exemplary method for location determination using one or more associations of nodes in a wireless node network is explained as follows. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that while a server may operate to implement the steps as laid out in the method discussed above, this additional method provides more details as to how a server processing unit (such as processing unit 500 running server code 525) may implement such a method at that level of the network. In this more detailed example, the server is communicating directly with a master node (*e.g.,* a first node) to direct and control how the master node interacts with and causes operations to be undertaken on the ID node (*e.g.,* a second node). Thus, this method more precisely calls for communicating with a first node via a communication interface to cause a second node in the network to broadcast one or more first messages at a first power level at the request of the first node, where the first power level is related to and corresponds with a first anticipated range distance. Likewise, this method more

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

precisely calls for communicating with the first node via the communication interface to cause the second node to broadcast one or more second messages at a second power level at the request of the first node, the second power level being related to a second anticipated range distance and incrementally smaller than the first power level. The other steps from the additional method are similar to those explained above relative to the previously-described method, and that the similar principles will apply to this additional method.

[0326] Those skilled in the art will appreciate that this additional method as disclosed and explained above in various examples may be implemented on a server (*e.g.,* server 100 in Figure 5) running one or more parts of server control and management code 525 to direct a master node to control operations of an ID node (such as ID node F in Figure 14) as part of location determination via ID node advertising. Such code may be stored on a non-transitory computer-readable medium, such as memory storage 515 on server 100. Thus, when executing code 525, the server's processing unit 500 may be operative to perform operations or steps from the exemplary methods disclosed above, and variations of that method.

[0327] And similar to the node apparatus described above, one example includes an exemplary server apparatus in a wireless node network that uses location determination by association. The exemplary server apparatus generally comprises a server processing unit, server memory coupled to and used by the server processing unit (*e.g.,* a server volatile memory and a server memory storage). The server memory storage maintains at least a program code section, association data, and location data. The server apparatus further includes a communication interface coupled to the server processing unit and that provides access to a communication path operatively coupling the server with at least a first node in the network.

[0328] The exemplary server processing unit, when executing at least the program code section resident in the server volatile memory, is operative to perform specific functions or steps. In particular, the server processing unit is operative to communicate with the first node via the communication interface to cause a second node in the network to broadcast one or more first messages at a first power level at the request of the first node, where the first power level is related to a first anticipated range distance; identify which of the remaining nodes in the network associated with the second node have known locations; determine which of the identified associated nodes received at least one of the first messages; communicate with the first node via the communication interface to cause the second node to broadcast one or more second messages

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

at a second power level at the request of the first node, where the second power level is related to a second anticipated range distance and incrementally smaller than the first power level; determine which of the identified associated nodes received at least one of the second messages; and determine a location of the second node to be at or between the first anticipated range distance and the second anticipated range distance from each of the identified associated nodes that did not receive any of the second messages but received at least one of the first messages. And in a further example, the server apparatus' processing unit may be further operative to store the determined location in the server memory storage as part of the location data.

[0329] In another example, the server apparatus' processing unit may be operative to communicate with the first node via the communication interface to cause the second node to broadcast the one or more second messages within a time interval after communicating with the first node to cause the second node to broadcast the one or more first messages. As previously mentioned, this type of time interval may dynamically set based upon context data related to the second node. Context data may also be used as set forth above with respect to the node apparatus but applied here to the second node – such was where the first anticipated range distance is the optimal range for the second node adjusted based upon context data.

Master Node Location Determination through Advertise

[0330] In another example, a master node typically is self-locating with its own location circuitry but may no longer know its location under the current environmental conditions. For example, such a situation may occur when a master node determines its current location via GPS location circuitry 475, but the master node finds itself without access to an adequate number of GPS signals (*e.g.,* it cannot determine a location due to the lack of a sufficient number of GPS signals from diverse GPS satellites). Such a situation may happen when the master node moves indoors is proximate to a structure that interferes with the location signals.

[0331] In an exemplary example where a master node attempts to determine its own location via advertising techniques, the master node may detect a loss of location confidence (*e.g.,* upon a loss of detected GPS signals; upon detecting a separate signal to processing unit 400 indicating the master node's location is unknown; when processing unit 400 senses movement (*e.g.,* via accelerometers (not shown) or the like) but cannot confirm that the location circuitry

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

475 is providing updated location information for the node, etc.). In other words, the master node becomes aware that it no longer has a known location.

[0332] Next, the master node responds by beginning to broadcast one or more advertising messages in a similar way as ID node F 920f is described as doing with respect to Figure 14. This is done so that the master node having an unknown location can advantageously leverage off the known locations of nearby other nodes. As such, an example may allow a type of leveraged chaining effect whereby known locations of particular types of nodes may be used to extend location information to other nodes that do not know their locations (*e.g.,* ID nodes) or nodes that have detected a loss of location confidence (*e.g.,* master nodes). Thus, such an example may be used to determine an indoor location of a master node (including equipment equipped with master node functionality) in cases where signals for the conventional onboard location circuitry 475 are not available.

[0333] In the exemplary method, the method may be such that the first node is not self-aware of the location of the first node. This may happen when the first node (*e.g.,* an ID node) is actually a master node that was previously self-aware of its own location (*e.g.,* via received GPS signals) but is no longer self-aware of its location (*e.g.,* when the GPS signals can no longer be received), which has the master node changing operation to operate as an ID node prior to broadcasting the first message. In other words, the master node may no longer be self-aware of its location and begin operating as an ID node for purposes of location determination prior to broadcasting the first message because of a change in the environment surrounding the master node, such as when the master node has moved inside a structure that blocks location signals from being received by the master node. Thus, an example may advantageously allow a node to adaptively alter operations when moving from a clear outdoor environment to an indoor environment. And a server may interact with such a master node while that master node is operating, for location purposes, as an ID node, temporarily.

Location with Improved RSSI Measurements

[0334] In another example, a signal strength measurement between two or more nodes may be used to determine the proximity of the nodes by using one or more improvements to conventional RSSI measurements. In conventional RSSI measurements, such as with Bluetooth 4.0, those skilled in the art will appreciate that adaptive frequency hopping as part of spread

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

spectrum techniques may cause undesirably cause the signal strength to fluctuate. In other words, the advantage of using frequency hopping and spread spectrum for security and avoidance of interference may have a negative impact on using such signals for stable proximity-based location determinations. Thus, it may be desired to emphasize stability of a signal and limits to fluctuation for purposes of location determination.

[0335] In one example, a type of improvement for RSSI measurements may include reducing the number of channels and/or a corresponding frequency range in use during advertising from nodes. For example, a node may have processing unit 300/400 adaptively control variable power short range communication interface 375/480 to reduce the number of channels and/or the frequency range used during node advertising. Such a dynamic change may be implemented, in some examples, by altering the content of a particular type of profile data 330/430, such as an RF profile data that effectively defines RF characteristics of a node (*e.g.,* frequency, power level, duty cycle, channel numbers, channel spacing, alternative fluctuation modes, etc.). In one further example, a first fluctuation mode may be defined that provides a default or more standard communication protocol, such as the conventional frequency hopping, spread spectrum, and channel allocations for Bluetooth® communications. Other alternative modes (one or more) may be defined that alter one or more RF characteristics to provide increasingly more stable and less fluctuations of the RF output signal from a node. Thus, a node may be dynamically placed into one or more modes regarding such RF characteristics that increasingly emphasize stability of the node's RF output signal and limits fluctuation for purposes of enhanced location determination using RSSI measurements.

[0336] In another example, a type of improvement for RSSI measurements may include ensuring visibility to and advantageously managing automatic gain control (AGC) circuitry (not shown) that may cause the RF output signal to vary for a node. For example, a node may include a type of AGC circuitry as part of variable power short range communication interface 375/480. This type of AGC circuitry may allow node processing unit 300/400 or other logic circuitry that is part of variable power short range communication interface 375/480 to limit fluctuations under certain conditions (*e.g.,* when attempting to use RSSI location determination techniques). In this example, different AGC circuitry settings may be defined in exemplary RF profile data that effectively defines RF characteristics of a node (*e.g.,* frequency, power level, duty cycle, channel numbers, channel spacing, alternative fluctuation modes, etc.). This is yet another example of

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

how a node may be dynamically placed into one or more modes regarding such RF characteristics (including AGC circuitry settings) that increasingly emphasize stability of the node's RF output signal and limits fluctuation for purposes of enhanced location determination using RSSI measurements.

Location with Adjustments for Environmental Factors in RF Signal Quality

[0337] In general, those skilled in the art will appreciate that environmental factors may cause a communication signal, such as an RF signal, to fluctuate or be transmitted and received in a manner that undesirably varies depending upon a signal path environment. Passive physical interference factors (*e.g.,* forms of electronic signal shielding) may be substantially close and cause drops in signal strength across the output ranges of the nodes. Additionally, active radio interference factors may vary across the RF output ranges of the nodes depending upon other active devices in the reception vicinity. Thus, the proximate environment of a node may have a multitude of adverse factors that impact communications and, as a result, the ability to locate the node.

[0338] In one example, making location determinations may be enhanced by a data analytics type of approach that may adjust and account for different RF environmental factors for a similar type of node in a similar type of situation. For example, the quality of the RF output signal of a particular type of node and the corresponding physical range of that signal to a receiver of known sensitivity may be determined for a given environment. In this example, the system defines a maximum range of that signal based on a predetermined condition, such as open-air connectivity. This may assume an environment with no signal degradation due to interference or physical shielding. However, both interference and physical shielding may diminish the range of the RF output signal of a node. In a dynamically adaptive and learning manner, the system may collect information on how a particular type of node may operate in a particular environment under certain settings (*e.g.,* reported signal strengths and corresponding settings for RF output signal power levels). This analysis of a similar environment may be repeated. In other words, through such data analytics of an anticipated environment to be faced by a similar node, signal loss information can be generated and applied as a type of context data (*i.e.,* RF data) for a node in a similar environment to refine location determination. Thus, an exemplary example may refine location determinations with adaptive signal loss characteristics

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

based on a contextual appreciation of an anticipated environment (*e.g.,* physical shielding such as packaging, package contents, proximate package, proximate package contents, and physical infrastructure causing signal variance) without requiring a calibration phase.

[0339] And advantageously combining those data points with 3rd party data describing the physical environment, in which the node was located in at that time, may refine location even further. Such information may be used as RF data (a type of context data) in future efforts to manage and locate a similar type of node anticipated to be in a similar environment.

[0340] In more detail, in an example that refines a location determination based upon context and data analytics to adjust for known RF impediments, the maximum physical range of a node's RF output signal relative to a receiver of known RF sensitivity is determined. In one example, this first range value may be referred to as a theoretical or nominal open-air range of a similar type transmitter-receiver node pair in a similar environment but with substantially no physical shielding or signal interference negatively impacting the signal range. A second range value, which may be considered an actual RF range value, may be the observed range of the signal in a similar environment but where there are contextual factors reducing the communication range, including physical shielding due to factors like packaging, package contents, proximate package, proximate package contents, physical infrastructure, interference from other radio sources, or shipper specific information such as vehicle or facility layout information. Through access to prior data analysis of the differing range values and with knowledge of the operational environment of the transmitting node was in (*e.g.,* a similar environment to the proximate environment of the node), a refined location may be determined using an approximation of an actual RF output range that intelligently adjusts what may be anticipated to be the RF environment of the node. In other words, by knowing the appropriate contextual environment related to a node (such as signal degradation information on how a similar node operates in a similar environment), an improved location determination may be made to make intelligent yet efficient adjustments (such as communication distance adjustments) that provide a refined location of the node.

[0341] In one example, such as the example shown in Figure 2, master node 110b is outside of a container (such as a Uniform Load Device (ULD) container 210 known to be used for transporting groups of items on aircraft) that has an ID node inside the container. A first or theoretical range value between master node 110b and ID node 120b may be determined to be 10

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

feet at a specific RF output power level when the package (and related ID node) may be known to be less than 10 feet away from the scanning node (*e.g.,* master node 110b). A second range value at similar distances with similar types of nodes, but with incident RF signal loss as a result of communicating through the wall of the container 210, may be between 4 and 5 feet. If context data, such as 3rd party information or scan data, indicates the transmitting node is within the ULD container 210, the system would expect the transmission range to be limited according to the data analytics associated with this known RF impediment (*e.g.,* characteristics for transmitting through ULD container 210), thus reducing the possible scanning nodes that may see the broadcasting node within the ULD container, or require the transmitting node to increase its RF output power to be heard.

[0342] Related to such a technique, an exemplary method for location determination of a first node in a wireless node network based on context data is described as follows. Such a method begins with a network device (such as a master node or server) accessing a first type of the context data related to a proximate environment of the first node. The first type of context data comprises signal degradation information on how a second node would operate in a similar environment to the proximate environment of the first node when the second node is a similar type as the first node. Thus, rather than calibrating with an actual measurement relative to the current proximate environment of the first node, the signal degradation information provides compensation information on what may be generally anticipated in a more general proximate environment based on how a similar type of node may operate in a similar environment. As the similar environment of the similar node is generally an approximation for what is anticipated to be the proximate environment of the first node, this advantageously avoids the need for an actual calibration of the proximate environment.

[0343] In one example, the signal degradation information may be based upon a difference in how the second node communicates when exposed to an adverse communication environment (such as a similar environment to the proximate environment of the first node) compared to how the second node would communicates when exposed to a nominal communication environment (such as an environment that is unencumbered by shielding and interference factors). Those skilled in the art will appreciate that a nominal communication environment need not be perfectly clear of all influences that shield or interfere with communications. The types and aspects of signal degradation information may vary depending

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

on a wide variety of factors. In one example, the signal degradation information may be related to at least one of shielding and interference. Thus, signal degradation information may include both passive and active factors that impact the communication environment.

[0344] In another example, the signal degradation environment may be based upon a degraded operation of the second node when the similar environment is an adverse communication environment. In more detail, the signal degradation information may be based upon a difference in how the second node communicates when exposed to the adverse communication environment compared to how the second node communicates when exposed to a substantially normal communication environment, such as an open air environment.

[0345] In still another example, signal degradation information may relate to at least shipment data for one or more items being shipped (*e.g.,* currently shipped or shipped in the past) and located in the proximate environment of the first node. For instance, a package near the first node may include metallic materials that may impede or block RF signals and the signal degradation information may relate to such information about close packages being shipped near the first node. In another example, the signal degradation information may relate to at least layout data for one or more physical structures in the proximate environment of the first node. In more detail, the layout data may be for one or more physical structures (*e.g.,* walls, machinery, enclosures, and conveyances) in the proximate environment of the node near a predicted path for the first node. In yet another example, the signal degradation information relates to at least historic data on one or more analyzed prior operations of the second node.

[0346] Next, the network device, such as a master node or server, may adjust an anticipated communication distance related to the first node based upon on the first type of the context data. In one example, the anticipated communication distance may be a theoretical broadcast distance based upon parameters of the device's radio. Such an anticipated communication distance is known as it is an estimate of the radio's range. In one example, the adjusted communication distance comprises an anticipated reduced range distance for a transmission from the first node. In another example, the adjusted communication distance comprises an anticipated reduced receiver sensitivity distance for the first node.

[0347] In yet another example, adjusting the communication distance may be accomplished by adaptively adjusting, by the network device, the communication distance based upon the signal degradation information and a second type of the context data. In other words,

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

the communication distance may be adjusted based upon signal degradation information considered along with other types of context data, such as how the first node is being moved (such as an anticipated movement of the first node along a predicted transit path for the first node) or a density of other nodes near the first node.

[0348] Next, the network device determines the location of the first node based upon the adjusted communication distance. In a further example, the method may also update the adjusted communication distance by the network device based upon movement of the first node, and may refine the location of the first node with an updated adjusted communication distance. This may happen with the first node is a mobile master node capable of self-determining its own location.

[0349] Those skilled in the art will appreciate that such a method as disclosed and explained above in various examples may be implemented on a network device (*e.g.,* exemplary master node 110a in Figure 4 or server 100 in Figure 5) running one or more parts of their respective control and management code to perform steps of method 3200 as described above. Such code may be stored on a non-transitory computer-readable medium, such as memory storage 415 on master node 110a or memory storage 515 on server 100. Thus, when executing such code, the respective network device's processing unit may be operative to perform operations or steps from the exemplary methods disclosed above and variations of that method.

[0350] In more detail, an exemplary network device apparatus for determining a location of a first node in a wireless node network based on context data, the exemplary network device may include a processing unit, a volatile memory coupled to the processing unit, and a memory storage coupled to the processing unit. The exemplary network device further includes a communication interface coupled to the processing unit and that provides a communication path operatively coupling the network device with the first node in the network.

[0351] The memory storage for the device maintains at least a program code section and context data having at least signal degradation information. Such signal degradation information, as a type of context data, is information on how a second node would operate in a similar environment to a proximate environment of the first node when the second node is a similar type as the first node. Examples of signal degradation information may include those discussed above.

[0352] When executing at least the program code section when resident in the volatile memory, the processing unit of the network device is operative to perform the method steps

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

noted and described above. In more detail, the processing unit is operative to at least connect with the memory storage to access the signal degradation information, adjust a communication distance (if needed) related to the first node based upon on the signal degradation information, determine the location of the first node based upon the adjusted communication distance, and store the determined location of the first node as location data on the memory storage.

[0353] Adjusting the communication distance by the processing unit may be accomplished as described above. And as mentioned above, the processing unit may be further operative to adaptively adjust the communication distance where other types of context data are also considered, such as movement and anticipated node movement as detailed out above.

[0354] In a further example, the network device may be a mobile master node that includes location circuitry (such as GPS circuitry 475 of exemplary master node 110a shown in Figure 4). In this example, the processing of the network device may be further operative to determine a location of the network device based upon an output signal from the location circuitry received by the processing unit, and determine the location of the first node based upon the adjusted communication distance and the location of the network device. As such, the first type of the context data related to the proximate environment of the first node is based upon the determined location of the first node.

[0355] Those skilled in the art will also appreciate that in some operational environments, the signal degradation information may not require any adjustment to the communication distance in an example. However, in other environments (*e.g.,* adverse RF environments), the signal degradation information may provide a basis for adjusting the communication distance in the example, even if not performed every time. Thus, an adjustment to the communication distance may not be needed in all proximate environments of the first node but may be performed, if needed, based on the proximate environment of the first node. It is the ability of an example to adjust this communication distance when needed and if needed that advantageously allows for locating the first node with more accuracy.

Location Through Triangulation

[0356] In some examples, various methods for determining a node's location may rely upon, at least in part, triangulation techniques. In other words, as the wireless node network collects data on receiver-transmitter pairs, other methods for determining location of the

Date Reçue/Date Received 2021-03-25

individual nodes that utilize triangulation, at least in part, may become possible. Figure 15 is a diagram illustrating an exemplary location determination through triangulation within a wireless node network. Referring now to the illustrated example of Figure 15, three exemplary master nodes M1-M3 910a-910c are shown with each master node having a known location. Exemplary ID nodes A-E 920a-920e are also shown where they are at least in communication range of one or more of exemplary master nodes MA-M3 910a-910c.

[0357] In this illustrated example, the master nodes M1-M3 may detect and collect advertising messages from ID nodes A-E at varying and known power levels. The captured information is forwarded by the master nodes M1-M3 to the backend server 100, where location determinations may be made. For example, factors like RSSI and visibility of each node at each power level may be used to determine, with a higher degree of accuracy, the location of nodes where sufficient information is available.

[0358] For an exemplary system to triangulate a node, three nodes with known locations must have seen the broadcasting node. In this example, two advertising ID nodes, A 920a and B 920b, were seen by the three nodes having known locations (master nodes M1-M3 910a-910c). Based upon the captured information, the locations of ID node A 920a and ID node B 920b are calculated.

Chaining Triangulation

[0359] In another example, a node with an inferred location may be used with triangulation techniques to determine a location of another node in a wireless node network. Figure 16 is a diagram illustrating an exemplary location determination through chaining triangulation. The locations of ID nodes A 920a and B 920c have been determined by triangulating across master nodes M1-M3, as illustrated in the exemplary example shown in Figure 15. However, as illustrated in Figure 16, the location of ID node C 920c may also be determined according to an example.

[0360] For example, an exemplary method of determining a node's location through chaining triangulation begins with determining the calculated location of ID node B 920b (as explained with reference to Figure 15). Next, a node closer to ID node B 920b may be used to get the missing third signal point needed for triangulation. This may be accomplished by placing ID node B 920b in a query (scan) mode such that it listens for a message from ID node C 902c.

ID node C is instructed to advertise, thus providing a signal that may be captured by ID node B. After capturing the signal profile of C, ID node B may communicate or share the captured information and forward it along to the backend server 100 through either of the master nodes M1 or M2. The resulting location determination of ID node C 920c may have a higher level of position error due to it being partially based on a calculated reference (*e.g.*, the location of ID node B), but the leveraged location determination of ID node C 920c may be sufficiently accurate (or be an actionable location) that useful information may be gleaned about ID node C 920c. For example, a leveraged or chained location determination of ID node C may indicate, with the help of context data, that nodes M1, M2, and ID node B are all close enough to ID node C that ID node C is determined to be within the same container nodes M1, M2, and ID node B.

Location Through Proximity to Triangulation (LP2T)

[0361] In an example where chaining triangulation may determine location through proximity to triangulation (LP2T), a starting point may be determining the relative location of an ID node to a master node based on the proximity method, as explained above. However, when the relative location of the ID node has been determined, a more accurate or refined location of the ID node may be determined based upon the location of all master nodes that can capture the RF output signal broadcast from the ID node, and then triangulating based on observed signal strength of the ID node. In this example, the proximity-based location is used as an input in the triangulation calculation to estimate likely signal deterioration historically observed between a node at the proximity-determined location and scanning master nodes. In a further example, by taking into account historic data on patterns of signal deterioration, a more accurate triangulation may be possible, leading to a more accurate location determination.

[0362] Related to this additional node location technique, an exemplary method for determining a node location using chaining triangulation for one of a plurality of nodes in a wireless node network having a server is described as follows. Such an exemplary node location need not be precise or exacting, but can be sufficiently accurate without absolutes. Such an exemplary method begins with the server receiving a location of a first of the nodes from the first node. Next, the server receives a location of a second of the nodes from the second node. For example, with reference to the example shown in Figure 16, master nodes M1 910a and M2 910b

may transmit their respective location coordinates from their respective onboard location circuitry to the server so that the server has the current locations of these two master nodes.

[0363] Next, the server infers a location of a third of the nodes. For instance, in the example illustrated in Figure 16, the server may infer the location of ID node B 920b. In one example, inferring may comprise having the server determine a proximate-based location of the third node relative to another of the nodes having a known location, such that the proximate-based location operates as the inferred location of the third node.

[0364] In another example, inferring the location of the third node may comprise having the server determine a relative location of the third node to the first node (as the node having a known location) or to the second node (as another node having a known location). The method may also, in another example, include having the server adjust the inferred location of the third node to determine a refined location of the third node based upon third node context data related to the inferred location of the third node.

[0365] Next, the method concludes with the server triangulating the location of the one node based upon determined distances to each of the first and second nodes, and a determined distance of the one node to the inferred location of the third nodes.

[0366] In a more detailed example, the method may triangulate the location of the one node by accessing first node context data related to a contextual environment near the first node and second node context data related a contextual environment near the second node. Such contextual environments may include an environment of being on a conveyor system, or within a particular facility, or next to materials that may degrade or shield signals being received by the one node. Next, the more detailed triangulating may have the server adjust the determined distance of the one node to the location of the first node based upon the first node context data to provide a refined distance of the one node to the location of the of the first node. Then, the server may triangulate the location of the one node based upon the adjusted determined distance of the one node to the location of the first node, the adjusted determined distance of the one node to the location of second node, and a determined distance of the one node to the refined location of the third node.

[0367] In a further example, this method may also have the server transmitting an instruction so as to cause the server to transmit an instruction to cause the one node to broadcast a plurality of advertising signals over a period of time. In such an example, the determined

distance of the one node to the location of the first node may be based upon captured signals from the one node by the first node over the period of time and reported to the server by the first node. In another example, the determined distance of the one node to the location of the second node may be based upon captured signals from the one node by the second node and reported to the server by the second node.

[0368] In still another example, the server may transmit an instruction to cause the one node to broadcast a plurality of advertising signals at different power levels. In such an example, the determined distance of the one node to the location of the first node may be based upon captured signals from the one node by the first node and reported to the server by the first node. In another example, the determined distance of the one node to the location of the second node may be based upon captured signals from the one node by the second node and reported to the server by the second node.

[0369] In yet another example, this method may also have the server transmitting the location information out to a requesting entity (*e.g.*, another node, a user access device, etc.) upon receipt of a request for a location of the one node from that entity.

[0370] Those skilled in the art will appreciate that this method as disclosed and explained above in various examples may be implemented on a server (such as exemplary server 100 as illustrated in Figure 5) running one or more parts of a control and management code (such as an code 525) to implement any of the above described functionality. Such code may be stored on a non-transitory computer-readable medium (such as memory storage 515 in an exemplary server). Thus, when executing such code, a processing unit of the server (such as unit 500) may be operative to perform operations or steps from the exemplary methods disclosed above, including variations of that method.

[0371] A server apparatus is also described in an example for determining a location using chaining triangulation for one of a plurality of nodes in a wireless node network. The server apparatus generally comprises a server processing unit, a server volatile memory, a server memory storage, and a communication interface. The server volatile memory, server memory storage, and communication interface are each configured in the apparatus as coupled to the server processing unit. The server memory storage maintains at least a program code section and location data related to nodes in the network. In some examples, the server memory storage may also maintain context data, such as first node context data and second node context data. The

communication interface provides a communication path operatively coupling the server with nodes in the network, such as a first and second node.

[0372] The server processing unit, when executing at least the program code section resident in the server volatile memory, is operative to perform various functions, such as the functions described in the steps above related to method 3300. In particular, the server processing unit is operative to receive a request over the communication interface for the location of the one node. Based on the request, the server processing unit is then operative to receive the respective locations of the first and second nodes, and store the locations as part of the location data kept on the server memory storage. The server processing unit is further operative to infer a location of a third of the nodes, and store the inferred location of the third node as part of the location data kept on the server memory storage. The server processing unit then is operative to triangulate the location of the one node based upon a determined distance of the one node to the location of the first node, a determined distance of the one node to the location of second node, and a determined distance of the one node to the inferred location of the third node. And finally, the server processing unit is operative to transmit the location information to the requesting entity over the communication interface in response to the request.

[0373] In one example, the server processing unit may be further operative to infer the location of the third of the nodes by being operative to determine a proximate-based location of the third node relative to another of the nodes having a known location, where the proximate-based location operates as the inferred location of the third node.

[0374] In another example, the server processing unit may be further operative to transmit an instruction over the communication interface to cause the one node to broadcast a plurality of advertising signals over a period of time. In this example, the determined distance of the one node to the location of the first node may be based upon captured signals from the one node by the first node over the period of time and reported to the server by the first node. Alternatively, the determined distance of the one node to the location of the second node may be based upon captured signals from the one node by the second node and reported to the server by the second node.

[0375] In another example, the server processing unit may be further operative to transmit an instruction over the communication interface to cause the one node to broadcast a plurality of advertising signals at different power levels. In such an example, the determined

distance of the one node to the location of the first node may be based upon captured signals from the one node by the first node and reported to the server by the first node. Alternatively, the determined distance of the one node to the location of the second node may be based upon captured signals from the one node by the second node and reported to the server by the second node.

[0376] In yet another example, the server processing unit may be further operative to infer the location of the third node by being operative to determine a relative location of the third node to the first node or, alternatively, to the second node.

[0377] In still another example, context data may be relied upon to refine locations. More specifically, the server processing unit may be further operative to adjust the inferred location of the third node to determine a refined location of the third node based upon third node context data related to the inferred location of the third node.

[0378] In a more detailed example, the server memory storage may further maintains context data, and the server processing unit may be further operative to triangulate by being operative to access first node context data as part of the context data maintained on the server memory storage, where the first node context data is related to a contextual environment near the first node. Likewise, the server processing unit may be further operative to access second node context data as part of the context data maintained on the server memory storage, where the second node context data is related a contextual environment near the second node. The server processing unit may then be operative to adjust the determined distance of the one node to the location of the first node based upon the first node context data to provide a refined distance of the one node to the location of the of the first node. As such, the server processing unit may be operative to triangulate the location of the one node based upon the adjusted determined distance of the one node to the location of the first node, the adjusted determined distance of the one node to the location of second node, and a determined distance of the one node to the refined location of the third node.

Combined Methods for Determining Node Location

[0379] In light of the examples explained above for locating a node (such as a node-based control element deployed in a modular component of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus or a node-based mobile wireless device or a node-based control element for actuating a door,

elevator, object articulation system, and the like), one skilled in the art will appreciate that a further example expressly contemplates using more than one of the above-described location determination techniques when determining a refined location of a node in a wireless node network. For example, such combination examples may apply an ordered or prioritized approach whereby a first location technique is applied to generate first location information regarding the location of a node in the wireless network. Thereafter, a second location technique may be selected from a hierarchy or prioritized set of techniques (some of which may work better in certain circumstances and be chosen or dynamically prioritized based upon the contextual environment), and applied to generate second location information regarding the location of the node or refining the location of the node. Other examples may apply additional location techniques to generate further refined location information.

[0380] In an example, the information in the exemplary hierarchy generally identifies which technique may be preferred to be used initially as well as a ranked grouping or listing of when to apply other location techniques. Such information in the exemplary hierarchy may be fixed (based upon successful historic data and experience) or be dynamically altered over time as nodes may move relative to each other and, for example, based upon context data that provides more information relative to the a current or anticipated contextual environment.

MALVT APPARATUS, COMPONENTS & SYSTEMS

[0381] In light of the above-described wireless node technology that may be used as building blocks for control elements within implementations of different embodiments involving modular autonomous logistics bots, assemblies, components, vehicles, and systems described herein, the following provides further details on embodiments of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus including respective modular components of such an apparatus and including embodiments of a modular assembly of such compatible components that may be assembled to form an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus for use in one or more particular logistics operations (*e.g.,* delivery of an item/object, pickup of an item/object).

[0382] In general, those skilled in the art will appreciate that an exemplary MALTV bot apparatus is a type of transport vehicle that may be implemented to operate on multiple types of terrain, such as on and off roadways, navigating different types of pathways, corridors, and transit conduits indoors as well as outdoors and operating within and outside of different types of

delivery vehicles. The high-level modular design of an exemplary MALTV bot apparatus, as an individual component as wells as part of an assembled system (whether pre-assembled for immediate dispatch or whether assembled on demand in response to a dispatch command), will facilitate interoperability for different exemplary use case scenarios (*e.g.,* such as last-mile delivery) and allow for more efficient storage and deployment of fleets of exemplary MALTV bot apparatus devices as explained in more detail below. Using novel modular architecture principles in various embodiments also allows for taking advantage of rapid hardware and software developments in the foundational technologies used in such a process, an apparatus or a system, including but not limited to self-driving technology, long/short range wireless communications, Artificial Intelligence (AI), high-resolution mapping, context & location sensors, and electric vehicle technology.

[0383] In more detail, some exemplary novel, innovative, and advantageous aspects and features of an enhanced and improved autonomous transport system and methods that use elements of the same include, for example, the following:

- Modular design and interoperability of components, including a smart Mobile Autonomy Module (MAM) or "Hat" to provide sensing and control for the exemplary MALTV bot apparatus. Such modularity and use of inter-module locking mechanisms may enhance and improve how to minimize risk of injury as well.
- Ability of an exemplary MALTV bot apparatus to provide "stand-up" and "tilting" functionality, which could support unassisted object delivery. Such an object may generally be referred to an item being shipped, but may be a package, a group of packages, a palletized group of packages, an unwrapped item, and the like.
- Ability to utilize different components of an exemplary MALTV bot apparatus independently, such as the Mobility Base (MB), to provide robotic assistance solutions to existing couriers for dense metropolitan delivery areas. Additionally, MBs may be grouped using a larger connecting platform for transporting larger shipments.
- Ability to utilize and interface with a hierarchical Internet-of-Things (IoT) type of wireless node network (*see* TRON Network Reference Information), such as a

TRON network including ID nodes, ULD nodes and the AI engine. Interfacing with TRON technology devices and systems may provide contextual awareness of an object in shipment, provide granular navigation, and manage authentication of various wireless devices that interoperate for robotic object delivery.

- End-to-end integration with other existing systems, including fleet management systems, dispatch and operations, and human monitoring and decision support systems for different exemplary MALTV bot apparatus while engaged and deployed in the operational environments (*i.e.*, when does an exemplary MALTV bot apparatus need to be deployed instead of a human courier?).

[0384] The description that follows includes a general glossary section of terms and acronyms used within the description as well as descriptions of different embodiment of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus and its related components, practical applications of such parts of and assemblies of one or more MALVT bot apparatus devices deployed in different embodiments, as well as an embodiment where a single logistics operation may be implemented with multiple node-enabled autonomous logistics vehicle transports (also referenced as a node-enabled AV or autonomous transport vehicle), such as multiple different MALVT bot apparatus.

[0385] As noted above, what follows are general meanings for terms and acronyms that may be used in different embodiments of this disclosure. Such meanings are intended to be exemplary, and not limiting, as considered by those skilled in the art.

[0386] **TRON**: As explained in more detail above, this is an exemplary hierarchical Internet of things (IoT) network using different types of wireless nodes that enables device to device communication and connectivity for location, authentication, and association across multiple platforms.

[0387] **Authentication (AuthN):** An exemplary cybersecurity validation process that is concerned with authenticating an entity is "who they say they are". AuthN schemes are numerous, including login/password, etc.

[0388] **Authorization (AuthZ):** An exemplary cybersecurity process that identifies the permissions that an authenticated user is entitled to, such as read-only access to a database, etc.

[0389] **Central Processing Unit (CPU)**: A conventional processing unit utilized in personal computers, laptops, and other computing devices and historically has been built and

used to process executable instructions. Due to a high speed of operation (clock rate), those skilled in the art will appreciate that a CPU is a general purpose processing unit, with a large degree of flexibility.

[0390] **Dedicated Short Range Communication (DSRC)**: A two-way, low-latency, short-to-medium-range wireless system developed to transmit data between vehicles (V2V) and the transportation infrastructure (V2I), used for operations related to traffic flow improvement, traffic safety, and other intelligent transportation service applications.

[0391] **Department of Transportation (DOT):** An agency of the Executive Branch of the US Government, and is run by the Office of the Secretary (OST). The DOT has multiple administrations to deal with different modes of transportation, including the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, Federal Aviation Administration, and Federal Railroad Administration, among others.

[0392] **Graphics Processing Unit (GPU):** A family of specialty processors that have been optimized for highly intensive and massively parallel processing required for graphics rendering at a high refresh rates. These processors have been optimized to process multi-dimensional arrays and floating point operations. As GPUs have been found to be useful for other tasks, such as deep learning, AI, bitcoin mining, etc., the term **General Purpose GPU**, or **GPGPU** has emerged to generally refer to a GPU.

[0393] **Human-to-Machine Interface (H2M, or HMI):** A user interface that connects an operator to the controller of an industrial machine, robot, or computer. Examples of such an interface may include a keyboard, switch, display, touch interface, and the like. This interface can include electronic components for signaling and controlling autonomous systems.

[0394] **Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU):** An electronic device that generally measures and reports movement and, more particularly, may measure and report an object's acceleration, rotation, and sometimes the magnetic field surrounding the object. These measurements are collected by a combination of accelerometers, gyrometers, and magnetometers. Usually used in conjunction with Global Positioning Sensors (GPS) and LIDAR.

[0395] **Light Detection and Ranging (LIDAR):** A remote sensing device that uses pulsed laser light to measure distances and create "point maps" of the surrounding environment.

These point maps can be used with Artificial Intelligence platforms to detect and classify different types of objects in the environment: trees, cars, pedestrians, bikers, etc.

[0396] **Light Emitting Diode (LED):** A low power, solid state (semiconductor) light source. LEDs can be made into a display that can show text & video or a user interface.

[0397] **Machine-to-Machine Interface (M2M):** Communication protocols (typically over wireless communication channels, but can be wired) that enable networked devices to exchange information directly and perform actions without human intervention.

[0398] **National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA):** This is a US government agency, part of the DOT that is responsible for keeping people safe on America's roadways. NHTSA is dedicated to achieving the highest standards of excellence in motor vehicle and highway safety.

[0399] **Organic LED (OLED):** A new generation LED technology developed with a thin emissive electroluminescent layer, based on organic compounds. OLED technologies may be used in modern displays found in televisions, smart phones, tablets, etc. Next-generation OLED technologies are being created in the form of flexible displays for wearable technologies.

[0400] **Radio Detection and Ranging (RADAR):** A remote sensing system/device that utilizes radio waves to determine the range, angle and velocity of objects in the surrounding environment.

MALVT APPARATUS, COMPONENTS & SYSTEMS: Overview of Components

[0401] An exemplary MALVT bot system is implemented as being modular, with multiple level component areas with each component being modular and able to be changed out from the assembled bot system. These components (also generally referenced as units) may be assembled to form an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (also generally referenced as an assembly of one or more such components). Such assembly may be performed to order (*e.g.,* in response to the need for transporting an object) or may be performed ahead of time. Such assembly may be performed based on the particular needs for a given order as well (*e.g.,* based on characteristics of the object being shipped or transported, such as weight, size, environmental condition needs, and the like).

[0402] In one embodiment, such components may include a Mobility Base (MB), an Auxiliary Power Unit (APM) or Base Adapter Plate Module (BAPM), a Cargo Storage Unit

(CSS), and a Mobile Autonomy Module (MAM). These components are highly modular so that they can be managed at scale separately, while allowing quick assembly into a working exemplary MALTV bot apparatus within a short period of time. As use cases for the exemplary MALTV bot apparatus are implemented, multiple versions of components may be deployed and built to support these use cases. For example, various sizes of the CSS may be built to support multiple delivery options.

[0403] In further embodiments, the component modules of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may involve authentication as a verified unit and/or when assembling the components to make an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus for a particular use or deployment purpose. Such authentication may be performed component-to-component, or by one component (*e.g.,* a MAM component) once assembled with that one component interrogating the other components to ensure authentic and proper components have been used in the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly.

[0404] The use of such authentication may, for example, be for security purposes – *e.g.,* to ensure that only particular components are used for an assembly or to ensure that non-authorized components are not used as part of an assembly or for certain purposes (such as using a particular MB component that has a weight limit that is less than required by a certain deployment or a CSS component that does not have the storage capacity for a certain deployment). Such authentication may be used when assembling or deploying an assembled exemplary MALVT bot apparatus for regulatory and/or contractual compliance. For example, if a customer is not allowed to use a certain sized CSS (or box size that requires a particular sized CSS component), the authentication feature may not allow the assembled exemplary MALVT bot apparatus using such a CSS to operate with or for such a customer. Such regulatory/contractual compliance may have a basis in safety (*e.g.,* not allowing overweight assemblies), logistical requirements (*e.g.,* passageways in a particular facility not allowing widths over a prescribed amount, elevators having weight limits, etc.), and the like.

[0405] The modularity aspect of such an embodiment of components that make up an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may help reduce or otherwise minimize impacts and/or risk of injury through use of inter-component locking mechanisms. For example, if an impact is unavoidable or during an impact, the locking mechanisms between components may be set to disengage (*e.g.,* based upon a setting, based upon a threshold impact sensed by an impact sensor

on the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus). That may allow the different components to easily be separated to minimize the force of the impact on a person, vehicle, and/or structure.

[0406] Figure 17 is a diagram of an exemplary assembly of different exemplary modular autonomous logistics transport vehicle apparatus (MALVT bot apparatus) 1700 and components thereof in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Referring now to Figure 17, the diagram shows a sequence of exemplary MALTV bot apparatus components, including exemplary MB 1705, APM or BAPM 1710, CSS 1720, and MAM 1725. This sequence is a logical progression of assembly starting with the MB 1705, on which the APM or BAPM 1710 are attached (having a cargo door 1715), and on which the CSS 1720 is unfolded and attached to the APM/BAPM 1725. The MAM 1725 is then mounted to and fastened to the CSS 1720 and its interfacing bus and connections as explained in more detail below.

Modular Mobility Base (MB) Component

[0407] In general, Figures 18A-18C relate to details about the modular mobility base component. In more detail, Figure 18A is a diagram of an exemplary modular mobility base (MB) unit or component 1705 of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Referring now to Figure 18A, the Mobility Base (MB) 1705 is shown having a base 1800 (*e.g.*, a mobile base platform) and wheels 1805 that generally provides a "unit" of autonomous propulsion to an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700. In one embodiment and shown in more detail in Figure 18C, the base 1800 of exemplary MB 1705 may include integral control electronics (*e.g.*, a controller or processor (also referenced as a mobility controller) with interface circuitry to sensors and actuators) that controls steering, propulsion (*e.g.*, via an electric motor powered by an onboard or off-board power source, such as a battery and the like), braking, and other actuated movement of MB 1705. Such integral control electronics may be implemented in processing-based control logic and processing systems within the base 1800 of the MB 1705. Other embodiments of an MB 1705 may rely upon control for steering and propulsion systems within the MB 1705 but have such control being provided by the MAM component 1725 of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700.

[0408] Aside from propulsion and steering, an exemplary MB 1705 may include one or more sensors 1815 (*e.g.*, front AV sensors, such as cameras, proximity sensors, IR sensors, LiDAR sensors, environmental sensors, light sensors, motion detectors, tilt sensors, impact

sensors, and the like) and lights 1820 used to allow for autonomous detection of nearby objects and obstacles. As shown in Figure 18A, the exemplary MB 1705 may also deploy an alignment channel 1810, which may be used for keeping additional components attached to or loaded onto the MB 1705 in a controlled position when moving.

[0409] Those skilled in the art will also appreciate that the exemplary MB 1705 may be implemented in a variety of sizes with a variety of propulsion options (*e.g.*, wheeled, tracked, etc.) that may depend upon, for example, the types of objects to be transported in its CSS 1720, the environment in which the MB 1705 will be running (*e.g.*, inside, outdoors), the accuracy required in movement (*e.g.*, width for operations, turn around spacing, etc.), and the anticipated payload and articulating loading and unloading mechanisms to help load and unload the CSS 1720 supported on the MB 1705.

[0410] An exemplary MB 1705 may also provide power to additional components of the MALVT bot apparatus 1700. Such power may be provided with power connections or bus interfaces location on base 1800 (or as part of the alignment channel 1810 of base 1800) as the additional components are attached to the MB 1705. As described in more detail below, some embodiments of an MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may deploy an auxiliary power module (APM) 1710 to serve as an additional source of power or, in some instances, a main source of power for the MALVT bot apparatus 1700 (including power for the MB 1705) that can be easily swapped in and out as a line replaceable unit for repairs and hot swapping for recharging purposes.

[0411] The ability for an exemplary MB 1705 to raise and tilt at various angles enables novel and unique object transfer solutions to humans and other intermediate storage devices. Figure 18B is the exemplary mobility base unit component 1705 of Figure 18A, but shown in a tilted configuration in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Referring now to Figure 18B, a sample tilting operation is shown where the base portion 1800 is articulated to a different orientation relative to the ground contacts (*e.g.*, the wheelbase supporting wheels 1805) so as to place the contents held normally on the MB 1705 in a tilted configuration by lifting one end of the MB 1705 relative to the other end. In other embodiments, different lifting/tilting actuators disposed within base 1800 (*e.g.*, one or more actuators connected to different axles or motors for wheels 1805 or part of an adjustable suspension system for base 1800) may be deployed in different parts of the MB 1705 (*e.g.*, different sides, different corners) so as to allow for selective and articulable lifting and/or tilting of the MB 1705 under control of the control electronics

integral within base 1800 (or at the control of the MAM 1725 or other component in communication with the MB's control electronics) in custom orientations. In other words, such actuators that implement such tilting action may be responsively controlled with the integral control logic systems onboard the MB 1705 or, alternatively, in the MAM component 1725. Further embodiments may deploy alternative lifting mechanisms for the base 1800, such as a "scissor-lift" type actuated mechanism, which may be used alone or in conjunction with the previously described tilting actuator mechanisms.

[0412] As noted above, self-sensing (such as vehicle tilt, proximity, environmental sensing) via sensors 1815 deployed on and focused around the exemplary MB 1705 may be incorporated into the exemplary MB 1705 to provide a safe baseline autonomous operation level for use cases that may not involve other components (*e.g.*, powered dolly, "follow-me" luggage cart, etc.) as described in more detail below. Any required or desired illumination for proper sensor operation may be included, for example, at one or more points along the edges of the MB 1705 via lights 1820. Such illumination via lights 1820 may be with visual light or other wavelengths that correspond with sensors used on the MB 1705 (*e.g.*, infrared, etc.).

[0413] While Figures 18A and 18B illustrate an exemplary MB 1705 in perspective view, Figure 18C is a block diagram showing some of the external as well as internal details of exemplary modular mobility base unit component 1705 in accordance with an embodiment of the invention and consistent with the description above relative to exemplary MB 1705. Referring now to Figure 18C, an exemplary modular mobility base for a modular autonomous bot apparatus that transports an item being shipped is illustrated as exemplary MB 1705 having at least a mobile base platform 1800, a modular component alignment interface 1810, a mobility controller 1825, a propulsion system 1830 that causes movement of one or more wheels 1805 (which may include all wheels 1805 for more robust propulsion), a steering system 1835 that can responsively alter the direction of at least some of wheels 1805 (which may include altering the direction of all wheels 1805 for refined movement), sensors 1815, and lights 1820.

[0414] The exemplary mobile base platform 1800 essentially provides a moving support platform on which other components of a modular autonomous bot apparatus may be assembled. In more detail, exemplary mobile base platform 1800 may be implemented with a support base and wheels 1805, where the support base of platform 1800 has a top support surface on which

the modular alignment interface 1810 is disposed and peripheral edges on which the sensors 1815 are disposed. Wheels 1805 are effectively coupled to the support base.

[0415] The exemplary modular component alignment interface (an example of which being the alignment channel 1810 of base 1800 shown in Figure 18A) is shown in Figure 18C as being disposed on the mobile base platform 1800. Consistent with the embodiment shown in Figure 18A, the exemplary modular alignment interface 1810 provides at least one channel (such as the raised alignment channel 1810 shown in Figure 18A) into which another modular component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus can be placed and secured on the mobile base platform 1800. As placed, interface 1810 may interlock with a corresponding interface (such as a latch or other registration channel) on an APM 1710.

[0416] The exemplary mobility controller 1825 is a processor-based control element disposed as part of the mobile base platform 1800 and may be implemented with an ID node type of controller and programming to interface with other circuitry onboard the modular mobility base as well as with other modular components within a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of such components. In more detail, mobility controller 1825 is operative to generate a propulsion control signal for controlling speed of the modular mobility base 1705 and a steering control signal for controlling navigation of the modular mobility base 1705. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that the propulsion control signal that impacts and controls speed of the propulsion system 1830 may also control braking (*e.g.*, via an active reduction in speed of wheels 1805 and/or with the propulsion control signal actuating one or more brakes (not shown) on the modular mobility base 1705).

[0417] The exemplary propulsion system 1830 is connected to the mobile base platform 1800 in that the propulsion system 1830 is effectively coupled to the mobile base platform 1800 and operative to provide propulsive power to wheels 1805, which causes the modular mobility base 1705 to move. Propulsion system 1830 may, for example, be implemented using one or more motors disposed on the mobile base platform 1800 responsive to the propulsion control signals from mobility controller 1825 where the motor(s) effectively couple the motor's output to wheels 1805 to alter rotation of one or more of the wheels 1805. In another example, propulsion system 1830 may be implemented by one or more motors integrated with one or more of wheels 1805 (*e.g.*, including motors for each of wheels 1805 that may be independently controlled). Propulsion system 1830 is responsive to the propulsion control signal provided by mobility

controller 1825, which may include different signals provided to each motor to implement independent control of the collective set of motors under control of the propulsion control signal. In response to the propulsion control signal, propulsion system 1830 is operative to move the modular mobility base 1705 from a stationary position, and cause changes to the speed of the modular mobility base 1705 (*e.g.*, actively increasing the speed or decreasing the speed of the modular mobility base 1705). While exemplary modular mobility base 1705 is shown to ride on wheels 1805, further embodiments may implement wheels 1805 as, for example, tracks, moving legs, hybrid wheel/track systems, maglev locomotive elements that allow for movement of the modular mobility base 1705, and the like.

[0418] The exemplary steering system 1835 is also connected to the mobile base platform in that the steering system 1835 is effectively coupled to the mobile base platform 1800 and operative to steer the modular mobility base 1705 via, for example, actuated changes to one or more of wheels 1805, which causes the modular mobility base 1705 to change directional movement in response to the steering control signal from mobility controller 1825. In more detail, an embodiment may have some wheels 1805 being coupled to the propulsion system 1830 (*e.g.*, those of wheels 1805 that are powered by one or more motors) and other wheels 1805 being coupled to the steering system 1835. In still another embodiment, all wheels 1805 may be power driven by one or more motors while less than all of the wheels 1805 may be coupled to the steering system 1835. In yet another embodiment, some or all wheels 1805 may be power driven by one or more motors while all of the wheels 1805 may be coupled to the steering system 1835 for independent and selective steering that provides enhanced and robust steering and propulsion of the modular mobility base 1705.

[0419] The exemplary sensors 1815 are disposed on the modular mobility base 1705 (*e.g.*, on parts of the mobile base platform 1800) and each are coupled to the mobility controller 1825. As noted above, sensors 1815 allow for autonomous detection of nearby objects and pathway obstacles and do so by being operative to autonomously generate and provide feedback sensor data to the mobility controller 1825 about a condition of the modular mobility base (*e.g.*, conditions surrounding the modular mobility base, conditions in a movement path of the modular mobility base, and the like). In an embodiment, different ones of exemplary sensors 1815 may be operative to detect a tilt characteristic of the mobile base platform 1800 (*e.g.*, a level status for the platform), to detect an environmental characteristic next to the mobile base platform 1800

(*e.g.*, a temperature outside the platform 1800), and to detect a proximity characteristic about what is next to the mobile base platform 1800 (*e.g.*, a distance to pathway obstacle in front of the platform 1800). As such, an embodiment may have at least one of the sensors 1815 being a proximity sensor operative to autonomously detect an object in a movement path of the modular mobility base 1705 and provide proximity sensor data to the mobility controller 1825 on the detected object as the feedback sensor data. The mobility controller 1825 may receive the feedback sensor data from the proximity sensor(s) of sensors 1815 and responsively generate a change to at least one of the propulsion control signal and the steering control signal so as to avoid collisions and autonomously navigate along the movement path.

[0420] And as noted above with Figure 18A, exemplary lights 1820 may be disposed on the modular mobility base 1705 (*e.g.*, on parts of the mobile base platform 1800) and may be activated by the mobility controller 1825 to provide pathway illumination so to assist with autonomous detections of nearby objects and pathway obstacles. Lights 1820 may be disposed on platform 1800 in a configuration to focus the light generated by lights 1820 externally from the mobile base platform 1800 to facilitate sensor detection via one or more of sensors 1815. In one example, one or more of the lights 1820 may be implemented as a multi-spectral light providing multi-spectral visibility to facilitate sensor detection by at least one of the sensors 1815 (*e.g.*, infra-red light so as to enhance night vision, and the like).

[0421] An embodiment of the modular mobility base 1705 may deploy wheels 1805 in a configuration fixed relative to the mobile base platform 1800 that allows for movement of wheels 1805 to effect movement of modular mobility base 1705, but another embodiment may have the modular mobility base 1705 having the mobile base platform 1800 including a selectively adjustable suspension system 1840 that essentially couples the wheels 1805 to the support base 1800 in a selectively configuration. Such a selectively adjustable suspension system 1840 may include electronically and/or hydraulically adjustable coils, springs, shocks, or other actuators that selectively couple wheels 1805 and mobile base platform 1800 in an articulated and adjustable manner.

[0422] In more detail, an exemplary selectively adjustable suspension system 1840 may include actuators that may be activated to change an oriented configuration of the support base 1800 relative to the set of wheels 1805 from a first orientation state to a second orientation state in response to a support base orientation control signal from the mobility controller 1825. For

example, mobility controller 1825 may receive sensor data from one or more of sensors 1815 indicating a detected level status of the mobile base platform 1800. In response to such sensor data from sensors 1815, mobility controller 1825 may operate in a feedback control manner to generate a support base orientation control signal that adjusts the level orientation of the mobile base platform 1800 to a desired orientation – whether that be level (*e.g.*, so to keep items being shipped in a level orientation) or to lift and/or tilt the mobile base platform 1800 into the desired position and orientation. In this way, the support base orientation control signal(s) may activate one or more actuators in the adjustable suspension system to change the oriented configuration to a lifted attitude orientation, a tilted attitude orientation, or a combination lift and tilt attitude orientation.

[0423] In a further embodiment, the mobility controller 1825 may be programmatically configured to generate one or more support base orientation control signals to cause the selectively adjustable suspension system 1840 to activate and change the oriented configuration of the support base 1800 relative to the set of wheels 1805 from the first orientation state to the second orientation state based upon and in response to a control command from another modular component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus (such as an exemplary MAM 1725). As explained in more detail below, the ability of the modular mobility base 1705 to change its orientation in response to control signals directly from its mobility controller 1825 or control commands from a controller in exemplary MAM 1725 (which may cause the mobility controller 1825 to active and change the oriented configuration of support base 1800) enabled a type of articulated object manipulation for an item/object supported within the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly having the MB 1705. The change in oriented configuration of support base 1800 may cause the item/object supported by exemplary MB 1705 to move or slide in a controlled and desired manner to facilitate delivery or removal of the item/object from within the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly having the MB 1705.

[0424] In a further embodiment, exemplary modular mobility base 1705 may also include a wireless transceiver 1845 operatively coupled to the mobility controller 1825. The wireless transceiver 1845 may be implemented as a hardware radio, a wireless transceiver implemented with a combination of hardware and software, or a software defined radio (SDR) implementation of a wireless radio transceiver similar to that described above with respect to an ID node. Such a wireless transceiver 1845 provides a bi-directional wireless data path between the mobility

controller 1825 and other modular components equipped with similar wireless transceivers as well as external wireless nodes disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus. As such, exemplary wireless transceiver 1845 on exemplary modular mobility base 1705 may facilitate remote wireless control of the modular mobility base 1705 via the bi-directional wireless data path by another modular component or an external wireless node disposed external to the modular mobility base 1705. For example, exemplary mobility controller 1825 may generate the support base orientation control signal to cause the selectively adjustable suspension system 1840 to activate and change the oriented configuration of the support base 1800 relative to the set of wheels 1805 from the first orientation state to the second orientation state based upon and in response to control command from a MAM 1725 or a wireless control command from such an external wireless node disposed external to the modular mobility base 1705 (*e.g.*, from a handheld mobile user access device similar to devices 200, 205 described above, and the like).

[0425] The exemplary modular component alignment interface noted above on exemplary modular mobility base 1705 may be implemented with a variety of features. For example and as already discussed above, the modular component alignment interface may be implemented with alignment channel 1810 on support base 1800 shown in Figures 18A and 18C. A further embodiment of such a modular component alignment interface may be implemented with a registration interface and a coupling receiver. In this example, the registration interface (such as channel 1810) is disposed on the top support surface of the mobile base platform 1800 as a type of securing and alignment interface into which another modular component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus can be placed and secured on the mobile base platform 1800. More specifically, the registration interface may be implemented as raised alignment channels (as shown in Figure 18A) but also as recessed alignment channels into which mated alignment structure from another modular component may fit and cause a mutual alignment between the corresponding proximate modular components. A further example may have the registration interface being implemented as multiple alignment channels where each of the alignment channels are disposed proximate one of the peripheral edges of the support base 1800. The coupling receiver part of the modular component alignment interface in this example may be disposed on the top support surface of the mobile base platform 1800 and provide a secure receiving latch element 1855 (*e.g.*, an interlocking latch) for a corresponding mated coupling

latch element on another modular component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus. As such, the secure receiving latch 1855 may fit into and temporarily attach to the mated coupling latch element on the proximate modular component attaching to the exemplary modular mobility base 1725.

[0426] As will be described in more detail below, exemplary modular components of an exemplary MALVT modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 may communicate with each other through wireless communication as well as through a common modular component electronics interface that provides a conduit for power sharing and data/control communications between the different modular components making up the exemplary MALVT modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700. As such, an exemplary modular mobility base 1705 may also include an exemplary modular component electronics interface 1860 disposed on the top support surface of the mobile base platform 1800. Exemplary modular component electronics interface 1860 provides a bus-like conduit or a power and data mated interface to at least the another modular component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus so that actively powered devices and circuitry may be coupled to a power part of interface 1860, while electronic devices that communicate with others onboard or outside of exemplary MB 1705 may be operatively coupled to a data/control communications part of interface 1860. For example, mobility controller 1825 may be coupled to interface 1860 so that mobility controller 1825 may have a wired connection to electronic components in other modular components of an exemplary MALVT modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 (*e.g.*, an autonomous controller that is operating in an exemplary MAM 1725 and coupled to mobility controller 1825 through interface 1860). In more detail, data/control communications part of interface 1860 may be implemented with a modular mated bus interface connection for at least relaying feedback sensor data from the sensors 1815 coupled to the mobility controller 1825 to at least another modular component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus and for receiving control commands from other modular components of the modular autonomous bot apparatus that responsively causes the mobility controller 1825 to generate the propulsion control signal and the steering control signal.

[0427] While exemplary modular mobility base 1705 may be powered by another modular component (*e.g.*, exemplary APM 1710), an embodiment of exemplary modular mobility base 1705 may include an onboard power source 1850 that supplies electrical power to onboard active electronics, such as the mobility controller 1825, the propulsion system 1830, the

steering system 1835, and the sensors 1815 and lights 1820. In more detail, the onboard power source 1850 may be connected to the power and data mated interface 1860, which may also include a power output connection that provides electrical power from the onboard power source 1850 to the another modular component.

[0428] In a further embodiment, the exemplary modular mobility base 1705 may include an onboard power controller (not shown as a separate device, but may be implemented as a power switch on power source 1850 or a power switch integrated as part of mobility controller 1825) that selectively applies electrical power from an external power source (via a power input connection on interface 1860) and/or the onboard power source 1850 to at least the mobility controller 1825, the propulsion system 1830, the steering system 1835, the sensors 185, and lights 1820.

[0429] Those skilled in the art will appreciate that an exemplary embodiment of a modular mobility base 1705 may have at least its mobility controller 1825, wireless transceiver 1845, and sensors 1815 implemented by an ID node or a master node as explained above.

Multiple Modular Mobility Unit Assembly

[0430] With an embodiment of this modular design, a system of exemplary MB units 1705 may be operated in a "collaboration mode" to achieve higher operational throughput, such as enhanced functionality for on-road use or higher payload for freight operations in station. Figure 19 is a diagram of an exemplary assembly 1900 of multiple modular mobility base components 1705a, 1705b paired with an exemplary extended base adapter plate module (BAPM) 1905 in accordance with an embodiment of the invention.

[0431] Referring now to Figure 19, paired or grouped types of specially configured MALVT bot apparatus devices (*e.g.,* wirelessly paired MB units 1705a, 1705b) may act cooperatively with one collective platform (*e.g.,* extended BAPM 1905 supported by both MB units 100a, 100b) for larger or heavier to handle items. In this configuration, the MB (*e.g.,* each of MB units 1705a, 1705b) uses a Machine-to-Machine interface (M2M) to enable inter-component communication between the MB 1705a and other components (such as the other MB 1705b supporting the rest of the BAPM 1905). An exemplary M2M interface may, for example, be implemented as a wireless communication interface (*e.g.,* Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, cellular, NFC, ZigBee, or other wireless communication formatted interfaces) that allows the bot component to

securely connect with (*e.g*, via secure or authorized associations between bot components using TRON node association techniques) so that bot components communicate and interact in a cooperative manner. In addition, M2M communications may be used by the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 to communicate with other smart, connected devices, both stationary and mobile (*e.g.*, ID nodes and mobile master nodes separate from the MALVT bot apparatus 1700 as described in the TRON Network Reference Information)

using wireless communications (*e.g.*, Bluetooth, cellular, and the like). Those skilled in the art will appreciate that M2M communications may be implemented as a standard protocol utilizing Application Programming Interfaces (APIs) to support modular software development, and may utilize wired/wireless technologies as applicable for a particular application and embodiment. As such, the M2M communication deployed in an exemplary MB 1705 may allow for multiple MALVT bot apparatus assemblies to pair together and cooperate in order to carry larger loads acting as a single unit. For example, this may involve coordinated propulsion and steering of each MB 1705a, 1705b in the paired assembly 400 as shown in Figure 19 with one of the MBs 100a operating as a master autonomous unit and the other MB 1705b accepting input and operating as a type of slave autonomous unit (*i.e.*, MB 1705b operating in a semi-autonomous manner at the control of MB 1705a, but operating autonomous as a collective assembly 1900). As such, the exemplary embodiment of such a paired assembly 1900 collectively operates as a single unit larger MALVT bot system that may be deployed and used for such larger loads.

[0432] With reference to Figure 19 as well as the details explained above regarding exemplary modular mobility base 1705 as shown in Figure 18C, an embodiment of an exemplary modular multiple mobility base assembly apparatus 1900 may include a base adapter plate (such as plate 1905) and two different modular mobility bases (such as MBs 1705a, 1705b). The base adapter plate 1905 has a top side and a bottom side, where the top side provides a transport area for supporting the item being shipped. As explained above and shown in Figure 19, exemplary base adapter plate 1905 spans long enough to be supported on either end by the two MBs 1705a, 1705b. As will be explained in more detail below, the two MBs 1705a and 1705b operate in a cooperative manner to function as part of the assembled apparatus 1900. As such, one of the MBs 1705a is configured to operate as a master while the other MB 1705b is configured to work with the master, but operate as a slave device.

Date reçue / Date received 2021-11-03

[0433] In more detail, the first modular mobility base (*e.g.,* MB 1705a) in this exemplary modular multiple mobility base assembly apparatus 1900 operating as a master autonomous mobile vehicle is coupled to the bottom side on one end of the base adapter plate 1905. The first modular mobility base 1705a has a first mobile base platform, a first mobility controller, a first propulsion system, a first steering system, a first wireless transceiver, and a first group of sensors similar to that explained with reference to exemplary MB 1705. In more detail, the first mobility controller is disposed as part of the first mobile base platform on MB 1705a. The first mobility controller (similar to mobility controller 1825) is programmatically configured to be operative to generate a master propulsion control signal for controlling speed of the first modular mobility base and a master steering control signal for controlling navigation of the first modular mobility base. The first propulsion system is connected to the first mobile base platform, and is responsive to the master propulsion control signal from the first mobility controller and operative to cause changes to the speed of the first modular mobility base. The first steering system connected is also to the mobile base platform and coupled to the first propulsion system (at least some of the wheels or tracks that may be part of the first propulsion system). The first steering system is responsive to the master steering control signal from the first mobility controller and operative to cause changes to directional movement of the first modular mobility base. The first wireless transceiver on MB 1705a is operatively coupled to the first mobility controller, and provides a first bi-directional wireless data and command interface for the first mobility controller. The sensors on MB 1705a are coupled to the first mobility controller, disposed on the first mobile base platform, and operative to autonomously generate and provide first feedback sensor data to the first mobility controller about a condition of the first modular mobility base.

[0434] The second modular mobility base, MB 1705b as shown in Figure 19, of assembly apparatus 1900 is coupled to the bottom side on the other end of the base adapter plate 1905. While using similar components as MB 1705a, the second modular mobility base is wirelessly paired to the first modular mobility base and operating as a slave autonomous mobile vehicle under control of the first modular mobility base. In other words, the second modular mobility base 1705b generally operates as an autonomous mobile vehicle. But when configured as the slave modular mobility base component of modular multiple mobility base assembly apparatus 1900, the second modular mobility base 1705b takes navigational movement direction from the master modular mobility base 1705a (*i.e.,* the mobility controller within MB 1705a) and

provides the master modular mobility base 1705a with sensor data detected by the second modular mobility base 1705b.

[0435] In this configuration, the second modular mobility base MB 1705b has a second mobile base platform, a second mobility controller, a second propulsion system, a second steering system, a second wireless transceiver, and a second group of sensors similar to that explained with reference to exemplary MB 1705. The second mobility controller disposed as part of the second mobile base platform is programmatically configured to be operative to generate a responsive propulsion control signal for controlling speed of the second modular mobility base and generate a responsive steering control signal for controlling navigation of the second modular mobility base. However, the responsive propulsion control signal and the responsive steering control signal are generated by the second mobility controller based upon master control input received from the first modular mobility base as part of the cooperation between the two modular mobility bases that make up the modular multiple mobility base assembly apparatus 1900. Likewise, some of the other components of the second modular mobility base are configured and operate differently to operate as the slave autonomous mobile vehicle under control of the first modular mobility base.

[0436] For example, the second propulsion system is connected to the second mobile base platform, and responds to the responsive propulsion control signal from the second mobility controller so as to cause changes to the speed of the second modular mobility base. Likewise, the second steering system is connected to the second mobile base platform and coupled to the second propulsion system (at least some of the wheels or tracks that may be part of the second propulsion system), is responsive to the responsive steering control signal from the second mobility controller, and operative to cause changes to directional movement of the second modular mobility base.

[0437] The second wireless transceiver on the second modular mobility base is operatively coupled to the second mobility controller, provides a second bi-directional wireless data and command interface for the second mobility controller, and is operative to communicate with at least the first mobility controller and receive the master control input over a secure paired wireless connection between the first bi-directional wireless data and command interface for the first mobility controller and the second bi-directional wireless data and command interface for the second mobility controller.

[0438] The sensors on the second modular mobility base are coupled to the second mobility controller, wherein each of these second sensors are disposed on the second mobile base platform, and being operative to autonomously generate and provide second feedback sensor data to the second mobility controller about a condition of the second modular mobility base.

[0439] As shown in Figure 19, each of the first modular mobility base 1705a and the second modular mobility base 1705b support the base adapter plate 1905 from below. An embodiment of modular multiple mobility base assembly apparatus 1900 may deploy modular alignment structures on the bottom of base adapter plate 1905 and on top of each of the MBs 1701a, 1705b to assist with connections and ensure a proper alignment for the assembled components. In more detail, an embodiment may have the first mobile base platform on the first modular mobility base use a first support plate alignment channel disposed on a top of the first mobile base platform (similar to the alignment channels described relative to exemplary MB 1705 above). Likewise, the second mobile base platform on the second modular mobility base may use a similar support plate alignment channel disposed on a top of the second mobile base platform. Such support plate alignment channels may be raised to protrude from the respective mobile base platform, or may be recessed into the respective mobile base platform.

[0440] To mate to such support plate alignment channel structures on the respective MBs, an embodiment of base adapter plate 1905 may use a first support plate alignment seat and a second support plate alignment seat disposed on the bottom side of the base adapter plate 1905. Such support plate alignment seats provide a mated interface to the respective support plate alignment channels on the different MBs 1705a, 1705b. Such support plate alignment seats may be raised to protrude from the respective mobile base platform, or may be recessed into the respective mobile base platform. Additionally, an embodiment may have the respective modular mobility bases 1705a, 1705b of exemplary modular multiple mobility base assembly apparatus 1900 secured to the bottom side of the base adapter plate 1905 using one or more detachable couplings that allow the respective modular mobility base to be latched and locked to the bottom side of the base adapter plate 1905. In more detail, such exemplary detachable couplings on respective modular mobility bases 1705a, 1705b may be implemented as interlocking latches that detachably mate with the bottom side of the base adapter plate 1905.

[0441] As noted above, the respective modular mobility bases 1705a, 1705b of exemplary modular multiple mobility base assembly apparatus 1900 are paired and collaborate

during operation via communication between the mobility controllers within the respective modular mobility bases 1705a, 1705b. For example, an embodiment may have the mobility controller on one of the modular mobility bases in the assembly 1900 (*e.g.*, MB 1705b) broadcast a pairing request. The mobility controller from the other modular mobility base (*e.g.*, MB 1705a) may detect the pairing request using the wireless transceiver on MB 1705a. In response to the pairing request, the mobility controller on MB 1705a establishes the secure paired wireless connection with the mobility controller on MB 1705b, so as to allow for secure control commands and sensor data to flow between the respective modular mobility bases 1705a, 1705b of exemplary modular multiple mobility base assembly apparatus 1900. In more detail, the mobility controller from MB 1705a may establish an authorized association with the mobility controller in MB 1705b in response to the detected pairing request and based upon a security credential sent to the mobility controller in MB 1705a from the mobility controller in MB 1705b. This established authorization allows the mobility controller in MB 1705a to generate and provide the mobility controller in MB 1705b with the master control input over the secure paired wireless connection and for the mobility controller in MB 1705b to receive and respond to the master control input as a way of implementing collaborative operations between the respective modular mobility bases 1705a, 1705b as part of apparatus 1900. In like manner, the established authorization allows the mobility controller in MB 1705b to provide the mobility controller in MB 1705a with the feedback sensor data about the condition of MB 1705b over the secure paired wireless connection and for the mobility controller in MB 1705b to receive and respond to the feedback sensor data about the condition of MB 1705b as a way of implementing collaborative operations between the respective modular mobility bases 1705a, 1705b as part of apparatus 1900. Such shared feedback sensor data further allows the mobility controller in MB 1705a to generate updated master control input based upon the received feedback sensor data and provide the mobility controller in MB 1705b with the updated master control input over the secure paired wireless connection and for the mobility controller in MB 1705b to receive and respond to the updated master control input (*e.g.*, via updated responsive propulsion control signals and updated steering control signals).

[0442] In further embodiments, collaboration may not be limited to coordinated steering and propulsion types of movement for the respective modular mobility bases 1705a, 1705b of exemplary modular multiple mobility base assembly apparatus 1900. Collaboration may involve

selective lifting of the base adapter plate 1905 by coordinated actions of the respective modular mobility bases 1705a, 1705b. For example, an embodiment of the exemplary modular multiple mobility base assembly apparatus 1900 may have each of the respective mobile base platforms in MB 1705a, 1705b having a support base, a set of wheels, and a selectively adjustable first suspension system that couples the support base to the set of wheels similar to that explained above relative to exemplary MB 1705 shown in Figure 18C. Each of the respective mobile base platforms in MB 1705a, 1705b may also have their respective adjustable suspension system (with their own respective controllable actuators) being operative to change an oriented configuration of its respective support base relative to the wheels from a first orientation state to a second orientation state in response to respective support base orientation control signals from the respective mobility controller in the MB 1705a, 1705b. More specifically, the support base orientation control signal generated by the mobility controller in MB 1705b (*i.e.*, the MB operating as the slave autonomous mobile vehicle under control of MB 1705a) may be in response to a coordinated support base orientation control signal from the mobility controller in MB 1705a. In such a situation, the mobility controller in MB 1705a may be operative to maintain a desired orientation configuration of the base adapter plate 1905 (*e.g.*, a desired tilted attitude configuration of the base adapter plate, desired tilted attitude configuration of the base adapter plate, or a desired combination lift and tilt attitude configuration of the base adapter plate) by periodically generating an update for the support base orientation control signal provided to the adjustable suspension system on MB 1705a and generating an update for the coordinated support base orientation control signal provided to the mobility controller in MB 1705b for the adjustable suspension system on MB 1705b.

[0443] When configured with such respective adjustable suspension systems having their own actuators to control and adjust the desired orientation of the base adapter plate 1905, support base actuator control signals from the mobility controller in MB 1705a may cause the support base actuators in its suspension system to raise the support base in MB 1705a relative to its wheels, and support base actuator control signals based upon the coordinated support base orientation control signal from the mobility controller in MB 1705a cause the support base actuators in the suspension system of MB 1705b to lower the support base in MB 1705b relative to the wheels of MB 1705b.

[0444] Further embodiments may have the mobility controller in the master MB 1705a coordinating adjustment of the desired orientation of the base adapter plate 1905 based on sensor data from of MB 1705a and MP 1705b. For example, an embodiment may have the mobility controller in MB 1705a being operative to responsively generate an update to the support base orientation control signal for the suspension on MB 1705a and the coordinated support base orientation control signal for the suspension on MB 1705b based upon a combination of feedback sensor data from sensors on master MB 1705a and feedback sensor data from sensors on slave MB 1705b as provided by the mobility controller on salve MB 1705b to the mobility controller on master MB 1705a.

[0445] Still of the embodiments may adjust the desired orientation of the base adapter plate 1905 based on a remote wireless command received by the apparatus 1900. For example, the mobility controller on MB 1705a may be operative to responsively generate an update to the support base orientation control signal for the suspension on MB 1705a and the coordinated support base orientation control signal for the suspension on MB 1705b based upon and in response to a control command received by the mobility controller on MB 1705a over the wireless transceiver on MB 1705a. This would allow, for example, a courier using an external wireless node to remotely actuate and control the desired orientation of the apparatus 1900 with commands sent to the mobility controller on the master one of the modular mobility bases of apparatus 1900, which then coordinates the changes to the different suspension systems to maintain the desired orientation – whether the apparatus 1900 is stationary or if the apparatus 1900 is moving where the level status of the apparatus 1900 may be dynamically changing causing further updated to alter and adapt the relative orientation of the base adapter plate 1905 as part of maintaining the desired orientation.

[0446] In a further embodiment, exemplary base adapter plate 1905 may include a power source that may be coupled to each of the respective MBs 1705a, 1705b through output power connections on the bottom side of the base adapter plate 1905. Such a power source as part of base adapter plate 1905 may be configured similar to onboard power source 1850 on an individual modular mobility base, and may operate with respect to a particular modular mobility source as an external power source operative to provide power to that MB through power and data mated interface 1860 as connected to one of the output power connections on the bottom side of the base adapter plate 1905.

[0447] Those skilled in the art will appreciate that exemplary embodiments of each of the respective MBs 1705a, 1705b may have their respective mobility controllers, wireless transceivers, and sensors as explained above implemented by an ID node or a master node.

Auxiliary Power Module (APM) & Base Adapter Plate Module (BAPM) Components

[0448] In an embodiment and as generally noted above, exemplary APM 1710 as shown in Figure 17 may serve to provide a primary or additional source of power for components of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700, and also work as an adapter plate that the walls of a cargo container (such as an exemplary CSS 1720) will fit within (and may be secured to). Embodiments of this same exemplary modular APM 1710 may be deployed with a bottom-hinged door plate 120 and contain actuated components (*e.g.,* such as door actuator that may use powered joints (using, for example, a hinge) on the APM's door 1715, one or more screw drive linear actuators that actuate the cargo door 1715 relative to the base adapter platform of the AMP, a hydraulic piston actuator attached to the APM's door 1715 and the APM 1710 to move the cargo door 1715, and the like) that are fixed to the APM 1710 and the door plate 1715 so as to allow that door 1715 to be controlled for actuated or self-closure and locking. In general, the cargo door 1715 hinged or otherwise joined to the base of the APM 1710 may enable the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 to carefully dispense an object without a human in the loop. In one embodiment, such an adapter plate may be configured as part of the APM 1710. In another embodiment, such an adapter plate may be configured as part of an exemplary modular BAPM (Base Adapter Plate Module – *e.g.,* configured as an APM but providing no additional power, while providing a base adapter plate along with an articulated and actuated cargo door only). In still another embodiment, such a cargo door 1715 may be implemented as part of the CSS component 1720 rather than part of the APM 1710 (or BAPM) as discussed in more detail below. In still other embodiments, such a cargo door 1715 may be implemented as a closure system with an entrance door that may be raised or otherwise opened manually or articulated under control by one of the components of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700, and an extendible ramp that may be pulled out from one of the CSS 1720 or APM/BAPM units 1710 or an articulated ramp that may be actuated to extend from one of the CSS 1720 or AMP/BAPM

units 1710. In still other embodiments, such a cargo door 1715 may be a standard hinged door as part of the CSS 1720.

[0449] Figure 20A is a diagram of an exemplary MB 1705 paired with an exemplary APM 1710 in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Referring now to Figure 20A, exemplary APM 1710 is shown with a base 2005 and an exemplary cargo door 1715 located on the front of the assembly 1700 to provide easier access. An embodiment of APM 1710 may provide mechanical fastening via, for example, a grooved or interlocking channel 2010 that aligns with and connects to an exemplary modular CSS 1720 mounted on top of base 2005, with additional electronic/mechanical latching/locking as needed for security. An embodiment of APM 1710 may provide mechanical fastening to an alignment channel via, for example, other grooved or interlocking channels or latches on the bottom of base 2005 that aligns with and connects to base 1800 of the MB 1705 shown in Figures 18A and 20A, with additional electronic/mechanical locking as needed for security.

[0450] In general, operation of exemplary cargo door 1715 of APM 1710 shown in Figure 20A may be manual or may be implemented as to allow actuated opening/closing and actuated unlocking/locking via a door actuation controller (*e.g.*, a wired or wireless receiver that responds to control input from an external wireless node or another component part of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus). In one particular embodiment, such operation may be implemented in an autonomous mode with no user input required, or at the request of user input, after appropriate authentication. For autonomous operation, the door 1715 may be activated to open via M2M communications, such as part of an interaction between another smart wired or wirelessly connected node or device (*e.g.*, an ID node, a master node, a smartphone, a node-enabled logistics receptacle such as a smart delivery locker, or another component part of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 such as MAM 1725 or MB 1705) and the door actuation controller. A joint (*e.g.*, hinge) mechanism 2020 deployed at the bottom of the cargo door 1715 may allow for minimal interaction with simple mechanical self-closing ability. Additionally, the door 1715 may contain two normally-closed electro-mechanical latching or locking mechanisms 2025: one at top, and one at bottom, to ensure the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may be locked and secured in transit. At a delivery stop, the locks 2025 may be activated by a control element on the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 (*e.g.*, a controller in the MAM 1725 or the integral control logic in MB 1705, such as mobility controller 1825) interacting with the door

activation controller (*e.g.*, a door actuator driver or directly with the particular actuators) to allow the door 1715 (which may be spring-loaded for self-closure) to unlock and open or close and lock. Having the downward opening door 1715 coupled with the tilting capability in an embodiment may allow a transported item/object supported on a base 2005 of the APM 1710 to slide down (*e.g.*, slide to an intermediate storage container, such as a locker or drop box).

[0451] As shown in Figure 20B, an embodiment of the APM 1710 may use a translucent panel 2030 on the cargo door 1715 as an electronic display interface that provides electronic display functionality via a micro-projection system (which may be embedded in other exemplary MALVT bot apparatus components 1700). This micro-projection system may display appropriate messages to the user by a control element (*e.g.*, a controller in the MAM 1725 or the integral control logic in MB 1705, such as mobility controller 1825, that may drive the display panel 2030) during the delivery process. An exemplary translucent panel display 2030 may be implemented, for example, by an LED or touchscreen display that allows visibility through cargo door 1715 while also showing displayed visual information (*e.g.*, prompted instructions related to delivery) on the cargo door via graphics, symbols, letters, and the like as controlled by a control element component of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (*e.g.*, the controller or processor in the MAM unit 1725) or an external wireless node.

[0452] An embodiment of the APM 1710 may provide power to the other modules of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 using its auxiliary power source 2035, while advantageously keeping the center of gravity low for stability of the apparatus 1700. An embodiment of the APM 1710 may also provide extended range capability for additional use cases with larger or multiple battery packs (*e.g.*, via the use of multiple removable power packs 2015 that use batteries or other types of fuel cells). The APM battery packs 2015 may be removable and replaceable from the exemplary APM 1710 once the entire exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 is assembled and without the need to disassemble the apparatus 1700 (*e.g.*, removable battery packs 2015 being accessible on a side edge of base 2005 of APM 1710). In this manner, further types of battery/power packs that provide a different source of energy for the electricity needed to power the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may be encapsulated within alternative battery packs for deployment in an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700. Such alternative battery/power packs 2015 may involve fuel cell technology, or other energy

source technologies that may have a sufficient weight to power ratio so as to be useful for an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700.

[0453] If an exemplary MB 1705 were to provide sufficient power, and no additional power source may be needed for a particular configuration of apparatus 1700, a BAPM may be used as part of assembly 1700 and also provide modular mechanical connectivity from the Mobile Base unit(s) 1705 to the additional modular components of apparatus 1700 on top. A further exemplary form factor of such an exemplary BAPM may be to utilize two Mobility Bases, connected together mechanically via the BAPM – *e.g.*, such as that shown in Figure 19 with an extended BAPM 1905 supported by and connecting MBs 1705a, 1705b. This novel configuration (with interconnected modular MB units 1705a, 1705b) may provide additional transport capability for large objects, freight handling units, etc. And as explained above, an exemplary tandem MB configuration connected with a BAPM (such as assembly 1900 shown in Figure 19) may provide the ability to have each MB articulate individually and/or collaboratively so as to handle terrain with obstacles (*e.g.*, where one MB 1705a is actuated to move higher than the other MB 1705b for navigation of difficult terrain, or collectively raising up to a truck or van to receive objects while on a level surface or collaboratively adapting to an inclined or otherwise uneven ground surface). Those skilled in the art will appreciate that further embodiments may assembly such a multiple MB configuration (with an extended BAPM 1905) into an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly that uses a larger sized modular CSS 1720 and larger sized modular MAM 1725 to accommodate and enclose the area above the extended BAPM 1905.

[0454] Further details explained above regarding exemplary modular auxiliary power module 1710 are explained below with reference to Figures 20B-20E. Referring now to the details shown in Figure 20B, an embodiment of an exemplary modular auxiliary power module 1710 is shown with further internal details of different parts of such an exemplary APM 1715. In general, exemplary AMP 1715 is shown in an exemplary base adapter platform 2005, cargo door 1715 movably attached (*e.g.*, via a joint, such as a hinge) to the platform 2005 and extending from the platform 2005, auxiliary power source 2035 disposed as part of the base adapter platform 2005, and an output power outlet 2055a, 2055b coupled to auxiliary power source 2035 and disposed as part of the base adapter platform 2005. The output power outlet 2055a, 2055b provides access by other components of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 to power from the auxiliary power source 2035.

[0455] In more detail, exemplary base adapter platform 2005, as shown in Figures 20A and 20B, has a top side, a bottom side, and peripheral edges. As shown in Figure 20A, openings for removable power packs 2015 are located along a peripheral edge and the door's hinge 2020 is disposed along another peripheral edge of the base adapter platform 2005. The top side of the base adapter platform 2005 has a cargo support area disposed between its peripheral edges, where the cargo support area (also referred to as a transport area or payload area) is configured to support an item or object being shipped.

[0456] Exemplary base adapter platform 2005 is equipped with interlocking alignment interfaces to facilitate proper alignment with proximate modular components of assembly 1700 and secure connection to such components. In more detail, the top side of the base adapter platform 2005 has a first interlocking alignment interface while the bottom side of the base adapter platform 2005 includes a second interlocking alignment interface (*e.g.*, latches 2040). The first interlocking alignment interface may, for example, be implemented with one or more top alignment channels (*e.g.*, channels 2010) disposed on the peripheral edges of the base adapter platform 2005 not having the cargo door as shown in Figure 20A. In a further example, the first interlocking alignment interface may be implements with one or more latches that may be disposed on one of the top alignment channels so as to align with and securely mate another mated component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 to the top side of the base adapter platform 2005.

[0457] On the bottom of base adapter platform 2005, an embodiment of the second interlocking alignment interface may be implemented with latches 2040 configured to mate with and secure to corresponding latches (*e.g.*, interlocking latches) on the top of an exemplary MB (*e.g.*, MB 1705) of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700. Another embodiment of the second interlocking alignment interface on the bottom of base adapter platform 2005 may be implemented in at least one bottom alignment registration interface (*e.g.*, a recessed or raised channel) configured to mate with at least one alignment registration interface on the top of an exemplary MB (*e.g.*, MB 1705) of the modular autonomous bot apparatus interface 1700.

[0458] As shown on Figure 20B, an embodiment of exemplary APM 1710 may have exemplary output power outlet 2055a, 2055b implemented as part of a modular component electronics interface 2050 disposed on and through the base adapter platform 2005. The modular component electronics interface 2050 is a bus-like conduit structure that provides the output

power outlet 2055a, 2055b for a power bus, and a command and data communication interface 2060a, 2060b for a command and data communication bus on the base adapter platform 2005. The modular component electronics interface 2050 (with its output power outlets 2055a, 2055b and command and data communication interfaces 2060a, 2060b on the top and bottom of base adapter platform 2005) is disposed and aligned such that it can modularly connect to similar interfaces on other modular components of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 when the exemplary APM 1715 is assembled as part of such an apparatus assembly 1700. Furthermore, those skilled in the art will appreciate that as a bus-like conduit structure, the modular component electronics interface 2050 allows for electronic components within APM 1715 to connect to the power and command/data conduits making up the modular component electronics interface 2050. Thus, while Figure 20B shows auxiliary power source 2035 connected to interface 2050, those skilled in the art will appreciate that other electronic devices that are powered may be operatively coupled to the power bus related to the modular component electronics interface 2050. Likewise, those skilled in the art will appreciate that other electronic devices may be operatively coupled to the command and data communication bus related to the modular component electronics interface 2050 to communicate with other devices on other modular components through modular component electronics interface 2050. For example, exemplary translucent panel 2030 on the cargo door 1715 may be implemented as an electronic display interface providing electronic display functionality via a micro-projection system (which may be embedded in other exemplary MALVT bot apparatus components 1700), and the panel 2030 may be coupled to the command and data communication interface of the modular component electronics interface 2050 so that other devices on apparatus 1700 may communicate with and provide information to display on the panel 2030.

[0459] As noted above, exemplary cargo door 1715 may be implemented as an actuated door. This may be accomplished with, for example, actuated joint 2020 (such as an actuated hinge that may be controllable to open and close, or a self-closing joint where a spring-like element brings the door 1715 closed upon release when in an open state). In more detail, an embodiment may actuate door 1715 using wired comments from another modular component connected to the APM 1710. In such an example, an exemplary cargo door 1715 on APM 1710 may be movably attached to a peripheral edge of base adapter platform 2005 using joint 2020, and the door as an assembly may include a door actuator 2070 and a door actuator driver 2075.

The door actuator 2070 may be configured as being fixed to the base adapter platform 2005 and operative to move the cargo door 1715. The door actuator driver 2075 may be coupled to the door actuator 2070 as a control element, and responsive to a cargo door control input from a control component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 received over the command and data communication interface of the modular component electronics interface 2050. As such, the door actuator driver 2075 causes the door actuator 2070 to move the cargo door 1715 relative to the base adapter platform 2005 in response to the cargo door control input.

[0460] In some embodiments, the APM 1710 may further include a wireless transceiver interface 2065 to receive control input, such as the cargo door control input, from authorized wireless control element (*e.g.,* an external wireless node or a control element in another modular component of apparatus 1700 communicating with APM 1710 over a wireless communication path) and provide such control input to the door actuator driver 2075. However, in other embodiments, the door actuator driver 2075 may have its own integrated wireless transceiver built in. Thus, such an embodiment of door actuator driver 2075 may be coupled to the door actuator 2070 and responsive to an authorized wireless cargo door control input from a control component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 (or an authorized external wireless node disposed external to the apparatus 1700), where the authorized wireless cargo door control input is wirelessly received by the door actuator driver 2075 causing the door actuator 2070 to move the cargo door 1715 relative to the base adapter platform 2005 in response to the authorized wireless cargo door control input.

[0461] In another embodiment, the exemplary cargo door 1715 may be implemented with an actuated lock 2025 (*e.g.,* an electro-mechanical lock with an actuated bolt or latch, an actuated latch, and a magnetic lock, and the like having integrated driver circuitry for responding to control input) for securing the door 1715 electronically by a control component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 (or an authorized external wireless node disposed external to the apparatus 1700). The electro-mechanical actuated lock 2025 may be one of several actuated locks (or latches) responsive to a door lock control input from such a control component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 (such as a controller in the MAM 1725). As such, the door lock control input may be received by the actuated lock 2025 over the command and data communication interface of the modular component electronics interface 2050 so that the actuated lock 2025 activates to open or secure the cargo door 1715 when the cargo door 1715 is

in a raised/closed position in response to the door lock control input. In an example where the door lock control input is an authorized wireless control signal from a wireless transceiver working with a control component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus (*e.g.*, a wireless transceiver working with the controller on the MAM 1725), such an authorized wireless door lock control input is wirelessly received by the actuated lock 2025, which then causes the actuated lock 2025 to activate to open or secure the cargo door 1715 when the cargo door 1715 is in a raised/closed position. In yet another example where the door lock control input is from an authorized external wireless node disposed external to the apparatus 1700 (such as a delivery recipient's smartphone operating as a mobile ID node or mobile master node), the authorized wireless door lock control input may have the same effect of controlling the opening or closing of the actuated lock 2025.

[0462] As noted above, an embodiment of APM 1710 may be implemented without door 1715 in order to be compatible with a CSS 1720 that may be implemented with its own door (which may be an actuated door controlled through the CSS 1720 and its onboard electronics and actuated devices). As such, an exemplary door-less embodiment of APM 1710 may having a base adapter platform similar to that of platform 2025, but configured without door 1715 extending from one of the peripheral edges of platform 2025. Such an exemplary door-less embodiment of APM 1710 may further include at least an auxiliary power source disposed as part of the base adapter platform (such as power source 2030) and a modular component electronics interface (similar to interface 2050 described above having an output power outlet coupled to the auxiliary power source and a command and data communication interface to at least another modular component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus).

[0463] In a further embodiment, those skilled in the art will appreciate that additional articulating structure (as shown in Figures 20C-20E) may be deployed as part of an exemplary APM 1710 (or BAPM or CSS components 1720) to help load or unload/dispense an item/object being transported within an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 in an automated manner without operator intervention. This may be helpful in an embodiment where the MB unit 1705 is not operable to tilt (at all or sufficiently) or otherwise change its level/orientation to accommodate such a loading or unloading operation.

[0464] For example and as shown in Figure 20C, an exemplary embodiment may deploy an actuated belt surface 2080a, 2080b on the bed or base 2005 (and in some embodiments on the

door 1715) of the APM 1710 such that actuation of the belt surface 2080a, 2080b moves an item/object on the APM 1710 (*e.g.*, an object within a CSS unit 1720 being supported by the MB 1705 and APM 1710 (or BAPM)). Such an actuated belt surface 2080a, 2080c may be built into the APM/BAPM 1710 and responsive to control inputs from control/actuating electronics of the MB 1705, APM/BAPM 1710, or MAM components 115.

[0465] In more detail, an embodiment may deploy one or more actuated belt surfaces 2085 and a belt surface actuator driver coupled to and controlling the actuated belt surface 2085. In this embodiment, the actuated belt surface (such as belt surfaces 2080a, 2080b) is disposed above the top side of the base adapter platform 2005 and/or on an inner side of the cargo door 1715. The belt surface actuator driver is operatively coupled to and controls movement of the actuated belt surface by being responsive to a belt control input generated a component of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (*e.g.*, the controller or processor in the MAM unit 1725) or an external wireless node. As such, the belt surface actuator driver is responsive to cause the respective actuated belt surface on the base 2005 and/or door 1715 to move the item being shipped relative to the base 2005 and/or door 1715 in response to the belt control input. In some embodiments, the belt surface actuator driver may be responsive to an authorized belt control input generated by an external wireless node disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus. As such, the belt surface actuator driver may cause the respective actuated belt surface on the base 2005 and/or door 1715 to move the item being shipped relative to the base 2005 and/or door 1715 in response to the wireless authorized belt control input.

[0466] In another exemplary embodiment shown in Figure 20D, one or more actuated sliding arms 2085 may be disposed and actuated to move on guiderails 2086a, 2086b on the APM/BAPM 1710 so as to responsively sweep the inside of the storage compartment defined by the CSS 1720 and APM/BAPM components 1710 from the back towards the front where stored items/objects may be dispensed (*e.g.*, towards the door 1715 of the APM 1710). Such actuated sliding arms 2085 may be built into the APM/BAPM 1710 and responsive to control inputs from control/actuating electronics of the MB 1705, APM/BAPM 1710, or MAM components 1725. Such actuated sliding arms may, in some embodiments, be incorporated into the CSS unit 1720 and may be disposed at one or more different heights within the CSS 1720. In an embodiment having multiple sliding arms, internal proximity sensors may be disposed within the CSS unit 1720 and focused inward so as to detect object height so that particular ones of the sliding arms

may be selected for actuation to move the item/object or items/objects stored within the CSS 1720.

[0467] In more detail, an embodiment may deploy one or more actuated sliding arms 2085 and a sliding arm actuator driver coupled to and controlling the actuated sliding arm 2085. In this embodiment, the actuated sliding arm 2085 is disposed above the top side of the base adapter platform 2005. The sliding arm actuator driver is operatively coupled to and controls movement of the actuated sliding arm 2085 by being responsive to a sliding arm control input generated a component of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (*e.g.,* the controller or processor in the MAM unit 1725) or an external wireless node. As such, the sliding arm actuator driver is responsive to cause one or more of the actuated sliding arms 2090 to engage/contact the item being shipped, and slide or otherwise move the item being shipped at least towards the cargo door 1715 of the base adapter platform 2005 in response to the sliding arm control input. In some embodiments, the sliding arm actuator driver may be responsive to an authorized sliding arm control input generated by an external wireless node disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus. As such, the sliding arm actuator driver may cause the actuated sliding arm 2090 to move or slide the item being shipped at least towards the cargo door 1715 of the base adapter platform 2005 in response to the wireless authorized sliding arm control input.

[0468] In a similar exemplary embodiment shown in Figure 20E, one or more actuated movable grabbing arms 2090 (including an articulated grip head 2095) may be disposed on the APM/BAPM 1710 so as to responsively move within the inside of the storage compartment defined by the CSS 1720 and APM/BAPM components 1710 and move one or more items/objects so as to load or unload such items/objects. Such actuated movable grabbing arms 2090/2095 may have multiple degrees of freedom, be built into the APM/BAPM 1710 and responsive to control inputs from control/actuating electronics of the MB 1705, APM/BAPM 1710, or MAM components 1725. Such actuated movable grabbing arms 2090/2095 may, in some embodiments, be incorporated into the CSS unit 1720. In this embodiment, internal proximity sensors within the CSS unit 1720 may detect the relative location of such objects so that the actuated movable grabbing arms 2090/2095 are able to obtain control of the item/object or items/objects stored within the CSS 1720 and move such objects when loading or unloading/dispensing. In this manner, the item/object may be loaded into the storage

compartment defined by the CSS 1720 and APM/BAPM components 1710 as well unloaded and dispensed from such a storage compartment.

[0469] In more detail, an embodiment may deploy an actuated grabbing arm 2090/2095 and a grabbing arm actuator driver coupled to and controlling the actuated grabbing arm 2090/2095. In this embodiment, the actuated grabbing arm 2090/2095 is disposed above the top side of the base adapter platform 2005, and has a stationary base 2091 coupled to the top side of the base adapter platform 2005, a movable grabbing arm 2092 coupled to the stationary base 2091 with multiple degrees of freedom of movement, and grip head 2095 disposed on the distal end of the movable grabbing arm 2092 where the grip head 2095 is articulable to grab onto the item being shipped as disposed on the top side of the base adapter platform 2005. The grabbing arm actuator driver is operatively coupled to and controls movement of the actuated grabbing arm 2090/2095 by being responsive to a grabbing arm control input generated a component of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (*e.g.*, the controller or processor in the MAM unit 1725) or an external wireless node. As such, the grabbing arm actuator driver is responsive to cause the actuated grabbing arm 2090 to move towards the item being shipped, cause the grip head 2095 to grab onto the item being shipped, and cause the actuated grabbing arm 2090 to move the item being shipped as maintained within the grip head 2095 at least towards the cargo door 1715 of the base adapter platform 2005 in response to the grabbing arm control input. In some embodiments, the grabbing arm actuator driver may be responsive to an authorized grabbing arm control input generated by an external wireless node disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus. As such, the grabbing arm actuator driver may cause the actuated grabbing arm 2090 to move towards the item being shipped, cause the grip head 2095 to grab onto the item being shipped, and cause the actuated grabbing arm 2090 to move the item being shipped as maintained within the grip head 2095 at least towards the cargo door 1715 of the base adapter platform 2005 in response to the wireless authorized grabbing arm control input.

[0470] To further assist with loading and/or unloading/dispensing, an embodiment of an APM/BAPM 1710 may include articulated deployment of an extendible ramp from door 1715 having its own automatically actuated belt surface (as part of the APM or BAPM 1710 and similar to the actuated belt surface 2080a shown in Figure 20C). An exemplary extendible ramp may be implemented as part of door 1715 so as to articulate out from an opposing end of the cargo door 1715 opposite the one of the peripheral edges of the base adapter platform 2005. Such

an extendible ramp, which may have an actuated belt surface similar to the actuated belt surface 2080a shown in Figure 20C, may further allow for enhanced and improved transferring capabilities for an object to/from a user or another device external to the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 (such as a delivery vehicle or another exemplary MALVT bot apparatus). As such, an exemplary extendible ramp may be automatically extended from the APM/BAPM (or MB or CSS) under control of one of the components of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (*e.g.*, the controller or processor in the MAM unit), and its surface actuated to help move an object out of or into the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus. For example, an embodiment may have such an exemplary extendible ramp being responsive to a ramp deploy control input generated by a component of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (*e.g.*, the controller or processor in the MAM unit) to articulate the extendible ramp relative to the cargo door 1715. In more detail, an embodiment with such an extendible ramp may include an actuated belt surface disposed on a top side of the extendible ramp (*e.g.*, a conveyor belt surface having an actuator motor that drives the conveyor belt as the actuated belt surface), and a belt actuator driver coupled to the actuated belt surface as a type of control circuit that activates the actuated belt surface. Such a belt actuator driver is responsive to a belt control input generated by a control component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus, and causes the actuated belt surface to move relative to the extendible ramp in response to the belt control input once the cargo door is in a deployed position. In some embodiments, the belt actuator driver may be responsive to an authorized belt control input generated by an external wireless node disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus. As such, the belt actuator driver may the actuated belt surface to move relative to the extendible ramp in response to the wireless authorized belt control input once the cargo door is in a deployed position.

[0471] Those skilled in the art will appreciate that exemplary embodiments of an exemplary APM 1710 may have its wireless transceiver and actuator drivers implemented using an ID node or a master node that can provide the localized control input signal generation to provide to different actuators deployed on parts of the exemplary APM 1710.

Cargo Storage System (CSS) Component

[0472] Figures 21-27C provide further details on aspects and embodiments of exemplary cargo storage system (CSS) components (such as CSS 1720) that may be used on an exemplary

MALVT bot apparatus 1700. In more detail, Figure 21 is a diagram of an exemplary assembly 2100 of an exemplary mobility base (MB) unit/component 1705 paired with an exemplary auxiliary power module (APM) component 1710 and an exemplary cargo storage component (CSS) 1720 in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. An exemplary CSS unit/component 1720, as shown in Figure 21, is disposed on top of exemplary MB unit 1705, or exemplary APM 1710 (*see*, *e.g.*, Figures 21, 22A). In general, embodiments of the CSS component 1720 of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may serve as a modular, strong, lightweight, weather-resistant container structure for cargo. An embodiment of CSS 1720 may utilize an integrated, downward opening cargo door 1715 of an exemplary APM 1710 that may also serve as an item/object (*e.g.*, package) "slide". As noted above, an embodiment may have the object or cargo door 1715 being retractable into the base of APM 1710 for situations that would not make an outwardly folding door feasible. Further, an alternative embodiment of CSS 1720 may have its own actuated cargo door, as explained in more detail below with reference to Figure 26.

[0473] The embodiment of exemplary CSS 1720 shown in Figures 21 and 22A has three jointed sides/walls 2105 and with a locking handle 2115 that operates latches 2110, which may be operated to secure and fasten the CSS component 1720 to the APM component 1710 below (as well as to the MAM component 1725 above). Jointed side/walls 2105 are collectively a set of folding structural walls configured to at least partially enclose a payload area above a base platform (*e.g.*, base adapter platform 2005 of exemplary APM 1710) and on at least three sides above the base platform. Thus, as shown in Figures 21 and 22A, the jointed sides/walls 2105 form a set of vertical boundaries on the at least three sides of the payload area.

[0474] As shown in Figure 21, the exemplary locking handle 2115 and exemplary latches 2110 of exemplary CSS 1720 include longitudinal support latches 2120 where each has a top interlocking latch and a bottom interlocking latch that, collectively, move to engage a mating set of latches (*e.g.*, interlocking latches) on components below and above the CSS 1720 (*e.g.*, an APM component 1710 and a MAM component 1725). In such a manner, the locking handles 2115 and latches 2110 may be disposed on one or more of the sides/walls 2105 of CSS 1720 so as to allow for secure attachment of CSS 1720 to the APM 1710 below and MAM 1725 above at one or more points of the periphery where the CSS 1720 meets with the APM 1710 and where the CSS 1720 meets with MAM 1725. As assembled where the CSS 1720 is attached to the

APM 1710 and MAM 1725, those skilled in the art will appreciate that door 1715 of the APM 1710 may be raised or otherwise articulated into a closed position to close off a storage area within CSS 1720 below the attached MAM 1725.

[0475] The exemplary CSS 1720 includes a power and data conduit or transport that provides communication and power interconnections between the APM component 1710 and the MAM component 1725. In an embodiment, the positive CSS locking mechanism (*e.g.*, via handles 2215 and latches 2110) may also integrate and provide the power and data transport conduit (*e.g.*, a modular component power and data transport bus 2250 as shown in Figure 22B) that may be disposed as an integral part of one of the walls 2105 and connected between the high-level modular components so that locking and latching CSS 1720 to APM 1710 engages interfaces to the power and data conduit (*e.g.*, modular component power and data transport bus 2250) on the APM 1710. Similar locking and latching of the CSS 1720 to a MAM 1725 provide and facilitate engagement of additional power and data interfaces on the MAM 1725 so as to allow the power and data conduit of CSS 1720 to be a modular interconnection between the APM 1710 and MAM 1725 assembled with the CSS 1720 and MB 1705 as part of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700.

[0476] In the embodiment shown in Figure 22A, the exemplary CSS 1720 is shown as being deployed with exemplary locking notches 2200 along its top and bottom (*e.g.*, on the top edge and/or bottom edge of one of the sides/walls 2105). Such exemplary locking notches 2200 may be used in an embodiment of CSS 1720 to mate to corresponding interlocking structure on an APM 1710 below and/or MAM 1725 above. In this way, locking notches 2200 may provide another type of lockable connection with the APM 1710 below and the MAM 1725 above when assembled as part of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700.

[0477] Exemplary CSS component 1720 may be implemented with some or all of sides 2105 having branded graphics or with some or all sides having electronic screen displays 2205 for displayed graphics controlled by control electronics in MB 1705 or MAM 1725) depending on the operational use case with logos, identification information, warning labels and symbols, and other information useful in the logistics management and movement of what is temporarily stored and maintained with the particular CSS component 1720. An embodiment of such an electronic screen (generally referred to as an electronic display interface) on a side/wall 2105 of an exemplary CSS 1720 may be implemented as a translucent panel, similar to that described

above relative to the cargo door for an APM component 1710, capable of displaying information via micro-projection or an embedded translucent LCD display grid that may be controlled or drive by a control element on assembly 1700. More specifically, display 2205 may be disposed on one of the folding structural walls 2105 as electronic display interface that is to a modular component power and data transport bus within the CSS 1720 and driven by a control element also coupled to such a bus so as to generate a visual message on the wall 2105 via the display 2205.

[0478] The exemplary CSS 1720 shown in Figure 22A may also be deployed with physical sensing units for internal monitoring and managing of the CSS contents (*e.g.,* one or more proximity sensors for detecting an object height of what may be moved by one or more sliding arms within the CSS) and that may communicate with the MAM 1725 attached above the CSS 1720. As will be explained in more detail below, such monitoring sensors may work in conjunction with articulating structure deployed as part of exemplary CSS 1720 (*e.g.,* an articulating sliding arm or grabbing arm as shown in Figures 27A-27C) to help locate and direct movement of such articulating structure that engages and moves the item/object being shipped within the CSS 1720.

[0479] The exemplary CSS 1720 shown in Figure 22A has a detachable modular climate control module 2210. In general, an exemplary climate control module 2210 may be a replaceable item detachably mounted to an interior side of one of the sides/walls 2105 (which may be insulated structural walls) on demand and as needed depending on the item/object to be shipped or transported. The exemplary climate control module generally has a climate control element (*e.g.,* a heater and/or a cooling device) along with environmental sensors for the transport and monitoring of temperature sensitive items along with feedback and environmental control coupled to the climate control element. In more detail, an exemplary embodiment of detachable modular climate control module 2210 may be coupled to a modular component power and data transport bus within CSS 1720 (such as transport bus 2250), which provides access to at least power for the climate control module 2210 and, in some embodiments, control input for the climate control module 2210. As such, the climate control module 2210 can operate to heat or cool (or humidify or de-humidify) so as to alter an environment next to the climate control module 2210 (*e.g.,* the payload area within the CSS 1720) to maintain a desired environment next to the climate control module 2210. The detachable modular climate control module 2210

may be temporarily attached to the insulated structural wall 2105, but can be removed when the set of folding insulated structural walls 2105 making up an embodiment of the CSS 1720 is configured in a folded into a stored state (such as that shown in Figures 23 and 24) or when removing the climate control module 2210 to replace it with another climate control module 2210 (*e.g.*, to recharge the current climate control module, to use a different type of climate control module, and the like).

[0480] Figure 22B is a block diagram showing further details of an exemplary modular cargo storage system component in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Referring now to Figure 22B, a diagram of an exemplary modular cargo storage system component 1720 as a functional block diagram of different elements that may be disposed on a side/wall 2105 (or different sides/walls 2105 that make up CSS 1720). For example, an exemplary modular component power and data transport bus 2250 is disposed on wall 2105. In this embodiment, while bus 2250 is shown disposed separate from where latches 2110a, 2110b with longitudinal support latches 2120a, 2120b run from top to bottom of the wall 2105, other embodiments may place the bus 2250 between such latches and support latches. In more detail, the exemplary modular component power and data transport bus 2250 shown in Figure 22B has a top side modular component electronics interface 2255a and a bottom side modular component electronics interface 2255b. The top side modular component electronics interface 2255a may be disposed on a top edge of wall 2105, and the bottom side modular component electronics interface 2255b may be disposed on a bottom edge of the wall 2105. Each of the top and bottom side modular component electronics interfaces 2255a, 2255b has a power conduit outlet and a command and data communication interface. The power conduit outlet in the interface allows for power to be used by CSS 1720 and shared to other components of assembly 1700 (*i.e.*, power may be provided through this power conduit through CSS 1720 and made available for active electronics used on and deployed with CSS 1720, such as wireless interface 2215, display 2205, actuators for the handle, locks, or other articulating structured deployed on CSS 7120).

[0481] As shown in Figure 22B, exemplary side/wall 2105 is shown with latches 2110a, 2110b and locking handle 2115 disposed on side/wall 2105 as a type of interlocking alignment interface. The locking handle 2115, as shown in Figure 22B (and as explained above) can be manually and/or electronically actuated to cause the set of latches 2110a, 2110b to interlock with at least the base platform on APM 1710 and with corresponding latches or notches on MAM

1725. In more detail, exemplary latches 2110a, 2110b may be implemented using a pair of longitudinal support latches 2120a, 2120b slidably attached to wall 2105 and coupled to the locking handle 2115. The longitudinal support latches 2120a, 2120b have top interlocking latches disposed above a top of the wall 2105 and a bottom interlocking latch disposed above a bottom of the wall 2105. As such, movement of the locking handle 2115 (*e.g.*, a rotational movement of handle 2115) actuates a sliding movement of at least one of the longitudinal support latches 2120a, 2120b relative to the other in a first direction to cause the set of latches 2110a, 2110b to move and engage correlating to latching structure on the APM 1710 and MAM 1725. Moving the locking handle 2115 in the other direction actuates the sliding movement of at least one of the longitudinal support latches relative to the other of the longitudinal support latches in an opposite direction. For example, such sliding movement in response to actuation of the locking handle 2115 may move the top interlocking latches 2110a on each of the longitudinal support latches 2120a, 2120b towards each other above the top of the wall 2105 to engage a mating set of latches on a component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 disposed above the modular CSS 1720 (*e.g.*, an exemplary MAM 1725). Likewise, such sliding movement of both of the longitudinal support latches 2120a, 2120b in response to actuation of the locking handle 2115 may also move the bottom interlocking latches 2110b on each of the longitudinal support latches 2120a, 2120b towards each other below the bottom of the wall 2105 to engage a mating set of latches on the base platform below the modular CSS 1720 (*e.g.*, the base adapter platform 2005 of an exemplary APM 1710).

[0482] As shown in Figure 22B, an exemplary CSS 1720 may deploy equipment that facilitates electronically actuation of the locking handle 2115 via wireless signals received through a wireless transceiver interface 2215 and passed to a handle actuator 2225, other remote control signals provided to the handle actuator 2225 from the modular component power and data transport bus 2250, and/or via input to a locally disposed user input panel (*e.g.*, keypad, switch, button(s), touchscreen, and the like). For example, locking handle 2115 may be implemented as an actuated electro-mechanical locking handle responsive to a latch locking control input from a control component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus (*e.g.*, a controller in exemplary MAM 1725 communicating through bus 2250). Such a latch locking control input received by the actuated electro-mechanical locking handle over the modular component power and data transport bus 2250 may actuate the set of latches 2110a, 2110b in

response to the latch locking control input. In another example, such an actuated electro-mechanical locking handle may be responsive to an authorized wireless latch locking control input from a control component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus (*e.g.*, a controller in exemplary MAM 1725 communicating through its onboard wireless transceiver). The electro-mechanical locking handle may have an integrated wireless transceiver or may be response to handle actuator 2225 via separate wireless transceiver interface 2215. The wireless latch locking control input may, as such, be wirelessly received by the actuated electro-mechanical locking handle causing the actuated electro-mechanical locking handle to actuate the set of latches 2110a, 2110b in response to the authorized wireless latch locking control input, which may be provided by an external wireless node disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 authorized to unlock locking handle 2115. For example, a key code may be needed from the external wireless node to authenticate the wireless node and treat any control signal from the external wireless node as being authorized to lock or unlock the actuated locking handle 2115. In still another example, such an actuated electro-mechanical locking handle may be responsive to latch locking control input provided through user input panel 2220, which is then supplied to handle actuator 2225.

[0483] Figure 22B also shows exemplary climate control module 2210 disposed on wall 2105. In some embodiments, exemplary climate control module 2210 may be battery powered, and/or self-regulating with a built-in environmental sensor to sense the environment next to the climate control module 2210 and a feedback thermostat integrated as part of the module using sensor data from the environmental sensor as a basis for altering the environment next to the climate control module 2210 to maintain the desired environment next to the climate control module 2210 (and within exemplary CSS 1720 when a cargo door closes the payload area within CSS 1720).

[0484] In other embodiments, exemplary climate control module 2210 may accept external power and/or remote commands/control input through modular component power and data transport bus 2250. For example, exemplary climate control module 2210 may be responsive to a climate control input from a control component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 where the climate control input is received by the climate control module 2210 the modular component power and data transport bus 2250. As such, the exemplary climate control module 2210 may alter the environment next to the climate control module 2210 to

maintain the desired environment next to the climate control module 2210 (and within exemplary CSS 1720 when a cargo door closes the payload area within CSS 1720) in response to the climate control input from the control component through bus 2250. In still other embodiments, exemplary climate control module 2210 may accept wireless commands/control input from such a control component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 that is enabled with a wireless transceiver or from an authorized external wireless node disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700.

[0485] Figure 22B further shows CSS 1720 may include exemplary sensors 2235a-2235c and sensor interface 2230. Exemplary sensor interface 2230 may be implemented with, for example, circuitry for buffering, processing, and/or interfacing with bus 2250. Other embodiments of sensor interface 2230 may implement a sensor wireless interface dedicated for sensor data broadcasting without the need to interface with bus 2250 or in addition to providing the sensor data on bus 2250). As noted above, an embodiment of one or more of such sensors 2235a-2235c may be implemented as one or more proximity sensors for detecting the position and/or height of an item/object that may be moved by articulating object manipulation structure deployed within the CSS (as shown in Figures 27A-27C). In another example, one or more of such sensors 2235a-2235c may be implemented as environmental sensors used for payload monitoring by MAM 1725 and/or climate monitoring within CSS 1720 as part of feedback for controlling climate control module 2210. Embodiments of sensors 2235a-2235c may be disposed on one or more internal sides of at least one of the folding structural walls 2105 of an exemplary CSS 1720 so that the sensors may monitor contents of the modular CSS 1720 in the payload area and/or a current environmental condition in the payload area. Sensor data from sensors 2235a-2235c may be provided through interface 2230 to bus 2250 (or directly to bus 2250), or to wireless interface 2215 through interface 2230 (or directly to wireless interface 2230) to an authorized recipient of such sensor data (*e.g.*, an authorized control component of apparatus 1700 or an authorized external wireless node disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700).

[0486] To support storage of CSS units 1720, an embodiment of the CSS component 1720 may be implemented as a foldable component having a folding storage capability via, for example, hinged sides or walls 2105 such as shown in Figures 23 and 24, respectively. Figure 23 shows a folded configuration for a single exemplary modular cargo storage system (CSS) 1720,

while Figure 24 shows multiple exemplary modular cargo storage system components 1720a-1720c in the folded configuration and stacked as they may be maintained prior to assembly at a bot storage facility or location in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. As part of the assembly of a CSS component 1720 into being part of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700, the CSS component 1720 may be unfolded from the folded configuration or stored state (as shown in Figure 23), and aligned into channels (*e.g.,* channels 2010 of the APM) to guide CSS 1720 into proper position with the other major components (MB 1705, APM 1710, and MAM 1725) and then secured in the proper position.

[0487] As explained above, positive locking mechanisms (*e.g.,* locking handle 2115 and latches 2110) may be actuated electronically (such as via control signals from controllers or control processing systems within MB 1705 or MAM 1725) or, in some cases, actuated manually by handles 2115 integrated into the side 2105 of the foldable container may be employed to mechanically secure the major components (*i.e.,* MB 1705, APM 1710, CSS 1720, and the MAM 1725). In this way, an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may be assembled as a modular assembly, with components that may be interchanged and swapped out, and provisioned rapidly, with movement of the handle 2115 of the positive locking mechanism. The locking latches (*e.g.,* secured by rotating the CSS locking handle 2115 shown in Figure 21 or actuated as described above into the assembled position) may be locked via a key, a user input panel 2220 (*e.g.,* a keypad, or touch interface) disposed on exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 or secured via other types of locking systems (*e.g.,* onboard cameras for biometric scan or facial recognition using sensors on components of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700, key code entry or electronic code interrogation using human or machine communication interfaces with the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700, or node association-based unlocking based upon on authorized node-to-node associations).

[0488] As shown in Figure 25, the form factor (*e.g.,* height or other size characteristic) of an exemplary CSS 1720 may vary depending on the intended use or deployment application for the particular CSS component 1720. For example and as shown in Figure 25, one exemplary CSS 1720d may be a taller type for use in less obstructed areas (such as in streets) while another exemplary CSS 1720e may be a shorter type for use in more limited areas (such as on sidewalks).

[0489] In still another embodiment, an alternate configuration of an exemplary CSS 1720 may be implemented as having an actuated or manually operated integrated cargo door as part of or in place of one of the sides 2105 of CSS 1720. In such an embodiment, the integrated cargo door may use a joint, such as mounted hinge, that may be operated similar to the cargo door 1715 of the APM 1710 as described above when loading and unloading cargo. A further embodiment may have an exemplary CSS 1710 configured with a cargo door in addition to the three sides/walls 2105 shown in the embodiments described above. In this further embodiment, the cargo door may slide, retract, extend out, or otherwise open relative to the other sides 2105 manually or in an actuated manner. In other words, this further embodiment has an integrated cargo door on the CSS 1720 that may be similarly implemented in how it may be articulated and configured with actuators and/or other structure to support the same characteristics of the bottom mounted door 1715 of the APM 1710, including self-closing and locking capability.

[0490] Figure 26 is a diagram of such an alternative embodiment of an exemplary modular cargo storage system (CSS) having an exemplary actuated cargo door in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Referring now to Figure 26, an embodiment of an exemplary CSS 1720f is shown having three sides/walls 2105a-2105c being jointed structural walls, and with a cargo door 2600 as a fourth type of wall, but one that opens to provide access within the payload area within CSS 1720f. In more detail, exemplary CSS cargo door 2600 is configure with one or more joints 2605 that movably attach door 2600 to one of the walls 2105c so that the door may be selectively opened to provide such access within the payload area within CSS 1720f and closed to secure and vertically enclose the payload area.

[0491] Exemplary joint(s) 2605 may be implemented as a simple mechanical hinge, which in some embodiments may be spring loaded so as to actuated to self-close. In other embodiments, exemplary joint(s) 2605 may be actuated to open/close using an integrated door actuator as part of the joint itself or via a separate door actuator 2610 fixed to the cargo door 2600 and operative to selectively cause the cargo door 2600 move and provide access to within the payload area. Embodiments may also have a door actuator driver 215 coupled to the door actuator 2610 for controlling the operation of the door actuator 2610. For example, the door actuator driver 2615 may be responsive to a cargo door control input from a control component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 (*e.g.*, a controller in the MB 1705 or MAM 1725) over bus 2250 or wirelessly transmitted from such an authorized control component within

apparatus 1700 or an authorized external wireless node disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700. As such, the cargo door control input received by door actuator driver 2615 causes the door actuator 2610 to selectively move the cargo door in response to the cargo door control input. A further embodiment may have such a cargo door control input being generated from user input panel 2220 with input that reflects an authorized permission to have the door 2600 opened (*e.g.*, via entry of a code). Further embodiments may use an external sensor for other m

[0492] An embodiment of cargo door 2600 on CSS 1720f may include an actuated lock 2620 (*e.g.*, an electro-mechanical lock, magnetic lock, and the like) responsive to door lock control input signals from a control component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 (*e.g.*, a controller in the MB 1705 or MAM 1725) over bus 2250 or wirelessly transmitted from such an authorized control component within apparatus 1700 or an authorized external wireless node disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700. Similar to the actuated locking systems described above (*e.g.*, related to the locking latches and locking handle), cargo door 2600 may use an actuated lock 2620 responsive to other signals or input that operate as the authorized door lock control input signal, such as input received over user input panel 2220 (*e.g.*, key code entry via a keypad, buttons, or touch interface) disposed on exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 or via a specific user input panel 2630 disposed on the cargo door 2600, input received from an externally focused sensor or camera on the CSS 1720f or other component of the apparatus 1700 (*e.g.*, a sensor on the MAM 1725) for biometric scan or facial recognition, key code entry, or input received from electronic code interrogation using human or machine communication interfaces with the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700, or node association-based unlocking based upon on authorized node-to-node associations.

[0493] A further embodiment of door 2600 on CSS 1720f may have a translucent door panel 2625 disposed on it as a type of electronic display interface where visual messages may be generated and shown with symbols and generated characters. Such a translucent panel 2625 may be implemented similar to that of translucent panel 2030 on the door 1715 on APM 1710 in that it allows visibility through the cargo door while also being operative to generate the visual message on the cargo door with generated characters (*e.g.*, prompted instructions related to delivery of the item being shipped, electronically displayed information about the item being shipped, and the like).

[0494] Figures 27A-27C are diagrams of embodiments of an exemplary modular cargo storage system (CSS) having different types of exemplary actuated or articulating object manipulation systems (*e.g.,* actuated sliding arms, actuated grabbing arms) disposed on one of the walls of the CSS in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. For example, Figure 27A illustrates an exemplary actuated sliding arm 2700 disposed and actuated to move on guiderails 2705a, 2705b on a wall 2105 of exemplary CSS 1720. In some embodiments, the actuated sliding arm, as an assembly, is integrated with one of the walls 2015 of CSS 1720. However, other embodiments may deploy the actuated sliding arm as a detachable module that can be mounted to one of the walls 2015 of CSS 1705.

[0495] In more detail, exemplary actuated sliding arm 2700 may be disposed as an assembly (with the arm 2700 mounted to sliding bases that run within guiderails 2705a, 2705b in response to sliding arm control input). Such an actuated sliding arm assembly may be coupled to the modular component power and data transport bus 2250 so as to at least power the actuated sliding arm assembly. More specifically, the exemplary actuated sliding arm assembly may include the actuated sliding arm 2700 removably affixed to the one of the folding structural walls, and a sliding arm actuator driver coupled to the actuated sliding arm 2700 and responsive to a sliding arm control input generated by a control component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 (*e.g.,* a controller in the MAM 1725) or to an authorized wireless sliding arm control input generated by an external wireless node disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 or by a wireless transceiver in another component of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700. As such, the sliding arm actuator driver may the actuated sliding arm 2700 to move the item being shipped within the payload area in response to the sliding arm control input, such as that shown in Figure 27B.

[0496] Figure 27C is a diagram of an embodiment of an exemplary modular cargo storage system (CSS) having an exemplary actuated grabbing arm disposed on one of the walls of the CSS in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. As shown in Figure 27C, CSS 1720 has an exemplary actuated grabbing arm assembly 2710 disposed on a wall 2105, which may be fixed or detachably disposed on the wall 2105. The assembly 2710 includes a stationary base 2715 removably attached to the wall 2105, a movable grabbing arm 2720 coupled to the stationary base 2715 with multiple degrees of freedom of movement, and grip head 2725 disposed on the distal end of the movable grabbing arm 2720 where the grip head 2725 is

articulable to grab onto the item being shipped as disposed within CSS 1720. The grabbing arm actuator driver is operatively coupled to and controls movement of the actuated grabbing arm assembly 2710 by being responsive to sensor data from internal sensors (*e.g.*, proximity sensors 2235a-2235c) indicating a location of the item) and a grabbing arm control input generated by a component of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 (*e.g.*, the controller or processor in the MAM unit 1725) or an external wireless node or a wireless transceiver within a component of the bot apparatus 1700. In this way, the grabbing arm actuator driver (a) detects the item being shipped using the sensor data, (b) causes the actuated grabbing arm 2720 to move towards the item being shipped, (c) causes the grip head 2725 to grab onto the item being shipped, and (d) causes the actuated grabbing arm assembly 2710 to move the item being shipped as maintained within the grip head 2725 from within the payload area to outside the payload area in response to the grabbing arm control input.

Mobile Autonomy Module (MAM) Component

[0497] As noted above, exemplary MAM 1725 is an example of a control component of apparatus 1700 deployed with sensors, lights, displays, an autonomous control system that interacts with other components of apparatus 1700 while providing a "hat" like cover for a CSS 1720 and its payload area, and payload monitoring capabilities as part of modular autonomous bot apparatus (such as exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700). Figures 28-31 provide illustrations of an exemplary Mobile Autonomy Module (MAM) 1725 as shown by itself with its components, while Figure 32 illustrates an exemplary MAM 1725 as part of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 in an assembled configuration and Figure 33 illustrates an exemplary MAM 1725 operating as part of apparatus 1700 in an exemplary system where the MAM 1725 may communicate with a server and/or mobile wireless external nodes operated by a supplier and a delivery recipient.

[0498] Referring now to Figure 28, exemplary MAM 1725 is shown from its exterior as a top-level control component/device for the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700. An exemplary MAM 1725, such as that shown in Figures 28-33, may be deployed similar to that of a master node implemented autonomous control system that communicates and controls other components of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 in the assembled configuration, has user interfaces and location circuitry, as well as communicates with other nodes through wired

connections and wireless connections. In more detail, an embodiment of MAM 1725 may be implemented, for example, with a detachable modular housing having a horizontally-oriented base cover 2800 configured to detachably cover the payload area vertically defined by walls 2105 of CSS 1720 and cargo door 1715 of APM 1705 when the MAM 1725 is attached on top of the modular CSS 1720 as part of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700. The base cover 2800 has a curved top side (as shown in Figures 28-29), a bottom side (as shown in Figures 30A-30B), and peripheral sides or edges upon which lights 2820 and multi-element light panels 2825, 2900 may be disposed as well as mounting tabs 2807 that help in mounting MAM 1725 onto an exemplary CSS 1720. In some embodiments, such peripheral sides/edges may also include other displays (similar to displays 2815a, 2815b) and sensors (similar to sensors 2810). In the embodiment shown in Figures 28-29, the detachable housing has base cover 2800 with a vertically-oriented raised display support 2805 protruding up from the top side of the base cover 2800. While the display support 2805 shown in Figures 28-29 is disposed across from the left side of cover 2800 to the right side of cover 2800, other embodiments of display support 2805 for an exemplary MAM 1725 may position the display support 2805 disposed on cover 2800 in other configurations – *e.g.*, disposed from the front to the back of cover 2800, disposed diagonally on top of cover 2800, and the like.

[0499] The electronics elements used as part of MAM 1725 may be disposed in different parts of the detachable modular housing. For example, displays 2815a, 2815b may be disposed on parts of cover 2800 (*e.g.*, on either side of vertically-oriented raised display support 2805). Sensors 2810 may be disposed on vertically-oriented raised display support 2805 (or other parts of cover 2800 in other embodiments) along with lights 2820 that are externally focused. Exemplary lights 2830 may be, for example, disposed on peripheral sides of the base cover 2800, and selectively powered by an autonomous control system within MAM 1725 to enhance processing of the sensor data from the external sensors 2810 and enhance processing of the outside sensor data from the additional sensors disposed on MB 1705 as provided to MAM 1725.

[0500] In general, further components of MAM 1725 not shown on the exterior of MAM 1725 in Figures 28-29 include a central controller and processing hardware similar to that of a master node that may include control electronics (*e.g.*, one or more processors or microcontrollers as a processing system with local memory storage and volatile memory) operating as an autonomous control system or autonomous controller; location circuitry (such as

a GPS chipset and antenna); wireless and wired communication interfaces for one or more hardware or software-implemented radios; program code that, when executing on the processing and controller elements, governs control of the MAM 1725 (as well as the apparatus 1700), sensor processing, autonomous movement control of the apparatus 1700 (via communication with MB 1705), navigation for the apparatus 1700 (via control provided to MB 1705), and object delivery control; and multiple command and data interfaces for display outputs (*e.g.*, via screens, displays, LED indicators), control output (*e.g.*, for sending control signals to control elements of MB 1705, APM 1710, and for sending control signals to control the environment within CSS 1720), and for sensor input from sensors on the MAM 1725 as well as sensors disposed in other components of apparatus 1700 (*e.g.*, sensors within CSS 1720, sensors deployed on the MB 1705, and the like).

[0501] Figures 30A-30B are diagrams of different bottom views of the exemplary MAM 1725 of Figure 28 in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Referring now to Figure 30A, a perspective view of exemplary MAM 1725 is illustrated showing features on the bottom side of base cover 2800, such as exemplary set of latching points 3000a, 3000b. These latching points may be incorporated on MAM 1725 as latches that work to couple the detachable modular housing to the modular CSS 1720 of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700. For example, latching points 3000a, 3000b may be implemented as fixed and passive latches that engage and mate (*e.g.*, as interlocking latches) to an opposing set of moveable latches, such the movable latches 2110a on CSS 1720 in response to actuated movement via handle 2115. As such, the detachable modular mobile autonomy control module (*e.g.*, exemplary MAM 1725) may be secured to the modular CSS 1720 and cover the payload area when the passive latches 3000a, 3000b are engaged with the opposing set of movable latches 2110a on CSS 1725.

[0502] Referring now to Figure 30B, further elements of an exemplary MAM 1725 are shown on the bottom of the base cover 2800. For example, as shown in Figure 30B, payload monitoring sensors are shown disposed on the bottom side of the base cover 2800 in removable payload sensor pods 3005a, 3005b. Within such removable pods or modules, the payload monitoring sensors may be deployed to generate payload sensor data, which is then sent to the control system on the MAM 1725. Such payload sensor data reflects what is going on with items in the payload area or conditions in the payload area (*e.g.*, temperature, humidity, movement of objects/items, and the like). In more detail, with such internally focused payload monitoring

sensors (shown as sensors 3130 in Figure 31), an embodiment of MAM 1725 may also be able to sense if objects are inside the container (*e.g.*, the storage area defined by CSS 1720 as assembled on top of APM 1710 and covered by MAM 1725), if objects have moved, and detect a condition of the object. Exemplary removable payload sensor pods 3005a, 3005b may be attached, removed, and swapped out within MAM 1725 according to a particular logistics operation tasked to the MAM 1725.

[0503] Exemplary MAM 1725 may also have interior lights 3010a, 3010b disposed on the bottom side of the base cover 2800. Such lights 3010a, 3010b may be activated by the control system in the MAM 1725, and may provide light to assist with the payload monitoring sensors (such as sensors 3130 and sensors within payload sensor pods 3005a, 3005b) and/or to assist with loading and unloading items/objects from within the CSS 1720 under the MAM 1725. In more detail, an example of exemplary interior lights 3010a, 3010b may be payload focused lights disposed on the bottom of the base cover 2800, and selectively powered by the autonomous control system 3100 to enhance processing of the payload sensor data from the payload monitoring sensors 3130 (*e.g.*, payload sensors in payload sensor pods 3005a, 3005b) disposed on the bottom side of the base cover 2800).

[0504] Exemplary MAM 1725 may also have locking tab(s) 3015 disposed on the bottom side of the base cover 2800. Such locking tab(s) 3015 provide a corresponding interlocking structure on MAM 1725 that may interface to and secure with locking notches 2200 disposed on the top edge of wall 2105 of an exemplary CSS 1720. As such, an exemplary MAM 1725 may be aligned on one edge with a CSS 1720 by mating the locking notches 2200 of the CSS 1725 to the locking tab or tabs 3015 on the MAM 1725, and then securing the MAM 1725 to the CSS 1720 via interlocking latches 2110a on CSS 1720 that are moved (*e.g.*, manually or electronically actuated) to mate with interlocking latches 3000a, 3000b on MAM 1725.

[0505] Figure 31 is a block diagram showing further details of an exemplary mobile autonomy module (MAM) in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Referring now to Figure 31, exemplary elements of an embodiment of MAM 1725 are shown generally disposed in or on exemplary detachable modular housing (*e.g.*, in or on base cover 2800) including autonomous control system 3100, displays 2815a, 2815b, sensors 2810, 3130, lights 2820, 3010a, 3010b, wireless radio transceiver 3125, location circuitry 3110, secondary power source 3120, as well as a modular component power and data transport bus 3115.

[0506] The exemplary autonomous control system 3100 is an implementation of at least one controller or processor that is operatively connected to the sensor array of sensors 2810, 3130 through interfacing circuitry or dedicated sensor processing circuitry that may buffer sensor data and process the sensor data. As an autonomous controller, exemplary autonomous control system 3100 has the power and self-governance in the performance of sensor processing and responsive control functions that allow the assembly 1700 to move, avoid collisions, navigate towards specified locations, and effect actuated and articulated interactions while moving or stationary as part of the logistics operations described herein. Such an exemplary autonomous control system 3100 may be implemented as an onboard processing module or system with one or more processors or controllers (such as CPUs/GPUs) and program code or software modules that execute on this platform to programmatically configure the autonomous control system 3100 to be operative to provide the autonomous capability to run an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 as discussed herein. For example, an exemplary controller/processor used as the autonomous control system 3100 in the MAM 1725 may be implemented with a central controller and processing hardware similar to that of a master node that may include control electronics (*e.g.,* one or more processors or microcontrollers as a processing system with local memory storage and volatile memory) operating as an autonomous control system or autonomous controller that processes massive real-time data captured by the sensor array by executing program code that, when executing, governs control of the MAM 1725 (as well as the apparatus 1700), sensor processing, autonomous movement control of the apparatus 1700 (via communication with MB 1705), navigation for the apparatus 1700 (via control provided to MB 1705), and object delivery control.

[0507] An exemplary autonomous control system 3100 may also have redundant, fault-tolerant features for safety control, as well as parallel sensing and parallel processing that allows for common and/or distributed management for operations of such an exemplary autonomous control system 3100. For example, an embodiment of autonomous control system 3100 may deploy distributed management where tasks may be offloaded from a particular processor or system within autonomous control system 3100 and assigned (permanently or dynamically) to another processor or system (*e.g.,* where a sensor may have processing of its sensor data built-in, which offloads the sensor data processing from another processor or system within an embodiment of autonomous control system 3100).

[0508] Those skilled in the art will appreciate that exemplary autonomous control system 3100 may, for example, be implemented with an NVIDIA® Jetson™ Xavier AI embedded computing module for autonomous machines that features a 512-Core Volta GPU with Tensor Cores, 8-Core ARM 64-Bit CPU, dual NVDLA deep learning accelerators, video processor for up to 2x 4K 60 fps encode and decode, seven-way VLIW vision processor and 16 GB 256-Bit LPDDR4 memory. Another embodiment of such an exemplary autonomous control system 3100 may, for example, be implemented with an ARM Cortex-A76AE autonomous processor with superscalar, out-of-order processing and split-lock flexibility to allow for a split mode with highest multicore performance or split mode for advanced multicore fault-tolerance features for built-in safety and diagnostic functionality at a hardware level (*e.g.*, fail-operational or fault-tolerant capability – where the control system detects a control system fault with memory, processing, data bus, or other control system sub-systems, reports the fault, and continues operation in a degraded mode as needed).

[0509] The exemplary location circuitry 3110 (such as a GPS chipset and antenna) is operatively coupled to the autonomous control system 3100 and generates location data on a location of the MAM 1725 and provides the location data to the autonomous control system 3100. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that location circuitry 3110 may be implemented similar to dedicated location positioning circuitry 475 (*e.g.*, GPS circuitry) described above that allows a master node to self-determine its location or to determine its location by itself.

[0510] Exemplary external sensors 2810 are disposed on the detachable modular housing and are operatively coupled to the autonomous control system 3100. In this exemplary configuration, the external sensors 2810 generates external sensor data on an environment external to the MAM 1725 as detected by the external sensors 2810 and providing the sensor data to the autonomous control system 3100. In more detail, such external sensors 2810 may be implemented as an array of one or more sensors for detecting the outside world using one or more types of sensors. Exemplary types of sensors 2810 may include, but are not limited to, cameras, LIDAR/RADAR, Inertial Measurement Units (IMUs), location circuitry (GPS), and environmental sensors for temperature, humidity, rain, pressure, light, shock/impact, and the like. Other types of sensors 2810, depending on the application, may also include proximity sensors, chemical sensors, motion detectors, etc.

[0511] In a further embodiment, some or all of these sensors 2810 may be contained in one or more submodular "sensor domes" or sensor pods where each may be detachable or removably attached to the base cover 2800 of the MAM 1725, and may be interchanged based on use case (*e.g.*, in-facility, on-road, etc.). As such, an exemplary replaceable sensor dome or pod may contain all sensors for the MAM 1725 or contain a subset of external sensors 2810 to be used by the MAM 1725. In a further example, different subsets of external sensors 2810 may be respectively implemented in a different interchangeable, detachable, replaceable sensor pods. Each of such sensor pods may be deployed as having a characteristic type of sensors in the subset of the external sensors 2810 (*e.g.*, one detachable sensor pod of external sensors having night vision specific sensors, another detachable sensor pod of external sensors having proximity sensors of a particular sensing range useful for internal building deployment, another detachable sensor pod of external sensors having proximity sensors of a longer sensing range useful for exterior street deployment, and the like). Thus, like the internally focused payload monitoring sensor pods that may be detached, replaced, and used to configure and exemplary MAM 1725 for a particular targeted or dispatched logistics operation for transporting a particular item/object, the exemplary MAM 1725 may be configured with particular externally focused sensor pods that may be detached, replaced, and used for a particular targeted or dispatched logistics operation for moving assembly 1700 (including MAM 1725) through a targeted or anticipated environment when moving from an origin location (*e.g.*, a pickup location or bot storage location) to a delivery destination location.

[0512] As shown in Figure 28, exemplary external sensors 2810 may be placed on surfaces of the MAM 1725, such as along vertically oriented surfaces on top of the MAM 1725 on support 2805, but further embodiments may have a portion of (or all) sensors 2810 placed in other locations that focus in particular directions relative to the MAM 1725 (*e.g.*, forward-facing sensors, side sensors, rear-facing sensors, ground-facing sensors, upward-focused sensors, and the like) or as an omni-directional sensor on the MAM 1725.

[0513] An embodiment of MAM 1725 may have the autonomous control system 3100 be programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to process at least the sensor data from the external sensors disposed on the detachable modular housing for object detection and collision avoidance as part of generating the steering and propulsion control output signals. In a further example, such sensor processing may involve sensor data that includes sensor data from

external sensors 2810, sensor data from payload monitoring sensors 3010, as well as sensor data from MB 1705. In another example embodiment, autonomous control system 3100 may be implemented with dedicated sensor processing circuitry that is deployed to quickly process what may be massive amounts of sensor data (*e.g.*, external sensor data, sensor data from internal sensors 3010a, 3010b, as well as sensor data from MB 1705) so that remaining control elements of autonomous control system 3100 (*e.g.*, other controllers or processors) may be programmatically configured to handle other tasks of the autonomous control system 3100 without the heavy sensor data processing tasks at hand facing the MAM 1725.

[0514] Exemplary displays 2815a, 2815b as well as side multi-element light panels 2825 on MAM 1725 provide Human-to-Machine (H2M) interfaces (also generally referenced as human-interaction interfaces on MAM 1725), such as LED/OLED displays located at the top and outside edges of the MAM component 1725 of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700. As shown in Figure 31, exemplary displays 2815a, 2815b are operatively coupled to and driven by autonomous control system 3100, which generates information to be shown on displays 2815a, 2815b. Similar information may be displayed on side multi-element light panels 2825 as part of an H2M interface. Such information may include, for example, transport information related to the status of the apparatus 1700 as explained below in more detail.

[0515] Exemplary displays may also be implemented as (or driven to display) navigational type indicators (*e.g.*, headlights, turn signals, etc.). Such navigational type indicators may also be implemented by, for example, front lighting elements 2820 disposed on a leading front edge of MAM 1725, side LED multi-light panel elements 2825 (also operatively coupled to the autonomous control system 3100) that may be used as indicators or multi-element panel displays for showing other information via text or images, and other lights (such as lights 3010a, 3010b) that may be disposed on MAM 1725 to focus on select areas or regions relative to the MAM 1725 itself. The displays and indicators are disposed on different surfaces and edges of the MAM 1725 such that the controller/processor of the MAM 1725 (*e.g.*, exemplary autonomous control system 3100) may direct information (*e.g.*, autonomous transport information such as navigational indications, status of components and/or the assembly apparatus 1700, status of the items/objects being shipped within apparatus 1700, and the like) to present on such displays and indicators as the H2M interfaces of the MAM 1725. As such, while a customer's mobile smartphone device may operate as an interface with the exemplary MALVT

bot apparatus 1700 (via M2M communications to control elements within apparatus 1700 or wireless transceivers within apparatus 1700), the H2M portion of the MAM 1725 may communicate to the outside world regarding the status of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700. For example, the H2M portion of the MAM 1725 may communicate that the system is operating properly, currently unavailable for use, requesting transition from AV (*i.e.*, autonomous vehicle operation mode) to remote operator mode, etc. These displays 2815a, 2815b provide information to human "neighbors" as the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 moves, senses or detects obstacles, interacts with facility systems (*e.g.*, automatic doors, elevators, lockable storage, and the like) via node-to-node communication, association with external nodes, and secure interactions with such systems while navigating its route to the customer including turns and stops, vehicle speed, as well as any instructional information needed by the customer for object receipt.

[0516] As noted above, the side LED multi-element light panels 2825 may be deployed on the MAM 1725 on sides of base cover 2800 or other parts of MAM 1725. A similar exemplary multi-element light panel 2900 may be deployed on the back of base cover as shown in Figure 29. Those skilled in the art will appreciate while exemplary light panels 2825 and 2900 are shown disposed on particular parts of the detachable modular housing of MAM 1725, such multi-element light panels may be disposed in other locations on the housing of MAM 1725 (*e.g.*, along a front edge or on other surfaces of base cover 2800 or on support 2805). These multi-element light panels 2825, 2900 are shown in Figure 31 to be operatively coupled to and driven by the autonomous control system 3100 to display relevant information, such as navigational indicators or other information via generated text, symbols, images, and the like.

[0517] Exemplary modular component power and data transport bus 3115 is disposed within the detachable modular housing of MAM 1725 as a part of a common bus that may run through the different modular components of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700. As such, modular component power and data transport bus 3115 provides command and data interfaces for display outputs (*e.g.*, via displays, LED indicators, or screens coupled to the bus 3115 on the MAM 1725 or other modular components of apparatus 1700), control output (*e.g.*, for sending control signals to control elements of MB 1705, APM 1710, and for sending control signals to control the environment within CSS 1720), and for sensor input from sensors on the MAM 1725 as well as sensors disposed in other modular components of apparatus 1700 (*e.g.*, sensors within

CSS 1720, sensors deployed on the MB 1705, and the like). The exemplary modular component power and data transport bus 3115 has a bottom side modular component electronics interface disposed on the bottom side of the detachable modular housing's base 2800 that mates to a corresponding modular component electronics interface on the modular CSS 1720. In more detail, such a bottom side modular component electronics interface has a power conduit input interface and a command and data communication interface. The power conduit input interface is operatively coupled to active electronic devices and systems that require electrical power, such as the autonomous control system 3100, the location circuitry 3110, the displays 2815a, 2815b, and the multi-element light panels 2825, 2900. In further embodiments, additional integration aspects may involve deploying a rigid "backbone" to the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 with two components carrying both power and control commands from the MAM 1725 to the MB 1705.

[0518] In an embodiment of exemplary MAM 1725, primary power for the active electronic devices and systems on MAM 1725 may be provided from an external power source, such as the power source available on APM 1710, through such a power conduit input interface on bus 3115. However, an embodiment of exemplary MAM 1725 may be deployed with a supplemental or secondary power source 3120 onboard the MAM 1725. Such a secondary power source 3120 as shown in Figure 31 may be disposed within the detachable modular housing, and operatively coupled to provide backup power to at least the autonomous control system 3100 (and other active electronic devices and systems on MAM 1725). Embodiments of secondary power source 3120 may be coupled to the power conduit input interface to also provide a backup supply of power to other modular components. Further embodiments of secondary power source 3120 may also have a power controller that may manage the supply of backup power from secondary power source 3120 (*e.g.,* monitoring power being provided through the power conduit input interface and switching to the backup power available from secondary power source 3120 when needed, charging secondary power source 3120 from available power provided through the power conduit input interface, adding the backup power from secondary power source 3120 to the primary power provided available through the power conduit input interface when needed or directed by autonomous control system 3100).

[0519] The exemplary MAM 1725 may also have one or more communication interfaces implemented as wireless radio transceivers (*e.g.,* wireless radio transceiver 3125) for near-

field/mid/long–range wireless connectivity coupled to the autonomous control system 3100 as needed using one or more communication formats (*e.g.,* Bluetooth, ZigBee, Wi-Fi, Cellular, WiLAN, and other wireless communication formats). Exemplary wireless radio transceiver 3125 may, for example, be implemented using dedicated wireless radio transceiver hardware (including antennas, receivers, transmitters, couplers, diplexers, frequency converters, modulators, and the like), a combination of hardware and software, or as a software defined radio (SDR)). As shown in Figure 31, exemplary wireless radio transceiver 3125 is disposed within the detachable modular housing of MAM 1725 and is operatively coupled to the autonomous control system 3100 where the wireless radio transceiver 3125 is operative to communicate with other wireless devices, such as an actuated component on the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 having wireless capability, a wireless communication interface deployed in another modular component of the apparatus 1700 (*e.g.,* MB 1705, APM 1710, CSS 1720), or a wireless device disposed outside of apparatus 1700 (*e.g.,* a smartphone operated as a type of mobile ID node or mobile master node by a delivery recipient, a wireless node integrated as part of facility systems (automatic doors, elevators, lockable storage, and the like)).

[0520] In an embodiment of MAM 1725, exemplary autonomous control system 3100 is programmatically adapted and configured when executing its program code governing operation of the MAM 1725 to be operative to at least receive sensor data from the external sensors 2810 disposed on the detachable modular housing; receive outside sensor data from additional sensors disposed on the modular MB 1705 (where such outside sensor data is received over the command and data communication interface of the bus 3115 or through wireless communications via wireless radio transceiver 3125); generate steering and propulsion control output signals based on the location data from the location circuitry 3110, the sensor data from the external sensors 2810, the outside sensor data, and destination information data maintained by the autonomous control system 3100 on where the MAM 1725 has been dispatched to go; generate autonomous transport information to provide on selective ones of the multi-element light panels 2825, 2900 and/or the displays 2815a, 2815b; and generate autonomous delivery information to provide on at least one of the multi-element light panels 2825, 2900 and/or the displays 2815a, 2815b.

[0521] Figure 32 is a diagram of an exemplary assembly 1700 of an exemplary modular mobility base (MB) unit component 1705 shown in conjunction with an exemplary modular

auxiliary power module (APM) 1710, an exemplary modular cargo storage system (CSS) 1720, and an exemplary modular mobile autonomy module (MAM) 1725 in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. As shown in Figure 32, each of the modular components of assembly 1700 are designed to be modular elements that may be pulled from a depot location or bot storage location to build an appropriate and compatible configuration of an exemplary MALVT bot assembly 1700 for a particular dispatched logistics operation and to appropriately support delivery/pickup of particular items/objects being picked up, delivered, or otherwise shipped by assembly 1700.

[0522] As a modular component itself and as part of an assembled bot assembly 1700, an exemplary MAM 1725 may communicate with various types of network devices through wireless communications. Figure 33 is a diagram of an exemplary system 3300 having exemplary MAM 1725 within an exemplary modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly 1700 where the MAM 1725 is in communication with an exemplary server 3305 and mobile external wireless nodes 3310, 3315 in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. As part of the assembly 1700, MAM 1725 may communicate with other modular components of assembly 1700 (*e.g.,* MB 1705, APM 1710, CSS 1720 and actuated elements therein) over a modular component power and data transport bus 3320 that extends across the different modular components of assembly 1700. And as part of assembly 1700, MAM 1725 may use its wireless radio transceiver 3125 as a wireless communication interface with which to communicate with external wireless node devices, such as backend server 3305 (whether directly through a wireless communication path or indirectly through one or more intermediary network devices), supplier mobile user access device 3310 (*e.g.,* a type of mobile ID node or mobile master node (such as a smartphone or handheld tablet device) operated by a supplier of the item/object being shipped within CSS 1720), delivery recipient mobile user access device 3315 (*e.g.,* a type of mobile ID node or mobile master node (such as a smartphone or handheld tablet device) operated by a intended or authorized delivery recipient for the item/object being shipped within CSS 1720); and a node-enabled logistics receptacle 3325 such as a node-enabled drop-box or parcel locker.

[0523] In such an exemplary system 3300, the MAM 1725 (through its wireless radio transceiver 3125) may be operative to receive command inputs from external wireless node devices as a remote control input or requested navigation assistance (*e.g.,* from the delivery supplier via supplier mobile user access device 3310 or from the delivery recipient via delivery

recipient mobile user access device 3315). For example, the delivery recipient may respond to a request from MAM 1725 with an updated location via a mapping location (as determined by the delivery recipient mobile user access device 3315) as a type of requested navigation assistance. Exemplary remote control input may come in the form of authorized signals that actuate cargo door 1715 on the assembly 1700 after the remote control input is verified to be from an authentic or authorized supplier or delivery recipient. In another example, the MAM 1725 (through its wireless radio transceiver 3125) may be also operative to request and receive navigation assistance from the backend server 3305 as the external wireless node, such as a changed delivery destination or remote control of the assembly 1700 via the backend server 3305 (or another external wireless node) to guide the assembly 1700 in a semi-autonomous mode.

[0524] An embodiment of exemplary MAM 1725 may also use its wireless radio transceiver 3125 to wirelessly communicate with different node-enabled packages (*e.g.*, packages being shipped that have an ID node or master node disposed on or within the package) or items being shipped (*e.g.*, items/objects where an ID node or master node is attached to or integrated as part of the item/object) within the interior of the CSS 1720 to capture the interior cargo status. For example, exemplary MAM 1725 through its autonomous control system 3100 and its wireless radio transceiver 3125 may operate as a master node that may detect, communicate with, and associate with different package ID nodes located within the CSS 1720 in a way to manage, track, and monitor the package or items within the CSS 1720 during transport aboard the assembly 1700.

[0525] In further embodiments, an exemplary embodiment of MAM 1725 may use its autonomous control system 3100 to generate and send various actuator control signals to different actuators deployed on an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700. In particular, the autonomous control system 3100 may be programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to generate an actuator control signal as part of a logistics operation once the location data from the location circuitry 3110 indicates the MAM 1725 is at a desired logistics location (*e.g.*, a pickup location, a delivery destination location, an origin location, and the like). In one example, such an actuator control signal may be a lock actuator control signal provided to an electro-mechanically actuated lock on the modular bot apparatus 1700 (*e.g.*, lock 2025 on cargo door 1715) that selectively secures and unsecures access to the payload area. In another example, the actuator control signal may be a handle actuator control signal provided to an

electro-mechanically actuated lock on the modular bot apparatus 1700 (*e.g.*, handle actuator 2225) that selectively secures and unsecures access to the payload area or unlocks the CSS 1720 from its connections to other modular components of apparatus 1700). In still other examples, the actuator control signal may be a door actuator control signal provided to a door actuator on the modular bot apparatus that selectively opens and closes access to the payload area; a belt actuator control signal provided to a belt actuator on the modular bot apparatus that selectively moves the item being shipped from within the payload area; a climate control signal for a climate control module 2210 attached to the modular CSS 1720, where climate control signal selectively sets or modifies an environment within the payload area by the output of the climate control module; a sliding arm actuator control signal provided to a sliding arm actuator within the payload area that responsively moves the item being shipped in response to the sliding arm actuator control signal; a grabbing arm actuator control signal provided to a grabbing arm actuator within the payload area that responsively grasps the item being shipped and moves the item being shipped in response to the grabbing arm actuator control signal; and a support base actuator control signal provided to a selectively adjustable suspension system on the MB 1705 that responsively changes an orientation state of the modular MB 1705 in response to the support base actuator control signal.

[0526] Authentication (AuthN) of different modular components that are assembled into an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 at assemble time helps to safeguard against cybersecurity attacks, and also to ensure or verify that the respective components are compatible and ready for operational use (in general or as it relates to a specific logistics operation for a particular item/object being shipped). For example, an exemplary MAM 1725 may go through depot level calibration/alignment to ensure the sensors or particular sensor array deployed on that MAM unit 1725 is ready for operation. Likewise, an exemplary MB unit 1705 may need to ensure that it has sufficient charge before being selected for a designated route (as well as calibration/alignment of sensors 215 used on the MB). At the time of "assembly", an embodiment may deploy an encryption-based secure handshaking or authentication process (*e.g.*, involving a challenge and response with security credentials and the like) to ensure the modular components being assembled into an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 are certified and ready for operation. In one embodiment, as assembly occurs, the autonomous control system 3100 in the MAM 1725 may perform such assembly authorization checks. In other modular

components, control elements disposed in the respective modular component may be operative to perform such assembly authorization checks. For example, other components may have built-in component-to-component logic dedicated for such assembly authorization purposes where interfacing components (*e.g.*, MB 1705 to APM 1710, APM 1710 to CSS 1720, etc.) use integral authorization/registration logic and interfaces having component identifiers and security credentials associated with the component identifiers.

[0527] Embodiments of component authentication (AuthN) and authorization (AuthZ) may also be used to enforce role-based control (RBAC) based on a number of factors that could be driven by business cases. For instance, if a component lease was determined to be expired during the process of AuthN & AuthZ as part of assembly of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700, a MAM 1725 involved in the AuthN & AuthZ may identify the relevant expired leased component and remove it from being assembled within a bot apparatus 10, but also notify a server about this so as to cause the server to initiate renewal in a fleet management system for the relevant expired leased component (or group of components).

[0528] Consistent with the above description of an embodiment of component authentication, Figure 34 is a diagram illustrating two exemplary modular components 3400a, 3400b as component 3400a is brought together with component 3400b during assembly. Each of exemplary components 3400a, 3400b may be representative of different ones of the exemplary modular MB 1705, exemplary modular APM 1710, exemplary modular CSS 1720, and exemplary modular MAM 1725 components that may be assembled in a component-to-component manner to assemble an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700. Those skilled in the art will also appreciate that exemplary components 3400a, 3400b may represent a detachable module (such as a climate control module or sensor pod) that may be added to a component of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700.

[0529] As shown in the embodiment illustrated in Figure 34, exemplary components 3400a and 3400b are each respectively equipped with exemplary integral authorization/registration logic that implements an authentication interface 3405a, 3405b that carries out the encryption-based secure handshaking or authentication process (*e.g.*, involving a challenge and response with security credentials) to ensure the modular components 3400a, 3400b are being assembled as authorized components. For example, authentication interface 3405a in modular component 3400a is operative to verify the other modular component 3400b

being attached is an authenticated modular component based upon component-to-component secure handshaking with the corresponding authentication interface 3405b on the other modular component 3400b. The authentication interfaces 3405a, 3405b may interact with each other via wired connections (*e.g.*, contacts disposed at predetermined locations of latches or edges of structure on each of the components 3400a, 3400b that come in contact during assembly) or via wireless detection and communication (*e.g.*, via node association techniques between ID node-based authentication interfaces 3405a, 3405b; via RFID tag interrogation and response between tagged components 3400a, 3400b where each can read the other's tag as an authentication interface, and the like). As such, exemplary authentication interfaces 3405a, 3405b may implement integral authorization/registration logic in circuitry interrogates the opposing interface and assess the interrogation results (*i.e.*, is the component being attached authenticated based on the component identifier and security credentials) via wired or wireless handshaking.

[0530] The authentication interface 3405a, 3405b of each of the components 3400a, 3400b may store and maintain a component identifier 3410a, 3410b along with security credentials 3415a, 3415b. The component identifier 3410a, 3410b at least identifies the respective component 3400a, 3400b and may include information on the component's current capabilities (*e.g.*, charge status, etc.). The security credentials 3415a, 3415b on each component relate to the permission to use the respective component as well as a verification of compatibility of the respective components for a general or particular purpose (*e.g.*, an assigned logistics operation for one or more items being shipped) based on rules and capabilities for the respective component. Such rules as reflected in a component's security credentials may involve regulatory rules, contractual rules, and/or safety rules particular to that component. Likewise, the capabilities of the particular component may also be reflected in the security credentials (or the component identifier) where such capabilities may involve one or more logistical constraints, size/weight limitations, readiness limitations (*e.g.*, performance threshold(s) for the particular component in an anticipated deployment operation, and the like). For example, such logistical constraint information may include information on a determined work environment for the particular component and identified as part of a security credential maintained as part of the authentication interface on that component. The size limitations may be information as to the size of the particular component or its payload area, while the weight limitations may be

information as to the weight of the particular component or the weight of what it may carry as payload.

[0531] As such, component-to-component authentication may be implemented with secure handshaking between authentication interface 3405a of component 3400a and authentication interface 3405b of component 3400b as component 3400a and 3400b are essentially brought together during assembly. Such a secure handshaking/authentication process may involve issuing a challenge by one authentication interface, to which a response with security credentials (and component identifier in many cases) will be sent by the other authentication interface. In more detail, such component-to-component secure handshaking may have one authentication interface making a comparison of the security credential response from the authentication interface on the other modular component to a security credential maintained as part of the authentication interface on the component making the comparison. The result of such a comparison indicates the authentication status (*e.g.*, that other modular component being attached to the latching points of one component is verified to be an authenticated modular component based upon the comparison).

[0532] In general, the authentication result of an exemplary component-to-component secure handshaking between authentication interfaces may be stored by a respective component's authentication interface and may be reported to a control element (*e.g.*, autonomous control system 3100 of MAM 1725) so that the apparatus at a system level is aware of any authentication issues (*e.g.*, when a component has been verified to be incompatible with an assigned or dispatched operation involving the assembly using that component). Thus, a component, such as component 3400a, may record an authentication status identifier to reflect the authentication process result, and may further transmit such an authentication status identifier to a control element identifying that components 3400a and 3400a are not compatible and alerting the control element of the authentication issue.

[0533] For example, when an exemplary MAM 1725 is such a component involved in component-to-component authentication (or performs an authentication or verification check of the different components assembled as part of apparatus assembly 1700) and one or more of the components are not authenticated, the autonomous control system 3100 in MAM 1725 may be further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to cause the wireless radio

transceiver 3125 to notify a server (*e.g.*, a dispatch server, depot server, or backend server such as server 3205) of the unauthenticated component(s)).

[0534] As such, an embodiment of exemplary MAM 1725 may provide a combination of human interface displays, sensing for the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700, with built-in battery support, and serves as the "head" or "hat" control element of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus or assembly 1700.

Integration of MALVT Components into the Bot Apparatus as an Assembly

[0535] From the main components of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 described above, an exemplary modular assembly process or method may take place when the MB 1705, APM 1710, CSS 1720, and MAM 1725 units/components are put together and mechanically integrated into a desired an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700. Embodiments of such an assembly process may take place without a pre-determined dispatch operation, or may take place in an on-demand manner so that a particularly configured MALVT bot apparatus assembly is put together for a particular logistics operation for specific items being shipped.

[0536] As an assembly 1700, the different modular components described above (*i.e.*, exemplary MB 1705, APM 1710, CSS 1720, and MAM 1725) may be combined component-by-component to have a common bus through each of the modular components. For example, as noted above, each of exemplary MB 1705, APM 1710, CSS 1720, and MAM 1725 has an interface to a common modular component power and data transport bus, where the interface providing a power conduit for each modular component and a command and data interface conduit for each modular component. Such a common modular component power and data transport bus may also provide the power conduit and command and data interface conduit to detachable modules that may be attached to modular components, such as a climate control module, removable sensor pod, and the like.

[0537] As noted above, modular components that attach to each other as part of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may be authenticated or verified as being authorized and/or compatible with a particular task for the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700. For example, an embodiment of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may have its respective modular mobility base, modular auxiliary power module, modular cargo storage system, and

modular mobile autonomy control module being authenticated modular components based upon a component-to-component secure handshaking between proximately attached ones of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module. The component-to-component secure handshaking, as explained above relative to Figure 34, may be accomplished with a challenge and security credential response between proximately attached ones of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module. As such, the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module may be verified as authenticated modular components for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly 1700 as each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module are assembled into the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly, as each of these modular components connect to proximate others of the modular components, and authentication interfaces that implement integral authorization/registration logic that performs encryption-based secure handshaking to ensure the different modular components are authorized components.

[0538] In more detail, the component-to-component secure handshaking may be based upon one or more regulatory rules, one or more contractual rules, and one or more safety rules as reflected in the component identifier and security credentials used in the handshaking. For example, regulatory rules may only permit certain types of modular components within certain buildings or locations. Contractual rules may limit what modular components may be retrieved and used as part of a dispatched bot apparatus 1700 (*e.g.*, components may be leased with use and time limits on authorized use of such components). Safety rules may also limit types of modular components that may be used in particular locations or for particular dispatched tasks.

[0539] In a further embodiment, the component-to-component secure handshaking may be based upon logistical constraint information (reflected in the security credentials) on a determined work environment for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly. For example, such a logistical constraint information being identified as part of the security credential response provided by a challenged modular component during assembly. Exemplary logistical constraint information may, for example, identify a size limitation for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (or a particular component), identify a weight limitation for

the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (or a particular component), or identify a readiness limitation for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly. Such a readiness limitation may indicate or reflect performance thresholds for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (or a particular component) in an anticipated deployment operation of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly. For example, a readiness limitation may require a threshold level of charge on a particular component or a calibration status indicating the component (or assembly) has sensors that have certified accuracy in their operation.

[0540] An embodiment of the exemplary modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly 1700 may be operative to respond in a particular manner in the face of component being within the assembly 1700 that is not authenticated or otherwise not verified compatible for use within the assembly 1700. For example, the autonomous controller of the modular mobile autonomy control module in the exemplary MAM 1725 of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly may be further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to notify a server over its wireless radio transceiver (*e.g.*, wireless radio transceiver 3125 that one or more of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system are not authenticated modular components based upon the component-to-component secure handshaking between the modular mobile autonomy control module and each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system. As part of or in addition to such notification, the autonomous controller of the modular mobile autonomy control module in the exemplary MAM 1725 of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly may be further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to request a replacement component for the particular modular mobility base, modular auxiliary power module, and/or modular cargo storage system that are not authenticated modular components.

[0541] In another embodiment, a response to finding one of the modular components being not authentic or verified compatible may involve more of a local message displayed on the MAM of the apparatus 1700. For example, the autonomous controller of the modular mobile autonomy control module may be further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to generate a component replacement request message on at least one of the human interaction interfaces disposed on the detachable modular housing (*e.g.*, on the front display 2815a, the rear display 2815b, and/or one of the side multi-element light panels 2825) when one

or more of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system are not authenticated modular components based upon the component-to-component secure handshaking between the modular mobile autonomy control module and each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system. Such a displayed component replacement request message may request a replacement component for the one or more of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system that are not authenticated modular components. This may be useful to depot technicians that may be assembling a particular exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 in response to a particular dispatch request from a dispatch server or in a process of creating an exemplary bot apparatus assembly 1700 ready to be dispatched for a later defined task (as reflected in a later received dispatch request from the dispatch server).

[0542] As explained above relative to Figure 34, such an authentication result of an exemplary component-to-component secure handshaking between authentication interfaces may be stored by a respective component's authentication interface and reported to a control element (*e.g.,* autonomous control system 3100 of MAM 1725) so that the apparatus at a system level is aware of any authentication issues (*e.g.,* when a component has been verified to be incompatible with an assigned or dispatched operation involving the assembly using that component). Thus, at the system level, a further embodiment of the autonomous controller of the modular mobile autonomy control module of the bot apparatus 1700 may be further programmatically adapted and configured to receive such an authentication result from one of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system. The received authentication result indicates either that all components are authentic and verified compatible, or that at least one of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system are not authenticated modular components based upon the component-to-component secure handshaking between proximate ones of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module. In response to an authentication result indicating an unauthentic component, the autonomous controller of the modular mobile autonomy control module of the bot apparatus 1700 may be further programmatically adapted and configured to notify a server over the wireless radio transceiver on the MAM that one or more of the modular

mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system are not authenticated modular components based upon the authentication result received, and may also generate a component replacement request message on at least one of the human interaction interfaces disposed on the detachable modular housing based upon the authentication result received.

[0543] While the authentication process described above involves component-to-component secure handshaking of proximately disposed and connected ones of the modular components, an embodiment may have the MAM 1725 of the bot apparatus 1700 interrogate each of the different modular components of the bot apparatus 1700 itself. This may involve the MAM's own authentication interface communicating with different authentication interfaces on the different modular components of the bot apparatus 1700 where the component-to-component authentication process is now between the MAM specifically and each of the other modular components of the bot apparatus 1700. This may be accomplished with authentication interfaces being coupled to the common modular component power and data transport bus (such as bus 3115) or with authentication interfaces communicating wirelessly and performing secure handshaking via, for example, node association techniques. In this way, the authentication interactions may be conducted between the MAM 1725 and each of the other modular components of the bot apparatus assembly via a component-to-component secure handshaking between the MAM 1725 and each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system similar to that done between other proximate modular components as explained above. Thus, such a component-to-component secure handshaking may involve a challenge and security credential response between the modular mobile autonomy control module and each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system; may involve regulatory rules, contractual rules, and/or safety rules; and may be based upon logistical constraint information on a determined work environment for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (or particular modular component) as explained above. The autonomous controller of the MAM may also be programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to respond with server notifications, and component replacement requests as explained above (*e.g.*, telling the server to initiate the replacement component swap out or generate a local component replacement request message on

one of the human interaction interfaces disposed on the detachable modular housing of the MAM).

[0544] Additionally, as an assembled exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700, different components of the apparatus may have controlled actuators consistent with the description above. For example, the modular mobility base 1705 may have a set of suspension orientation actuators (*e.g.*, part of selectively adjustable suspension system 1840) disposed within or as part of the mobile base platform 1800, where the suspension orientation actuators can responsively alter an orientation of the mobile base platform 1800 relative to a ground surface on which the mobile base platform 1800 is supported in response to a support base orientation control command generated by the autonomous controller (*e.g.*, autonomous control system 3100) and provided to the mobility controller over the common modular component power and data transport bus. In another example, the modular auxiliary power module may have a cargo door actuator (*e.g.*, actuator 2070) disposed on the base adapter platform 2005, where the cargo door actuator can responsively move the articulating cargo door 1715 in response to a cargo door control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to a door actuator driver on the base adapter platform over the common modular component power and data transport bus. In still another example, the modular auxiliary power module may have a belt actuator disposed on the base adapter platform 1800, where the belt actuator can responsively move an actuated belt surface 2080b disposed on the base adapter platform 2005 in response to a belt control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to a belt actuator driver on the base adapter platform over the common modular component power and data transport bus. In yet another example, the modular auxiliary power module may have a ramp belt actuator (similar to the above-described belt actuator) disposed on the articulating cargo door 1715, where the ramp belt actuator can responsively move an actuated ramp belt surface 2080a disposed on the articulating cargo door 1715 in response to a ramp belt control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to a ramp belt actuator driver on the articulating cargo door over the common modular component power and data transport bus.

[0545] Some of the controlled actuators on bot apparatus assembly 1700 involve locks, such as locks for the cargo door 1715 (whether disposed on the APM 1710 or on the CSS 1720) and the locking handle 2115 for the CSS 1720 itself. In more detail, the modular auxiliary power module further may have an actuated electro-mechanical lock that responsively secures and

unsecures the articulating cargo door 1715 in response to a door lock control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to the actuated electro-mechanical lock on the modular auxiliary power module over the common modular component power and data transport bus. Likewise, another embodiment may have the modular cargo storage system having an actuated electro-mechanical lock that responsively secures and unsecures the articulating cargo door 1715 in response to a door lock control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to the actuated electro-mechanical lock on the modular cargo storage system over the common modular component power and data transport bus. As for the locking handle 2115 on the CSS 1720, an exemplary embodiment may have the modular cargo storage system having an actuated electro-mechanical lock that responsively actuates the set of actuated latches (*e.g.*, latches 2110a, 2110b) in response to a latch locking control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to the actuated electro-mechanical lock on the modular cargo storage system over the common modular component power and data transport bus.

[0546] In a further example embodiment, the modular cargo storage system may have a detachable climate control module (*e.g.*, module 2210) disposed within the modular cargo storage system that can responsively alter an environment of the payload support area to maintain a desired environment within the payload support area in response to a climate control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to the climate control module on the modular cargo storage system over the common modular component power and data transport bus.

[0547] In still further embodiments, the autonomous controller of the MAM 1725 may control actuation of different object or item manipulation systems, such as actuated sliding arms and/or actuated grabbing arms that may be implemented as part of the CSS 1720 or on the APM 1710 as part of the bot apparatus assembly. For example, the modular cargo storage system may have an actuated sliding arm that responsively moves the item being shipped within the payload support area in response to a sliding arm control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to the actuated sliding arm on the modular cargo storage system over the common modular component power and data transport bus. In another example, the modular cargo storage system may have an actuated grabbing arm that responsively obtains and moves the item being shipped within the payload support area in response to a grabbing arm control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to the actuated grabbing arm on

the modular cargo storage system over the common modular component power and data transport bus.

[0548] Sensor data may also be provided across and through different modular components of the exemplary bot apparatus assembly 1700. For example, the modular mobile autonomy control module may have one or more payload monitoring sensors (*e.g.*, sensors 3180) disposed on a bottom side of the detachable modular housing and operatively coupled to the autonomous controller. Such payload monitoring sensors generate payload sensor data on the payload support area and provide the payload sensor data to the autonomous controller so that the autonomous controller can monitor the payload sensor data and, as such, monitor what is going on in the payload area as well as monitor conditions of the item being shipped within the payload area. Such payload monitoring sensors 3180 on the MAM 1725 may be implemented in detachable sensor pods that are operatively coupled to the autonomous controller while assembling the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly. In an embodiment, such a detachable sensor pod may include some or all of the payload monitoring sensors and be of a predetermined sensor type correlating to an assigned dispatch use profile maintained by the autonomous controller for the bot apparatus assembly 1700. Such an assigned dispatch use profile may be maintained by the MAM (*e.g.*, the autonomous control system 3100 on MAM 1725) as a data on an assigned dispatch operation for the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 (which may be sent to the autonomous control system 3100 from a server, such as a dispatch server, as part of a dispatch command related to the particular assigned dispatch operation for the bot apparatus assembly 1700).

[0549] Likewise, one or more of the autonomy module sensors 2810 may be implemented in a detachable sensor pod attached to the detachable modular housing and operatively coupled to the autonomous controller while assembling the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly. Such a detachable sensor pod may include some or all of sensors 2810 and include sensors of a predetermined sensor type correlating to the assigned dispatch use profile maintained by the autonomous controller.

[0550] An embodiment of modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly 1700 may have the autonomous controller of its MAM unit being further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to receive such an assigned dispatch use profile for the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 from a server (*e.g.*, server 3300), where the assigned dispatch

use profile identifies a type of each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module used as part of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly 1700. In more detail, an embodiment may have such an assigned dispatch use profile for the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 providing authentication information used for verifying an authentication status for each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module used as part of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly. In other words, such authentication information may include security credentials and/or component identifier information used when verifying an authentication status for each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module used as part of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

[0551] As assembled into an exemplary modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly 1700, the autonomous controller of the MAM (*e.g.*, autonomous control system 3100 of MAM 1725) may be further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to wirelessly receive a remote command input for the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 from an external wireless node through the wireless radio transceiver interface (*e.g.*, wireless radio transceiver 3125 on MAM 1725). For example and as shown in Figure 33, such a remote command input may be a remote control input from a delivery supplier (*e.g.*, remote control wireless signals sent from supplier mobile user access device 3310) or may be a remote control input from a delivery recipient (*e.g.*, remote control wireless signals sent from delivery recipient mobile user access device 3315).

[0552] And as assembled into an exemplary modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly 1700, the autonomous controller of the MAM (*e.g.*, autonomous control system 3100 of MAM 1725) may be further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to wirelessly request and receive navigation assistance from a backend server (*e.g.*, server 3300) as a type of remote control input. This may come in the form of updated routing information, for example, but may also come in the form of remotely supplied control signals for controlling the propulsion and steering systems on the MB of the assembly 1700, or control signals described above that initiate any of the actuators disposed on the assembly 1700 (*e.g.*, actuating the cargo door 1715 to unlock and open, actuating the suspension system on the MB to tilt and initiate movement of

the item being shipped out of the CSS, actuating any of the object manipulation systems, and the like). In like manner, the autonomous controller may also be further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to wirelessly request and receive navigation assistance and authorized remote control input from an authorized handheld wireless user access device as the external wireless node (*e.g.*, from a bot depot technician operating a smartphone to initiate unlocking and opening of the cargo door 1715, etc.).

[0553] In a further embodiment, the assembled modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly 1700 may be configured and operative for enhanced remote operation for last leg delivery options using the assembly 1700. For example, the autonomous controller of the MAM (*e.g.*, autonomous control system 3100 of MAM 1725) may be further programmatically adapted and configured to receive location information from location circuitry 3110; detect when a current location of the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700 is within a threshold distance from a destination point according to an assigned dispatch use profile for the modular autonomous bot apparatus 1700. Once within the threshold distance, the autonomous controller is then operative in this embodiment to transmit a remote control request over the wireless radio transceiver interface to the external wireless node (*e.g.*, a courier mobile external wireless node similar to node 3310 shown in Figure 33); receive a series of remote control command inputs from the external wireless node through the wireless radio transceiver 3125 on the MAM 1725; generate responsive steering control commands and responsive propulsion control command based upon the series of remote control command inputs; and transmit the responsive steering control commands and the responsive propulsion control commands to the mobility controller 1825 on MB 1705 through the common modular component power and data transport bus 3115 for receipt by the mobility controller 1825, which allows the external wireless node to control navigation of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly 1700 during a final segment of a deployment operation of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly 1700 as the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly 1700 moves to the destination point.

[0554] A further enhancement may have an embodiment capturing and forwarding sensor data gathered during this last leg or final segment of the deployment operation. For example, the autonomous controller (*e.g.*, autonomous control system 3100 in MAM 1725) may be further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to receive base feedback sensor data from the MB 1705 during the final segment of the deployment operation of the modular

autonomous bot apparatus assembly 1700 as the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly 1700 moves to the destination point; receive onboard sensor data from the autonomy module sensors 2810 during the final segment of the deployment operation of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly as the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly moves to the destination point; and transmit at least a subset of the received base feedback sensor data and the received onboard sensor data to the external wireless node as remote navigation feedback information.

[0555] In still another enhanced embodiment, the captured sensor data may be used to update onboard routing information with higher definition mapping information to maintain locally on the assembled apparatus 1700. For example, the autonomous controller (*e.g.*, autonomous control system 3100 in MAM 1725) may be further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to update onboard routing information on the autonomous controller with at least a portion of the received base feedback sensor data and the received onboard sensor data. Such onboard routing information may be maintained by the autonomous controller in a database of mapping information. As such, the portion of the received base feedback sensor data and the received onboard sensor data that update the database of mapping information may provide higher definition information than exists within the database of mapping information for the final segment of the deployment operation.

[0556] Further embodiments may deploy and use additional features as part of the modular components that make up the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700. For example, an embodiment may use an exemplary novel latching mechanism to ensure that components are aligned and coupled for proper operation. Figure 35 is a diagram illustrating further details of an exemplary latching and interface configuration used with another embodiment of an exemplary cargo storage system component (CSS) in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Referring now to Figure 35, exemplary CSS 3500 (similar to exemplary CSS 1720) is shown in more detail having side walls 3510, latching system 3505, and latch engagements 3520, 3525 extending from a top and bottom of exemplary CSS 3500. In this embodiment of exemplary CSS 3500, an embodiment of exemplary latching system 3505 may serve a dual purpose as a "bus" 3515 for transmission and protection of system power and data (*e.g.*, integrating a modular component power and data transport bus 2250 as shown in Figure 22B as part of latching system 3505), providing electrical connectivity between the main components of the exemplary

MALVT bot apparatus 1700. In one embodiment, the latch 3505 may be built into the side wall 3510 of the CSS cargo unit 3500, and secured with a key once final assembly is completed, as shown in Figure 35. An embodiment may implement such a "smart latch" 3505 as being streamlined and integrated with the wall 3510 of CSS 3500 as much as possible to facilitate compact folding of the collective walls 3510 that form and make up CSS 3500 so that CSS 3500 may be more easily stowed while avoiding having the structure of the latch 3505 protruding to obstruct or otherwise impede the change from an assembled state to the folded storage state. On the interior wall opposite the smart latch 3505, a series of locking tabs 3600, 3605 (as shown in Figure 36) may be built into the top and bottom of the interior of CSS 3500. These locking tabs 3600, 3605 are coupling elements that enables and allows the MAM 1725 and APM 1710 to be mechanically and removably fastened and secured on the side opposite the smart latch 3505 (as well as latch engagements 3520, 3525), providing tension once the latch 3505 is secured.

[0557] In another embodiment, the "smart latch" 3505 shown in Figure 35 (which may be implemented using exemplary locking handle 2115 shown in Figure 22B) may be activated via human control when the lock mechanism of latch 3505 (handle 2115) is rotated. In a further embodiment, the latch 3505 may be electronically activated via M2M communication with an actuator that may be part of latch 3505 (*e.g.*, via handle actuator 2225 as shown in Figure 22B) and under the control of MB 1705 or MAM 1725. An enhanced use in an embodiment of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may have such a smart latch automatically react and activate under certain detected circumstances. For example, the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may sense and adverse operation and enter into a failsafe mode (*e.g.*, due to impending crash, power failure, upon sending a request for intervention or human assistance, etc.), the smart latch 3505 may be automatically activated into an unlock mode to facilitate this failsafe operation. However, in other embodiments, conditions may be detected by MAM 1725 where the smart latch 3505 may be automatically activated to keep latch 3505 in a locked state to prevent unauthorized access to and/or removal of CSS 3500 (and any contents within CSS 3500).

[0558] In more detail, such an automatic failsafe mode using an exemplary smart latching feature may have the autonomous controller (*e.g.*, autonomous control system 3100 in MAM 1725) being further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to receive base feedback sensor data from the mobility controller 1825 (*e.g.*, from sensors 1825 on MA 1705 as relayed to autonomous control system 3100 on MAM 1725 through the common

modular component power and data transport bus 3320 shown in Figure 33 for the assembly 1700); receive the onboard sensor data from the autonomy module sensors 2810; detect an adverse approaching impact based upon the base feedback sensor data and the onboard sensor data; generate a failsafe mode unlock signal for the actuated electro-mechanical lock disposed on the modular cargo storage system in response to the detected adverse approaching impact; and transmit the failsafe mode unlock signal to the actuated electro-mechanical lock on the modular cargo storage system over the common modular component power and data transport bus 3320 to cause the actuated electro-mechanical lock to unlock the set of actuated set of latches 2110a, 2110b in response to the detected adverse approaching impact.

[0559] In another example where the adverse operation relates to apparatus power levels, the autonomous controller may be further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to detect an adverse power level of the auxiliary power source below a failure threshold power level; generate a failsafe mode unlock signal for the actuated electro-mechanical lock disposed on the modular cargo storage system in response to the detected adverse power level of the auxiliary power source 2035 (and/or secondary power source 3120); and transmit the failsafe mode unlock signal to the actuated electro-mechanical lock on the modular cargo storage system over the common modular component power and data transport bus to cause the actuated electro-mechanical lock to unlock the set of actuated set of latches 2110a, 2110b in response to the detected adverse power level of the auxiliary power source.

[0560] In still another example where the adverse operation is related to a situation where assistance has been requested, the autonomous controller may be further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to generate a failsafe mode unlock signal for the actuated electro-mechanical lock disposed on the modular cargo storage system after transmitting a request for assistance to a server (*e.g.,* server 3300) or to an external wireless node (*e.g.,* supplier mobile user access device 3310 or delivery recipient mobile user access device 3315); and transmit the failsafe mode unlock signal to the actuated electro-mechanical lock on the modular cargo storage system over the common modular component power and data transport bus to cause the actuated electro-mechanical lock to unlock the set of actuated set of latches 2110a, 2110b in response to the detected adverse power level of the auxiliary power source.

[0561] Further embodiments of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may be assembled, dispatched, and/or deployed with additional features that allow for transporting

multiple different items/objects and where some may require different environmental environments than others. For example, the CSS unit component 3500 (or CSS 1720) used as part of such an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may be deployed with one or more detachable organized separator/supports, such as shelving separators 3608, that partitions the interior cargo space within the CSS unit into compartments. As shown in Figure 36, exemplary shelving separator 3608 partitions the payload area within CSS 3500 into different compartments where each may be serviced by different climate control modules (such as exemplary climate control module 2210). In such an embodiment, the shelving may take advantage of the power and data bus on the CSS interior (*e.g.,* bus 2250) as needed, for example, interior lighting, separate power connections for climate control systems (*e.g.,* multiple exemplary detachable climate control modules 2210 deployed in different partitioned compartments of the payload area for separate objects destined for different recipients, for objects requiring different environments for transport, and the like). Such climate control systems may be detachably fixed to the walls of the CSS or to shelving separators 3608 within the payload area.

[0562] In a further assembly embodiment, the standing and tilting functionalities of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may be utilized in delivery scenarios where the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 is delivering to a drop box, parcel locker, or apartment drop-off location. Figure 37 is a diagram of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 in a configuration having a cargo door 1715 extended and in a forward tilted orientation in accordance with an embodiment of the invention (*e.g.,* by activating an exemplary selectively adjustable suspension system 1840 with actuators to achieve a desired tilt configuration), while Figure 38 is a diagram of the MALVT bot apparatus 1700 in a configuration having a cargo door 1715 extended and in a "standup" mode orientation in accordance with an embodiment of the invention (by activating an exemplary selectively adjustable suspension system 1840 with actuators to achieve a desired lift configuration). As shown in Figures 37 and 38, embodiments of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may deploy articulated movements of the MB 1705 (and the assembled other components of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus) using tilting/lifting modes and configurations (as activated with particular actuators within MB 1705 as discussed above).

[0563] In a further embodiment, alternate lifting mechanisms may be used as part of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (*e.g.,* part of selectively adjustable suspension system 1840),

such as a "scissor-lift" type mechanism mentioned previously. Figure 39 is a front view diagram of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 3900 (similar to apparatus 1700) in a configuration having a cargo door 1715 extended and in a lifted orientation using articulating scissor-lift 3905 that responsively lifts and lowers the base of MB 1705 (separate from the wheels 1805 and their wheelbase). Figure 40 shows the same exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 3900 but from a rear view perspective. An apparatus 3900 using such a scissor-lift 3905 may provide a higher lift capability, such as might be needed for use cases where the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 3900 is interfacing with other vehicles, building access doors, steps, platforms, etc.

MALVT Bot Apparatus Storage & Assembly Process

[0564] In further embodiments, the process of assembling an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus from storage may be implemented in a variety of ways. In some embodiments, some of all of the respective modular components that make up an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 stored in a bot storage location or depot where modular components may be selected for inclusion within an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700.

[0565] An embodiment may deploy a pre-assembly process for checkout/certification before going on-road ("Health Checks") as part of an assembled exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (*e.g.,* activation of predetermined features on the component prior to and once assembled and integrated as part of the bot apparatus), management systems for handling processes when dealing with large scale fleets; and the definition of particular calibration/periodic maintenance required for particular components. For example, an exemplary MB 1705 may have its sensors 1815 certified to be calibrated and indicative of a level of readiness for a particular assigned logistics operation (*e.g.,* a logistics operation associated with dispatch command and an assigned dispatch use profile used by a bot assembly built for or compatible with that logistics operation). Other sensors deployed on different components of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 make likewise be certified as calibrated in order to meet a readiness limitation for the assembly 1700 (or component itself). In another example, an exemplary APM 1710 may have its power source charged to a threshold level in order to be certified as ready for deployment (*i.e.,* indicative of a level of readiness for a particular assigned logistics operation).

[0566] Another embodiment may have modular components or detachable modules/pods that may be used as authorized parts of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 (*e.g.*, different sized CSS units 1720, different types of detachable climate control modules 2210, removable sensor pods 3005a with different numbers of sensors and/or types of sensors in the pod, different sized deployable separators 3608 to use within a CSS 1720, and the like) dispensed from a vending unit, machine or other type of modular bot component depot when assembling an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus. Such dispensing may be manually initiated by a depot technician involved in assembling the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus or, in some embodiments, dispensing from the vending machine or depot system may be initiated by an assembly server that has received a request for the assembly of the particular exemplary MALVT bot apparatus and coordinated with both the depot technician via M2H messaging as well as M2M communication with the vending machine. For example, such a vending machine may manage and store different types of modular components and detachable modules/pods in secure compartments of a larger storage locker system that may be manually or automatically unlocked so that the relevant modular component, detachable module, pod, or separator may be dispensed from its storage location and used when assembling the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700. The process of assembling the dispensed components into an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700, including AuthN and AuthZ for proper authorized and secure operation may also involve removal of particular modular bot components from a fleet/inventory usage (*e.g.*, for repairs, calibration, charging (*e.g.*, when stored in the vending unit), and the like). Likewise, particular modular bot components that may be leased for use as part of a fleet may be removed from the fleet/inventory (*e.g.*, from within storage in the bot storage facility or within a vending machine) when the lease expires for that component, which may prompt notification to renew such a lease and enable continued use of the component without incurring the disruptive interruption of physical removal of the component from the inventor.

[0567] In some assembly embodiments, assembly of the bot apparatus may be proactive (*i.e.*, building an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly from different modular components ahead of time prior to the bot apparatus assembly being assigned to a particular logistics operation). Other embodiments may implement more of an "on-demand" or reactive assembly of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 in a manner that achieves an authenticated and verified compatible bot apparatus assembly 1700 for a particular logistics

operation consistent with an assigned dispatch use profile for the bot apparatus assembly 1700. Figure 42 is a diagram of an exemplary system involved in assembling an exemplary modular autonomous logistics transport vehicle apparatus (MALVT bot apparatus) in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Referring now to Figure 42, exemplary system 4200 is shown with a dispatch server 4205, an assembly server 4210, a vending system 4220 located at a bot storage depot location 4215 and serviced by a depot technician operating a mobile wireless node 4225. In general, exemplary dispatch server 4205 (which may be implemented as a networked server or a wireless node that is operated by a third party or dispatching entity to assign a particular assembly 1700 for a particular logistics operation) may receive a dispatch request related to a particular dispatch logistics operation requiring an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 to facilitate pickup and/or delivery of one or more items/objects. In this example, exemplary dispatch server 4205 may initiate building of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 for the logistics operation with an assembly request sent to exemplary assembly server 4210, which may manage inventory and direct one or both of vending system 4220 and the depot technician operating a mobile wireless node 4225 as part of assembling the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 for the logistics operation. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that embodiments of system 4200 may implement dispatch server 4205 and assembly server 4210 with a common server system supporting dispatch requests and coordinating the assembly operation that produces a particular exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 for a specific logistics operation (or type of logistics operation).

[0568] Figure 41 is a flow diagram of an exemplary method on-demand building of a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly that transports an item being shipped in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Referring now to Figure 41 and the exemplary assembly environment of system 4200 shown in Figure 42, exemplary method 4100 begins at step 4105 by receiving a request for assembly of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly by an assembly server (such as assembly server 4210). At step 4110, method 4100 proceeds with the assembly server generating an assigned dispatch use profile that identifies a type of each of a modular mobility base, a modular auxiliary power module, a modular cargo storage system, and a modular mobile autonomy control module to be used as authorized parts of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly based on the request for assembly. An exemplary embodiment of an assigned dispatch use profile 4230 may be implemented as a data structure

maintaining data on such a profile of information about the dispatched logistics operation for the desired bot apparatus assembly, what will be transported, the types of modular components needed in the bot apparatus assembly for the logistics operation, and authentication information about such modular components for use in verifying compatibility of the components/assembly with the logistics operation and authenticating the components/assembly may be used for the logistics operation from a permission standpoint.

[0569] Steps 4115-4125 have exemplary method 4100 gathering selected modular components for assembly into the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly. This may involve, for example, the assembly server causing each of the selected modular mobility base, the selected modular auxiliary power module, the selected modular cargo storage system, and the selected modular mobile autonomy control module to be pulled from a modular bot component storage (such as component storage areas within bot storage depot location 4215 or from vending system 4220 at the bot storage depot location 4215) as according to the assigned dispatch use profile (or a desired logistics operation identified in the assigned dispatch use profile). For example, such an action may involve communications between assembly server 4210 and the mobile wireless node 4225 operated by the depot technician assigned to the build of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 shown in Figure 42. As such, the depot technician operating the mobile wireless node 4225 may gather an exemplary CSS component selected based upon a cargo size characteristic for the desired logistics operation (*e.g.*, the logistics operation requires transport of a relatively large object that requires a larger sized CSS modular component), or based upon an organized storage characteristic for the desired logistics operation (*e.g.*, the logistics operation requires transport of multiple items that need to be physically separated during transport or need to separately climate controlled with different desired environments for the different items being shipped).

[0570] Selection of the different modular components, as indicated in the assigned dispatch use profile, may be based upon a variety of characteristics of the particular module and the particular logistics operation desired for the bot assembly 1700. For example, the selected modular cargo storage system from the modular bot component storage may be selected based upon an environmental storage characteristic for the desired logistics operation. In another example, the selected modular mobility base from the modular bot component storage may be selected based upon an anticipated path for the desired logistics operation, or based upon a base

sensor requirement for the desired logistics operation. In still another example, the selected modular auxiliary power module from the modular bot component storage may be selected based upon a power requirement for the desired logistics operation, or based upon an articulated delivery assistance requirement for the desired logistics operation. And in yet another example, the selected modular mobile autonomy control module from the modular bot component storage may be selected based upon an autonomy module sensor requirement for the desired logistics operation, display capacity for H2M communications, and the like.

[0571] Thus, method 4100 proceeds at step 4115 by detachably mounting a selected modular mobility base to a selected modular auxiliary power module using an interlocking alignment interface disposed on each of the selected modular mobility base (*e.g.*, interlocking alignment interface 1810 on MB 1705) and the selected modular auxiliary power module (*e.g.*, an alignment channel or latches on APM 1710). At step 4120, method 4100 proceeds by detachably mounting a selected modular cargo storage system to a top of the selected modular auxiliary power module, and then at step 4125, method 4100 proceeds by detachably mounting a selected modular mobile autonomy control module to a top of the selected modular cargo storage system. Then at step 4130, method 4100 secures the selected modular cargo storage system to each of the selected modular auxiliary power module and the selected modular mobile autonomy control module using a locking handle (*e.g.*, handle 2115) actuating at least one set of actuated latches (*e.g.*, latches 2110) disposed on the selected modular cargo storage system.

[0572] At step 4135, method 4100 proceeds with the assembly server downloading or otherwise transmitting the assigned dispatch use profile for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly to the selected modular mobile autonomy control module. For example, as shown in Figure 42, exemplary assembly server 4210 may establish communication with the autonomous controller (*e.g.*, autonomous control system 3100) within MAM 1725 and download exemplary assigned dispatch use profile 4230 to the autonomous controller. Using authentication information contained in the assigned dispatch use profile, method 4100 proceeds at step 4140 by authenticating each of the selected modular mobility base, the selected modular auxiliary power module, the selected modular cargo storage system according to authentication information in the assigned dispatch use profile. Such an authenticating step provides, for example, a verification of compatibility for each of the selected modular mobility base, the selected modular auxiliary power module, the selected modular cargo storage system, and the

selected modular mobile autonomy control module. In more detail, the authenticating step may be implemented with component-to-component secure handshaking between proximately attached ones of the selected modular mobility base, the selected modular auxiliary power module, the selected modular cargo storage system, and the selected modular mobile autonomy control module. For example, the component-to-component secure handshaking may be implemented with a challenge and security credential response between proximately attached ones of the selected modular mobility base, the selected modular auxiliary power module, the selected modular cargo storage system, and the selected modular mobile autonomy control module similar to that explained with reference to Figure 34.

[0573] In some embodiments of method 4100, step 4140 may have the selected modular mobile autonomy control module, as a control element, authenticating each of the selected modular mobility base, the selected modular auxiliary power module, and the selected modular cargo storage system according to the authentication information in the assigned dispatch use profile. This may be accomplished, for example, with a component-to-component secure handshaking between the selected modular mobile autonomy control module and each of the selected modular mobility base, the selected modular auxiliary power module, and the selected modular cargo storage system according to the authentication information in the assigned dispatch use profile where the component-to-component secure handshaking involves a challenge and security credential response between the selected modular mobile autonomy control module and each of the selected modular mobility base, the selected modular auxiliary power module, and the selected modular cargo storage system according to the authentication information in the assigned dispatch use profile.

[0574] A further embodiment of method 4100 may also include responsive actions taken when one of the modular components is not authenticated. For example, an embodiment of method 4100 may further include the step of transmitting a replacement component request message to the assembly server 4210 by the selected modular mobile autonomy control module (*e.g.,* exemplary MAM 1725 shown in Figure 42). In this embodiment, the replacement component request message indicates that one or more of the selected modular mobility base, the selected modular auxiliary power module, and the selected modular cargo storage system are not authenticated modular components based upon the component-to-component secure handshaking between the selected modular mobile autonomy control module and each of the selected modular

mobility base, the selected modular auxiliary power module, and the selected modular cargo storage system. Receipt of the replacement component request message by the assembly server may, for example, cause the assembly server to initiate replacement of the selected modular mobility base, the selected modular auxiliary power module, and the selected modular cargo storage system indicated as being not authenticated modular components for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly according to the authentication information in the assigned dispatch use profile.

[0575] In still another embodiment of method 4100 where the operating environment may be a fleet logistics environment where multiple MALVT bot apparatus assemblies are maintained and deployed on various logistics operations, method 4100 may further include the assembly server causing each of the selected modular mobility base, the selected modular auxiliary power module, the selected modular cargo storage system, and the selected modular mobile autonomy control module to be pulled from a fleet modular bot component storage (*e.g.*, via assembly server communications with a fleet depot technician operating a mobile wireless node and/or a fleet vending system similar to that of system 4220). However, in this embodiment, the assembly server causes the particular selected modular components to be pulled from the fleet modular bot component storage according to one of multiple licensed fleet use profiles. Such a licensed fleet use profile may indicate an operational permission status relative to a particular modular component (*e.g.*, the leased status of a particular MB or CSS for use in the fleet operations). Thus, the licensed fleet use profile may include the assigned dispatch use profile with the addition of such relevant fleet usage information, such as permissive status.

[0576] Still further embodiments of method 4100 may involve dispensing from vending machines (*e.g.*, exemplary vending system 4220) as part of the assembly process. For example, an embodiment of method 4100 may further include the step of dispensing at least one of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module from a vending machine. This may involve, in particular, dispensing the modular cargo storage system to be used as one of the authorized parts of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly from a vending machine maintaining a multiple different sized modular cargo storage systems.

[0577] In even more detail, such dispensing may involve receiving, by the vending machine, a selection of at least one of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power

module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module. Such a selection being received from the assembly server is in response to the request for assembly of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly, and is being consistent with the assigned dispatch use profile identifying the type of each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module to be used as the authorized parts of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly based on the request for assembly. With the received selection, the vending machine (*e.g.*, vending system 4220 as shown in Figure 42) may dispense the selected one of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module from the vending machine.

[0578] Such vending systems may also be used during assembly of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly to dispense other detachable parts used on the bot apparatus assembly. For example, a further embodiment of method 4100 may further include the step of dispensing a detachable module from a vending machine, where the detachable module is deployed within the modular cargo storage system. Such a detachable module may be a detachable climate control module (*e.g.*, exemplary detachable modular climate control module 2210), a detachable sensor pod (*e.g.*, exemplary removable payload sensor pod 3005a), and a detachable separator that may be deployed to partition and organize space within a CSS into different compartments (*e.g.*, separator 3608). Thus, an exemplary vending machine used in this embodiment of method 4100 may have different types of detachable climate control modules available for dispensing from the vending machine, where each of the different types of detachable climate control modules has a different environmental control range; different types of detachable sensor pods available for dispensing from the vending machine, where each of the different types of detachable sensor pods having a different characteristic type of sensor; and different types of separators where each type may partition the payload area into different numbers of compartments, may provide different structural support for items loaded into any partitioned compartments, may provide different insulation between such compartments, and the like.

Integration of Exemplary MALVT Bot Apparatus with Other Systems

[0579] As noted earlier, an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus or system using such apparatus may be integrated with existing backend server or IT systems for improved and enhanced operations that use and deploy one or more specially configured exemplary MALVT bot apparatus. These type of systems may include servers for dispatch and operational systems for planning and daily routing and fleet management; pricing and revenue systems for collection of fees, surcharges, and taxes; mobile integration to business or IT systems to ensure smart phones are part of the customer experience; and enterprise foundational services, including logistics services in the address, shipment, and geospatial domains.

[0580] Embodiments that integrate an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus and/or systems of such devices may be scaled up for large scale applications as well as diverse concurrent deployments for different applications. Embodiments that deploy such an integrated approach are designed to be compliant with information security rules and policies (*e.g.*, those rules and policies for existing business or IT systems) and incorporate procedures to protect customer data.

[0581] As noted above, embodiments may utilize and interface with a hierarchical Internet-of-Things (IoT) type of wireless node network (such as the TRON technology described and referenced above) that is an example of such a business or IT system. Additionally, embodiments may use node and server devices from such a wireless node network as part of implementing applications involving an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus and systems of such devices. For example, as explained above, exemplary node and server devices from such a TRON wireless node network may include ID nodes on a lower level of the network, master nodes and/or ULD container nodes at a middle level of the network, and one or more servers at a higher level of the network. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that the control logic (*e.g.*, processor, controller, CPU, GPU, and the like) deployed in different component units of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be considered an ID node, master node, or container node based upon such TRON technology.

[0582] Consistent with the above overview of TRON wireless network technology, an exemplary TRON wireless node network may include specially configured processing systems and wireless nodes (as opposed to generic computers), such as a server connected to a network. The server is also operatively connected to different network components, such as a master node and indirectly to an ID node through the master node. In contrast to a generic computer, the master node is wireless node device typically connected to a wireless ID node via short-range

wireless communications (*e.g.*, Bluetooth® formatted communications) and includes self-location circuitry (such as a GPS receiver and antenna). The master node is typically connected to the server through the network via longer-range wireless communication (*e.g.*, cellular) and/or medium range wireless communication (*e.g.*, wireless local area data networks or Wi-Fi) where both short-range and medium-range and longer-range wireless communications may be implemented in hardware (*e.g.*, transceivers and antennas), a combination of hardware and software, and/or via one or more software defined radios (SDR). And in contrast to a generic computer, the wireless ID node is typically a low cost wireless node device that may be easily placed into an package, be integrated as part of packaging (or a component of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus), or otherwise associated with an item to be shipped, tracked and located, such as a package, a person, object (*e.g.*, vehicle, etc.), or component of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus. Generally, an ID node is capable of communicating directly with a master node but incapable of communicating directly with the server, while a master node is capable of communicating directly with the server and separately and directly communicating with other nodes (such as an ID node or another master node). The ability to deploy a hierarchy of wireless nodes within an exemplary wireless node network to distribute tasks and functions at the different levels in an efficient and economical manner helps to facilitate a wide variety of adaptive locating, tracking, managing, and reporting applications using such a network of nodes, and can be extended for use with different components of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (such as exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700) or systems that use one or more of such exemplary MALVT bot apparatus.

[0583] An exemplary wireless ID node is a transceiver-based processing or logic unit having a short-range radio with variable RF characteristics (*e.g.*, programmable RF output power range, programmable receiver sensitivity), memory accessible by the processing unit, a timer operatively coupled to the processing unit, and a power source (*e.g.*, a battery) that provides power for the circuitry of the ID node.

[0584] An exemplary master node generally serves as an intelligent bridge between an ID node and the server. Accordingly, an exemplary master node is generally more sophisticated than an ID node. In one example embodiment, an exemplary master node is a device having a processing or logic unit (such as a microprocessor, microcontroller, CPU, or GPU), a short-range transceiver (that may have variable RF characteristics) used for communicating with other nodes

(ID nodes and other master nodes), a medium and/or long-range transceiver for communication with the server, memory accessible by the processing unit, a timer operatively coupled to the processing unit, and a power source (*e.g.*, a battery or a wired power supply connection) that provides power for the circuitry of the master node. The exemplary master node may be positioned in a known fixed location or, alternatively, be used as a mobile wireless node (such as the controller/processor used within a MAM component 1725 of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus) having dedicated location positioning circuitry (*e.g.*, GPS circuitry) to allow the master node to determine its location by itself.

[0585] In addition to an ID node and a master node, which are elements of an exemplary TRON wireless node network, a further embodiment of an enhanced exemplary wireless node network may include a specific type of node element integrated with, attached to, or otherwise associated with a type of logistics container (such as a ULD used when transporting items on an aircraft, a trailer capable of being moved by a truck, a train car capable of being moved on a railway system by a locomotive, an intermodal shipping container capable of being moved on at least two different types of transportation modalities, and the like). This further type of node element is generally referred to as a container node, and is explained in more detail within U.S. Patent Application Publication No. US 2016/01232481.

Further embodiments may deploy such a container node as part of an exemplary TRON network application to facilitate enhanced system scanning capabilities that leverage off using this type of container node in addition to fixed facility nodes, along with localized scanning, and more intelligent and efficient use of the hierarchy of network elements to accomplish scanning for ID nodes in order to better handle the congestion issues anticipated.

[0586] An exemplary server from a TRON network application may be considered a specially configured networked computing platform capable of connecting to and interacting with at least the wireless master nodes and/or container nodes, and may be used as part of an application involving one or more exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (such as exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 described above) or a system using one or more exemplary MALVT bot apparatus. As explained in more detail in U.S. Patent No. 8,989,053, a TRON server may be considered to use a programmatically configured single processor or may be implemented as one or more part of a specially programmed multi-processor component that communicates with devices (such as user access devices like smart phones, laptops, or other

Date reçue / Date received 2021-11-03

handheld wireless processing based devices) and wireless nodes (such as a master node or a container node). Such a server may be implemented as a single computing system, a distributed server (*e.g.,* separate servers for separate server related tasks), a hierarchical server (*e.g.,* a server implemented with multiple levels where information may be maintained at different levels and tasks performed at different levels depending on implementation), or a server farm that logically allows multiple distinct components to function as one server computing platform device from the perspective of a client. In some regional deployments, an exemplary server may include servers dedicated for specific geographic regions as information collected within different regions may include and be subject to different regulatory controls and requirements implemented on respective regional servers.

[0587] An exemplary TRON server that may be used with an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may deploy more than one memory storage media. The memory storage media may be in differing non-transitory forms (*e.g.,* conventional hard disk drives, solid state memory such as flash memory, optical drives, RAID systems, cloud storage configured memory, network storage appliances, etc.). Such an exemplary server may be implemented, at its core, with a processing or logic unit coupled to a network interface, which facilitates and enables operative connections and communications through the network with one or more master nodes, container nodes, as well as, in some embodiments, user access devices. The exemplary server may include a medium and/or long-range communication interface with which to more directly communicate with one or more master nodes, container nodes, and/or user access devices. Using these communication paths as well as program code or program modules stored on the server and executed by the server, the server generally operates to coordinate and manage information related to an ID node as an item associated with the ID node physically moves from one location to another. This same type of coordination and management may be applicable to coordinating and managing information related to an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus, components or such an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus, and the contents carried by an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (whether node-enabled packages/items or non-node-enabled packages/items as objects within a CSS unit).

[0588] As a computing platform, the processing unit of an exemplary server is operatively coupled to a memory storage and volatile memory, which collectively store and provide a variety of executable program code (*e.g.,* server control and management code as well

as artificial intelligence (AI) systems for learning about managing network devices, context related to such devices, and anticipated environments related to the same), data similar to that kept in a master/container/ID node's respective memory storage (*e.g.*, profile data, security data, association data, shared data, sensor data, location data) and context data related to the environment in which the nodes are operating (*e.g.*, information generated from within the wireless node network and information created external to the wireless node network). As such, an exemplary server used as part of an embodiment is specially programmed and configured to interact with the wireless nodes beyond that of being a generic computer.

[0589] In embodiments involving an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (such as exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700), an exemplary MB 1705 may be implemented using a wireless ID node as the mobility controller or processor that performs control for steering and propulsion or interfaces with separate control logic for steering and propulsion. The wireless ID node may have wired control signals to such steering and propulsion systems or interfaces or may send control signals via wireless M2M communications to such systems or interfaces. Thus, an ID node implementation within an MB 1705 may also have and take advantage of wired and wireless communication with other devices, such as that explained in more detail in the TRON Network Reference Information.

[0590] Likewise, in embodiments involving an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (such as exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700), an exemplary APM or BAPM component 1710 may be implemented using a wireless ID node as a processing and control device that interfaces with the MB 1705 and the MAM 1725. In a further embodiment, an exemplary APM or BAPM 1710 may be implemented using a wireless master node or container node at a higher level of the wireless node network as its processing and control device, where such a master/container node interfaces with the MB 1705, may interface with node-enabled objects being transported within a CSS 1720 by the APM or BAPM 1710, and further may interface with the MAM 1725 and/or server disposed external to the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus.

[0591] Further, in embodiments involving an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (such as exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700), an exemplary MAM component 1725 may be implemented using a wireless master node or container node as its autonomous controller or autonomous control system (*i.e.*, a type of processing and control device), where such a wireless master/container node may interface with the MB 1720 (*e.g.*, implemented as a wireless ID

Date reçue / Date received 2021-11-03

node), may interface with node-enabled items/objects being transported within a CSS component 1720 (*e.g.*, where such items/objects may be packaged or unpackaged items that are wireless ID node or master node enabled), may interface with the APM or BAPM 1710 supporting the CSS component 1720 (*e.g.*, where the APM or BAPM 1710 may be implemented using wireless ID nodes, master nodes, or container nodes), and further interface with the server.

[0592] Furthermore, embodiments may involve or implement an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (such as exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700) with a wireless master node or container node as its processing and control device in order to provide TRON infrastructure support. For example, an exemplary embodiment may involve operations in a warehouse where no or limited TRON technology based infrastructure support exists for a hierarchical network of wireless ID nodes, wireless master nodes/container nodes, and specially programmed and configured backend support servers that can enhanced logistics management of items being shipped. In such an embodiment, one or more exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be deployed to help assist with and/or help with navigation of another exemplary MALVT bot apparatus transporting an item/object being shipped. For example, one bot apparatus may collaboratively map the operating area of the warehouse to facilitate movement and navigation by the other exemplary MALVT bot apparatus transporting an item/object being shipped. This may have one bot apparatus deployed with more acute and higher accuracy sensors (*e.g.*, LiDAR, RADAR) while allowing for lower sensing requirements (*e.g.*, proximity sensing, GPS locating, etc.) of the other exemplary MALVT bot apparatus transporting an item/object being shipped.

[0593] In this manner, interfacing TRON-based technology devices and systems with an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus and/or systems using such an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (such as exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700) may provide contextual awareness of an object/package in shipment (*e.g.*, an object temporarily stored within a CSS unit 1720 of such an assembled bot apparatus 10), provide granular navigation, and manage authentication of various wireless devices that interoperate for robotic object/package delivery. The contextual awareness may, for example, involve situational awareness for the environment of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus, such as the operational environment of the apparatus, the anticipated operational environment of the apparatus (*e.g.*, environmental, electronic density, physical layout), and regulatory compliance for the apparatus based on current and anticipated location.

Further Operational Considerations

[0594] For embodiments that use an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (such as exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 described above), the particular implementation of such an exemplary apparatus (or system that uses one or more of such an exemplary apparatus or components that make up such and exemplary apparatus) may include one or more of the below listed different features/characteristics for function, use parameters, interoperability factors, and otherwise operational aspects:

Functional/Physical Specifications

[0595] **Overall Dimensions** – The dimensions of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (*e.g.,* min/max height, width, length) may be impacted by weight and speed desired/needed as well as operating environment and regulatory requirements for the particular practical application where the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus has been programmed and is operative for use.

[0596] **Power for MB 1705, APM 1710** – The built-in connections in an embodiment may support multiple batteries that can be plugged into the component, and will not protrude into the cargo unit (*e.g.,* CSS 1720). An electrical conduit (such as conduit or bus 2050, 2250) with appropriate plugs may support power transfer from batteries in the MB 1705 (or APM 1710) to the MAM 1725, depending on the power needs of the bot apparatus assembly 1700.

[0597] **Batteries** – Batteries as power sources may be interchangeable, chargeable as a standalone battery, or while in MB 1705, APU 1710, if appropriate power connectors are deployed in the embodiment.

[0598] **Internal Power** – MAM 1725 may be implemented to have an internal power component (*e.g.,* secondary power source 3120) that may provide minimal power, rechargeable when the unit is in storage. Embodiments of MAM 1725 may receive operating power from the MB 1705 or APM 1710 under normal operating conditions via bus 3115, but allow for switchable power source operations when power from the MB 1705 and/or APM 1710 cease (*e.g.,* with power monitoring and switching logic as described above relative to secondary power source 3120).

[0599] **Locking Mechanisms** – System assembly can be performed via mechanical locking (*e.g.*, via a keypad, traditional key lock, and the like). Embodiments of MB 1705, APM 1710, CSS 1720, and MAM 1725 can be mechanically assembled and fastened during bot provision/assembly at a bot storage depot. For customer access to the cargo area (*e.g.*, via cargo door 1715), an embodiment may utilize a powered or actuated lock within the CSS 1720 consistent with the description above where such a lock may be electronically actuated (rather than just manually). An exemplary electronic lock may allow for local use only (*e.g.*, activation between open/closed states using an electro-mechanical keypad, actuation via Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), Fingerprint, facial scan or other biometric input, voice input through a microphone (pass-phrase), and the like) or may allow for both local and remote interaction (*e.g.*, activation between open/closed states using a transmission of a predetermined unlock sequence from another bot component or outside the bot apparatus by a remote operator/user operating a connected user access device, such as a smartphone or tablet). An embodiment of such an electronic lock on CSS 1720 (may receive power via the electrical conduit (*e.g.*, conduit 2250). The Cargo Door (*e.g.*, door 1715) may have a mechanical fastening system (*e.g.*, lock 2025) to secure the door while in transit, but may not require a locking mechanism in other embodiments (*e.g.*, in-station use cases).

[0600] **Machine to Machine Interaction** – An exemplary MALVT bot apparatus at delivery locations may interface and interact with devices and systems outside the bot apparatus on a physical level as well. As such, the mechanical design of embodiments of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may facilitate interaction with an object receptacle (package deposit receptacle). For example, an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may utilize a retractable front door (such as door 1715) that opens when exemplary MALVT bot apparatus approaches a particular delivery receptacle (*e.g.*, when the bot apparatus detects a current location to be within a threshold distance of the delivery receptacle, which responsively triggers unlocking the CSS 1720 and engaging delivery structure, such as doors, articulating arms, or the like, to initiate removal of the object from the bot apparatus and placement of the object with the delivery receptacle). In another example, use the above-described "stand up" and tilt functionality to facilitate a gravity delivery of an object (object weight may be a factor) may be accomplished with the mechanical design that allows for such selective actuation of the orientation, angle, tilt,

and movement of the bot apparatus and its delivery components (*e.g.,* door 1715, moving ramps, conveyors, and the like).

[0601] **Ground clearance of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus** – The adaptive mechanical ground clearance design of embodiments of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus with, for example, the wheels and suspension system of its MB 1705, all the bot apparatus to maneuver through and navigate broken/buckled sidewalks, tree roots, standing water, and grassy sloped terrain. Wheels or other propulsion tracks may be selected for enhanced traction via tread materials and patterns, and suspensions on the MB 1705 may be autonomously and selectively articulable to adaptively handle such environments.

[0602] **Visual Navigation Indicators** – Embodiments of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may generate displays that indicate turn signals, braking, vehicle speed, etc. as part of visual displays disposed on the MB 1705, CSS 1720, as well as the MAM 1725 components as described above. Embodiments may deploy lighting for dusk/nighttime operation as described above as well.

[0603] **Alerts & Sensors** - Embodiments of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may deploy proximity sensors to assist with locating itself and collision avoidance, as well as visual and audio alerts through its displays and speakers through which such alerts may be broadcast while the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus is en route. Embodiments of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may deploy environmental sensing (*e.g.,* on one or more of the MB 1705, APM 1710, CSS 1720, and/or MAM 1725 components) to monitor sound, ambient temperature external and/or internal to the bot apparatus, used to adjust runtime parameters (*e.g.,* speed) to ensure adequate battery for route, and used to adjust the route to avoid adverse environmental conditions (*e.g.,* avoid the rain outside if an indoor path is available while en route to a destination).

[0604] **Collaboration of Multiple MALVT Bot Apparatus** – Embodiments may deploy a group of MALVT bot apparatus assemblies, which may be specially dispatched and programmed to interact with each other in an advantageous practical application to collaborate to carry a single larger item. For example, this may involve embodiments of a collaboration mode of multiple MB units, such as that shown in Figure 19 where both MB units 1705a, 1705b are physically connected with one base adapter plate 1905 (*e.g.,* implemented with a large or extended sized BAPM 405 to provide a larger support base) capable of handling and supporting

a larger item/object or group of items/objects being shipped. In another example, different exemplar MALVT bot apparatus assemblies may collaborate as an impromptu sort belt with bots and truck.

[0605] **Cargo Door Closure Mechanisms** – Embodiments of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may use a cargo door (*e.g.*, door 1715) that is self-closing. For example, the cargo door may be equipped with a delayed spring activated closing (closing after a period of time), a motion sensor actuated closing (closing once a sensor on the bot apparatus (*e.g.*, APM 1710, CSS 1720, or MAM 1725) detect there is no movement relative to the area surrounding the cargo door and electronically causing a responsive closure of the cargo door via actuators on the door hinge or the door itself). Such an embodiment may be useful if a customer does not close the door after object retrieval, and helps avoid theft of other objects still within the CSS 1720 of the bot apparatus.

Operating Specifications: Operational Design Domain (ODD)

[0606] Embodiments of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may deploy its MAM 1725 (or MB 1720 in certain embodiments) to have and use specific types of operational specification data or parameters that may be used as a type of context data on environment and anticipated environment where the bot apparatus 1700 is or will be (or is anticipated to be operating based upon a planned, predicted or otherwise determined route). Such operations specifications that may be included in a dispatch command for an operation (*i.e.*, data that is also referred to collectively as a contextual operations design domain (ODD)) may include, for example, data structures that maintain information on the following:

- Geographic area (*e.g.*, city, rural, mountain desert, etc.);
- Speed (*e.g.*, max, normal operational speed based on mode);
- Range (may vary due to environmental conditions, temperature, terrain, slope);
- Payload;
- Roadway types (*e.g.*, street/sidewalk/bike lane, etc.);
- Terrain (*e.g.*, types of terrain, such as uneven ground, broken/heaved sidewalk, tree roots, storm drains, curbs, stairs, rough paved surfaces (gravel/mud), sloped terrain, maximum slope traversal without excessive battery drain on various surface types);

- Operation through standing water (how deep);
- Temperature/Humidity operational ranges (*e.g.,* including quantification range/battery as a function of operational ranges);
- Weather conditions (*e.g.,* rain intensity/duration, snow/sleet);
- Weather Ratings for Components (*e.g.,* IP Code specifications, such as IP67, as it relates to bot component weather resistance capabilities, such as water resistance, water proof, dust resistance, and the like).

DOT, NHTSE, Other Regulatory Requirements for Autonomous Ops

[0607] Embodiments of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may be deployed in practical use applications where particular regulatory requirements impart guidelines or requirements for operation of the bot apparatus as an autonomous vehicle (AV) in operation. Such regulatory requirements may, for example, include:

- Object and Event Detection and Response (OEDR);
- Normal Driving – behavioral competencies;
- Crash Avoidance Capability;
- Fallback (minimal risk condition); and
- Account for State and local regulations that will apply testing and operation

ADA Consideration of Human-Bot Interactions

[0608] Embodiments of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be deployed in practical use applications where standard for accessible design under the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) or other standards impart guidelines or requirements on how the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may accommodate customer interaction with special needs customers (*e.g.,* proximity sensing for strollers, wheelchair uses).

Infrastructure & Lifestyle Management for MALVT Bot Apparatus Components

[0609] **Storage of components** – The components that are assembled into an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 (including detachable sensor pods, replaceable power sources, and the like) may include features and aspects that relate to when those components are not yet assembled and are stored prior to assembly into such a bot apparatus. For example, an

exemplary MAM 1725 (or other battery equipped component) may fit into a storage unit (dock) to charge the battery component, download data & check for maintenance needs. When in a storage configuration, an exemplary CSS 1720 may be collapsible (as noted above and shown in Figures 23 and 24). An exemplary MB unit 1705 may charge when in a "vending unit", and interact with a backend server of a Fleet Management System, which collectively allows and enables a type of "First in Last out" usage for MB units charging in the vending unit to ensure uniform operation throughout the fleet.

Asset Tracking/Data Management

[0610] Embodiments of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may implement data communications requirements during "off-duty" periods (*e.g.,* on a nightly cycle, when recharging particular components, and the like), upload of battery & system metrics, and operational (pickup & delivery) metrics. Embodiments of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may also communicate with backend fleet management systems (*e.g.,* specially configured and programmed servers that support one or more exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 in the below described practical use applications) for remote real-time operator assist, normal route tracking/mapping, and pickup scheduling.

Evolution of Technology Enablers

Use Cases for 5G Technologies

[0611] Embodiments of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus and system of multiple such bot apparatus may integrate with or deploy massive Internet of Things (IoT) devices at the core of different components primarily for M2M communications. As such, the use of such high speed IoT devices integrated as part of different components may be used for practical applications where high-speed throughput, with low latency, is desired to enable real-time control at high speeds (*e.g.,* up to 500km/hr) of the bot apparatus. Such high speed IoT devices may also provide enhanced mobile broadband for faster service and better coverage for fixed and moving user access devices (*e.g.,* smartphones, laptops, and the like) as well as for support of extended visualization on such remote devices via 3D video, augmented reality, and virtual reality displays on the remote devices.

Dedicated Short Range Communications

[0612] Embodiments of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus and system of multiple such bot apparatus may also provide low latency, high bandwidth connectivity for short to medium range 2-way wireless communications. This may take the form of Vehicle to Vehicle Connectivity (V2V) and/or Vehicle to Infrastructure Connectivity (V2I).

Smart Cities Integration

[0613] Embodiments of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 and system of multiple such bot apparatus may further provide interoperability with exemplary Smart City infrastructure frameworks and platforms. Typical components of such an exemplary framework may include:

- Signal phase and timing message systems, which provides two-way communication between a traffic signal controller and a mobile device;
- Telematics systems, which collect and transmit vehicle data information real-time to an organization; and
- Dynamic traffic management systems for autonomous vehicles, based on real-time traffic data being collected from connected vehicles

PRACTICAL APPLICATIONS WITH MALVT BOT APPARATUS/SYSTEMS

[0614] In general, embodiments of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus/system for the customer as described below may involve an app on a user access device (*e.g.*, a smart phone, laptop, tablet, or other computing device (such as a wireless mobile node)) leveraging wireless, mobile location, GPS, and/or in facility TRON network location. Aspects and features of wireless node network TRON elements described above that may be used in embodiments to implement some components of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be deployed so as to enable the relevant bot apparatus component (*e.g.*, an exemplary MAM 1725) to provide location, association, and authentication for customer-to-machine, machine-to-machine, and location assistance relative to the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus. What follows are different embodiments of practical use applications that deploy and use one or more specially programmed MALVT bot apparatus assemblies as a particular device (or components thereof) or as a system in use with other exemplary MALVT bot apparatus and/or other systems (such as a

backend server specially programmed to support the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus, a logistics receptacle that may interface with the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus, or a user access that may interface with the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus).

[0615] Figures 43A-43F are diagrams of an exemplary modular autonomous logistics transport vehicle apparatus (MALVT bot apparatus) assembly 1700 as it is involved in various stages of an exemplary dispatched logistics operation in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Referring now to Figure 43A, exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 is shown in an assembled configuration (*e.g.,* after assembly according to exemplary method 4100) with a dispatch server 4205. In this general example, exemplary dispatch server 4205 transmits a dispatch command 4305 through network 4300 (*e.g.,* via a wireless communication path) for receipt by the exemplary MAM 1725 in exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700. As part of the exemplary dispatched logistics operation related to the dispatch command 4305, an item or object 4310 may be loaded into exemplary CSS 1720 after cargo door 1715 is opened. Detection of the loaded item may be accomplished using internal sensor(s) 3130 that monitor the payload area in CSS 1720 and under MAM 1725. Once the exemplary CSS 1720 has received item 4310 being shipped or otherwise transported on exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700, exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 may have the autonomous controller in MAM 1725 direct and control movement of exemplary MB 1705 to move exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 from one location to another.

[0616] As shown in Figure 43B, exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 is generally illustrated in transit and moving towards a destination location for the exemplary dispatched logistics operation identified as part of the dispatch command 4305. Along the transit route to the destination location, exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 may uses its location circuitry (*e.g.,* location circuitry 3110 on exemplary MAM 1725) and sensors deployed on the MAM 1725 and MB 1705 to avoid collisions as it navigates to the destination location, and encounter pathway obstacles 4310 along the transit route. And as shown in Figure 43B, exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 may encounter a pathway obstacle 4310a (*e.g.,* a door, elevator, lock, and the like) that may be an actuated type of pathway obstacle where a facility node 4320 operatively coupled to the pathway obstacle 4310a controls actuation to clear such an obstacle for exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 and allow further movement past the obstacle. For example, exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700

may move towards an actuated set of doors 4315a, 4315b as exemplary pathway obstacle 4310a, which is controlled by building facility node 4320 (*e.g.*, an ID node or master node) capable of wireless communication with at least exemplary MAM 1725 (*e.g.*, with autonomous control system 3100 through wireless radio transceiver 3125) on exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700. As such, exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 may coordinate wirelessly with building facility node 4320 to initiate opening of the doors 4315a, 4315b – *e.g.*, through node-to-node association that permissively establishes a secure connection between autonomous control system 3100 (operating as a mobile master node) in exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 and the building facility node 4320, or other handshaking communication that has exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 transmitting a control signal to cause the building facility node 4320 to actuate the pathway obstacle (*i.e.*, the doors 4315a, 4315b). A similar interaction between exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 and other building facility nodes may occur with other pathway obstacles that may be wirelessly actuated to allow exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 to pass (*e.g.*, node-enabled elevator, a node-enabled moving walkway, a node-enabled lift at a loading dock, and the like).

[0617] In some situations, pathway obstacles may appear in the transit route for exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 where such pathway obstacles are not capable of wireless interaction to initiate clearing of the obstacle. For example, as shown in Figure 43C, exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 is faced with an exemplary door pathway obstacle 4310b that is manually actuated. In more detail and as shown in Figure 43C, exemplary door pathway obstacle 4310b is shown with doors 4315a, 4315b similar to door 4310a in Figure 43B, but exemplary door pathway obstacle 4310b is actuated via an exemplary obstacle control panel 4330. Control panel 4330 may have, for example, buttons, switches, levers, and the like that may be physically contacted to initiate actuation of doors 4315a, 4315b. As such, exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 may be deployed with an exemplary articulating arm 4325 disposed on the assembly 1700. In this embodiment, exemplary articulating arm 4325 is shown attached to MAM 1725 and is operatively coupled to autonomous control system 3100 so as to be responsive to control signals that move the arm 4325 while sensors on MAM 1725, MB 1705, and/or deployed on the arm 4325 may generate sensor data (*e.g.*, proximity data, machine vision data, and the like) that allows autonomous control system 3100 to guide the arm 4325 to a desired control input area or selector (*e.g.*, a particular button, switch, and the like) that actuates

doors 4315a, 4315b. Control system 3100 is operative to use the sensor data to recognize the desired control input area or selector, and move arm 3425 accordingly to manually contact and initiate actuation of the pathway obstacle (*e.g.,* manually actuated door 4310b). Those skilled in the art will appreciate that an embodiment of articulating arm 4325 may be incorporated into other modular components of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 and be operatively controlled by autonomous control system 3100 with control input to and sensor output from arm 4325 going through bus 3320. Embodiments of articular arm 4325 may recess into a storage channel or chamber on one of the modular components of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 when not in use, and may further assist with loading and unloading of the item 4310 during an exemplary dispatched logistics operation. Further, those skilled in the art will also appreciate that other manually actuated pathway obstacles (*e.g.,* exemplary locks, elevator buttons, door handles, and the like) may be interacted with in a similar manner with one or more articulating arms 4325 disposed on exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700

[0618] As exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 continues on its transit route towards the destination location in this example, exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 may communicate with a delivery recipient as shown in Figure 43D. Referring now to Figure 43D, exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 may, for example, send notifications to the delivery recipient through wireless communications with a wireless node 3315 (*e.g.,* a smartphone, tablet, mobile/fixed ID node or mobile/fixed master node) operated by the delivery recipient. Further, exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 may receive authentication input from the delivery recipient wireless node 3315 so as to perform authentication checks to verify that the delivery recipient is the authorized delivery recipient for the item 4310 being transported for delivery within exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700. If the delivery recipient is authenticated to be the authorized delivery recipient for item 4310, cargo door 1715 may be actuated to open by the MAM 1725 (*i.e.,* the autonomous control system 3100). Internal sensors that monitor the payload within exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 (*e.g.,* exemplary payload monitoring sensors 3130) may detect what is in the payload area of the CSS 1720 and may detect when item 4310 is removed. Such removal may be enhanced with object manipulation systems (*e.g.,* moving belt surfaces, actuated sweeping arms, actuated grabbing arms, and the like as described above) and/or causing the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 to tilt so as to help slide the item 4310 towards

the cargo door 1715 or, in some instances, out onto the extended surface of door 1715 as shown in Figure 43F. Directions for removal may be communicated by exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 to delivery recipient wireless node 3315 and/or may be displayed on H2M interfaces on exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 and/or via audio directions played through one or more speakers on exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700.

[0619] Further details of particular embodiments are presented below for dispatched delivery, pickup, and other specialized applications of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 in other types of dispatched logistics operations. Figure 44 is a flow diagram of an exemplary method for performing a dispatched logistics operation involving delivery of an item being shipped using a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (MALVT bot apparatus assembly) and a dispatch server in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Exemplary method 4400 makes use, for example, of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 and exemplary dispatch server 4205. Exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700, as part of method 4400, is equipped with at least a modular mobility base (*e.g.*, exemplary MB 1705) propelling the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700, a modular auxiliary power module (*e.g.*, exemplary APM 1710) providing power for exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700, a modular cargo storage system (*e.g.*, exemplary CSS 1720) configured to temporarily maintain what is transported within the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700, and a modular mobile autonomy control module (*e.g.*, exemplary MAM 1725) with its autonomous controller (*e.g.*, autonomous control system 3100) that autonomously controls operation of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 during method 4400.

[0620] Referring now to Figure 44, exemplary method 4400 begins at step 4405 with the modular mobile autonomy control module receiving a dispatch command from the dispatch server, where the dispatch command includes at least destination information and authentication information related to a dispatched logistics operation. For example, as shown in Figure 43A, MAM 1725 is part of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 and receives an exemplary dispatch command 4305 from dispatch server 4205. This may happen during assembly of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 (*e.g.*, before MAM 1725 is connected with all components of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700) or once all of the modular components of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 are gathered, connected, and authenticated as authorized modular components to use in assembly 1700.

[0621] At step 4410, method 4400 proceeds with the modular mobile autonomy control module authenticating that each of the modular mobile autonomy control module, the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system are compatible with the dispatched logistics operation. In more detail, at step 4110, the authentication performed may, for example, verify that the different components of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 are compatible with the particular aspects required to carry out the dispatched logistics operation. For example, the authentication information related to the dispatched logistics operation that is included in the dispatch command may include logistical constraint information on the dispatched logistics operation (*e.g.*, information on a determined work environment for a particular component of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 or the assembly 1700 as a combined unit), size/weight limitations, and readiness limitations (*e.g.*, performance threshold(s) for the particular component/assembly in the dispatched logistics operation). As such, the step of authenticating, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, that each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system are compatible with the dispatched logistics operation may be based at least upon a comparison of each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system to the logistical constraint information on the dispatched logistics operation.

[0622] At step 4415, method 4400 proceeds with the modular cargo storage system receiving the item being shipped. For example, as shown in Figure 43A, item 4310 may be received and then maintained within a payload area of CSS 1720, on a base adapter platform of APM 1710, and below the MAM 1725. In more detail, step 4415 may receive the item being shipped with the modular mobile autonomy control module (*e.g.*, MAM 1725) actuating an actuated cargo door (*e.g.*, door 1715) disposed on the modular auxiliary power module to an open position. As shown in Figure 43A and explained in more detail above, actuated cargo door 1715 provides a seal to a payload area within the modular CSS 1720 when the actuated cargo door 1715 is in a closed position and the actuated cargo door 1715 provides access to the payload area within the modular CSS 1720 when the actuated cargo door 1715 is in the open position. Such an actuated cargo door 1715 may be actuated by the modular mobile autonomy control module using an actuated joint 2020 on the actuated cargo door 1715 to cause the actuated cargo door 1715 to move from the closed position to the open position. A further embodiment may

have the MAM 1725 actuating the cargo door by actuating an electro-mechanical lock 2025 on the door 1715 to cause the actuated cargo door 1715 to unlock before moving from the closed position to the open position as part of step 4415.

[0623] Further embodiments of method 4400 may have step 4415 actuating object manipulation systems deployed on exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700. For example, step 4415 may involve the modular mobile autonomy control module actuating an actuated sliding arm disposed on the modular cargo storage system to move the item being shipped into a payload area within the modular cargo storage system, or actuating an actuated grabbing arm disposed on the modular cargo storage system to grab and move the item being shipped into a payload area within the modular cargo storage system as part of receiving the item being shipped. In another example, step 4415 may involve the modular mobile autonomy control module actuating an actuated belt surface (*e.g.*, moving belt surface 2080a, 2080b) disposed on the modular auxiliary power module as a movable support surface exposed within a payload area inside the modular cargo storage system. As part of step 4415, the actuated belt surface, when actuated, causes the item as placed on the actuated belt surface to move within the payload area as part of receiving the item being shipped.

[0624] At step 4420, method 4400 proceeds with the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from an origin location on a route to a destination location identified by the destination information. This may, for example, have MAM 1725 autonomously causing modular MB 1705 to move from the origin location to the destination location while avoiding a collision with an obstacle in a transit path on the route to the destination location using sensors disposed on at least one of the modular mobility base and the modular mobile autonomy control module.

[0625] In general, the embodiments described herein may have the modular mobile autonomy control module (*e.g.*, exemplary MAM 1725) autonomously causing the modular mobility base (*e.g.*, exemplary MB 1705) to move between locations by providing control signals to systems (*e.g.*, mobility controller 1825 for indirect control of propulsion system 1830 and steering system 1835, or signals that may directly control propulsion system 1830 and steering system 1835) based upon feedback the control module receives about its environment (*e.g.*, location data from location circuitry 3110, sensor data from externally focused sensors deployed

on the assembly, such as mobility base sensors 1815, autonomy module sensors 2810, and the like)

[0626] Relative to method 4400 and in more detail, step 4420 may involve wirelessly interacting with facility nodes (*e.g.,* ID nodes, master nodes, and the like) that may control different pathway obstacles, such as elevators, doors, lifts, walkways, locks, and other controlled pathway obstacles that may be cleared through control by such wireless-enabled facility nodes. For example, the step of autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the origin location on the route to the destination location identified by the destination information may have the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the origin location to the destination location while interacting with a wireless building facility node (*e.g.,* exemplary building facility node 4320) to actuate a pathway obstacle disposed in a path on the route to the destination location. Such a pathway obstacle may be an actuated door (*e.g.,* actuated doors 4310a) controlled by the wireless building facility node, an actuated elevator controlled by the wireless building facility node, or an actuated lock controlled by the wireless building facility node.

[0627] For example, interacting with the wireless building facility node to actuate the pathway obstacle may involve establishing an authorized association pairing between the modular mobile autonomy control module and the wireless building facility node based upon the authentication information related to the dispatched logistics operation, and causing the wireless building facility node to actuate the pathway obstacle after establishing the authorized association pairing between the modular mobile autonomy control module and the wireless building facility node. In this way, a prerequisite authorized association pairing of the two wireless nodes (*e.g.,* autonomous controller operating as a master node in MAM 1725 and the building facility node 4320 operating as an ID/master node) establishes a foundational secure communication path between the nodes and facilitates movement of assembly 1700 while maintaining a sense of secure access to the building facility node. For example, as shown in Figure 43B, autonomous control system 3100 of MAM 1725 and building facility node 4320 may permissively establish a trackable and authorized association (*e.g.,* based on security credentials, and involving the generation of association data representing the associative link between the two nodes), which then allows the autonomous control system 3100 to request building facility node 4320 to actuate doors 4310a.

[0628] In other embodiments, step 4420 may involve exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 physically interacting with and engaging a pathway obstacle while moving on its transit path to, for example, the destination location. In more detail, an embodiment of step 4420 may have the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the original location to the destination location while engaging a pathway obstacle disposed in a path on the route to the destination location using an articulating arm disposed on the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly and using sensors (*e.g.*, proximity sensors, cameras, vision systems, etc.) on at least one of the modular mobility base and the modular mobile autonomy control module. For example, as shown in Figure 43C, exemplary articulating arm 4325 may be controlled by MAM 1725 so as to engage a control panel 4330 of door 4310b as part of actuating the doors 4310b to open and allow assembly 1700 to move through the doors 4310b. Examples of engaging the pathway obstacle using such an articulating arm may include engaging such a control panel with buttons, switches, or other control elements such as a handle. Such pathway obstacles may include, for example, a manually actuated door, a manually actuated elevator, or a manually actuated lock (having a handle or knob that can open/close the lock). In more detail, an embodiment may involve engaging the pathway obstacle using the articulating arm and sensors with the modular mobile autonomy control module guiding the articulating arm to a control element (*e.g.*, control panel, button, switch, handle, and the like) of the pathway obstacle using one or more of the sensors on at least one of the modular mobility base and the modular mobile autonomy control module, and then having the modular mobile autonomy control module actuating the pathway obstacle once the articulating arm engages the control element of the pathway obstacle.

[0629] At step 4425, method 4400 proceeds by receiving delivery recipient authentication input by the modular mobile autonomy control module from a delivery recipient disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly. The delivery recipient authentication input may be provided to the modular mobile autonomy control module in various ways – *e.g.*, wirelessly (such as that shown in the example of Figure 43D), through input on a user input panel, through biometrics, and the like. If the delivery recipient authentication input matches or otherwise correlates to at least a portion of the authentication information related to the dispatched logistics operation indicating the delivery recipient providing the delivery recipient authentication input is the authorized delivery recipient for the item being shipped

within assembly 1700, the entity providing the delivery recipient authentication input is determined to be the authorized delivery recipient and the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 is assured of a proper delivery to an authorized entity according to the dispatched logistics operation.

[0630] At step 4430, method 4400 continues with the modular cargo storage system providing selective access to the item being shipped within the modular cargo storage system after the delivery recipient authentication input received correlates (or otherwise matches) to the portion of the authentication information indicating the delivery recipient providing the delivery recipient authentication input is the authorized delivery recipient. Selective access, for example, may involve actuating door 1715 to an open position providing the authenticated and authorized delivery recipient with access to item 4310 as shown in Figure 43E. In more detail, providing selective access as part of step 4430 may, for example, involve actuating a joint 2020 joint on the actuated cargo door 1715 to cause the actuated cargo door 1715 to move from the closed position to the open position; actuating electro-mechanical lock 2025 on the actuated cargo door 1715 to cause the actuated cargo door 1715 to unlock before moving from the closed position to the open position.

[0631] In other examples, providing selective access as part of step 4430 may also have the modular mobile autonomy control module controlling and actuating an actuated sliding arm (*e.g.*, arm 2085 shown in Figure 20D) disposed on the modular cargo storage system to move the item being shipped out from a payload area within the modular cargo storage system; controlling and actuating an actuated grabbing arm (*e.g.*, arm 2090 shown in Figure 20E) disposed on the modular cargo storage system to grab and move the item being shipped 4310 out from a payload area within the modular cargo storage system, such as to the position shown in Figure 43F. Further still, providing selective access as part of step 4430 may also have the modular mobile autonomy control module controlling and actuating an actuated belt surface (*e.g.*, surfaces 2080a, 2080b shown in Figure 20C) disposed on the modular auxiliary power module as a movable support surface exposed within a payload area inside the modular cargo storage system. In this example, the actuated belt surface, when actuated, causes the item being shipped 4310 as placed on the actuated belt surface to move out from within the payload area, such as to the position shown in Figure 43F.

[0632] At step 4435, method 4400 then proceeds with the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the destination location on a return route to the origin location after the item being shipped is detected to be removed from within the modular cargo storage system. For example, as shown in Figures 43E and 43F, exemplary MAM 1725 may be deployed with internal sensors (*e.g.*, exemplary payload monitoring sensor 3130) integrated as part of MAM 1725 or in a detachable sensor pod (*e.g.*, 3005a). Using such an internal sensor or multiple internal sensors, MAM 1725 may monitor what is currently disposed in the payload area of CSS 1720 below the MAM 1725, and detect when the item 4310 has been removed from CSS 1720. Removal may have the MAM 1725 further identifying the particular item being removed to ensure the correct item is removes (*e.g.*, via visual scanning of the item 4310 using one or more of the internal sensors and/or tracking movement of node-enabled items where the location of the particular node with item 4310 may be detected as being moved). In this way, MAM 1725 may detect when the appropriate item is removed at the destination location and, in some cases, provide responsive feedback to the delivery recipient when an incorrect item is mistakenly removed from CSS 1720 (*e.g.*, through H2M feedback via visual information generated on displays 2815a, 2815b, panels 2815, 2900; via audio notification with messaging delivered through a speaker disposed on the MAM 1725 (or other component of assembly 1700); and/or via M2M electronic notification to the delivery recipient mobile wireless node 3315.

[0633] Further embodiments of method 4400 may authenticate that the entity providing the delivery recipient authentication input is actually the authorized delivery recipient in more detailed ways. For example, as part of step 4425, an embodiment may have the delivery recipient authentication input received through a user input panel (*e.g.*, user input panel 2220) disposed on the modular autonomous bot apparatus and coupled to the modular mobile autonomy control module. In more detail, such delivery recipient authentication input received by the modular mobile autonomy control module may be an access code provided by the delivery recipient through the user input panel disposed on the modular cargo storage system and operatively coupled to the modular mobile autonomy control module. In another example, the user input panel may scan and accept biometric input (*e.g.*, fingerprint, facial scan, retinal scan and the like), and the delivery recipient authentication input may be such biometric input

provided by the delivery recipient through the user input panel disposed on the modular cargo storage system and operatively coupled to the modular mobile autonomy control module.

[0634] In further examples, the delivery recipient authentication input received by the modular mobile autonomy control module may be provided through an external wireless node (*e.g.*, delivery recipient mobile wireless node 3315) disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly. In such an embodiment, the delivery recipient authentication input received may be a wireless message or signal that includes, for example, an access code provided by the delivery recipient through the external wireless node disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly or biometric input provided by the delivery recipient through the external wireless node disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

[0635] In more detail, the authentication information related to the dispatched logistics operation may include an identifier of the authorized delivery recipient for the item being shipped as part of the dispatched logistics operation (*e.g.*, a name, an identification code number, an address, reference biometric data for the authorized delivery recipient, identifier information on a wireless node device (*e.g.*, smartphone, etc.), and the like). As such, a further embodiment may have step of receiving the delivery recipient authentication input in step 4425 implemented with the modular mobile autonomy control module first detecting an advertising signal as the delivery recipient authentication input from an external wireless node (*e.g.*, delivery recipient mobile wireless node 3315) within a predetermined range of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly once the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly has arrived at the destination location identified by the destination information; and then having the modular mobile autonomy control module authenticating that the external wireless node is associated with the authorized delivery recipient based upon the identifier of the authorized delivery recipient (*e.g.*, delivery recipient's name) and identifier information within the detected advertising signal broadcast from the external wireless node (*e.g.*, phone number of the smartphone operating as the delivery recipient mobile wireless node 3315).

[0636] In another example, the step of receiving the delivery recipient authentication input in step 4425 may have the modular mobile autonomy control module first detecting an unprompted advertising signal from an external wireless node within a predetermined range of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly once the modular autonomous bot apparatus

assembly has arrived at the destination location identified by the destination information (*e.g.*, detecting such an unprompted signal without first transmitting an interrogation signal to cause the signal to be sent from the external wireless node). Once the advertising signal is detected by the modular mobile autonomy control module, this embodiment of step 4425 proceeds with establishing a secure association between the external node and the modular mobile autonomy control module. The secure association between the external node and the modular mobile autonomy control module is reflected in association data generated locally on one or both of the external node and the modular mobile autonomy control module, and allows secure sharing of information between the external node and the modular mobile autonomy control module as being pre-authorized by the dispatch server and as it relates to the dispatched logistics operation.

[0637] Further embodiments may have the delivery recipient authentication input implemented using multi-factor authentication input. For example, the process of receiving the delivery recipient authentication input may involve multiple steps where each step has the delivery recipient providing different types of authentication input (where each may be verified against the authentication information from the dispatched logistics operation) and where the different types of authentication input may be provided in different ways, such as a first step having first authentication input from the delivery recipient being a pass code provided on a user input panel on the apparatus 1700, and a second step having biometric input from the delivery recipient provided through a camera sensor disposed on the apparatus 1700. Further embodiments may use other modes of providing different types of authentication input that may be used collectively as the delivery recipient authentication input (*e.g.*, wireless input with a text code or other message, audio input for voice recognition and matching, RFID tag interrogation by an RFID reader disposed on the apparatus 1700 (such as part of the wireless interface on MAM 1725), and the like).

[0638] As shown in Figure 43A, 43E, and 43F, monitoring of the payload area in CSS 1720 may be accomplished with one or more internal payload monitoring sensors 3130. In some embodiments, such sensors 3130 (as well as other sensors deployed on exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700) may scan and identify the item being shipped (in addition to or instead of receiving confirmation via human input that the right item has been loaded or unloaded). For example, the step of receiving the item being shipped in step 4415 of method 4400 may, in a further embodiment, involve confirming that the item received corresponds to the dispatched

logistics operation based upon a readable identification on the item received; and receiving, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, a confirmation input acknowledging that the item received corresponds to the dispatched logistics operation based upon the readable identification on the item received. Such a readable identification may be a human readable identification disposed on the item received (*e.g.*, a printed or attached label on the item) and/or a machine readable identification disposed on the item received (*e.g.*, a scannable label, barcode, or other symbol(s) identifying the item). In more detail, the confirmation input may be input received on a user input panel 2220 disposed on the modular cargo storage system and operatively coupled to the modular mobile autonomy control module.

[0639] In a further example, step 4415 of receiving the item being shipped may be implemented in a further embodiment of method 4400 with a payload monitoring sensor 3130 on the modular mobile autonomy control module monitoring a payload area within the modular cargo storage system; detecting, by modular mobile autonomy control module, the item being shipped within the payload area based upon scan data generated by the payload monitoring sensor; and confirming that the item detected within the payload area corresponds to the dispatched logistics operation based upon a machine readable identification on the item received as indicated by the scan data generated by the payload monitoring sensor.

[0640] In light of the exemplary method 4400 and its variations of embodiments described above, further embodiments are described in more detail below relative to specific practical application or use cases may deploy an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 in various types of dispatched logistics operations.

High Rise Building – Internal Deliveries

[0641] An exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 may be dispatched for different types of logistics operations in buildings. For example, an embodiment may have one or more exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 stored on the ground level of commercial office buildings (*e.g.*, a type of origin location), and be dispatched in order to complete a delivery related dispatched logistics operation. The item being shipped (*e.g.*, item 4310) may be food or object deliveries from outside vendors, which may be loaded into the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus at the building's lobby by attendants or other persons. The exemplary MALVT bot

apparatus 1700 then completes delivery without need for third party employees walking through the building.

[0642] In general, an embodiment may perform exemplary method 4400 with the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 where the apparatus 1700 travels to a recipient in the building as part of the dispatched logistics operation and alerts the recipient of delivery. The recipient (*e.g.*, the authorized delivery recipient) authenticates delivery via an app running on a node device (*e.g.*, delivery recipient mobile wireless node 3315) that interacts with the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700, via a TRON node-to-node association implemented as part of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700, or via a display screen (*e.g.*, displays 2815a, 2815b) on the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus. The recipient may then receive delivery, and the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may then return to its origin location (such as a base in the lobby or another bot storage location). Those skilled in the art will appreciate that wireless node elements, such as TRON ID nodes and master node, may be used to implement the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 (*e.g.*, control elements on the apparatus, such as the autonomous control system 3100 on MAM 1725) is this particular embodiment and can be leveraged for location, door & lock operation, elevator operation, and authentication as described above. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that embodiments may involve on-demand building of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly for such building-related deployments (*e.g.*, consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 41, exemplary method 4100, and its variations), as well as embodiments that may responsively dispatch an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly on a building-related dispatched logistics operation (*e.g.*, consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 44, exemplary method 4400, and its variations).

[0643] For example, in such an embodiment, a further embodiment of exemplary method 4400 may further have the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 notifying the delivery recipient of delivery arrival prior to authenticating input from the recipient that allow access to the item being shipped. For example, method 4400 may include the step of generating a display alert for the authorized delivery recipient on a display (*e.g.*, 2815a, 2815b) on the modular mobile autonomy control module once the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly is within a threshold notification range of the destination location identified by the destination information. This allows for autonomous pre-delivery notification for the delivery recipient, and

advantageously allows for delivery preparations to commence by the delivery recipient without having to require the delivery recipient to leave and go to a different location to pick the delivered item. In another example, method 4400 may implement such notification by generating an audio notification for the authorized delivery recipient on a speaker on the modular mobile autonomy control module once the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly is within a threshold notification range of the destination location identified by the destination information. In still another embodiment, method 4400 may further have the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly transmitting a delivery notification message to an external wireless node identified to be related to the delivery recipient (*e.g.*, delivery recipient mobile wireless node 3315 shown in Figure 43E) once the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly is within a threshold notification range of the destination location identified by the destination information.

[0644] In another embodiment where exemplary method 4400 may be performed, one or more exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be leased to a company with a multi-floor presence in a high rise building (commercial banks, large law-firms, etc.). In this particular embodiment and as part of exemplary method 4400, an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be hailed or dispatched by an employee (*e.g.*, via coordination with dispatch server 4205) to receive an item to be delivered to another location within the building. The sender confirms a location for delivery via coordinates, office mapping, or TRON enablement of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus for locating the apparatus (*e.g.*, a wireless node of the delivery recipient that may be located using node location techniques described above). The delivery item is then placed inside the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus, which then travels through the office space and arrives at the recipient who authenticates delivery with delivery authentication input (*e.g.*, via input on a user input panel prompted using a display screen, wireless input via an app on the recipient's wireless mobile node, TRON node-to-node association), and receives item. The exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may then return to storage (*e.g.*, a type of origin location). As noted above, such an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be equipped with the capability to operate elevators and potentially open doors using actuated articulating arms and vision systems or via electronic integration with a building's automated systems for elevators and door openers.

[0645] In another embodiment, exemplary method 4400 may be implemented with the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 where the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may

act as an internal courier ferrying paperwork as the item 4310 to different floors or across the office. The exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may also be used by delivery company or courier service outside the office. The exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 may be stored in a leased space and complete deliveries in vertical space with the lobby of the building acting as a hold at location (HAL) type of logistics receptacle enhanced with a mobile automated delivery to the final recipient within the building. The exemplary MALVT bot apparatus in this embodiment will have the capability to operate elevators and potentially open doors using actuated articulating arms and vision systems or via electronic integration with a building's automated systems for elevators and door openers.

[0646] Accordingly, in such an embodiment, a further embodiment of exemplary method 4400 involving a multi-floor use case with storage on one floor and dispatch to other floors may have the origin location being a storage location on a predetermined floor of a multi-level facility where the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly 1700 is maintained until dispatched for the dispatched logistics operation, and where the destination location is located on another floor of the multi-level facility. In a further embodiment of exemplary method 4400, the origin location may be a multi-component storage location on a predetermined floor of such a multi-level facility where each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module used as part of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly is maintained in an unassembled form until on-demand assembly of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly occurs (*e.g.*, per exemplary method 4100) in response to the dispatch command from the dispatch server, and where the destination location is located on another floor of the multi-level facility. In yet another embodiment of exemplary method 4400, the origin location comprises a multi-component storage location on a predetermined floor of a multi-level facility where each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module are leased components used as part of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly and where each of the leased components is maintained until dispatched as part of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly for the dispatched logistics operation; and where the destination location is located on another floor of the multi-level facility.

[0647] Thus, while embodiments of method 4400 may have the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly receive the item being shipped at an origin location, other embodiments of method 4400 may have the CSS component of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly receive the item at a separate intermediate loading location for pickup, delivery, or as part of a return operation. Accordingly, a further embodiment of exemplary method 4400 may have the origin location for the dispatched logistics operation being a bot storage location where the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly is initially maintained and wherein the destination information defines an intermediate loading location defined as part of the destination information (*e.g.,* location coordinates, an identified location relative to an office mapping, a location of an external wireless node disposed outside of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly and related to a sender of the item being shipped, a location of a master node disposed as part of a facility, a lobby location of a multi-floor facility, and the like). In some example embodiments, the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly may be temporarily disposed at the lobby of the multi-floor facility (as the intermediate loading location) as a hold-at-location logistics receptacle to receive the item being shipped before autonomously moving to the destination location with the item being shipped.

[0648] Movement to the intermediate loading location may, in some cases, begin after receipt of a confirmation message from the dispatch server, where such a confirmation message verifies the intermediate loading location as provided by a sender of the item being shipped.

[0649] In such an example embodiment involving an intermediate loading location, step 4415 of receiving the item being shipped may have the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the bot storage location to the intermediate loading location, and receiving, by the modular cargo storage system, the item being shipped at the intermediate loading location. Additionally, in this example embodiment, step 4420 of autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the origin location on the route to the destination location identified by the destination information may have the modular mobile autonomy control module causing the modular mobility base to move from the intermediate loading location on an intermediate delivery route to the destination location identified by the destination information. As such, in this example embodiment, step 4435 may then be revised to have to the modular mobile autonomy control module cause the modular mobility base to move from the destination location on the return route to the bot

storage location after the item being shipped is detected to be removed from within the modular cargo storage system.

[0650] In further embodiments related to operations within a hotel environment, exemplary method 4400 may be implemented with the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 where the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be stationed in a hotel lobby. In general and as part of this hotel embodiment, when a customer needs an item delivered to their room (*e.g.*, toiletries, food, etc.), the requested items may be loaded into the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus and the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus is dispatched to the customers room, another room designated by the customer, or the customers location leveraging TRON node locating techniques involving the customer's wireless node (*e.g.*, a smartphone operating as a type of ID or master node). The exemplary MALVT bot apparatus arrives at customer's room (or other identified delivery location) and alerts customer that it is there (*e.g.*, via display prompt, audio notification, electronic notification to the customer's user access device, or machine-to-machine notification via association using TRON elements operating as the customer's user access device and the controller in the MAM unit of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus). The customer authenticates delivery and retrieves the items from the CSS component. The exemplary MALVT bot apparatus ensures all items have been removed and returns to the lobby.

[0651] Accordingly, in such a further embodiment of exemplary method 4400 involving a separate intermediate loading location and hotel environment, the dispatch command from the dispatch server may be initiated by a hotel customer request received by the dispatch server for delivery of the item being shipped (*e.g.*, the requested toiletries, room service items, cleaning supplies, pillows, blankets, and the like) and the bot storage location may be a storage facility within a hotel building (*e.g.*, a storage room near the hotel's retail services, housekeeping facilities, and the like). Likewise, the intermediate loading location may be defined (as part of the destination information for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly) to be a location within the hotel designated by the delivery recipient sending the hotel customer request. Such a location within the hotel may, for example, be a designated hotel room within the hotel building, a designated services area within the hotel building, a designated conference room within the hotel building, or a location of an external mobile wireless node related to the delivery recipient (such as the location of delivery recipient mobile wireless node 3315). And in this further embodiment, method 4400 may also include notifying the delivery recipient of an approaching

delivery once the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly is within a threshold notification range of the destination location within the hotel identified by the destination information.

[0652] Further embodiments related to operations within a hotel environment may relate to luggage being picked up and delivered. In general and as part of this hotel embodiment involving luggage, exemplary method 4400 may be implemented with the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 where the hotel customer may hail an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus for help with luggage when checking out. The exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be dispatched to the room and the customer loads luggage onto the CSS component of the responding exemplary MALVT bot apparatus. The exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may then follow the customer out to a vehicle, or proceed to a particular holding area near the hotel lobby (*e.g.*, a loading zone) and await further interaction with the customer's user access device to proceed to the customer's vehicle. The exemplary MALVT bot apparatus then may return to a base or other holding location (*e.g.*, back to its origin or other bot storage location) once the customer has removed luggage from the CSS unit.

[0653] Accordingly, in such a further embodiment of exemplary method 4400 involving a hotel environment and luggage as the item being shipped, the origin location for the dispatched logistics operation may be a bot storage location within a hotel building where the modular autonomous bot apparatus is initially maintained (*e.g.*, in the hotel lobby, in a hotel storage room, and the like). The destination information identified in the dispatch commend may be an intermediate loading location (*e.g.*, the hotel customer's hotel room) and a drop-off location (*e.g.*, the hotel lobby). As such, receiving the item being shipped at step 4415 may be implemented with the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the bot storage location to the intermediate loading location, notifying the delivery recipient of an approaching pickup once the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly is within a threshold notification range of the intermediate loading location identified by the destination information, and having the modular cargo storage system receiving the item being shipped (*e.g.*, the customer's luggage) at the intermediate locating location (*e.g.*, the customer's room). Thereafter, this embodiment of method 4400 may autonomously cause the modular mobility base to move from the origin location on the route to the destination location identified by the destination information as part of step 4420 by having the modular mobile autonomy control module causing the modular mobility base to move from

the intermediate loading location on an intermediate delivery route to the drop-off location identified by the destination information as the destination location (*e.g.*, the hotel lobby). And, this embodiment of method 4400 may autonomously cause the modular mobility base to move from the destination location on the return route to the origin location after the item being shipped is detected to be removed as part of step 4435 by having the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the drop-off location on the return route to the bot storage location after the item being shipped is detected to be removed from within the modular cargo storage system.

[0654] In a further embodiment, there may a holding location and a secondary drop-off location involved, such as a hotel lobby luggage storage location and a second drop-off at a loading zone or at the customer's vehicle. As such, exemplary method 4400 may have the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the intermediate loading location on the intermediate delivery route to the drop-off location being implemented by first having the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the intermediate loading location on the intermediate delivery route to the drop-off location and holding at the drop-off location as a first holding location identified as part of the destination information (*e.g.*, the hotel luggage storage location or room), and then autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the first holding location to a secondary drop-off location identified as the location of an external mobile wireless node related to the delivery recipient. This last step may use node locating techniques as well as node-to-node association as described above, and be implemented with the modular mobile autonomy control module detecting an advertising signal from the external mobile wireless node related to the delivery recipient; establishing, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, an authorized secure association between the modular mobile autonomy control module and the external mobile wireless node based upon the authentication information related to the dispatched logistics operation; and autonomously causing, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, the modular mobility base to move from the first holding location to the secondary drop-off location after establishing the authorized secure association. In another example, the modular mobile autonomy control module may autonomously cause the modular mobility base to move from the secondary drop-off location to

the bot storage location after the item being shipped is detected to be removed from within the modular cargo storage system at the secondary drop-off location.

[0655] In further embodiments related to operations within a hotel environment and where the hotel customer requests pickup of an item/object, such as their luggage, according to an embodiment of method 4400, the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly involved in such a dispatched operation may operate in manner that follows the customer after pickup of the item at the intermediate loading location (*e.g.*, pickup of the customer's luggage at the customer's hotel room as the intermediate loading location). Accordingly, an embodiment of method 4400 may have the origin location for the dispatched logistics operation being a bot storage location within a hotel building where the modular autonomous bot apparatus is initially maintained, and may have the destination information in the dispatch command being an intermediate loading location (*e.g.*, the customer's hotel room) and a drop-off location (*e.g.*, the hotel lobby, a loading zone, or the customer's vehicle). As such, the step of receiving the item being shipped in step 4415 may be implemented with the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the bot storage location to the intermediate loading location; detecting an advertising signal from an external mobile wireless node related to the delivery recipient (*e.g.*, mobile wireless node 3315); establishing an authorized secure association between the modular mobile autonomy control module and the external mobile wireless node based upon the authentication information related to the dispatched logistics operation, the established authorized secure association authenticating the delivery recipient related to the external mobile wireless node; and transmitting, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, an impending pickup message to the external mobile wireless node about an approaching pickup of the item being shipped once the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly has established the authorized secure association between the modular mobile autonomy control module and the external mobile wireless node; and receiving, by the modular cargo storage system, the item being shipped at the intermediate locating location.

[0656] Additionally as part of this particular embodiment, step 4420 may be implemented with the modular mobile autonomy control module causing the modular mobility base move from the intermediate loading location towards the external mobile wireless node in a following mode as the external mobile wireless node moves towards the drop-off location; and where step 4435 may be implemented as autonomously causing, by the modular mobile

autonomy control module, the modular mobility base to move from the drop-off location to the bot storage location after the item being shipped is detected to be removed from within the modular cargo storage system at the drop-off location.

[0657] As part of this particular embodiment of exemplary method 4400, the bot apparatus 1700 may be an enhanced version where the modular mobility base may have a master mobility base, a slave mobility base, and an extended base adapter plate coupled to each of the master mobility base and the slave mobility base to support the item being shipped, and where each of the master and slave mobility bases being responsive to control input from the modular mobile autonomy control module to cause coordinated movement of the modular mobility base. Such an enhanced version of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus used in this embodiment of method 4400 may allow for greater transport loads to be handled by the bot apparatus (*e.g.*, a larger amount of luggage to be picked up from a customer's hotel room and brought to a drop-off location).

[0658] Further embodiments may deploy multiple exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700, which may cooperate in order to move heavy hard to handle items through (*e.g.*, furniture) through an office, building, hotel, or other facility. In such embodiments, a pair of exemplary bot apparatus assemblies may cooperate via TRON technology, with one acting as a master and providing coordinated steering and propulsion input to the other sale and collectively use one larger platform able to carry heavier encumbering loads with relative ease compared to office moving and utility services. Coupled exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may also follow movers via TRON location enablement (*e.g.*, node locating techniques and node-to-node association as described above) similar to how an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may follow a hotel customer after pickup of an item (*e.g.*, luggage).

[0659] In still another embodiment, multiple exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may cooperate in order to move heavy or hard to handle items in a residential environment for residents when moving in or unloading large cargo/purchases (*e.g.*, televisions, furniture). For example, an embodiment may use a base pair (*e.g.*, a pair of MBs such as that shown in Figure 19) as such exemplary bot apparatus that cooperate via TRON technology acting as one larger platform (*e.g.*, one MB controlling the other MB, a common MAM controlling the two MBs using master node and ID node TRON device management technology, or one MAM controlling the other MAM and MB in another bot) to facilitate carrying heavier or encumbering loads than

a single person can carry on their own. Coupled exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may also follow a moving resident via TRON location enablement (*e.g.*, node locating techniques and node-to-node association as described above) similar to how an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may follow a hotel customer after pickup of an item (*e.g.*, luggage).

[0660] Further embodiments in a high-rise delivery/pickup logistics operation environment may implement exemplary method 4400 with an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus 1700 from a group of one or more exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (*e.g.*, a pool of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assemblies that may be dispatched) for building maintenance part delivery, shred box removal, garbage removal, or office supply delivery within the facility. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that the above aspects of TRON technology may be incorporated into control elements in components of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus and leveraged for location, door & lock operation, elevator operation, and authentication using the various nodes (*e.g.*, different nodes embedded in or in responsive communication with an actuated door, lock, or elevator) and node locating techniques described above.

[0661] Additional embodiments where an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be dispatched according to a dispatch comment may have objects being delivered to a delivery, package, or shipped object room (generally referred to herein as a facility's object room) and held for final delivery until authorized by the end recipient. In general, a delivery recipient may receive a notification of delivery and arrange for an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus to complete delivery from the object room to a housing unit in the facility. The exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be dispatched with the object to the door of the final recipient who authorizes object delivery and receives the objects. The exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may then return to storage, moves on to the next delivery, or returns to an object room to pick up another delivery.

[0662] For example, Figure 46 is a flow diagram of such embodiment of an exemplary method for performing a dispatched logistics operation involving pickup, holding at an object holding location, and delivery of an item being shipped using a modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (MALVT bot apparatus assembly) and a dispatch server in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Like that of method 4400, exemplary method 4600 makes use, for example, of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 and exemplary dispatch server 4205. Exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700, as part of method 4600, is equipped

with at least a modular mobility base (*e.g.*, exemplary MB 1705) propelling the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700, a modular auxiliary power module (*e.g.*, exemplary APM 1710) providing power for exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700, a modular cargo storage system (*e.g.*, exemplary CSS 1720) configured to temporarily maintain what is transported within the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700, and a modular mobile autonomy control module (*e.g.*, exemplary MAM 1725) with its autonomous controller (*e.g.*, autonomous control system 3100) that autonomously controls operation of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 during method 4600.

[0663] Referring now to Figure 46, exemplary method 4600 begins at step 4605 with the modular mobile autonomy control module receiving a dispatch command from the dispatch server, where the dispatch command includes at least destination information and authentication information related to the dispatched logistics operation. At step 4610, method 4600 proceeds with the modular mobile autonomy control module authenticating that each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system are compatible with the dispatched logistics operation (similar to step 4410 and its variations as described above relative to method 4400). Then, at step 4615, method 4600 proceeds with the modular cargo storage system receiving the item being shipped at an origin location (similar to step 4415 and its variations as described above relative to method 4400).

[0664] At step 4620, method 4600 has the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the origin location on a route to an object holding location identified by the destination information. At the object holding location, step 4625 of method 4600 has the modular mobile autonomy control module transmitting a delivery notification message to an external mobile wireless node operated by a delivery recipient for the item being shipped (*e.g.*, delivery recipient mobile wireless node 3315) when the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly is within a threshold distance from the object holding location. At step 4630, the modular mobile autonomy control module receives a responsive final delivery message from the external mobile wireless node, where the responsive final delivery message includes at least a delivery location for the item being shipped.

[0665] At step 4635, method 4600 has the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the object holding location to the delivery location identified by the responsive final delivery message. At the delivery location,

method 4600 proceeds to step 4640 with receiving authentication input by the modular mobile autonomy control module from the delivery recipient. If the authentication input correlates to at least a portion of the authentication information related to the dispatched logistics operation, the delivery recipient that provided the authentication input is determined to be the authorized delivery recipient for the item being shipped within the module cargo storage system. Thereafter, at step 4645, method 4600 proceeds with the modular cargo storage system providing selective access to the item being shipped within the modular cargo storage system after the authentication input received correlates to the portion of the authentication information indicating the delivery recipient providing the authentication input is the authorized delivery recipient.

[0666] A further embodiment of method 4600 may also include the step of autonomously causing, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, the modular mobility base to move from the delivery location to the origin location after the item being shipped is detected to be removed from within the modular cargo storage system. For example, as shown in Figure 43F, when item 4310 is no longer detected by sensor 3130 to be within the CSS 1720, MAM 1725 may autonomously and responsively send steering and propulsion control signals to the MB 1703, which causes the MB to move on a route back to the origin location.

[0667] In still another embodiment, method 4600 may cause movement from the delivery location back to the object holding location. In more detail, this may involve having the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the delivery location to the object holding location after the item being shipped is detected to be removed from within the modular cargo storage system. Further still, method 4600 may also have the modular mobile autonomy control module transmitting a second delivery notification message to a second external mobile wireless node operated by a second delivery recipient for an additional item maintained within the modular cargo storage system when the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly is within the threshold distance from the object holding location. In this way, the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly performing method 4600 may return to the object holding location and wait to deliver the additional item to the second delivery recipient. As such, the modular mobile autonomy control module may then receive a second responsive final delivery message from the second external mobile wireless node (where the second responsive final delivery message includes at least a second delivery location for the

additional item maintained within the modular cargo system) and then cause the modular mobility base to move from the object holding location to the second delivery location identified by the second responsive final delivery message from the external mobile wireless node.

[0668] In still another embodiment of method 4600, the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly may move back to the object holding location to pickup an additional item for delivery from that location (rather than returning for delivery of an item already and still within the CSS payload area). In more detail, such a further embodiment of method 4600 may have the modular mobile autonomy control module receiving a second dispatch command from the dispatch server, where the second dispatch command includes at least second destination information and second authentication information related to a second dispatched logistics operation (*e.g.*, delivery of a second item to be picked up at the object holding location). The modular mobile autonomy control module proceeds in this further embodiment of method 4600 with autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the delivery location to the object holding location after the item being shipped is detected to be removed from within the modular cargo storage system; receiving, by the modular cargo storage system, the second item being shipped at the object holding location; transmitting, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, a second delivery notification message to a second external mobile wireless node operated by a second delivery recipient for the second item; and receiving, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, a second responsive final delivery message from the second external mobile wireless node, where the second responsive final delivery message included at least a second delivery location for the second item. Based upon this second responsive final delivery message, method 4600 continues with the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the object holding location to the second delivery location identified by the second responsive final delivery message from the second external mobile wireless node.

[0669] In another embodiment, an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be stored in lobby of residential building and dispatched for food deliveries according to either exemplary embodiments of method 4400 or method 4600. In general, when a food delivery arrives, the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be activated to receive the delivery from a delivery person (similar to picking up an item in an object holding location, such as the lobby), and complete the delivery within the building. Once delivery is completed, the exemplary MALVT

bot apparatus assembly returns to storage. As with the other embodiments, bot interactions using TRON technology may be incorporated and leveraged for location, door & lock operation, elevator operation, and authentication using the various nodes (*e.g.*, different nodes embedded in or in responsive communication with an actuated door, lock, or elevator) and node locating techniques described above. The CSS component of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly may be compartmentalized or partitioned using separators (such as exemplary separator 3608), climate controlled using exemplary detachable climate control modules 2210, and/or insulated so as to accommodate the intended food to be delivered.

Parts Delivery

[0670] Within an environment of a large private corporate facility, an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be dispatched and deployed to act as a shuttle for parts, tools, components, or other needs for mechanics or repairmen in an embodiment. In general, such an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (*e.g.*, exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700) may be initially disposed in a centralized warehouse and be dispatched with the appropriate item upon a request by an authorized maintenance person. TRON capabilities enable the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (operating as a master node through its autonomous controller in MAM 1725) to locate the repair person (via the person's user access device operating as an ID node) and make a delivery directly to the recipient without the need for addresses or mapping which may not be readily available. The recipient may then authenticate delivery via an app operating on the recipient's user access device, via TRON node interactions for association-based authenticated delivery, or via interaction with the display screen on the MAM component. TRON enabled coupled exemplary MALVT bot apparatus devices may be leveraged for movement of heavy and hard to handle equipment (*e.g.*, using a BAPM and multiple MBs, an enlarged CSS, and a suitably sized MAM). Those skilled in the art will appreciate that embodiments may involve on-demand building of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly for such parts delivery-related deployments (*e.g.*, consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 41, exemplary method 4100, and its variations), as well as embodiments that may responsively dispatch an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly on a parts delivery related dispatched logistics operation (*e.g.*, consistent with the process explained above

relative to Figure 44, exemplary method 4400, and its variations; as well as consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 44, exemplary method 4600, and its variations).

[0671] Accordingly, in such a further embodiment of exemplary method 4400 where the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be specially dispatched as a shuttle for such items, the origin location for the dispatched logistics operation may be a centralized bot storage location within a warehouse where the modular autonomous bot apparatus is initially maintained (*e.g.*, assembled proactively into assembly 1700 for such types of shuttle dispatch operation or in components for on-demand assembly into a particular exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700). The dispatch command sent by the dispatch server may be initiated based upon a dispatch request received by the dispatch server, where the dispatch request is sent from an authorized maintenance person related to the dispatched logistics operation. Such a dispatch command includes identifier information of an external mobile wireless node operated by the authorized maintenance person, and the destination information from the dispatch command is a mobile node location of the external mobile wireless node operated by the authorized maintenance person.

[0672] In step 4425 in this further embodiment of method 4400, the step of receiving deliver recipient authentication input may be through a user input panel on the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly (*e.g.*, input from the delivery recipient in the form of an access code and/or biometric input), or through wireless authentication based on the identifier information. In more detail, an embodiment may have step 4425 detecting, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, an advertising signal from the external mobile wireless node as the delivery recipient authentication input as the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly approaches the mobile node location of the external mobile wireless node. Upson such a detection, the modular mobile autonomy control module then authenticates that the external mobile wireless node is associated with the authorized delivery recipient for the item being shipped within the modular cargo storage system (*e.g.*, the parts being shuttled) based upon (a) the identifier information of the external mobile wireless node from the dispatch command and (b) identifier information within the detected advertising signal broadcast from the external mobile wireless node.

[0673] In such a further embodiment of method 4400, the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly may be implemented with a specially configured assembly using a pair of

MB units and an extended base adapter plate to handle heavier loads. In more detail, as part of a further embodiment of method 4400, the modular mobility base compatible with the dispatched logistics operation may be implemented using a master mobility base, a slave mobility base, and an extended base adapter plate coupled to each of the master mobility base and the slave mobility base to support the item being shipped (such as that shown in Figure 19). As such, each of the master mobility base and the slave mobility base are responsive to control input from the modular mobile autonomy control module to cause coordinated movement of the modular mobility bases. Further, the modular cargo storage system compatible with the dispatched logistics operation in such a further embodiment may be one of multiple different sized modular cargo storage systems, where the compatible sized modular cargo storage system is one compatible with a size parameter for the item being shipped as part of the dispatched logistics operation. Likewise, the modular mobile autonomy control module compatible with the dispatched logistics operation in such a further embodiment may be one of multiple different sized modular mobile autonomy control modules, where the compatible sized modular mobile autonomy control module is one compatible with the size parameter for the item being shipped as part of the dispatched logistics operation. For example, with the exemplary master MB 1705a and slave MB 1705b and extended base adapter plate 1905 shown in Figure 19, a compatible CSS 1720 that may mount to plate 1905 is larger than with another sized CSS 1720 that would mount to plate 2005, and a similarly sized MAM 1725 would be one compatible with the larger sized CSS that fits on plate 1905.

Hospital Assistant

[0674] In another embodiment, an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may configured and used to serve as a transportation unit for various items throughout a hospital. In general, prescription drugs, for example, may be ferried from a pharmacy within the hospital to the patient's room using the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (*e.g.*, exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700). Such an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly may use TRON node elements (such as ID nodes and/or master nodes as discussed above for control elements) and use such node elements as part of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus to identify and locate the correct nurse (*e.g.*, one that is operating a mobile wireless node, such as node 3315) for delivery and authentication ensuring proper chain of custody of drugs. An exemplary MALVT

bot apparatus in such an embodiment may carry needed medical supplies to rooms when requested by hospital staff. Such an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly may be configured to deliver meals to patients confined to people in rooms, including patients who have been quarantined due to infectious dieses without fear of contamination of hospital staff. An appropriately insulated, organized, and/or climate controlled CSS unit as described above may be used. An exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly may safely and securely pickup and remove biohazard storage boxes as part of a dispatched logistics operation to a proper disposal facility, which has the advantage of helping to lower the risk of potential infection as well as carry samples to test areas (or different sites in the case of campus hospitals). In such embodiments, the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly may be connected to an internal hospital alarm system (*e.g.,* via wireless monitoring of the alarm system or simply receiving a signal from the alarm system – audible, electronic, and the like) and automatically and responsively move against a wall and out of the way when a "code" event (*e.g.,* patient alarm requiring additional doctors or nurses to a patient's room ASAP) occurs. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that in these hospital related deployments, configurations of such an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly, which may use TRON nodes as control elements, may be leveraged for movement of heavy and hard to handle equipment (*e.g.,* using a BAPM and multiple MBs, an enlarged CSS, and a suitably sized MAM). Additionally, the display elements (*e.g.,* screens 2815a, 2815b, and other light panels) on the MAM 1725 on such an assembly may present warnings of hazardous contents (*e.g.,* generated warning information related to the item being shipped), relay information for medication administration (*e.g.,* generated medical administration information, such as product warnings on the medication being shipped within the bot apparatus assembly), or act as an authentication measure to present prompted messages that request authentication input so that the item being shipped may be released and delivered.

[0675] Those skilled in the art will appreciate that embodiments may involve on-demand building of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly for such hospital-related deployments (*e.g.,* consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 41, exemplary method 4100, and its variations), as well as embodiments that may responsively dispatch an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly on a hospital related dispatched logistics operation (*e.g.,* consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 44, exemplary method 4400, and

its variations; as well as consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 44, exemplary method 4600, and its variations).

[0676] Accordingly, in such a further embodiment of exemplary method 4400 in such a hospital environment with an intermediate loading location, the bot storage location for the dispatched logistics operation may be a centralized bot storage location within a hospital where the modular autonomous bot apparatus is initially maintained while the intermediate loading location is a medical supply storage (*e.g.*, a pharmaceutical supply storage where the item being shipped may be a prescribed medicine according to the dispatched logistics operation). The dispatch command sent by the dispatch server is initiated based upon a dispatch request received by the dispatch server. The dispatch request is sent from an authorized hospital staff related to the dispatched logistics operation, and the responsive the dispatch command from the dispatch server includes identifier information of an external mobile wireless node operated by the authorized hospital staff. In more detail, the destination location in this further embodiment of exemplary method 4400 may be a predetermined location within the hospital for a patient currently located within the hospital (*e.g.*, a patient's room, a pre-op area within the hospital, and the like) or the mobile node location of the external mobile wireless node operated by the authorized hospital staff sending the request (or the mobile node location of another designated mobile wireless node).

[0677] In more detail, such a further embodiment of the exemplary method 4400 may also have the modular mobile autonomy control module storing the delivery recipient authentication input as chain of custody information for the item being shipped (*e.g.*, medication, medical supplies, and the like). Such chain of custody information may be further transmitted to a server (*e.g.*, a hospital-based server that tracks and accounts for medical supplies being billed to a patient for their care and treatment while in the hospital).

[0678] In another example of such a further embodiment of exemplary method 4400 operating in a hospital environment, the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly may be dispatched on a logistics operation involving meal pickup and delivery to patients within the hospital. In more detail and for example, as part of an embodiment of method 4400, the bot storage location for the dispatched logistics operation may be a centralized bot storage location within a hospital where the modular autonomous bot apparatus is initially maintained. The dispatch command sent by the dispatch server is initiated based upon a dispatch request received

by the dispatch server and sent from an authorized hospital staff related to the dispatched logistics operation. In this embodiment, the intermediate loading location is a hospital meal supply location, and the modular cargo storage system used in this embodiment of method 4400 has a segmented and insulated payload area (*e.g.,* using exemplary separators 3608 that are insulated) for transporting meals as the item being shipped, and a detachable climate control module (*e.g.,* exemplary climate control module 2210) responsive to climate control input from the modular mobile autonomy control module to maintain a desired environment within the modular cargo storage system.

[0679] In another example of such a further embodiment of exemplary method 4400 operating in a hospital environment, the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly may be dispatched on a logistics operation involving biohazard material as the item being shipped. In more detail and for example, as part of an embodiment of method 4400, the bot storage location for the dispatched logistics operation may be a centralized bot storage location within a hospital where the modular autonomous bot apparatus is initially maintained. The dispatch command sent by the dispatch server is initiated based upon a dispatch request received by the dispatch server, and sent from an authorized hospital staff related to the biohazard-related dispatched logistics operation. As part of this further embodiment of exemplary method 4400, the intermediate loading location is a biohazard material repository location, and the destination location is a biohazard material disposal location. As part of exemplary method 4400 in this particular embodiment, further steps may have modular components of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus being disconnected and sanitized after the biohazard-related logistics operation.

[0680] In another example of such a further embodiment of exemplary method 4400 operating in a hospital environment, the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly may be dispatched on a logistics operation where there is responsive integration and/or actions of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly to a hospital alarm system. In one example, as part of an embodiment of method 4400, method 4400 may further have the modular mobile autonomy control module receiving a wireless hospital alarm signal during the dispatched logistics operation; and autonomously causing the modular mobility base to interrupt movement and position the modular mobility base in a predetermined unobstructive position within a current environment of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly. Such a predetermined unobstructive position may, for example, be a position against a wall within the current

environment of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly as sensed by one or more sensors on the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly, or a position within the current environment of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly and sensed by the modular mobile autonomy control module to be unoccupied relative to movement sensed within the current environment of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly. Further embodiments may detect the hospital alarm with the modular mobile autonomy control module monitoring, using a microphone, for a hospital alarm tone or series of tones that may be recognized by the modular mobile autonomy control module as representing the hospital alarm, which then causes the modular mobility base to interrupt movement and position the modular mobility base in a predetermined unobstructive position within a current environment of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

[0681] In still another example of such a further embodiment of exemplary method 4400 operating in a hospital environment, the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly be deployed and configured with a BAPM and two modular mobility base units to handle larger items to move within the hospital. For example, as part of an embodiment of method 4400, the modular mobility base compatible with the dispatched logistics operation in method 4400 may include a master mobility base, a slave mobility base, and an extended base adapter plate coupled to each of the master mobility base and the slave mobility base to support the item being shipped, where each of the master mobility base and the slave mobility base is responsive to control input from the modular mobile autonomy control module to cause coordinated movement of the modular mobility base as required in steps of method 4400.

[0682] Likewise, particular types and sizes of modular components of exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly may be specifically selected as needed for specific the hospital-related dispatched logistics operation involved in such an embodiment of method 4400. For example, the modular cargo storage system compatible with the dispatched logistics operation within the hospital may be one of several different sized modular cargo storage systems, where the selected one of the different sized modular cargo storage systems is compatible with a size parameter for the item being shipped as part of the dispatched logistics operation within the hospital. As such, an appropriate CSS 1720 may be used on top of the extended base adapter plate described above in an embodiment where such a configured bot apparatus is deployed on a dispatched logistics operation to pick up and deliver a greater number of items or simply larger

items. Those skilled in the art will further appreciate that in such an example, the modular mobile autonomy control module compatible with the dispatched logistics operation within the hospital may also be one of several of different sized modular mobile autonomy control modules. And like the modular cargo storage system component, the particular mobile autonomy control module used for the bot apparatus may be one that is compatible with the size parameter for the item being shipped as part of the dispatched logistics operation within the hospital.

Document Delivery

[0683] In further embodiments, an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be used as a secure courier between office buildings for a variety of companies that currently leverage internal staff or foot couriers. For example, law firms, finance firms, government work may be transported securely and transparently from one office to the other using an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus and its security features. In general, an exemplary embodiment may have the sender hailing a secure delivery exemplary MALVT bot apparatus using, for example, wireless node interactions between the sender's user access device and the MAM (*e.g.*, having a controller operating as a master node where the sender's user access devices is operating as an ID node). The requested exemplary MALVT bot apparatus responds and arrives to receive the documents. The security and authentication needs for the delivery may be selectively deployed depending on the type of documents, the sender, and the recipient. The sender may leverage TRON technology in such a secure courier type of dispatched logistics operation embodiment, which may involve wireless communications with user access devices (*e.g.*, supplier mobile user access device 3310 (*e.g.*, a type of mobile ID node or mobile master node) such as a smartphone or handheld tablet device) and a node-enabled component of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus (*e.g.*, the autonomous controller 3100 on exemplary MAM 1725)) or enter a physical location to cause the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus to be dispatched, which may alert the recipient of departure as well as provide an estimated arrival time by the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus. In this general example involving secure courier type of logistics operations, the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may arrive at location and alert the recipient of delivery. The recipient may receive delivery of the documents within the CSS component with the selected level of security/authentication/authorization via display screen, app, or TRON implemented interactive based secure delivery features (*e.g.*, biometrics, key code, two factor authentication,

TRON node-to-node association, etc.). After delivery, the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may return to the original storage location, and/or return signed or updated documents to the sender or third party if needed. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that such secure courier related embodiments may involve on-demand building of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly for such secure document delivery-related deployments (*e.g.*, consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 41, exemplary method 4100, and its variations), as well as embodiments that may responsively dispatch an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly on a document delivery-related dispatched logistics operation (*e.g.*, consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 44, exemplary method 4400, and its variations; as well as consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 44, exemplary method 4600, and its variations).

[0684] Accordingly, in further embodiment of exemplary method 4400 involving secure document delivery logistics operations, the dispatch command sent by the dispatch server may be initiated based upon a dispatch request received by the dispatch server and where the request is sent from a sending entity related to the dispatched logistics operation. The dispatch command includes sender identifier information of an external mobile wireless node operated by the sending entity and delivery recipient identifier information related to a delivery recipient for the item being shipped. Further, as part of this embodiment of method 4400, the origin location for the dispatched logistics operation is a bot storage location where the modular autonomous bot apparatus is initially maintained and the destination information defines an intermediate loading location defined as part of the destination information. As part of this embodiment of exemplary method 4400, the step of receiving the item being shipped at step 4415 has the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the bot storage location to the intermediate loading location (*e.g.*, a mobile node location of the external mobile wireless node operated by the sending entity); receiving sending entity authentication input by the modular mobile autonomy control module from the sending entity, where the sending entity authentication input correlates to a portion of the authentication information related to the dispatched logistics operation indicating the sending entity providing that sending entity authentication input is an authorized provider for the item being shipped within the module cargo storage system as part of the dispatched logistics operation; having the modular cargo storage system providing selective access to within the modular cargo storage system after the

sending entity authentication input is confirmed to be from the authorized provider for the item (*i.e.,* the received sending entity authentication input correlates to the portion of the authentication information indicating the sending entity providing the sending entity authentication input is the authorized provider for the item being shipped); receiving, by the modular cargo storage system, the item being shipped (*e.g.,* one or more documents to be transported within the modular cargo storage system) at the intermediate locating location; and securing, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, the item being shipped within the modular cargo storage system. Additionally, as part of this embodiment of exemplary method 4400, step 4420 may be implemented as causing, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, the modular mobility base to move from the intermediate loading location on an intermediate delivery route to the destination location identified by the destination information (*e.g.,* a mobile node location of an external mobile wireless node operated by the delivery recipient), and step 4435 may be implemented as autonomously causing, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, the modular mobility base to move from the destination location on the return route to the bot storage location after the item being shipped is detected to be removed from within the modular cargo storage system.

[0685] In more detail and as part of this further embodiment of method 4400, the step of receiving the sending entity authentication input may be further implemented with wireless input, input through a user input panel (or other sensor) on the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus involved in the operation, or recognized voice input through a microphone on the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus. For example, the modular mobile autonomy control module may first detect an advertising signal from the sending entity's mobile wireless node as the sending entity authentication input as the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (*e.g.,* exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700) approaches the mobile node location of the sending entity's external mobile wireless node, and then authenticate that the external mobile wireless node operated by the sending entity is associated with the sending entity for the item being shipped within the modular cargo storage system based upon (a) the identifier information of the external mobile wireless node operated by the sending entity from the dispatch command and (b) identifier information within the detected advertising signal.

[0686] In another example in such an embodiment of method 4400, the sending entity authentication input received by the modular mobile autonomy control module may be provided

as an access code through a user input panel disposed on the modular autonomous bot apparatus coupled to the modular mobile autonomy control module (*e.g.*, exemplary user input panel 2220), biometric input provided the user input panel disposed or via a sensor disposed on the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly, or wireless input from an external mobile wireless node, or a combination of such input in a multi-factor form of authentication input.

[0687] In more detail and as part of this further embodiment of method 4400, the step of receiving the delivery recipient authentication input may be similarly implemented with wireless input, input through a user input panel (or other sensor) on the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus involved in the operation, or recognized voice input through a microphone on the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus. For example, the modular mobile autonomy control module may first detect an advertising signal from the delivery recipient's mobile wireless node as the delivery recipient authentication input as the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly (*e.g.*, exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700) approaches the mobile node location of the delivery recipient's external mobile wireless node, and then authenticate that the external mobile wireless node operated by the delivery recipient is associated with the authorized delivery recipient for the item being shipped within the modular cargo storage system based upon (a) the delivery recipient identifier information from the dispatch command and (b) identifier information of the external mobile wireless node operated by the delivery recipient within the detected advertising signal.

[0688] In still another example in such an embodiment of method 4400, the delivery recipient authentication input received by the modular mobile autonomy control module may be provided as an access code through a user input panel disposed on the modular autonomous bot apparatus coupled to the modular mobile autonomy control module (*e.g.*, exemplary user input panel 2220), biometric input provided the user input panel disposed or via a sensor disposed on the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly, or wireless input from an external mobile wireless node, or a combination of such input in a multi-factor form of authentication input.

[0689] In yet another example in such an embodiment of method 4400 involving secure delivery of documents, method 4400 may further include the step of transmitting, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, a pickup notification to the sending entity of an approaching pickup as part of the dispatched logistics operation once the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly is within a threshold notification range of the intermediate loading location identified

by the destination information. Thereafter, method 4400 may also include the step of transmitting, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, a departure notification to the delivery recipient of an estimated drop-off as part of the dispatched logistics operation once the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly moves a threshold departure distance from the intermediate loading location. Such a departure notification may include an estimated time of arrival for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly to arrive at the destination location from a current location of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly. An embodiment of method 4400 involving secure delivery of documents may also include the step of transmitting, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, a drop-off notification to the delivery recipient of an approaching drop-off as part of the dispatched logistics operation once the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly is within a threshold notification range of the destination location identified by the destination information.

[0690] Upon delivery of the item being shipped (*e.g.,* documents and the like), the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may, as part of this embodiment of method 4400, return to the sending entity with an additional item within the CSS 1720 (*e.g.,* modified or signed documents), or proceed to another location with such an additional item. For example, step 4435 may be implemented by autonomously causing, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, the modular mobility base to move from the destination location back to the intermediate loading location after the item being shipped is detected to be removed from within the modular cargo storage system at the destination location and an additional item is detected to be placed within the modular cargo storage system at the destination location; and then autonomously causing, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, the modular mobility base to move from the intermediate loading location to the bot storage location after the additional item is detected to be removed from within the modular cargo storage system at the intermediate loading location.

[0691] This may also include steps of receiving secondary sending entity authentication input by the modular mobile autonomy control module from the sending entity while at the intermediate loading location after the modular mobility base returns to the intermediate loading location, where the secondary sending entity authentication input at least correlates to (*e.g.,* matches all or at least a threshold amount of) the portion of the authentication information related to the dispatched logistics operation indicating the sending entity that provided the secondary sending entity authentication input is the authorized provider for the item being

shipped within the module cargo storage system as part of the dispatched logistics operation. The modular cargo storage system may then provide selective access to within the modular cargo storage system for removal of the additional item after the secondary sending entity authentication input received correlates to the portion of the authentication information indicating the sending entity providing the secondary sending entity authentication input is the authorized provider for the item being shipped.

[0692] As noted above, upon delivery of the item being shipped (*e.g.*, documents and the like), the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may, as part of this embodiment of method 4400, proceed to another location with the additional item. For example, step 4435 may be implemented by autonomously causing, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, the modular mobility base to move from the destination location to a secondary delivery location after the item being shipped is detected to be removed from within the modular cargo storage system at the destination location and after an additional item is detected within the modular cargo storage system while at the destination location, the secondary delivery location being identified as part of the destination information related to the dispatched logistics operation. The modular mobile autonomy control module then may autonomously cause the modular mobility base to move from the secondary delivery location to the bot storage location after the additional item is detected to be removed from within the modular cargo storage system at the secondary delivery location. In addition, method 4400 in this particular embodiment may also proceed by receiving third party entity authentication input by the modular mobile autonomy control module from a third party entity while at the secondary delivery location after the modular mobility base arrives at the secondary delivery location. The third party entity authentication input correlates to a portion of the authentication information related to the dispatched logistics operation indicating the third party entity that provided the third party entity authentication input is an authorized third party recipient for the additional item within the module cargo storage system as part of the dispatched logistics operation. Thereafter, the modular cargo storage system may provide selective access to within the modular cargo storage system for removal of the additional item after the third party entity authentication input received correlates to the portion of the authentication information indicating the third party entity providing the third party entity authentication input is the authorized third party recipient for the additional item.

Medical Device Kit

[0693] A further embodiment may involve medical kits of supplies used for medical procedures. For example, a surgical implant company, such as Smith & Nephew, may send hospitals one or more "kits" of components needed for a surgery or other medical procedure with a variety of sizes and instruments that may be used for the procedure, but with some components from the kit never being used and remaining in pristine condition for use in another procedure. In general, a dispatched exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly in such an environment may have equipment or components of a medical kit that remains unused after a medical procedure be loaded into a waiting exemplary MALVT bot apparatus stored at the hospital with a centralized return location as the delivery address mapped (*e.g.,* via TRON node locating techniques or via GPS location circuitry onboard the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus). Once the unused equipment is secured within the CSS 1720 of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700, the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly 1700 may autonomously depart and proceed to deliver the unused equipment from the medical kit. The receiving center at the centralized return location (or elsewhere as defined in the relevant dispatch command for the dispatched logistics operation) will receive an update that the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus is on the way with an estimated time of arrival. The recipient at the receiving center authenticates delivery with techniques described above (*e.g.,* via app input, input via a secure TRON node-to-node association, or input prompted through a display screen, such as voice input, or biometric input via sensors on the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus). If a new kit is needed to replenish inventory it is loaded into the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus and the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus returns to the hospital.

[0694] Those skilled in the art will appreciate that embodiments may involve on-demand building of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly for such medical kit-related deployments (*e.g.,* consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 41, exemplary method 4100, and its variations), as well as embodiments that may responsively dispatch an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly on a medical kit-related dispatched logistics operation (*e.g.,* consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 44, exemplary method 4400, and its variations; as well as consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 44, exemplary method 4600, and its variations).

[0695] Accordingly, in such a further embodiment of exemplary method 4400 involving a hospital environment with an intermediate loading location, the item being shipped may include at least one of multiple components of a medical kit used for a medical procedure. The component of the medical kit to be shipped is unused as part of the medical procedure and in condition for use in a second medical procedure (*e.g.*, still sterile, in packaging, and the like). In this further embodiment, the origin location for the medical kit-related dispatched logistics operation may be a bot storage location where the modular autonomous bot apparatus is initially maintained, while the destination information defines an intermediate return loading location (*e.g.*, a room relative to an office mapping, a set of coordinates, or a mobile node location of an external mobile wireless node operated by the returning entity medical personnel) and a destination location for the dispatched logistics operation as a centralized return location for the component(s) being returned via this dispatched logistics operation.

[0696] Additionally, as part of this further embodiment of method 4400, step 4415 in this embodiment may be implemented with the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the bot storage location to the intermediate return loading location; receiving returning entity medical personnel authentication input by the modular mobile autonomy control module from returning entity medical personnel related to the dispatched logistics operation (where the returning entity medical personnel authentication input correlates to a portion of the authentication information indicating the personnel providing the returning entity medical personnel authentication input is an authorized return supplier for the item being shipped); providing, by the modular cargo storage system, selective access to within the modular cargo storage system after the returning entity medical personnel authentication input indicates the returning entity medical personnel is the authorized return supplier for the item (due to the correlation with the authentication information). The modular cargo storage system may then receive the item being shipped at the intermediate locating location, and have the modular mobile autonomy control module securing the item being shipped within the modular cargo storage system (*e.g.*, by closing the cargo door and/or locking the cargo storage system with the item within it).

[0697] Additionally, step 4420 in this embodiment may, as a result be implemented with the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the intermediate loading location (where it has been loaded with the unused part of

the medical kit) on an intermediate delivery route to the destination location identified by the destination information. Thereafter, step 4435 in this embodiment may be implemented by the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the destination location on the return route to the bot storage location after the item being shipped (*e.g.*, the unused part of the medical kit) is detected to be removed from within the modular cargo storage system using, for example, internal sensor 3130 on MAM 1725 that monitors the payload area of CSS 1720.

[0698] In a further example, the step of receiving the returning entity medical personnel authentication input may have the modular mobile autonomy control module detecting an advertising signal from the external mobile wireless node operated by the returning entity medical personnel as the returning entity medical personnel authentication input when the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly approaches the mobile node location of the external mobile wireless node operated by the returning entity medical personnel; and the modular mobile autonomy control module authenticating that the external mobile wireless node operated by the returning entity medical personnel is associated with the returning entity medical personnel for the item being shipped within the modular cargo storage system based upon (a) the identifier information of the external mobile wireless node operated by the returning entity medical personnel from the dispatch command and (b) identifier information within the detected advertising signal. Other ways of authenticating the pickup may be accomplished by, for example, receiving the returning entity medical personnel authentication input through a user input panel disposed on the modular autonomous bot apparatus coupled to the modular mobile autonomy control module (via access code or biometric input), or through another sensor on the modular autonomous bot apparatus (*e.g.*, a microphone).

[0699] Similar ways of authenticating the delivery may be employed with delivery receipt authentication input being received in different forms and using different input mechanisms (*e.g.*, wireless, user input panel, other sensors). For example, the step of receiving the delivery recipient authentication input may be implemented in this embodiment with the modular mobile autonomy control module detecting an advertising signal from an external mobile wireless node operated by a centralized return location recipient as the delivery recipient authentication input as the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly approaches the mobile node location of the external mobile wireless node operated by the centralized return location

recipient; and then authenticating that the mobile wireless node providing such input is associated with the centralized return location recipient for the item being shipped within the modular cargo storage system based upon (a) the delivery recipient identifier information from the dispatch command and (b) identifier information of the external mobile wireless node operated by the centralized return location recipient within the detected advertising signal.

[0700] Further still, as part of this medical kit related embodiment of method 4400, method 4400 may generate notifications to arrival and departures of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly. For example, the medical kit related embodiment of method 4400 described above may include the step of transmitting, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, a pickup notification to the returning entity medical personnel of an approaching pickup as part of the dispatched logistics operation once the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly is within a threshold notification range of the intermediate loading location identified by the destination information. In another example, method 4400 may also include the step of transmitting, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, a departure notification (which may have an estimated time of arrival) to the centralized return location recipient of an estimated drop-off as part of the dispatched logistics operation once the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly moves a threshold departure distance from the intermediate loading location. The departure notification may, in some embodiments, include an estimated time of arrival for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly to arrive at the destination location from a current location of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly. Further still, another example of method 4400 may have the modular mobile autonomy control module transmitting a drop-off notification to the centralized return location recipient of an approaching drop-off as part of the dispatched logistics operation once the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly is within a threshold notification range of the destination location identified by the destination information.

[0701] In this further embodiment of method 4400 involving a medical kit, there may be an option to return with a replacement for the unused part or a different kit. For example, step 4435 may be implemented by the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the destination location back to the intermediate loading location after the item being shipped is detected to be removed from the CSS at the destination location and an additional item (*e.g.*, a replacement medical kit or a medical kit for a different type of medical procedure) is detected to be placed within the CSS at the destination

location; and autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the intermediate loading location to the bot storage location after the additional item is detected to be removed from within the modular cargo storage system at the intermediate loading location.

Office Document Shredding

[0702] Further embodiments may involve logistics operations involving shredding containers and documents to be shredded that need transport. For example, one or more exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be leased by a commercial document shredding company to take strong box shredding containers (*e.g.,* shred bins) to a singular location in a building to be picked up, or deliver the shredding containers to a centralized location receiving deliveries from multiple buildings overnight. Traditionally, the document shredding company may employ trucks and personnel to empty shred bins in commercial offices. However, an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be deployed as part of a dispatched logistics operation to go office-to-office or between certain locations within an office to remove shred bins and take the shredding documents (*e.g.,* within the bins or as documents themselves loaded into an exemplary CSS that can handle a desired volume of such documents) to a centralized facility, which will drastically cut down on logistic & fleet management costs. The exemplary MALVT bot apparatus in this embodiment may operate elevators, doors, and interact with shred bins using actuated articulating arms and vision systems or via electronic integration with a building's automated systems for elevators and door openers. Aspects of TRON wireless node technology may be incorporated and leveraged for location, door & lock operation, elevator operation, machine-to-machine interaction (*e.g.,* node to node wireless communication) and authentication using the various nodes (*e.g.,* different nodes embedded in or in responsive communication with an actuated door, lock, or elevator) and node locating techniques as described above.

[0703] Those skilled in the art will appreciate that embodiments may involve on-demand building of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly for such office shredding-related deployments (*e.g.,* consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 41, exemplary method 4100, and its variations), as well as embodiments that may responsively dispatch an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly on an office shredding-related dispatched logistics operation (*e.g.,* consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 44, exemplary

method 4400, and its variations; as well as consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 44, exemplary method 4600, and its variations).

[0704] Accordingly, in such a further embodiment of exemplary method 4400 involving the collection of documents for shredding and used of an intermediate loading location (where the documents are picked up), the item being shipped by the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly is documents collected for secure shredding and, in some cases, may also include a container that securely maintains such documents to be shredded. The destination location in this further embodiment is a centralized shred pickup facility, and the intermediate loading location is a location of a container maintaining the documents collected for secure shredding (*e.g.,* an identified location relative to an office mapping of the container maintaining the documents collected for secure shredding, a location of an external wireless node built into or as a part of the shredding document container maintaining the documents collected for secure shredding, or a mobile location of the container's wireless node). As such, this particular embodiment of method 4400 may implement step 4415 by first receiving pickup authentication input by the modular mobile autonomy control module from a document supplier through a user input panel disposed on the modular autonomous bot apparatus coupled to the modular mobile autonomy control module; and then having the modular cargo storage system provide selective access to within the modular cargo storage system for loading of the item being shipped after the pickup authentication input received correlates to a portion of the authentication information related to an authorized document supplier.

[0705] The pickup recipient authentication input received in this particular embodiment of method 4400 may come in several forms. For example, the pickup recipient authentication input received by the modular mobile autonomy control module may be an access code provided by the document supplier through the user input panel disposed on the modular cargo storage system and operatively coupled to the modular mobile autonomy control module or a biometric input provided by the document supplier through the user input panel (which may have a biometric input sensor or scanner).

[0706] In another example, receiving the pickup recipient authentication input may, in more detail, involve receiving pickup authentication input by the modular mobile autonomy control module by detecting an advertising signal from the external wireless node that is part of the container maintaining the documents collected for secure shredding and verifying the

detected advertising signal includes identifier information that correlates to a portion of the authentication information related to an authorized document supplier for the container. Thereafter, the modular cargo storage system may then provide selective access to within the modular cargo storage system for loading of the item being shipped after the pickup authentication input received correlates to the portion of the authentication information related to the authorized document supplier.

[0707] In this particular embodiment of method 4400 involving documents for shredding, the delivery recipient authentication input received may also come in various forms. For example, the delivery receipt authentication input may be information received through a user input panel disposed on the modular autonomous bot apparatus coupled to the modular mobile autonomy control module, such as an access code provided by the delivery recipient through the user input panel or biometric input provided by the delivery recipient through the user input panel (which has a biometric sensor or scanner) or another sensor that may receive such biometric input from the delivery recipient.

[0708] In a further example where delivery may be authenticated via wireless authentication, the authentication information related to the dispatched logistics operation may include an identifier of the authorized delivery recipient for the item being shipped as part of the dispatched logistics operation. Furthermore, the step of receiving the delivery recipient authentication input at step 4425 may be implemented with the modular mobile autonomy control module detecting an advertising signal as the delivery recipient authentication input from an external wireless node related to the destination location within a predetermined range of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly once the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly has arrived at the destination location identified by the destination information; and having the modular mobile autonomy control module authenticate that the external wireless node related to the destination location is associated with the authorized delivery recipient for the item being shipped within the modular cargo storage system based upon the identifier of the authorized delivery recipient and identifier information within the detected advertising signal broadcast from the external wireless node related to the destination location.

[0709] In this particular embodiment of method 4400 involving documents for shredding that may be picked up in a particular shred bin/container, step 4415 may be implemented by deploying an articulating arm (*e.g.,* exemplary arm 4325, 2090) disposed on the modular

autonomous bot apparatus assembly and using proximity and vision sensors disposed on at least one of the modular mobility base and the modular mobile autonomy control module to engage the item being shipped (*e.g.*, the shred bin container) and placing the item within the modular cargo storage system. In more detail, receiving the item being shipped in this particular embodiment may be implemented with the modular mobile autonomy control module guiding the articulating arm to the item being shipped using proximity and vision sensors disposed on at least one of the modular mobility base and the modular mobile autonomy control module; engaging, by the articulating arm, the item being shipped; and moving, by the articulating arm, the item being shipped to a position within the modular cargo storage system.

[0710] In a further embodiment, the articulating arm may be used to open a closable access point on the shred bin container and transfer the documents to be shredded into the CSS payload area for transport on the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly. For example, the step of receiving the item being shipped at step 4415 may be implemented with the modular mobile autonomy control module guiding the articulating arm to a closable access point on the container using one or more of the proximity and vision sensors disposed on at least one of the modular mobility base and the modular mobile autonomy control module; engaging, by the articulating arm, the closable access point on the container to enabled access to within the container (*e.g.*, opening the container using the articulating arm to manipulate the closeable access point); engaging, by the articulating arm, the documents collected for secure shredding; and moving, by the articulating arm, the documents collected for secure shredding to a position within the modular cargo storage system.

[0711] In yet a further embodiment, the articulating arm may be used to obtain the shred bin container itself and place it within the CSS payload area for transport on the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly. For example, the step of receiving the item being shipped at step 4415 may be implemented by deploying an articulating arm disposed on the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly and using a plurality of proximity and vision sensors disposed on at least one of the modular mobility base and the modular mobile autonomy control module to engage the container and place the container within the modular cargo storage system. In some embodiments, this may be accomplished with a single articulating arm, but in other embodiments, the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly may deploy multiple articulating

arms to use when engaging, manipulating, and moving an item being shipped, such as a shred bin container filled with documents for shredding.

[0712] In still another embodiment of method 4400, the dispatch command may have the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly being dispatched to pickup documents for shredding from multiple locations before dropping them all off at a document shredding facility (*e.g.*, a fixed building or a mobile facility deployed outside of an office building in which the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus is conducting the pickup operations). For example, an embodiment of method 4400 may have the item being shipped being a plurality of documents collected for secure shredding; the destination location being a centralized shred pickup facility; the origin location for the dispatched logistics operation being a bot storage location where the modular autonomous bot apparatus is initially maintained; and where the destination information defines multiple intermediate loading locations as part of the dispatched logistics operation. As such, step 4415 involving receiving the item being shipped may be implemented with the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the bot storage location to a first of the intermediate loading locations; receiving, by the modular cargo storage system, a first portion of the item being shipped at first of the intermediate locating locations (*e.g.*, a first group of documents to be shredded); autonomously causing, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, the modular mobility base to move from the first intermediate loading location to a second of the intermediate loading locations; and receiving, by the modular cargo storage system, a second portion of the item being shipped at first of the intermediate locating locations (*e.g.*, a second group of documents to be shredded). Step 4420 in this embodiment of method 4400 may be implemented with the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the second of the intermediate loading locations to the destination location identified by the destination information; and step 4435 may be implemented with the modular mobile autonomy control module autonomously causing the modular mobility base to move from the destination location on the return route to the bot storage location after each of at least the first portion of the item being shipped and the second portion of the item being shipped are detected to be removed from within the modular cargo storage system.

Pharmaceutical Fulfilment

[0713] In another embodiment, an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be deployed as part of a dispatched logistics operation involving fulfillment of pharmaceutical orders. In an exemplary embodiment, a third shift pharmacist at a 24-hour location may prepare overnight prescriptions for non 24-hour affiliated pharmacies in a micro trade area around the 24-hour location, which may allow the collective pharmacy business to utilize off-peak labor. In such a situation, an embodiment of the invention may have one or more exemplary MALVT bot apparatus for each non 24-hour affiliated pharmacy loaded in after the overnight fulfillment of prescriptions at the 24-hour location, and dispatched to the non-24-hour affiliated pharmacies in time with the opening of the non-24-hour affiliated pharmacy store locations. Pharmaceutical technicians at such non 24-hour affiliated pharmacy locations may then authenticate delivery via an app operating on the technician's user access device, via TRON node interactions for association-based authenticated delivery, or via interaction with the display screen, user input panel, and/or sensors on the MAM component. As the technician unloads the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus, the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may monitor the unload (*e.g.*, making sure what is unloaded from the CSS is supposed to be at the new location), ensure that all contents have been removed, and then the bot apparatus may return to the base 24-hour location. The exemplary MALVT bot apparatus in this embodiment may run on a particular and reliable schedule in order to ensure the technicians are anticipating arrival of such exemplary MALVT bot apparatus with fulfilled ordered. Multi-factor authentication may be implemented to enhance security, and the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may generate and provide chain of custody information related to the transported pharmaceutical orders being fulfilled. Aspects of TRON wireless node technology may be incorporated and leveraged as control elements within components of the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus and with other nodes for location, door & lock operation, elevator operation, and authentication using the various nodes (*e.g.*, different nodes embedded in or in responsive communication with an actuated door, lock, or elevator) and node locating techniques described above. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that embodiments may involve on-demand building of an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly for such pharmaceutical fulfillment-related deployments (*e.g.*, consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 41, exemplary method 4100, and its variations), as well as embodiments that may responsively dispatch an exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly on a pharmaceutical fulfillment-related dispatched logistics operation (*e.g.*, consistent

with the process explained above relative to Figure 44, exemplary method 4400, and its variations; as well as consistent with the process explained above relative to Figure 44, exemplary method 4600, and its variations).

[0714] Accordingly, in such a further embodiment of exemplary method 4400 involving pharmaceutical fulfillment orders, the origin location may be an extended hour centralized base depot for pharmaceutical prescription supplies where the modular autonomous bot apparatus is initially maintained. The dispatch command sent by the dispatch server may be initiated based upon a dispatch request received by the dispatch server and sent from an authorized pharmaceutical personnel at a remote pharmaceutical outlet served by the extended hour (*e.g.,* 24-hours) centralized base depot for pharmaceutical prescription supplies. The dispatch command is related to the dispatched logistics operation and includes at least identifier information of an external mobile wireless node operated by the authorized pharmaceutical personnel. The destination location identified by the destination information in the dispatch command includes a location of the remote pharmaceutical outlet and may also include a mobile node location of an external mobile wireless node operated by the authorized pharmaceutical person.

[0715] Related to chain of custody features, this particular embodiment of exemplary method 4400 may further include the step of generating, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, a first inventory data structure corresponding to the item being shipped upon receiving the item being shipped. The first inventory data structure includes a first chain of custody entry reflecting departure from the extended hour centralized base depot for pharmaceutical prescription supplies for the item being shipped in the custody of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly. Method 4400 may also include generating a second chain of custody entry within the first inventory data structure after arrival at the remote pharmaceutical outlet, where the second chain of custody reflects arrival from the extended hour centralized base depot for pharmaceutical prescription supplies for the item being shipped to the remote pharmaceutical outlet in the custody of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly. Additionally, method 4400 may also include generating, by the modular mobile autonomy control module, a third chain of custody entry within the first inventory data structure after arrival at the remote pharmaceutical outlet and after detecting the item being shipped has been removed from within the modular cargo storage system, the third chain of custody reflecting the

item being shipped changing custody to the remote pharmaceutical outlet from the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

[0716] In more detail, this particular embodiment of exemplary method 4400 may autonomously cause the modular mobility base to move from the destination location on a return route to the origin location after the item being shipped is detected to be removed from within the modular cargo storage system by having the modular mobile autonomy control module monitoring an unloading status of the modular cargo storage system using at least one sensor on at least one of the modular mobile autonomy control module and the modular cargo storage system; detecting when the item being shipped is removed from within the modular cargo storage system based upon sensor data from such a sensor; and generating the third chain of custody entry within the first inventory data structure when the sensor data reflects the item being shipped is no longer within the modular cargo storage system.

[0717] In this particular embodiment of method 4400, the dispatch command sent by the dispatch server may be one of multiple dispatch commands for different dispatched logistics operations from the extended hour centralized base depot for pharmaceutical prescription supplies to the remote pharmaceutical outlet, where the dispatch commands may be sent on a predetermined schedule for the remote pharmaceutical outlet. In another example, such different dispatch commands may be for different dispatched logistics operations from the extended hour centralized base depot for pharmaceutical prescription supplies to a multiple different serviced remote pharmaceutical outlets, where the remote pharmaceutical outlet is one of the serviced remote pharmaceutical outlets by the extended hour centralized base depot for pharmaceutical prescription supplies.

[0718] As noted above, the use of multi-factor or multi-level authentication may be deployed with authenticating delivery or pickup as part of embodiments of method 4400. For example, an embodiment of method 4400 may have the authentication information related to the dispatched logistics operation implemented with multi-level authentication information, such as at least (a) passcode authentication information and (b) identifier information of an external mobile wireless node operated by the authorized delivery recipient. In another example, the multi-level authentication information may be implemented using distinct communication paths for authentication input, such as (a) a first passcode authentication information related to a first communication path with the delivery recipient (*e.g.*, an access code submitted to the exemplary

MALVT bot apparatus assembly via its user input panel) and (b) a second passcode authentication information related to a second communication path with the delivery recipient (*e.g.*, another access code or device signature for a wireless mobile node submitted to the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly via its wireless communications with the wireless mobile node). Further still, such multi-level authentication information may be implemented using, for example, at least two of passcode authentication information, biometric scanning authentication information, device signature authentication information, and voice authentication information.

Fleet Augmentation

[0719] In an embodiment, one or more exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may be staged as a vehicle type at a business location doing multiple duty with, for example, print delivery, inventory rebalancing, hold-at-location (HAL) delivery, as part of providing multiple types of delivery services. In general, as orders come in, a dispatch system (*e.g.*, a dedicated dispatch server 4205, a server that performs dispatching as well as other business tasks, or a dispatch program module running on another business server system) may determine if the origin and destination, time commitment, and payload are physically and economically conducive to dispatching exemplary MALVT bot apparatus for pickup/transit/delivery for a particular time period, such as during the current day. An exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may receive a dispatch order from the dispatch system and embark on the dispatched logistics job covered by the order. The exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may go to pick up a delivery from retailer, customer, or other entity, etc. as part of an exemplary logistics operation in this embodiment. A fulfiller may receive an alert that the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus is in-route with an estimated time of arrival. The display screen on the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may offer instructions or information on the order, a fulfillment associate (or system) may load the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus and confirm that it can continue the dispatched logistics job covered by the order. The end customer then may receive an alert from the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus along with an estimated time of arrival such that the end customer may interact with the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus change the window for delivery. If the window for delivery is significantly changed, the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus may temporarily return to a holding location at the business location (rather than wait at the end customer's location). If

DEMANDE OU BREVET VOLUMINEUX

LA PRÉSENTE PARTIE DE CETTE DEMANDE OU CE BREVET COMPREND PLUS D'UN TOME.

CECI EST LE TOME 1 DE 3
CONTENANT LES PAGES 1 À 247

NOTE : Pour les tomes additionels, veuillez contacter le Bureau canadien des brevets

JUMBO APPLICATIONS/PATENTS

THIS SECTION OF THE APPLICATION/PATENT CONTAINS MORE THAN ONE VOLUME

THIS IS VOLUME 1 OF 3
CONTAINING PAGES 1 TO 247

NOTE: For additional volumes, please contact the Canadian Patent Office

NOM DU FICHIER / FILE NAME :

NOTE POUR LE TOME / VOLUME NOTE:

WHAT IS EMBODIMENTED IS:

1. A modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly for transporting an item being shipped, comprising:

a modular mobility base comprising

a mobile base platform,

a mobility controller disposed as part of the base platform,

a propulsion system connected to the mobile base platform, the propulsion system being responsive to a propulsion control input from the mobility controller to cause changes in speed of the modular mobility base,

a steering system connected to the mobile base platform and coupled to the propulsion system, the steering system responsive to a steering control input from the mobility controller and operative to cause changes to directional movement of the modular mobility base,

a plurality of mobility base sensors coupled to the mobility controller and disposed on the base platform, the mobility base sensors being operative to autonomously detect an object in the path of the modular mobility base and provide base feedback sensor data to the mobility controller on the detected object, and

a first interface to a common modular component power and data transport bus, the first interface providing a power conduit for the modular mobility base and a command and data interface conduit for at least the mobility controller;

a modular auxiliary power module detachably attached to the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module comprising

a base adapter platform detachably mounted to the mobile base platform of the modular mobility base, the base adapter platform having a payload support surface area, a top interlocking alignment interface, and a bottom interlocking alignment interface, wherein the payload support surface area is disposed on a top of the base adapter platform to support the item being shipped, and wherein the bottom interlocking alignment interface is disposed on a bottom of the base adapter platform to latch to the mobile base platform,

an articulating cargo door movably attached to and extending from the base adapter platform,

an auxiliary power source disposed as part of the base adapter platform, and

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

a second interface to the common modular component power and data transport bus, the second interface providing a power conduit for the modular auxiliary power module and a command and data interface conduit for the modular auxiliary power module, wherein the power conduit for the modular auxiliary power module is coupled to the auxiliary power source and provides access to power provided by the auxiliary power source;

a modular cargo storage system detachably attached to the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system comprising

a set of folding structural walls configured to partially enclose the payload support area above the base adapter platform of the modular auxiliary power module, the folding structural walls forming vertical boundaries above the payload support area with the articulating cargo door of the auxiliary power module,

an actuated set of latches disposed on the at least one of the folding structural walls, and

a locking handle coupled to the actuated set of latches, the locking handle causing the actuated set of latches to detachably interlock with at least the base adapter platform of the modular auxiliary power module; and

a third interface to the common modular component power and data transport bus, the third interface providing a power conduit for the modular cargo storage system and a command and data interface conduit for the modular cargo storage system, wherein the power conduit for the modular auxiliary power module is operatively coupled to the auxiliary power source and provides access to power provided by the auxiliary power source; and

a modular mobile autonomy control module detachably attached to a top edge of the folding structure walls of the modular cargo storage system, the modular mobile autonomy control module completing the enclosure of the payload support area when connected to the top edge of the folding structure walls of the modular cargo storage system, the modular mobile autonomy control module comprising

a detachable modular housing detachably connected to the top edge of the folding structure walls of the cargo storage system,

a plurality of latching points disposed on the detachable modular housing, the latching points engaging the actuated set of latches when the locking handle detachably interlocks the actuated set of latches to the latching points,

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

an autonomous controller disposed within the detachable modular housing,

a plurality of human interaction interfaces disposed on the detachable modular housing, wherein each of the human interaction interfaces being operatively coupled to the autonomous controller,

location circuitry disposed within the detachable modular housing, the location circuitry being operatively coupled to the autonomous controller, the location circuitry generating location data on a location of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly and providing the location data to the autonomous controller;

a plurality of autonomy module sensors disposed on the mobile autonomy control module and operatively coupled to the autonomous controller, wherein the autonomy module sensors being operative to generate onboard sensor data on an environment external to the modular mobile autonomy control module as detected by the autonomy module sensors and providing the onboard sensor data to the autonomous controller, and

a fourth interface to the common modular component power and data transport bus, the fourth interface providing a power conduit for the modular mobile autonomy control module and a command and data interface conduit for the modular mobile autonomy control module, wherein the command and data interface conduit is operatively coupled to at least the autonomous controller; and

wherein the autonomous controller of the modular mobile autonomy control module is programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to at least

receive information from the mobility controller through the common modular component power and data transport bus, the received information being about the base feedback sensor data,

receive the onboard sensor data from the autonomy module sensors,

generate a steering control command and a propulsion control command based at least upon the location data from the location circuitry, the received information on the base feedback sensor data from the mobility controller, the onboard sensor data as received by the autonomous controller from the autonomy module sensors, and destination information data maintained by the autonomous controller,

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

transmit the steering control command and the propulsion control command through the common modular component power and data transport bus for receipt by the mobility controller, and

generate transport and delivery information to provide on the human interaction interfaces.

2. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 1, wherein the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module are each authenticated modular components based upon a component-to-component secure handshaking between proximately attached ones of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module.

3. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 2, wherein the component-to-component secure handshaking comprises a challenge and security credential response between proximately attached ones of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module.

4. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 1, wherein the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module are verified to be authenticated modular components for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly as each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module are assembled into the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

5. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 2, wherein the component-to-component secure handshaking is based upon at least one from a group comprising one or more regulatory rules, one or more contractual rules, and one or more safety rules.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

6. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 2, wherein the component-to-component secure handshaking is based upon logistical constraint information on a determined work environment for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

7. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 6, wherein the logical constraint information being identified as part ofa challenge and security credential response between proximately attached ones of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module.

8. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 6, wherein the logistical constraint information identifies a size limitation for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

9. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 6, wherein the logistical constraint information identifies a weight limitation for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

10. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 6, wherein the logistical constraint information identifies a readiness limitation for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

11. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 10, wherein the readiness limitation comprising one or more performance thresholds for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly in an anticipated deployment operation of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

12. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 2, wherein the modular mobile autonomy control module further comprises a wireless radio transceiver operatively coupled to the autonomous controller; and

wherein the autonomous controller of the modular mobile autonomy control module is further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

notify a server over the wireless radio transceiver that one or more of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system are not authenticated modular components based upon the component-to-component secure handshaking between the modular mobile autonomy control module and each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system, and

request a replacement component for the one or more of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system that are not authenticated modular components.

13. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 2, wherein the autonomous controller of the modular mobile autonomy control module is further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to generate a component replacement request message on at least one of the human interaction interfaces disposed on the detachable modular housing when one or more of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system are not authenticated modular components based upon the component-to-component secure handshaking between the modular mobile autonomy control module and each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system, the component replacement request message requesting a replacement component for the one or more of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system that are not authenticated modular components.

14. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 2, wherein the autonomous controller of the modular mobile autonomy control module is further programmatically adapted and configured to

receive an authentication result from one of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system, wherein the authentication result indicating that at least one of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system are not authenticated modular components based upon the component-to-component secure handshaking between proximate ones of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module; and

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

notify a server over the wireless radio transceiver that one or more of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system are not authenticated modular components based upon the authentication result received.

15. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 2, wherein the autonomous controller of the modular mobile autonomy control module is further programmatically adapted and configured to

receive an authentication result from one of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system, wherein the authentication result indicating that at least one of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system are not authenticated modular components based upon the component-to-component secure handshaking between proximate ones of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module; and

generate a component replacement request message on at least one of the human interaction interfaces disposed on the detachable modular housing based upon the authentication result received.

16. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 1, wherein each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system are authenticated modular components based upon a component-to-component secure handshaking between the modular mobile autonomy control module and each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system.

17. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 16, wherein the component-to-component secure handshaking comprises a challenge and security credential response between the modular mobile autonomy control module and each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

18. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 16, wherein the component-to-component secure handshaking is based upon at least one from a group comprising one or more regulatory rules, one or more contractual rules, and one or more safety rules.

19. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 16, wherein the component-to-component secure handshaking is based upon logistical constraint information on a determined work environment for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

20. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 19, wherein the logistical constraint information identifies a size limitation for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

21. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 20, wherein the logistical constraint information identifies a weight limitation for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

22. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 20, wherein the logistical constraint information identifies a readiness limitation for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

23. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 22, wherein the readiness limitation comprising one or more performance thresholds for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly in an anticipated deployment operation of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

24. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 16, wherein the modular mobile autonomy control module further comprises a wireless radio transceiver operatively coupled to the autonomous controller; and

wherein the autonomous controller of the modular mobile autonomy control module is further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

notify a server over the wireless radio transceiver that one or more of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system are not authenticated modular components based upon the component-to-component secure handshaking between the modular mobile autonomy control module and each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system, and

request a replacement component for the one or more of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system that are not authenticated modular components.

25. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 14, wherein the autonomous controller of the modular mobile autonomy control module is further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to generate a component replacement request message on at least one of the human interaction interfaces disposed on the detachable modular housing when one or more of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system are not authenticated modular components based upon the component-to-component secure handshaking between the modular mobile autonomy control module and each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system, the component replacement request message requesting a replacement component for the one or more of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, and the modular cargo storage system that are not authenticated modular components.

26. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 1, wherein the modular mobility base further comprises a set of suspension orientation actuators disposed within the mobile base platform, the set of suspension orientation actuators being operative to responsively alter an orientation of the mobile base platform relative to a ground surface on which the mobile base platform is supported in response to a support base orientation control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to the mobility controller over the common modular component power and data transport bus.

27. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 1, wherein the modular auxiliary power module further comprises a cargo door actuator disposed on the base adapter platform, the

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

cargo door actuator being operative to responsively move the articulating cargo door in response to a cargo door control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to a door actuator driver on the base adapter platform over the common modular component power and data transport bus.

28. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 1, wherein the modular auxiliary power module further comprises a belt actuator disposed on the base adapter platform, the belt actuator being operative to responsively move an actuated belt surface disposed on the base adapter platform in response to a belt control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to a belt actuator driver on the base adapter platform over the common modular component power and data transport bus.

29. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 1, wherein the modular auxiliary power module further comprises a ramp belt actuator disposed on the articulating cargo door, the ramp belt actuator being operative to responsively move an actuated ramp belt surface disposed on the articulating cargo door in response to a ramp belt control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to a ramp belt actuator driver on the articulating cargo door over the common modular component power and data transport bus.

30. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 1, wherein the modular auxiliary power module further comprises an actuated electro-mechanical lock disposed on the modular auxiliary power module, the actuated electro-mechanical lock being operative to responsively secure the articulating cargo door in response to a door lock control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to the actuated electro-mechanical lock on the modular auxiliary power module over the common modular component power and data transport bus.

31. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 1, wherein the modular cargo storage system further comprises an actuated electro-mechanical lock disposed on the modular cargo storage system, the actuated electro-mechanical lock being operative to responsively secure the articulating cargo door in response to a door lock control command generated by the

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

autonomous controller and provided to the actuated electro-mechanical lock on the modular cargo storage system over the common modular component power and data transport bus.

32. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 1, wherein the modular cargo storage system further comprises an actuated electro-mechanical lock disposed on the modular cargo storage system, the actuated electro-mechanical lock being operative to responsively actuate the set of actuated latches in response to a latch locking control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to the actuated electro-mechanical lock on the modular cargo storage system over the common modular component power and data transport bus.

33. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 1, wherein the modular cargo storage system further comprises climate control module disposed within the modular cargo storage system, the climate control module being operative to responsively alter an environment of the payload support area to maintain a desired environment within the payload support area in response to a climate control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to the climate control module on the modular cargo storage system over the common modular component power and data transport bus.

34. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 1, wherein the modular cargo storage system further comprises an actuated sliding arm disposed on the modular cargo storage system, the actuated sliding arm being operative to responsively move the item being shipped within the payload support area in response to a sliding arm control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to the actuated sliding arm on the modular cargo storage system over the common modular component power and data transport bus.

35. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 1, wherein the modular cargo storage system further comprises an actuated grabbing arm disposed on the modular cargo storage system, the actuated grabbing arm being operative to responsively obtain and move the item being shipped within the payload support area in response to a grabbing arm control command generated by the autonomous controller and provided to the actuated grabbing arm on the modular cargo storage system over the common modular component power and data transport bus.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

36. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 1, wherein the modular mobile autonomy control module further comprises one or more payload monitoring sensors disposed on a bottom side of the detachable modular housing and operatively coupled to the autonomous controller, the one or more payload monitoring sensors generating payload sensor data on the payload support area and providing the payload sensor data to the autonomous controller; and

wherein the autonomous controller is further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to monitor the payload sensor data.

37. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 36, wherein the one or more payload monitoring sensors are implemented in a detachable sensor pod attached to the bottom side of the detachable modular housing and operatively coupled to the autonomous controller while assembling the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

38. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 37, wherein the detachable sensor pod includes at least some of the payload monitoring sensors of a predetermined sensor type matching an assigned dispatch use profile maintained by the autonomous controller.

39. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 38, wherein the assigned dispatch use profile maintained by the autonomous controller comprises data received by the autonomous controller on the assigned dispatch operation for the modular autonomous bot apparatus.

40. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 1, wherein one or more of the autonomy module sensors are implemented in a detachable sensor pod attached to the detachable modular housing and operatively coupled to the autonomous controller while assembling the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

41. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 40, wherein the detachable sensor pod includes at least some of the autonomy module sensors of a predetermined sensor type matching an assigned dispatch use profile maintained by the autonomous controller.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

42. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 41, wherein the assigned dispatch use profile maintained by the autonomous controller comprises data received by the autonomous controller on the assigned dispatch operation for the modular autonomous bot apparatus.

43. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 1, wherein the modular mobile autonomy control module further comprises a wireless radio transceiver interface disposed within the detachable modular housing and being operatively coupled to the autonomous controller, the wireless radio transceiver being operative to communicate with an external wireless node disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus.

44. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 43, wherein the external wireless node comprises a handheld wireless user access device.

45. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 43, wherein the external wireless node comprises a server disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus.

46. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 43, wherein the autonomous controller is further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to receive an assigned dispatch use profile for the modular autonomous bot apparatus from the server, wherein the assigned dispatch use profile identifying a type of each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module used as part of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

47. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 46, wherein the assigned dispatch use profile for the modular autonomous bot apparatus providing authentication information used for verifying an authentication status for each of the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system, and the modular mobile autonomy control module used as part of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

48. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 43, wherein the autonomous controller is further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to wirelessly receive a remote command input for the modular autonomous bot apparatus from the external wireless node through the wireless radio transceiver interface.

49. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 48, wherein the remote command input comprises a remote control input from a delivery supplier.

50. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 48, wherein the remote command input comprises a remote control input from a delivery recipient.

51. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 43, wherein the autonomous controller is further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to wirelessly request and receive navigation assistance from a backend server as the external wireless node.

52. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 43, wherein the autonomous controller is further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to wirelessly request and receive navigation assistance from an authorized handheld wireless user access device as the external wireless node.

53. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 43, wherein the autonomous controller is further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to

detect when a current location of the modular autonomous bot apparatus is within a threshold distance from a destination point for the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly according to an assigned dispatch use profile for the modular autonomous bot apparatus;

transmit a remote control request over the wireless radio transceiver interface to the external wireless node;

receive a series of remote control command inputs from the external wireless node through the wireless radio transceiver;

generate responsive steering control commands and responsive propulsion control command based upon the series of remote control command inputs; and

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

transmit the responsive steering control commands and the responsive propulsion control commands to the mobility controller through the common modular component power and data transport bus for receipt by the mobility controller allowing the external wireless node to control navigation of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly during a final segment of a deployment operation of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly as the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly moves to the destination point.

54. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 53, wherein the autonomous controller is further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to

receive the base feedback sensor data from the mobility controller during the final segment of the deployment operation of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly as the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly moves to the destination point;

receive the onboard sensor data from the autonomy module sensors during the final segment of the deployment operation of the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly as the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly moves to the destination point; and

transmit a subset of the received base feedback sensor data and the received onboard sensor data to the external wireless node as remote navigation feedback information.

55. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 53, wherein the autonomous controller is further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to update onboard routing information on the autonomous controller with at least a portion of the received base feedback sensor data and the received onboard sensor data.

56. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 55, wherein the onboard routing information comprises a database of mapping information; and

wherein the portion of the received base feedback sensor data and the received onboard sensor data that update the database of mapping information provides a higher definition information than exists within the database of mapping information for the final segment of the deployment operation.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

57. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 32, wherein the autonomous controller is further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to:

receive the base feedback sensor data from the mobility controller;

receive the onboard sensor data from the autonomy module sensors;

detect an adverse approaching impact based upon the base feedback sensor data and the onboard sensor data;

generate a failsafe mode unlock signal for the actuated electro-mechanical lock disposed on the modular cargo storage system in response to the detected adverse approaching impact; and

transmit the failsafe mode unlock signal to the actuated electro-mechanical lock on the modular cargo storage system over the common modular component power and data transport bus to cause the actuated electro-mechanical lock to unlock the set of actuated set of latches in response to the detected adverse approaching impact.

58. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 32, wherein the autonomous controller is further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to:

detect an adverse power level of the auxiliary power source below a failure threshold power level;

generate a failsafe mode unlock signal for the actuated electro-mechanical lock disposed on the modular cargo storage system in response to the detected adverse power level of the auxiliary power source; and

transmit the failsafe mode unlock signal to the actuated electro-mechanical lock on the modular cargo storage system over the common modular component power and data transport bus to cause the actuated electro-mechanical lock to unlock the set of actuated set of latches in response to the detected adverse power level of the auxiliary power source.

59. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 32, wherein the autonomous controller is further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to:

generate a failsafe mode unlock signal for the actuated electro-mechanical lock disposed on the modular cargo storage system after transmitting a request for assistance to a server; and

transmit the failsafe mode unlock signal to the actuated electro-mechanical lock on the modular cargo storage system over the common modular component power and data transport bus

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

to cause the actuated electro-mechanical lock to unlock the set of actuated set of latches in response to the detected adverse power level of the auxiliary power source.

60. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 32, wherein the autonomous controller is further programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to:

generate a failsafe mode unlock signal for the actuated electro-mechanical lock disposed on the modular cargo storage system after transmitting a request for assistance to an external wireless node; and

transmit the failsafe mode unlock signal to the actuated electro-mechanical lock on the modular cargo storage system over the common modular component power and data transport bus to cause the actuated electro-mechanical lock to unlock the set of actuated set of latches in response to the detected adverse power level of the auxiliary power source.

60. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 1, wherein the modular cargo storage system further comprises at least one shelving separator disposed within the payload support area and detachable mounted to at least one of the folding structural walls, the shelving separator partioning the payload area into a plurality of payload compartments.

61. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 60, wherein the modular cargo storage system further comprises a climate control module disposed within one of the payload compartments, the climate control module being coupled to the common modular component power and data transport bus to at least power the climate control module, wherein the climate control module being operative to alter an environment within the one of the payload compartments to maintain a desired environment within the one of the payload compartments.

62. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 61, wherein the climate control module is attached to one of the folding structural walls.

63. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 61, wherein the climate control module is attached to the at least one shelving separator.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

64. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 61, wherein the climate control module is detachably disposed within the one of the payload compartments.

65. The modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly of claim 60, wherein the modular cargo storage system further comprises:

a first detachable climate control module disposed within a first of the payload compartments, the first climate control module being coupled to the common modular component power and data transport bus to at least power the first climate control module, wherein the first climate control module being operative to alter an environment within the first of the payload compartments to maintain a first desired environment within the first of the payload compartments; and

a second detachable climate control module disposed within a second of the payload compartments, the second climate control module being coupled to the common modular component power and data transport bus to at least power the second climate control module, wherein the second climate control module being operative to alter an environment within the second of the payload compartments to maintain a second desired environment within the second of the payload compartments.

66. A modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly for transporting an item being shipped, comprising:

a modular mobility base comprising

a steerable powered base platform responsive to navigation inputs to cause changes to a movement and path of the steerable powered base platform,

a plurality of base sensors disposed on the steerable powered base platform, the sensors being operative to generate base feedback sensor data on an object in the path of the modular mobility base,

a set of actuators for tilting an orientation of the steerable powered base platform relative to the ground,

a mobility controller disposed as part of the base platform, the mobility controller being coupled to the base sensors and the set of actuators, the mobility controller being operative to receive the base feedback sensor data and generate the navigation inputs, and

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

a first interface to a common modular component power and data transport bus, the common modular component power and data transport bus being coupled to at least the mobility controller;

a modular auxiliary power module detachably connected to the modular mobility base, the modular auxiliary power module comprising

a base adapter platform having a payload area on top of the base adapter platform,

an auxiliary power source disposed as part of the base adapter platform,

an articulating cargo door extending from a side of the base adapter platform, and

a second interface to the common modular component power and data transport bus, the common modular component power and data transport bus being coupled to at least the auxiliary power source so as to supply power onto the common modular component power and data transport bus;

a modular cargo storage module detachably connected to the modular auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage module comprising

a set of folding structural walls assembled on the base adapter platform to partially enclose a payload area on at least three sides above the base adapter platform and forming vertical boundaries above the payload area with the articulating cargo door of the modular auxiliary power module,

a locking handle that causes the modular cargo storage system to latch to the base adapter platform, and

a third interface to the common modular component power and data transport bus;

a modular mobile autonomy module detachably connected to a top of the folding structure walls of the modular cargo storage module, the modular mobile autonomy module completing the enclosure of the payload area when connected to the top of the folding structure walls of the modular cargo storage module, the modular mobile autonomy module comprising

a plurality of human interaction interfaces disposed on the modular mobile autonomy module,

a plurality of autonomy module sensors disposed on the modular mobile autonomy module,

an autonomous controller with interfacing circuitry coupled to the human interaction interfaces and the autonomy module sensors on the modular mobile autonomy module,

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

a fourth interface to the common modular component power and data transport bus, the common modular component power and data transport bus being coupled to at least the autonomous controller, and

a wireless communication interface coupled to the autonomous controller, the wireless communication interface being operative to provide a wireless communication path to an external wireless node disposed external to the modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly.

wherein the autonomous controller of the modular mobile autonomy control module is programmatically adapted and configured to be operative to at least

receive information from the mobility controller through at least the first common modular component power and data transport bus, the received information being about the base feedback sensor data,

receive onboard sensor data from the autonomy module sensors,

generate a steering control command and a propulsion control command based at least upon the location data from the location circuitry, the received information on the base feedback sensor data from the mobility controller, the onboard sensor data as received by the autonomous controller from the autonomy module sensors, and destination information data maintained by the autonomous controller,

transmit the steering control command and the propulsion control command through at least the fourth common modular component power and data transport bus to the first common modular component power and data transport bus for receipt by the mobility controller, and

generate transport and delivery information to provide on the human interaction interfaces.

67. A modular autonomous bot apparatus assembly for transporting an item being shipped, comprising:

a modular mobility base comprising

a base platform,

a mobility controller disposed as part of the base platform,

a propulsion system on the base platform, the propulsion system being responsive to inputs from the mobility controller,

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

a steering system coupled to the propulsion system, the steering system responsive to inputs from the mobility controller and operative to cause changes to movement of the modular mobility base,

a plurality of sensors coupled to the mobility controller and disposed on the base platform, the sensors being operative to autonomously detect objects and obstacles in the path of the modular mobility base and provide feedback data to the mobility controller on detections, and

a set of actuators for tilting the orientation of the base platform relative to the parts of the propulsion system that contact the ground;

a modular auxiliary power module affixed to the powered mobility base, the auxiliary power module comprising at least

a power connection that provides power to the powered mobility base, and

an articulating cargo door extending from a side of the auxiliary power module;

a modular cargo storage system affixed to the auxiliary power module, the modular cargo storage system comprising

a set of folding structural walls configured to partially enclose a payload area on at least three sides above the base platform and forming vertical boundaries of the payload area with the articulating cargo door of the auxiliary power module

a locking handle that causes the modular cargo storage system to latch to the base platform, and

a power and data transport bus that provides communication and power conduit up from the modular auxiliary power module and the modular mobility base; and

a modular mobile autonomy module connected to a top edge of the folding structure walls of the cargo storage system, the mobile autonomy module completing the enclosure of the payload area when connected to the top edge of the folding structure walls of the modular cargo storage system, the mobile autonomy module comprising

a plurality of human interaction interfaces disposed on edges of the mobile autonomy module,

a plurality of sensors disposed on the mobile autonomy module,

a controller with interfacing circuitry coupled to the human interaction interfaces and sensors on the mobile autonomy module and with the power and data transport bus for operative communications with the powered mobility base, and

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

a wireless communication interface coupled to the controller.

Date Reçue/Date Received 2022-03-30

FIG. 1

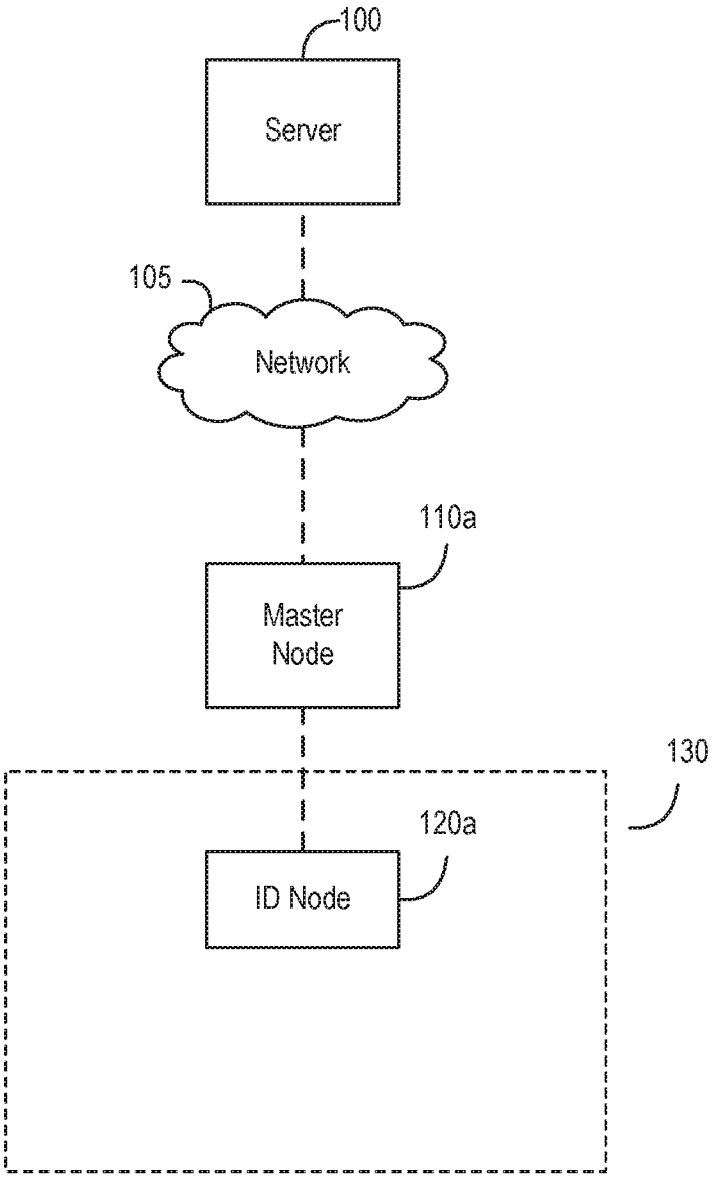


FIG. 2

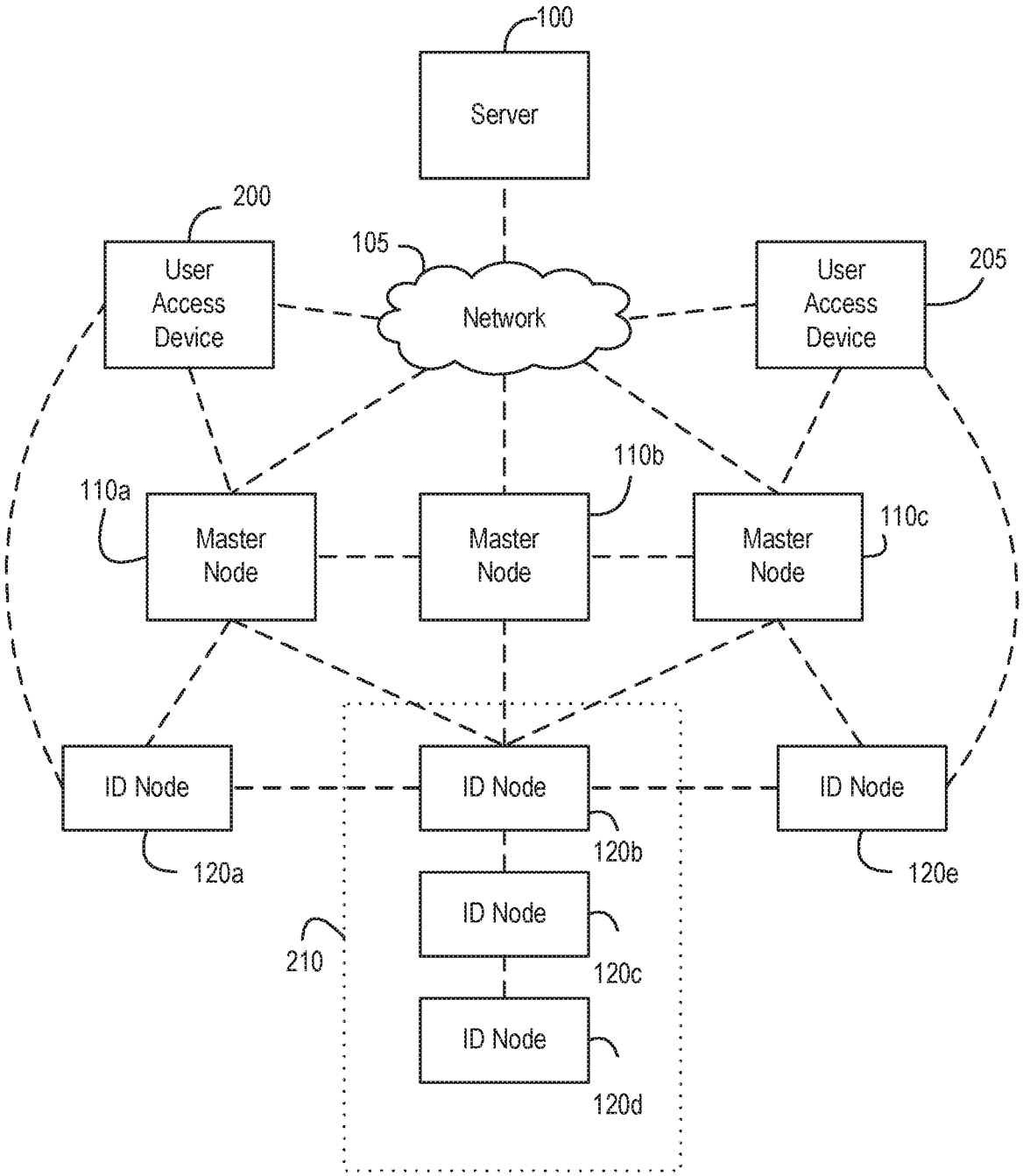

100
Server
200
User Access Device
105
Network
205
User Access Device
110a
Master Node
110b
Master Node
110c
Master Node
ID Node
120a
ID Node
120b
ID Node
120c
ID Node
120d
ID Node
120e
210

FIG. 3

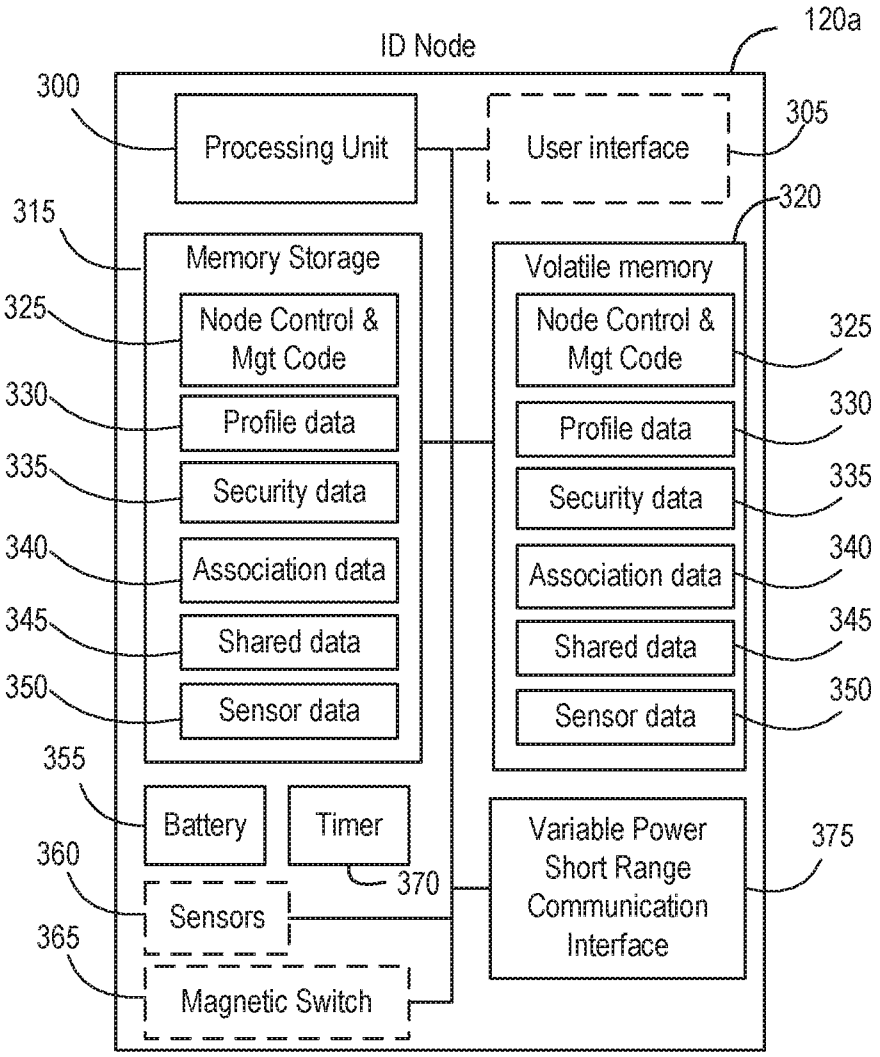

ID Node
120a
300
Processing Unit
User interface
305
315
Memory Storage
320
Volatile memory
325
Node Control & Mgt Code
Node Control & Mgt Code
325
330
Profile data
Profile data
330
335
Security data
Security data
335
340
Association data
Association data
340
345
Shared data
Shared data
345
350
Sensor data
Sensor data
350
355
Battery
Timer
360
370
Sensors
365
Magnetic Switch
Variable Power Short Range Communication Interface
375

FIG. 4

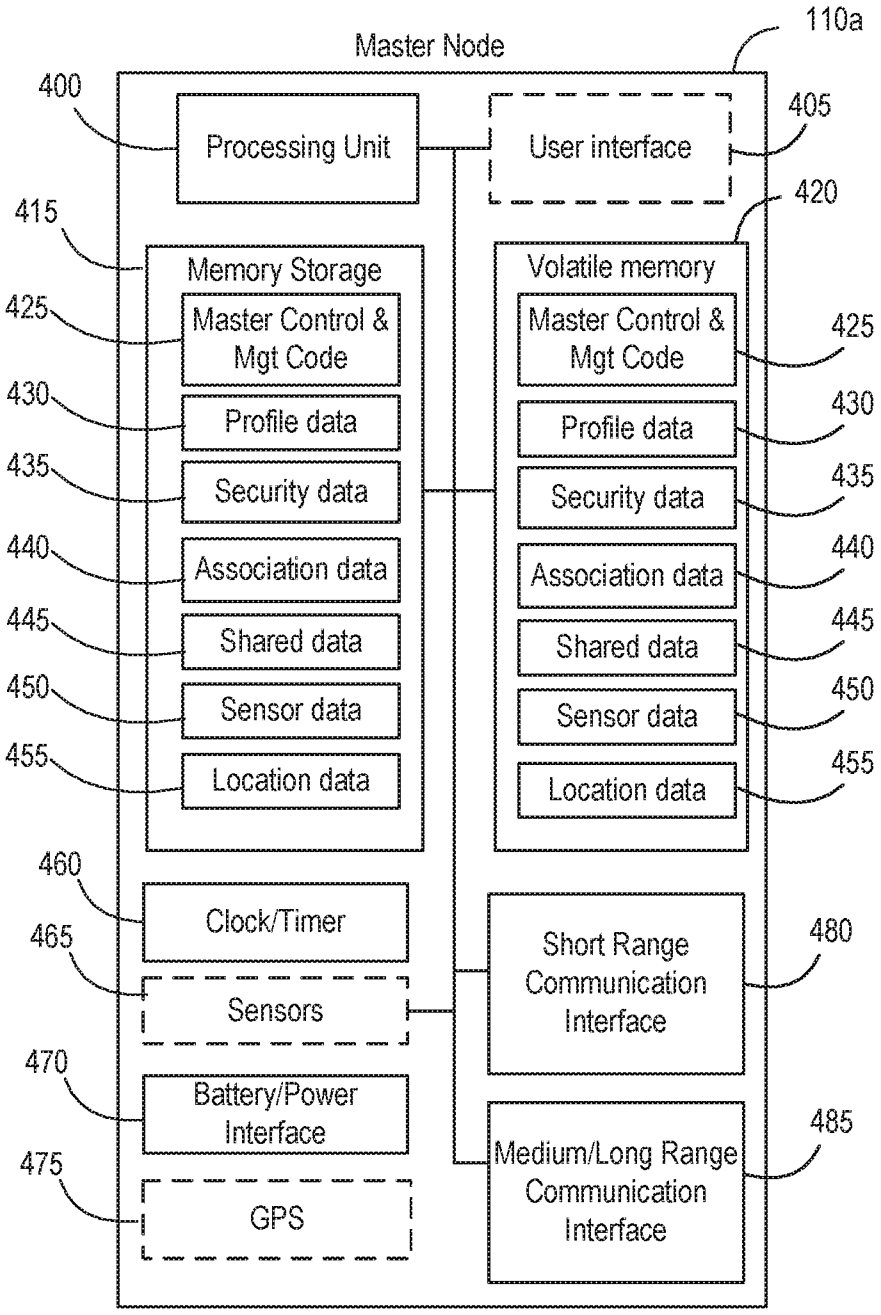
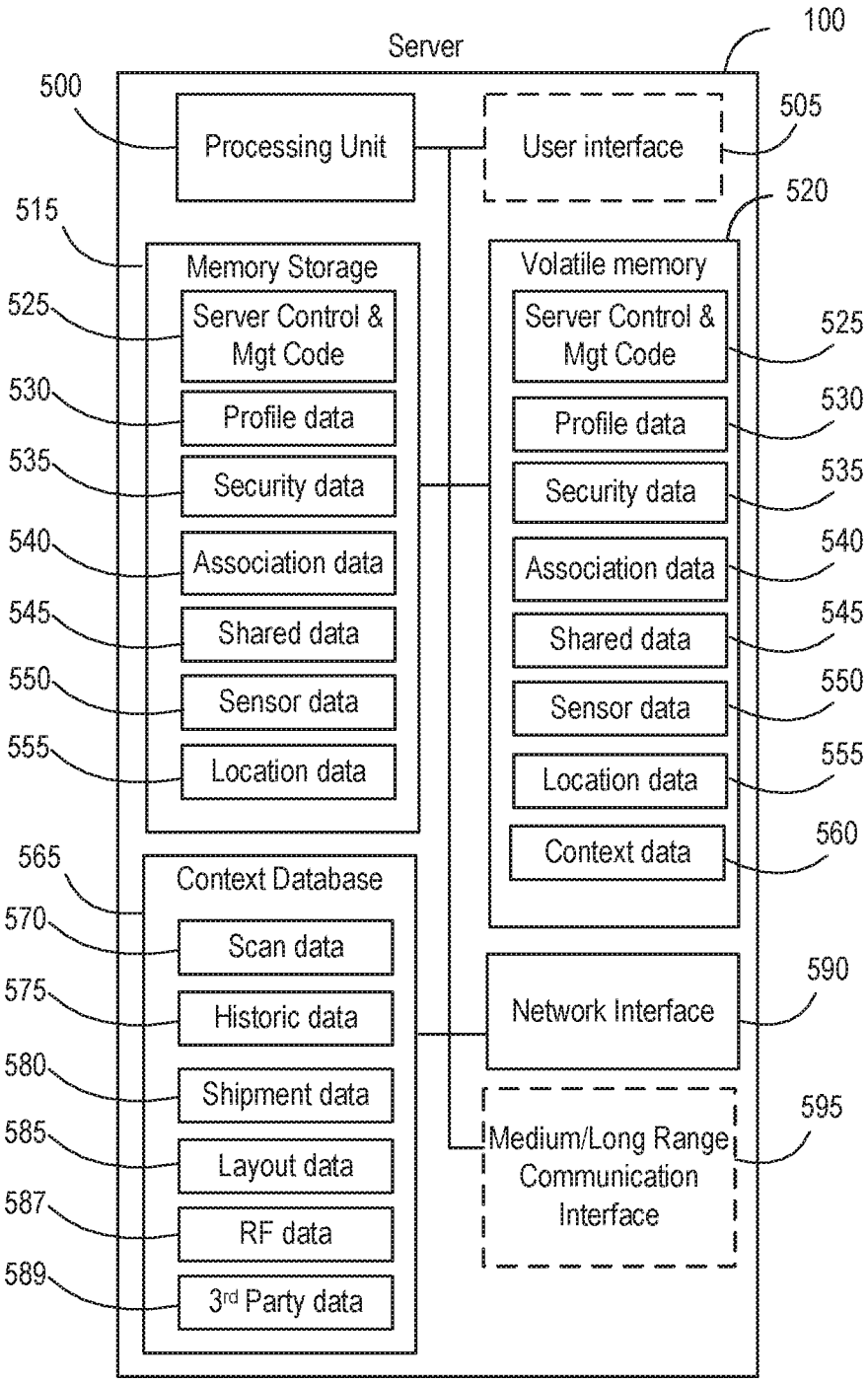

Master Node
110a
400
Processing Unit
405
User interface
415
Memory Storage
420
Volatile memory
425
Master Control & Mgt Code
430
Profile data
435
Security data
440
Association data
445
Shared data
450
Sensor data
455
Location data
460
Clock/Timer
465
Sensors
470
Battery/Power Interface
475
GPS
480
Short Range Communication Interface
485
Medium/Long Range Communication Interface

FIG. 5


Server
100
500
Processing Unit
505
User interface
515
520
Memory Storage
Server Control & Mgt Code
Profile data
Security data
Association data
Shared data
Sensor data
Location data
Volatile memory
Server Control & Mgt Code
Profile data
Security data
Association data
Shared data
Sensor data
Location data
Context data
525
530
535
540
545
550
555
560
565
Context Database
570
Scan data
575
Historic data
580
Shipment data
585
Layout data
587
RF data
589
3rd Party data
590
Network Interface
595
Medium/Long Range Communication Interface

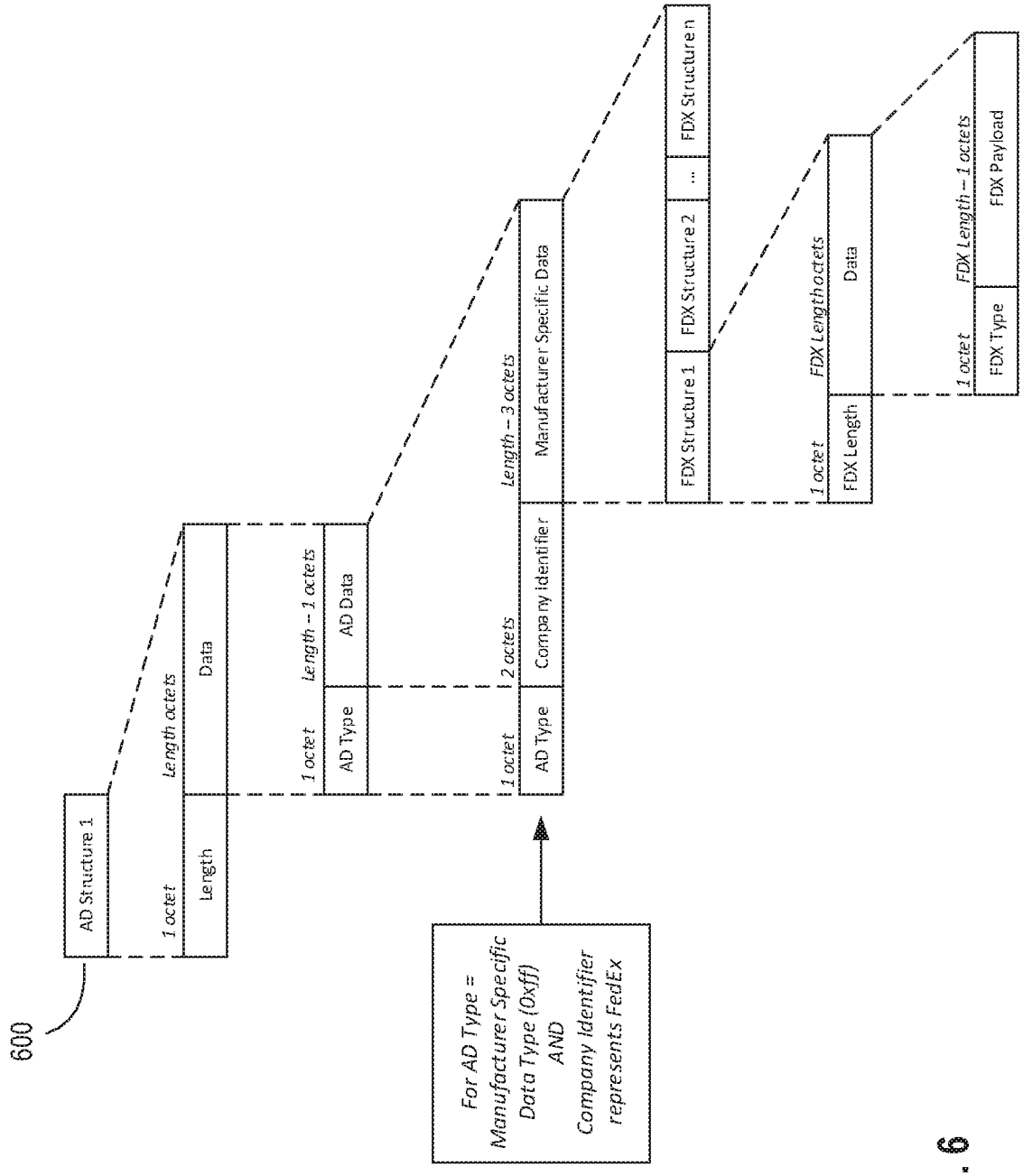
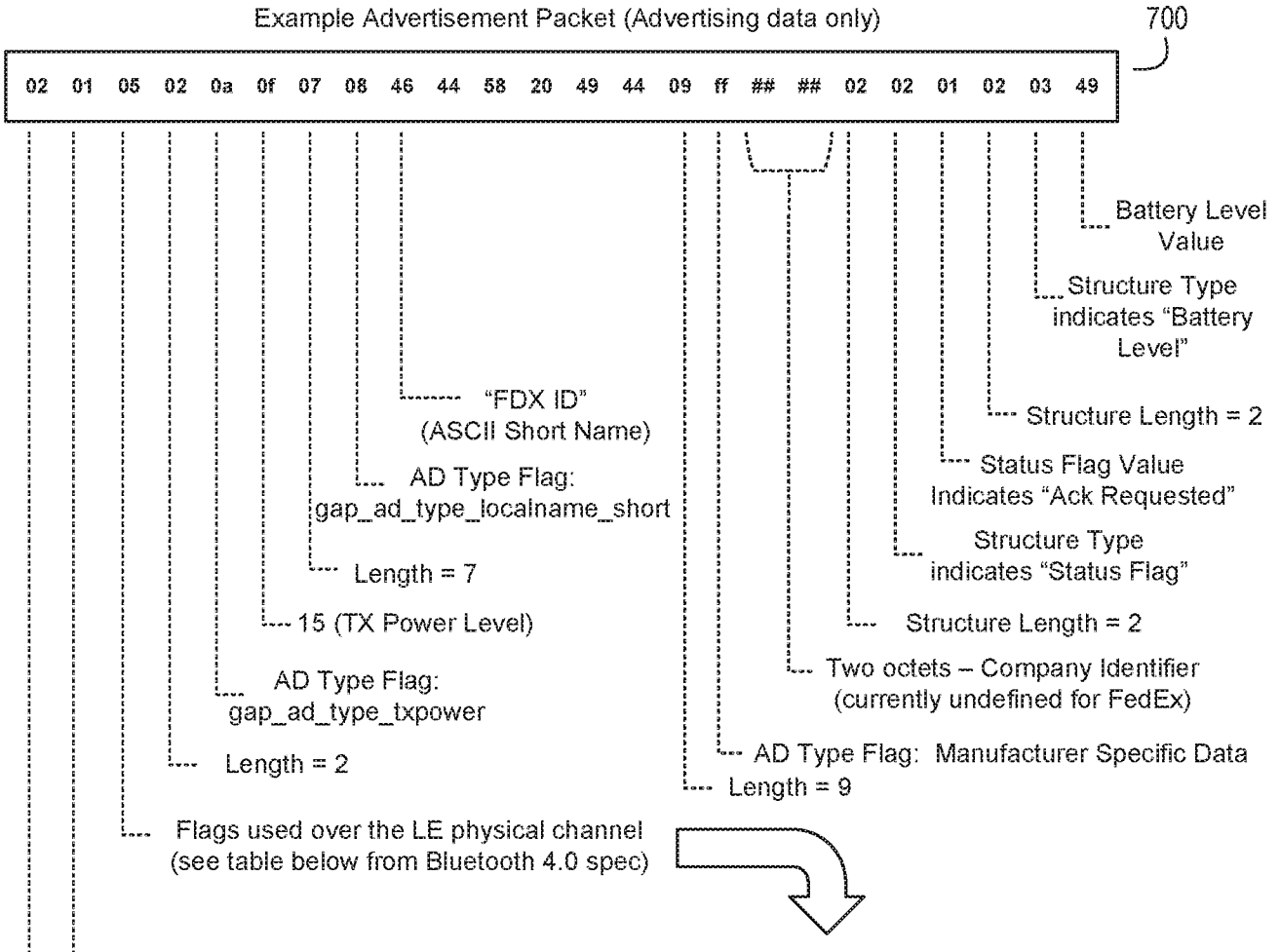

600
AD Structure 1
1 octet
Length
Length octets
Data
1 octet
AD Type
Length – 1 octets
AD Data
1 octet
AD Type
2 octets
Company Identifier
Length – 3 octets
Manufacturer Specific Data
FDX Structure 1
FDX Structure 2
...
FDX Structure n
1 octet
FDX Length
FDX Length octets
Data
1 octet
FDX Type
FDX Length – 1 octets
FDX Payload
For AD Type = Manufacturer Specific Data Type (0xff) AND Company Identifier represents FedEx

FIG. 6

FIG. 7



Value	Description	Bit	Information
0x01	Flags	0	LE Limited Discoverable Mode
		1	LE General Discoverable Mode
		2	BR/EDR Not Supported (i.e. bit 37 of LMP Extended Feature bits Page 0)
		3	Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Controller) (i.e. bit 49 of LMP Extended Feature bits Page 0)
		4	Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Controller) (i.e. bit 66 of LMP Extended Feature bits Page 1)
		5-7	Reserved

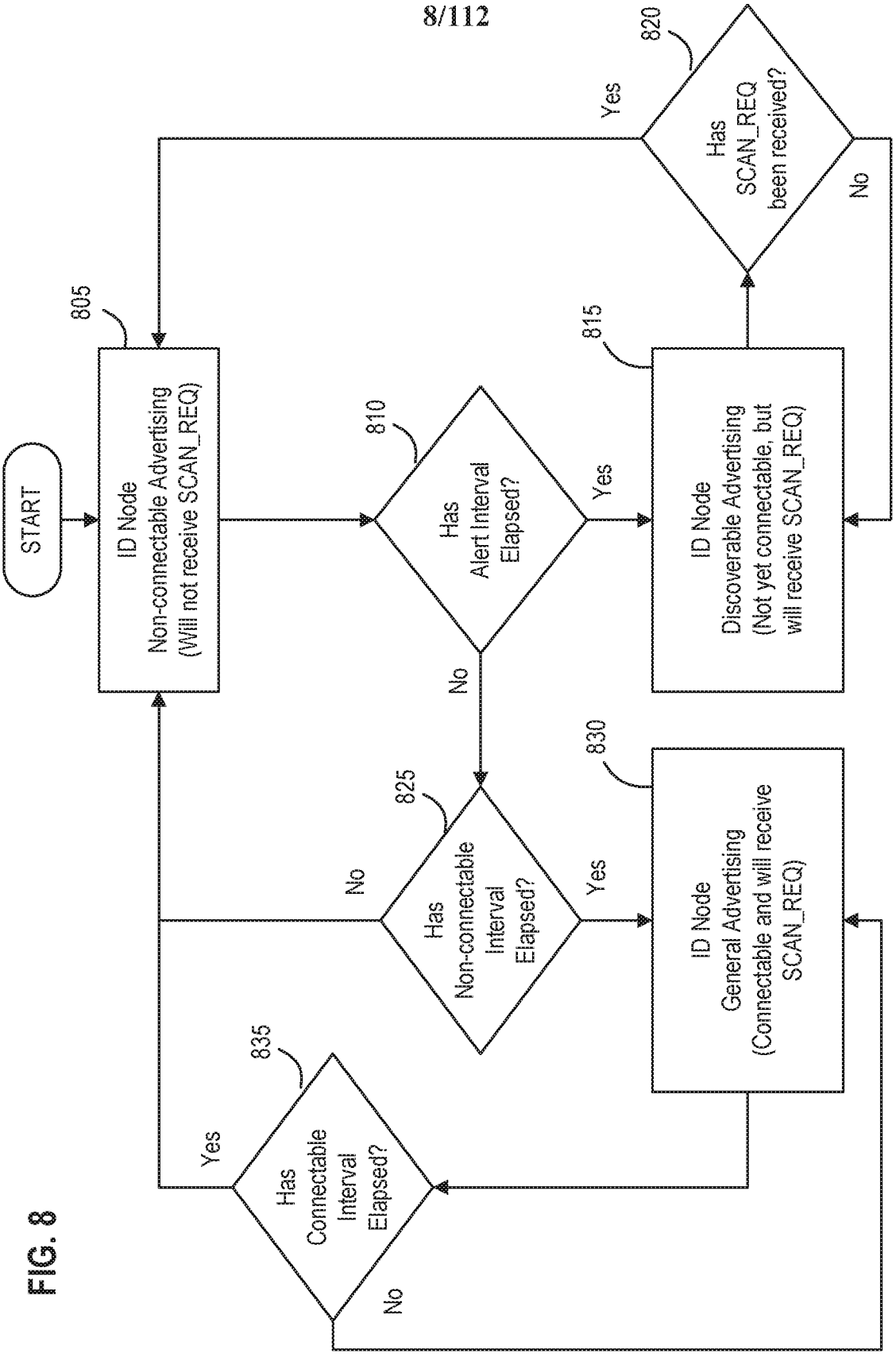

START
805
ID Node
Non-connectable Advertising
(Will not receive SCAN_REQ)
810
Has
Alert Interval
Elapsed?
Yes
No
815
ID Node
Discoverable Advertising
(Not yet connectable, but
will receive SCAN_REQ)
820
Has
SCAN_REQ
been received?
Yes
No
825
Has
Non-connectable
Interval
Elapsed?
No
Yes
830
ID Node
General Advertising
(Connectable and will receive
SCAN_REQ)
835
Has
Connectable
Interval
Elapsed?
Yes
No

FIG. 8

FIG. 9

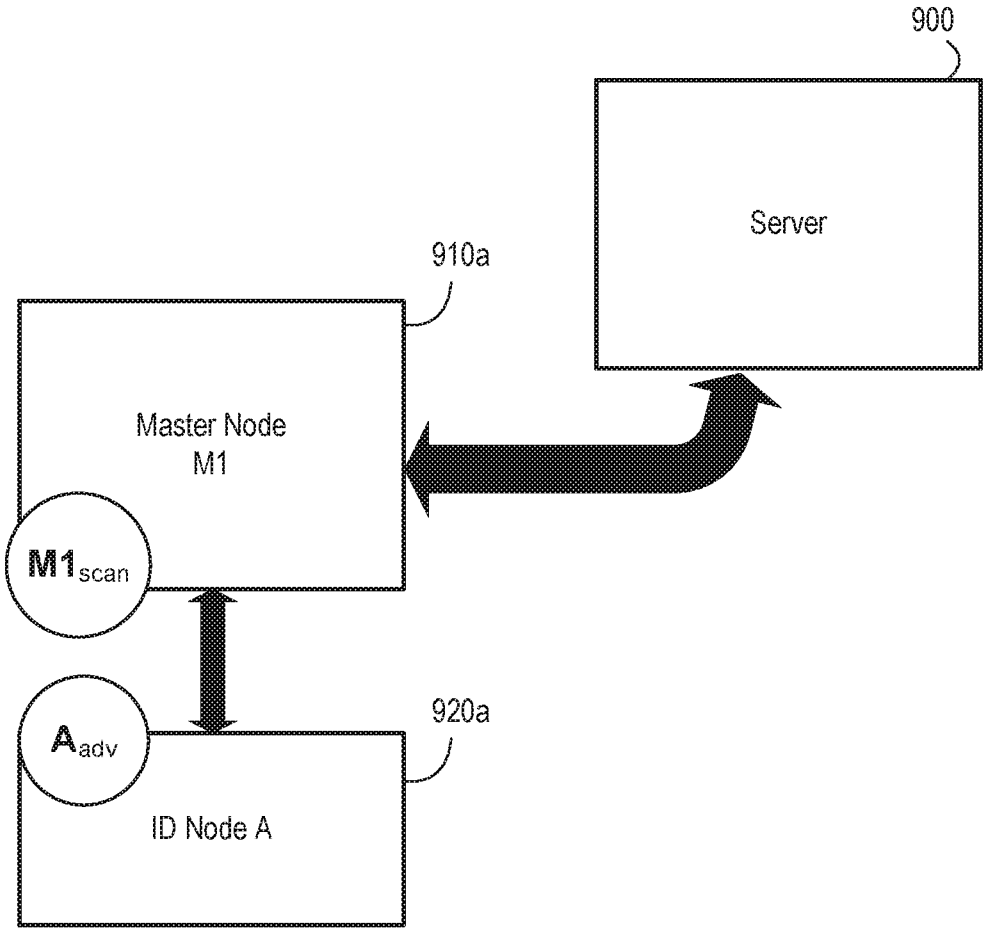


FIG. 10

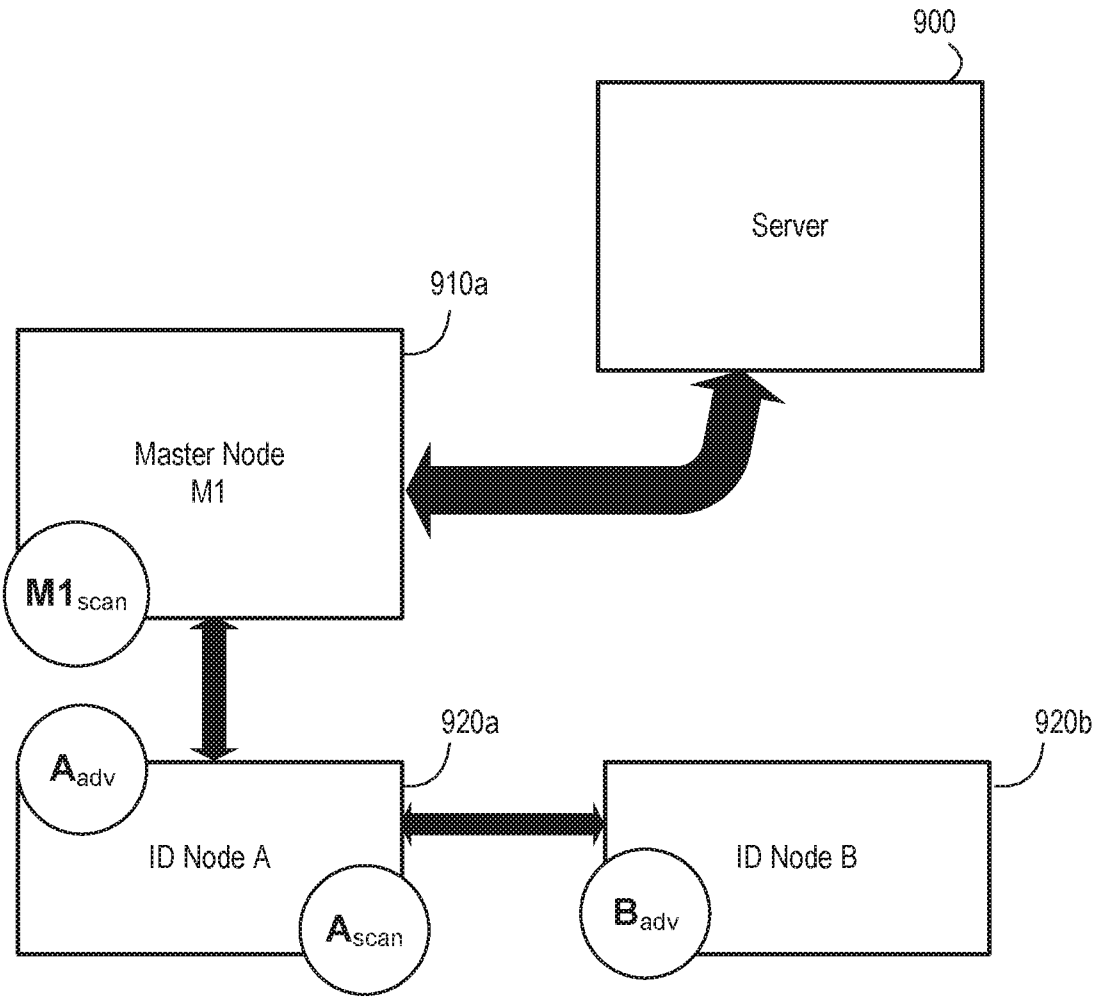
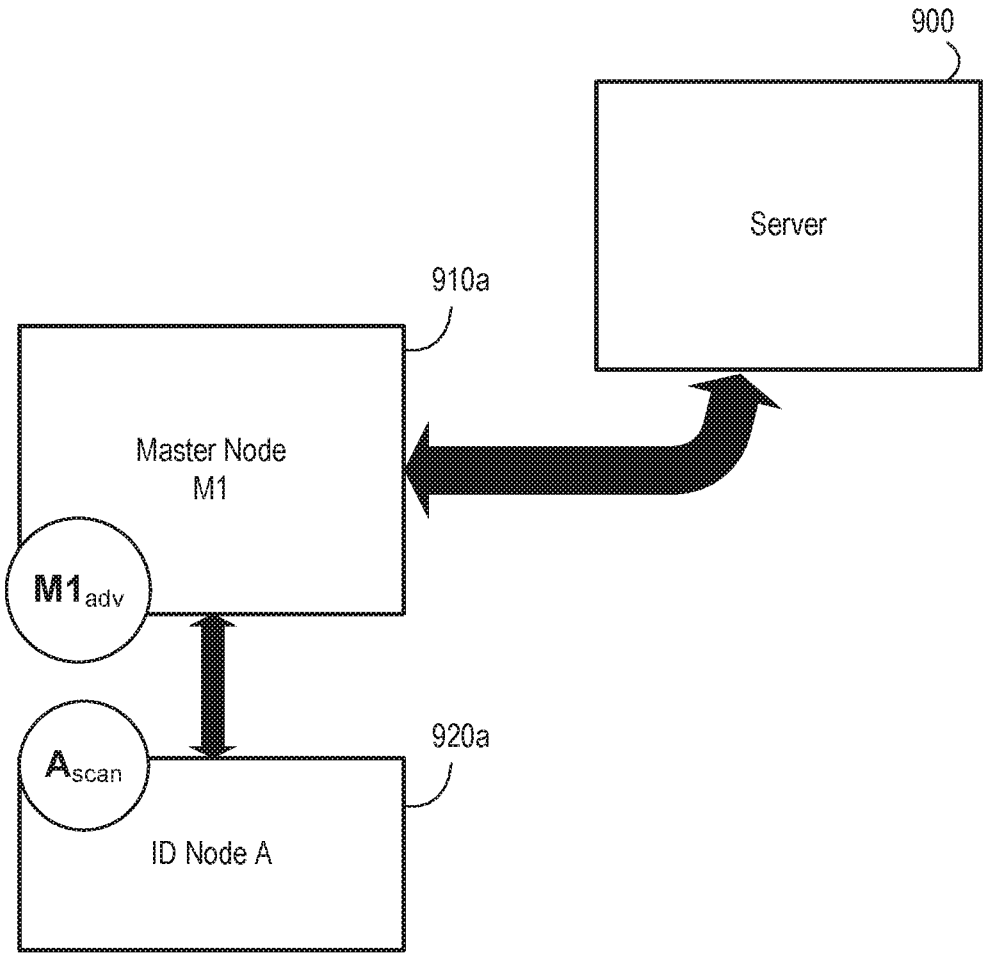

900
Server
910a
Master Node
M1
M1scan
Aadv
920a
ID Node A
Ascan
920b
ID Node B
Badv

FIG. 11



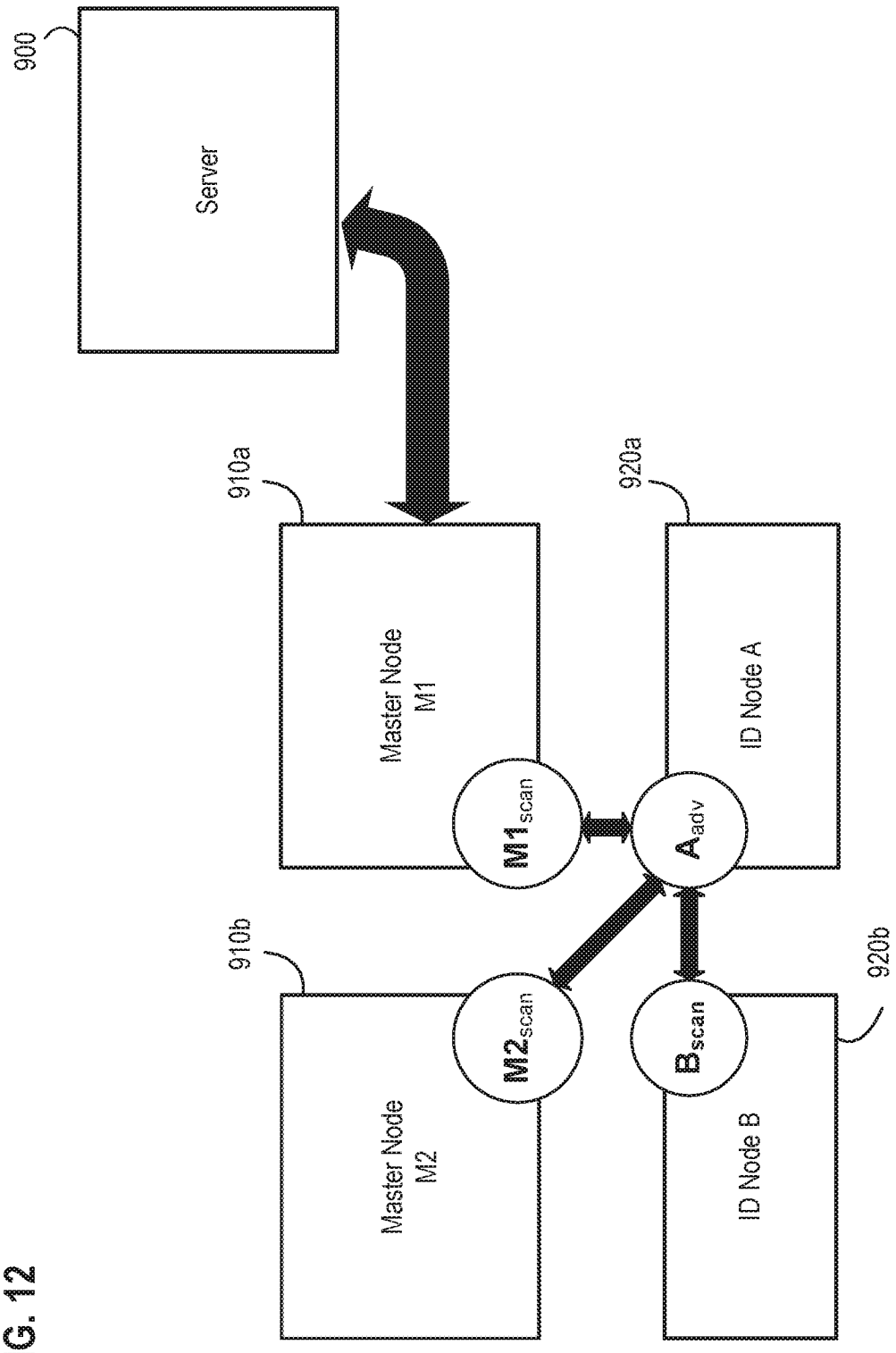

900
Server
910a
Master Node
M1
920a
ID Node A
M1scan
Aadv
910b
Master Node
M2
920b
ID Node B
M2scan
Bscan

FIG. 12

FIG. 13

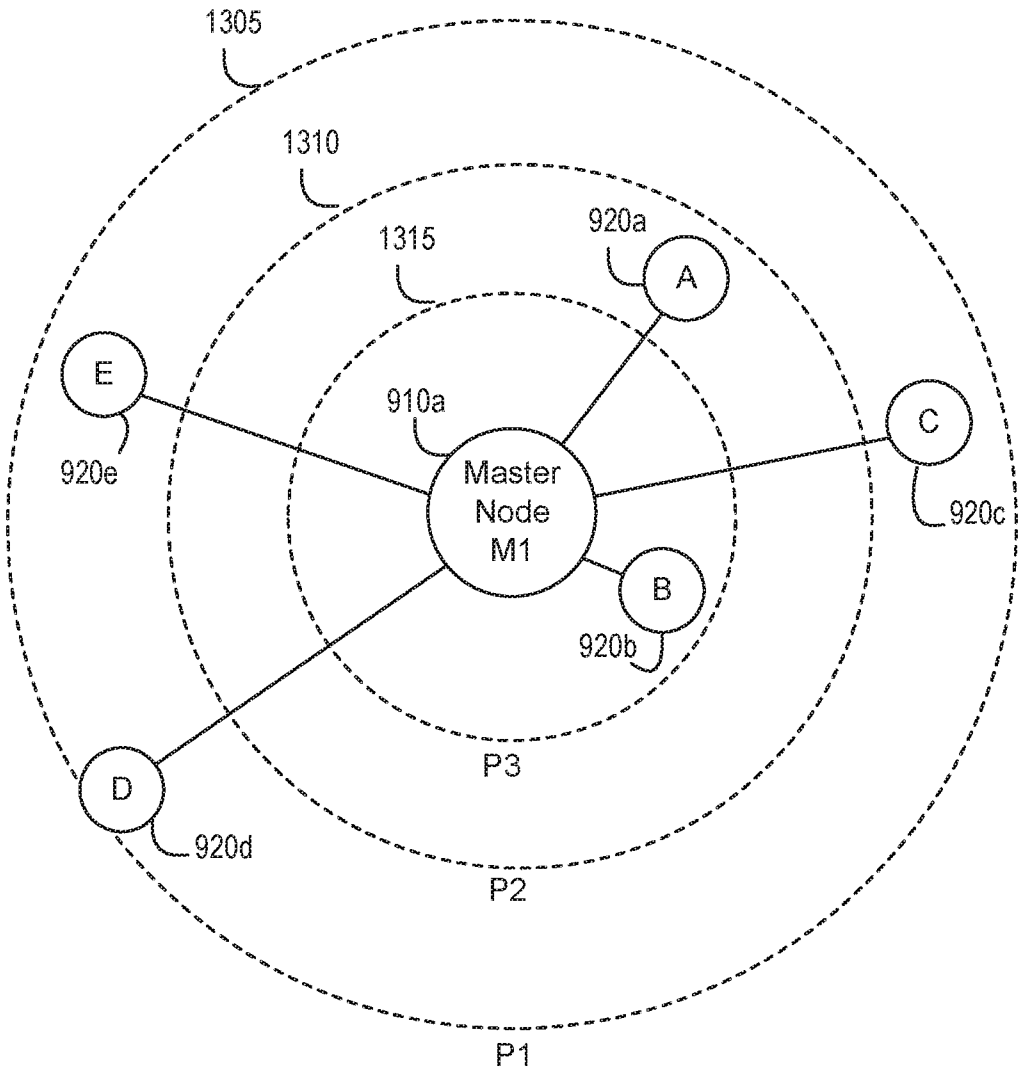
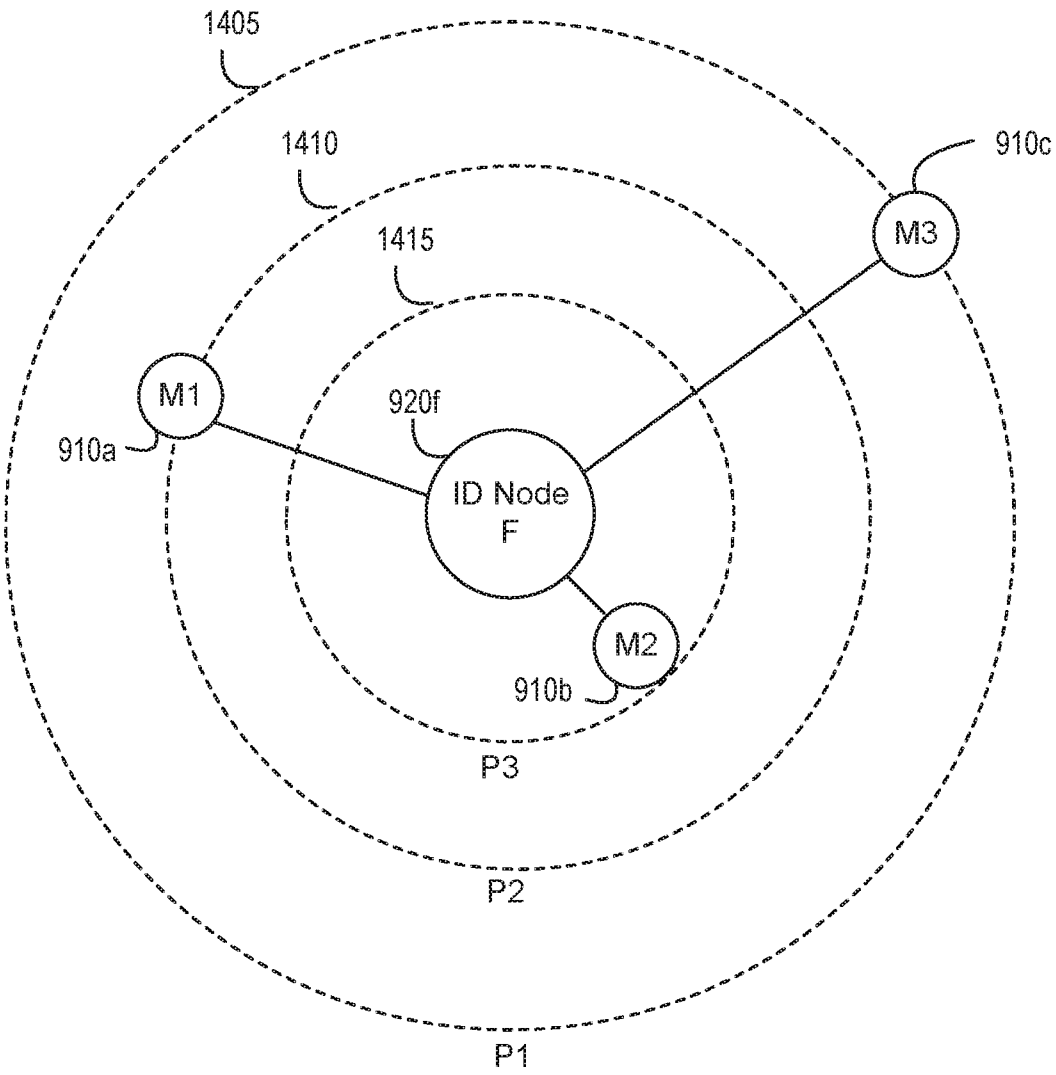

1305
1310
1315
920a
A
E
910a
C
920e
Master
Node
M1
920c
B
920b
P3
D
920d
P2
P1

FIG. 14



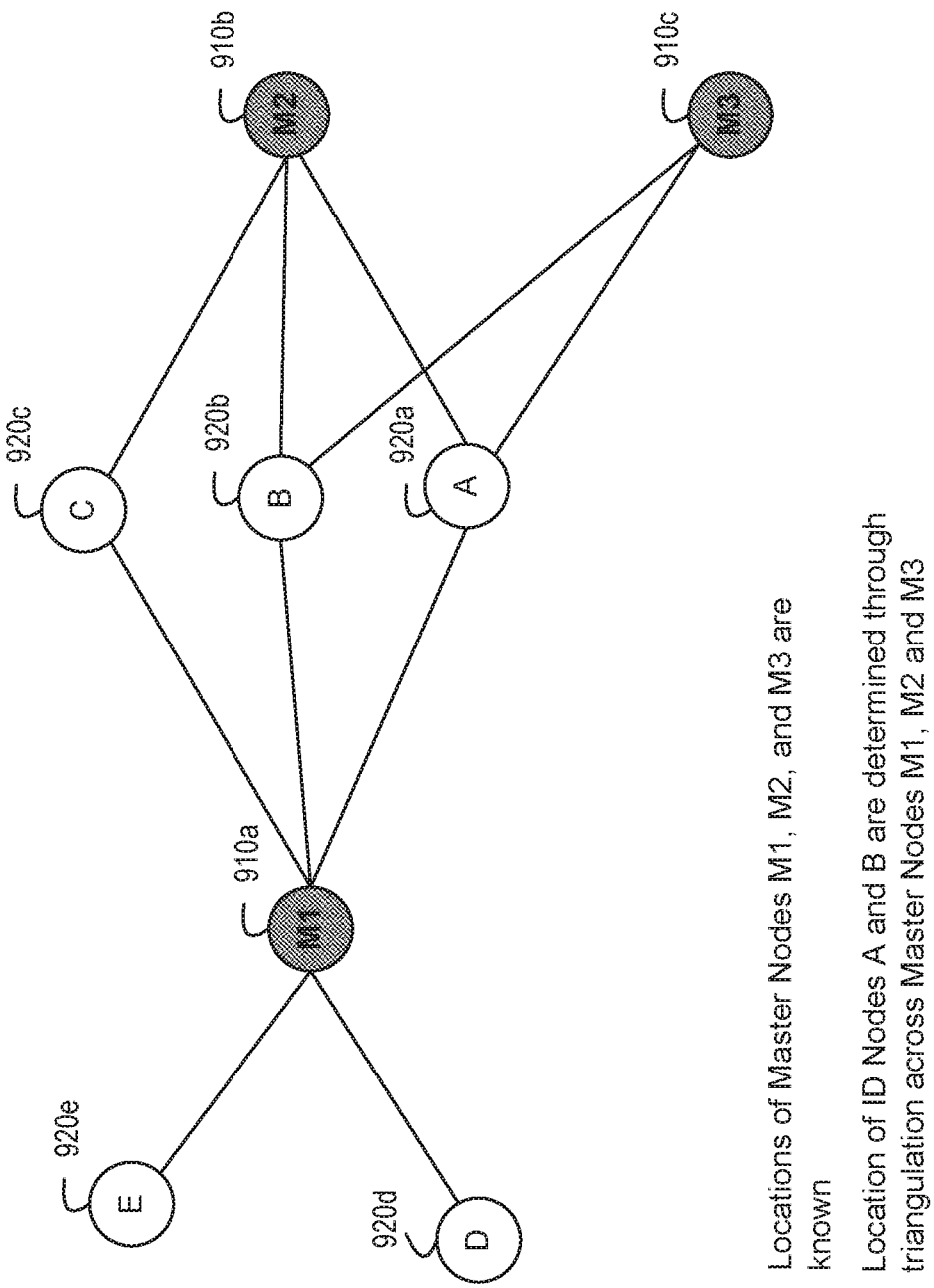

910b
M2
910c
M3
920c
C
920b
B
920a
A
910a
M1
920e
E
920d
D
• Locations of Master Nodes M1, M2, and M3 are known
• Location of ID Nodes A and B are determined through triangulation across Master Nodes M1, M2 and M3

FIG. 15

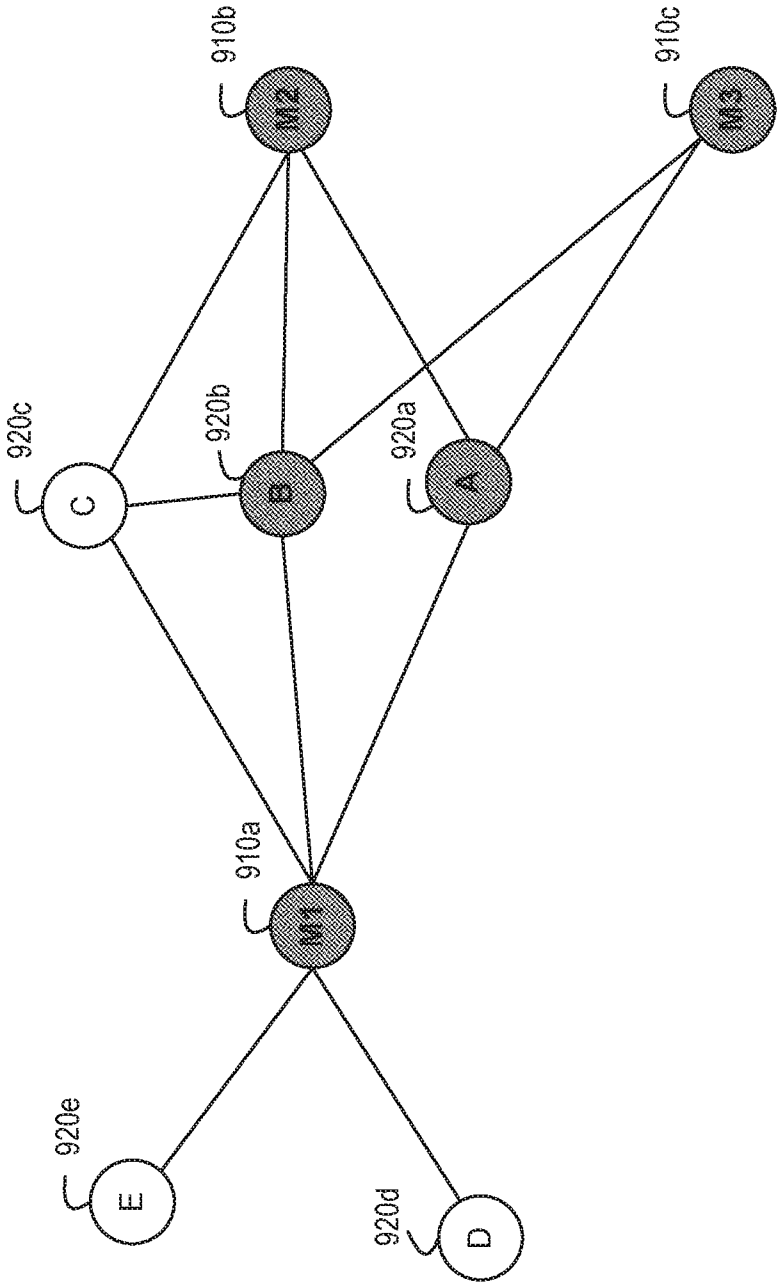

910b
910c
M2
M3
920c
920b
920a
C
B
A
910a
M1
920e
920d
E
D
• Location of ID Node C determined through triangulation across ID Node B and Master Nodes M1 and M2

FIG. 16

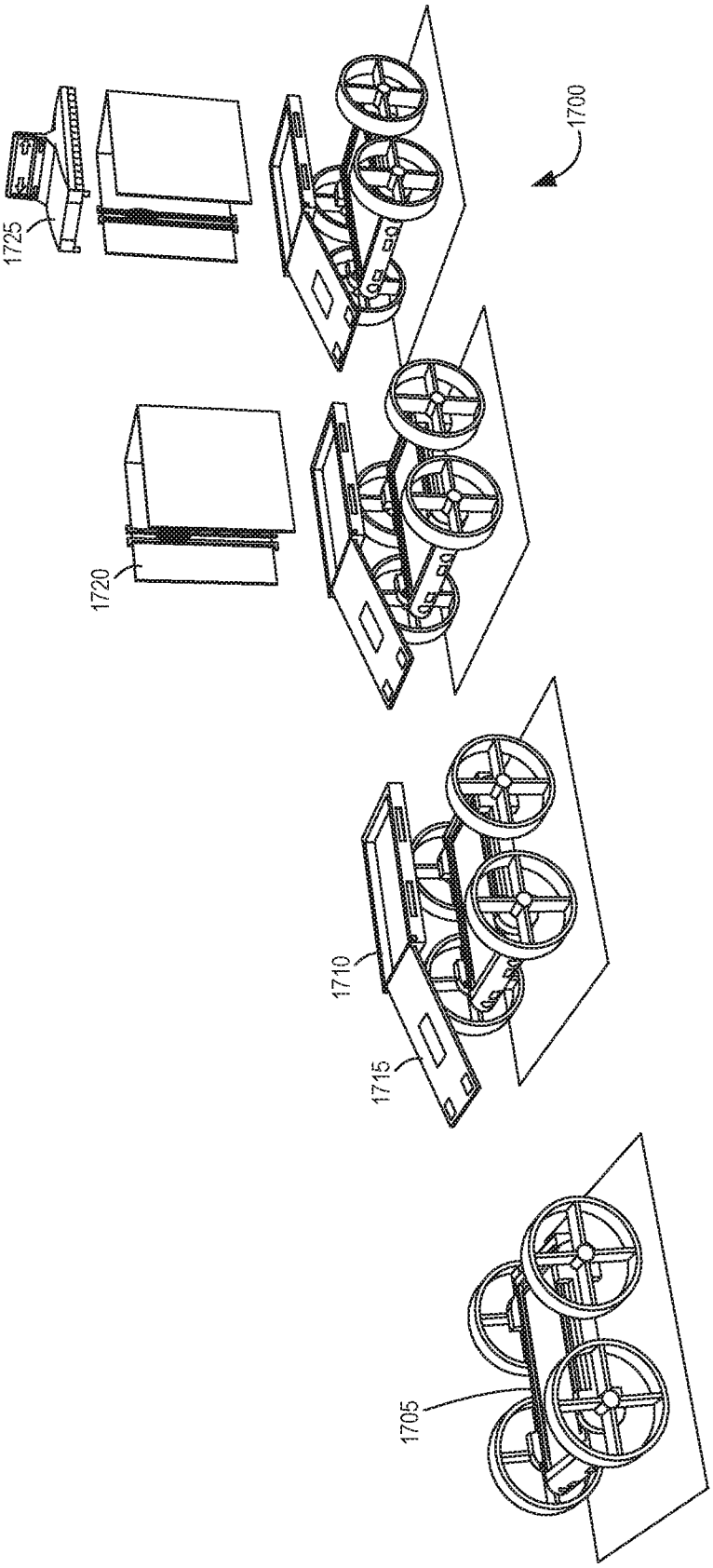


Fig. 17

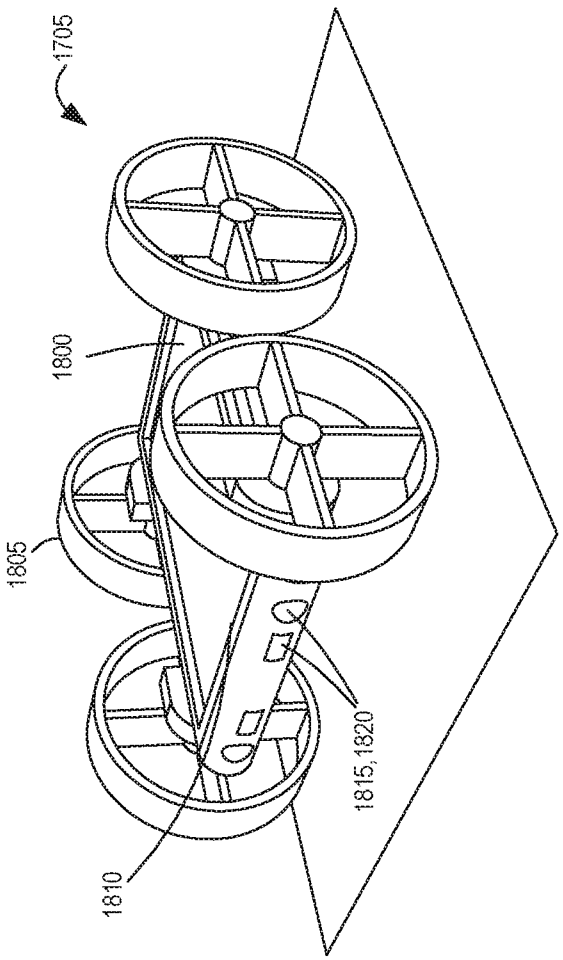


Fig. 18A

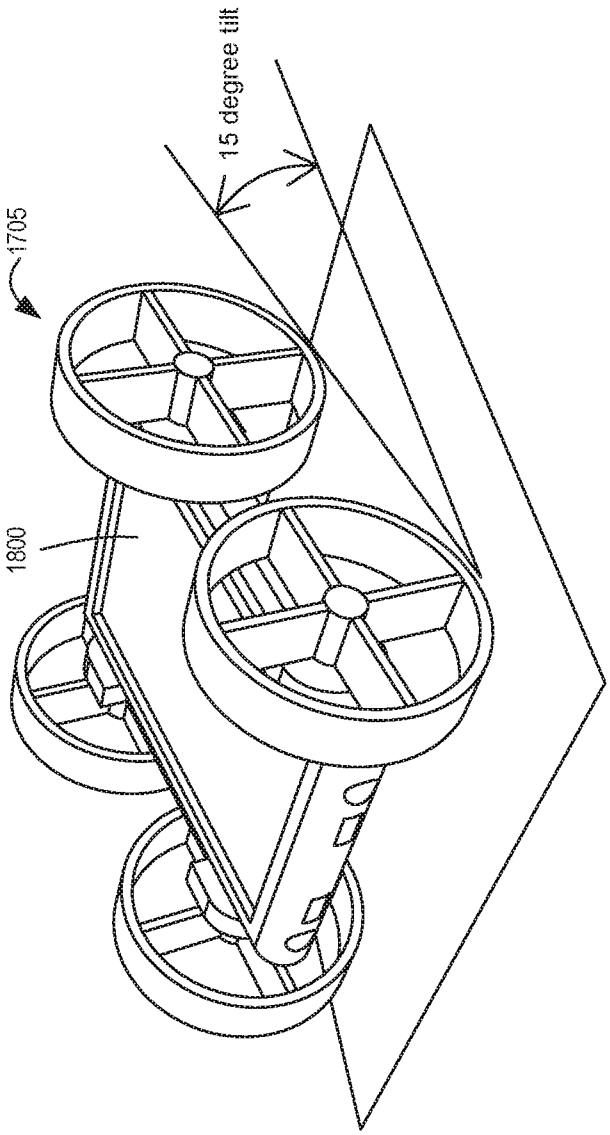


Fig. 18B

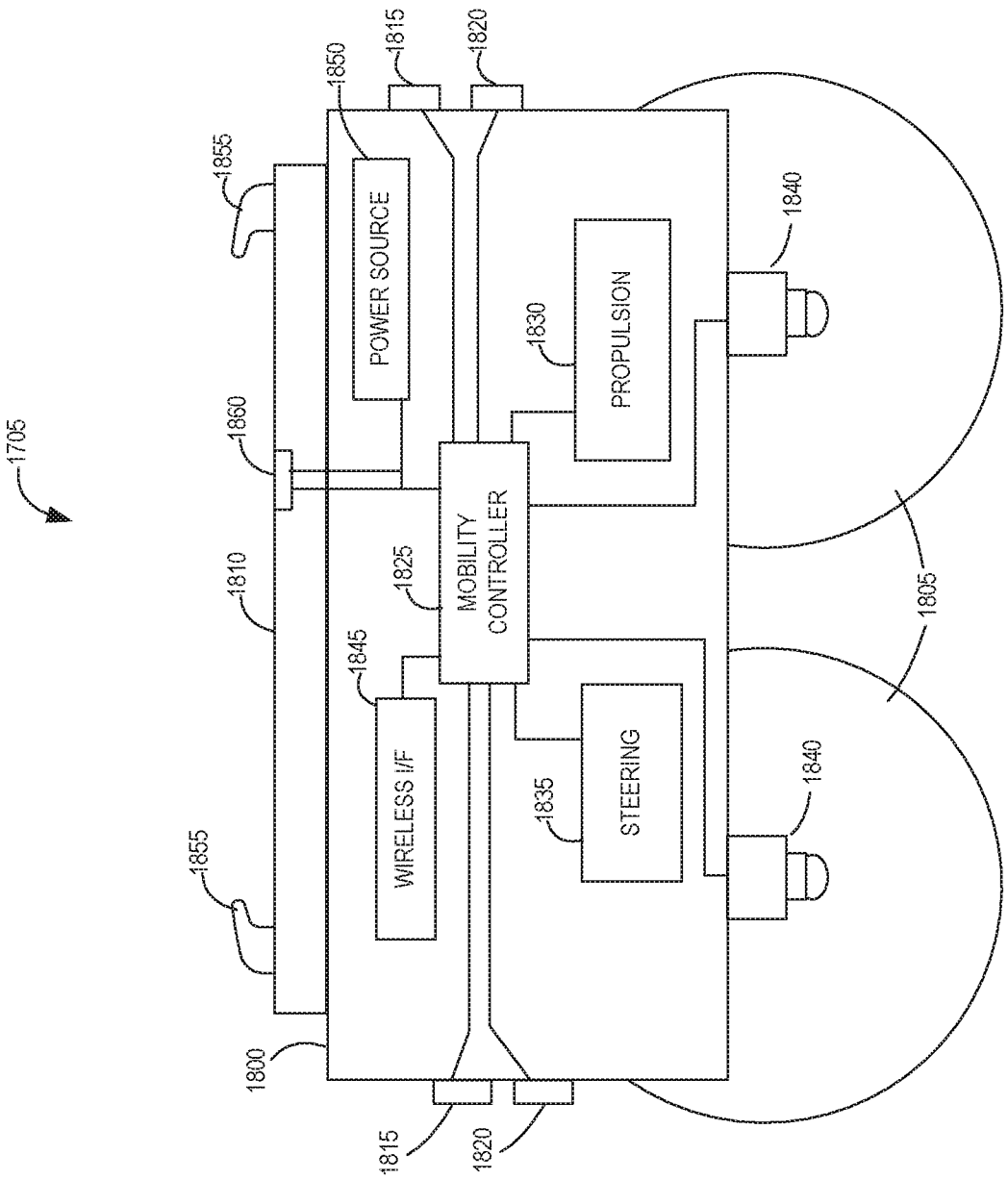

1705
1800
1805
1810
1815
1820
1825
1830
1835
1840
1845
1850
1855
1860
POWER SOURCE
PROPULSION
MOBILITY CONTROLLER
WIRELESS I/F
STEERING

Fig. 18C

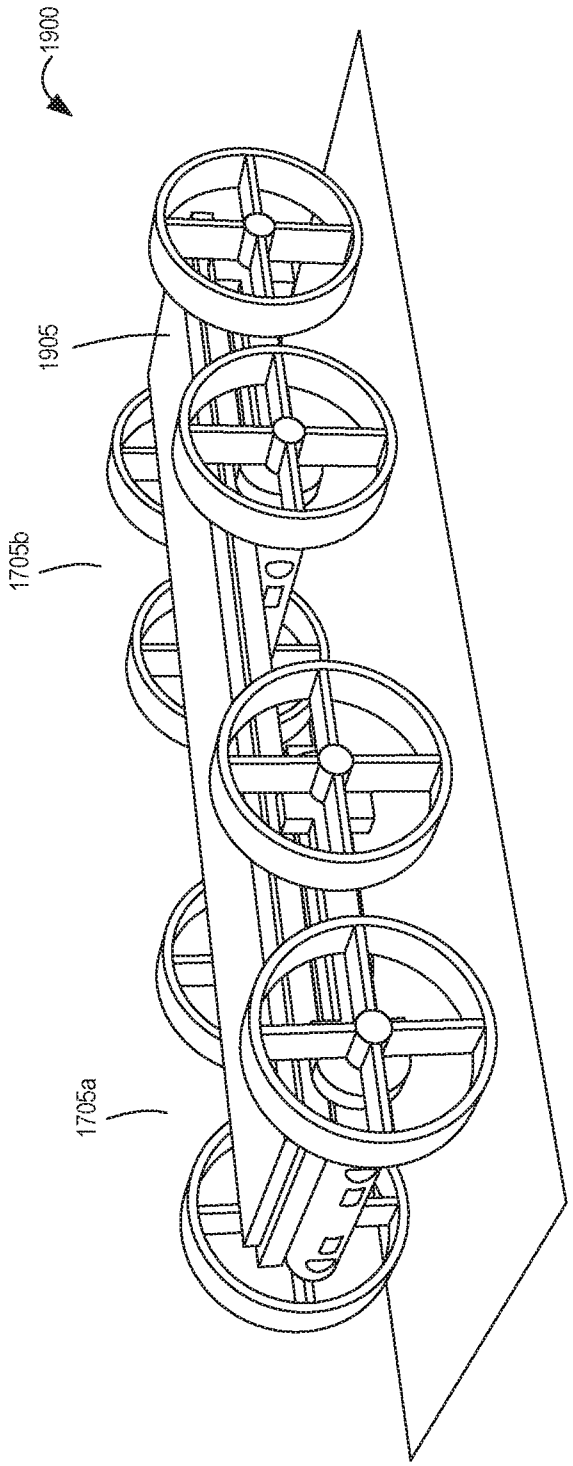


Fig. 19

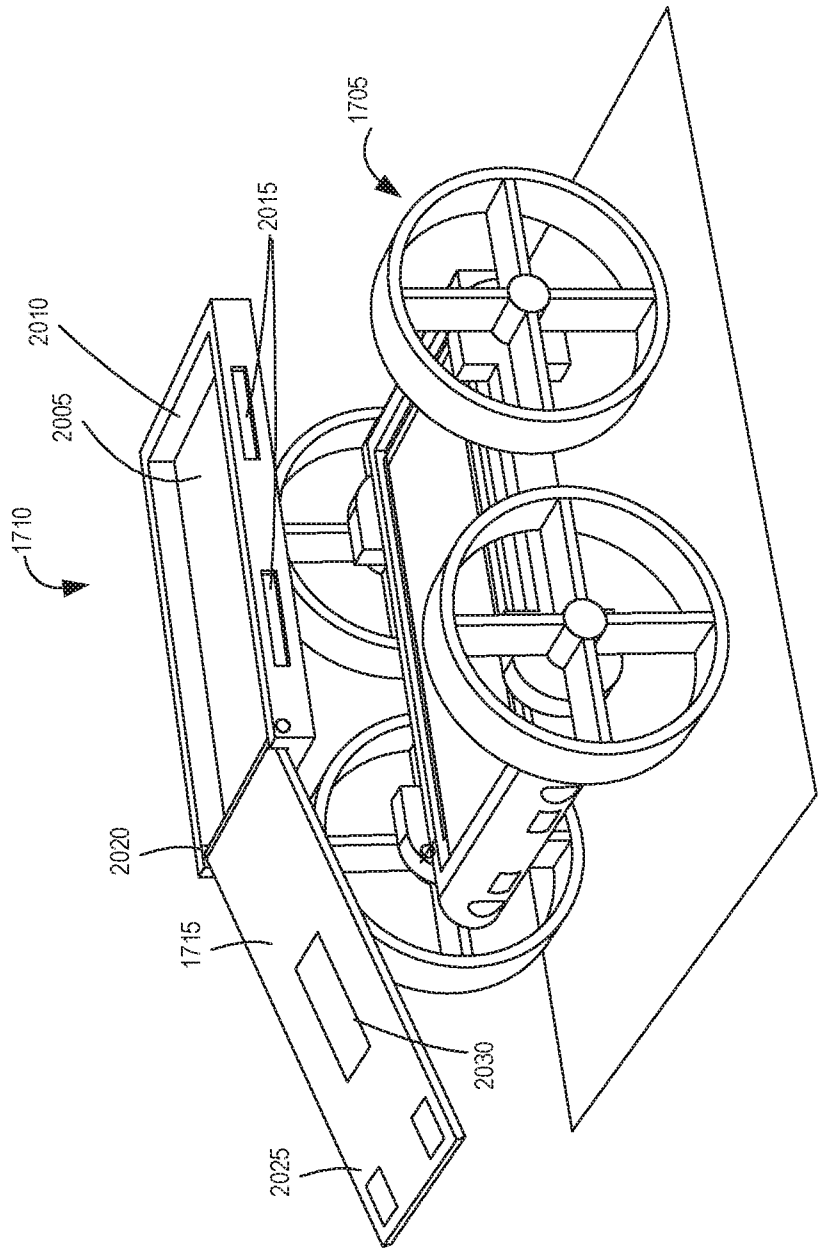


Fig. 20A

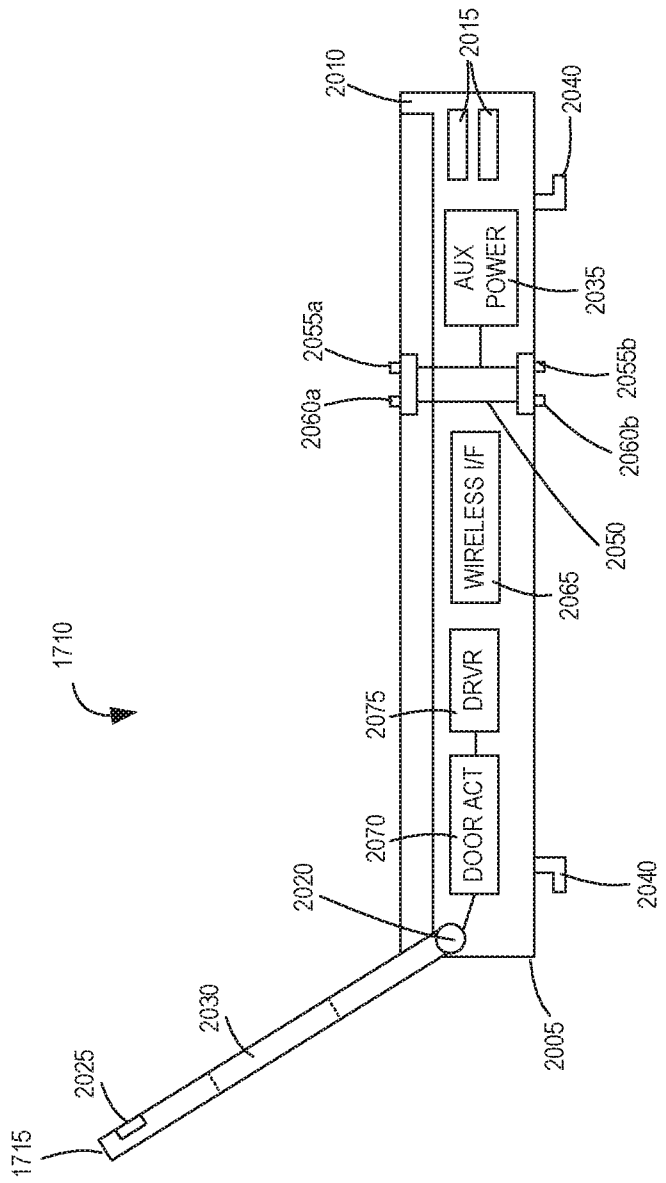

1710
1715
2025
2030
2020
2005
2010
2015
2040
2035
AUX POWER
2055a
2055b
2060a
2060b
2050
WIRELESS I/F
2065
2075
DRVR
2070
DOOR ACT
2040

Fig. 20B

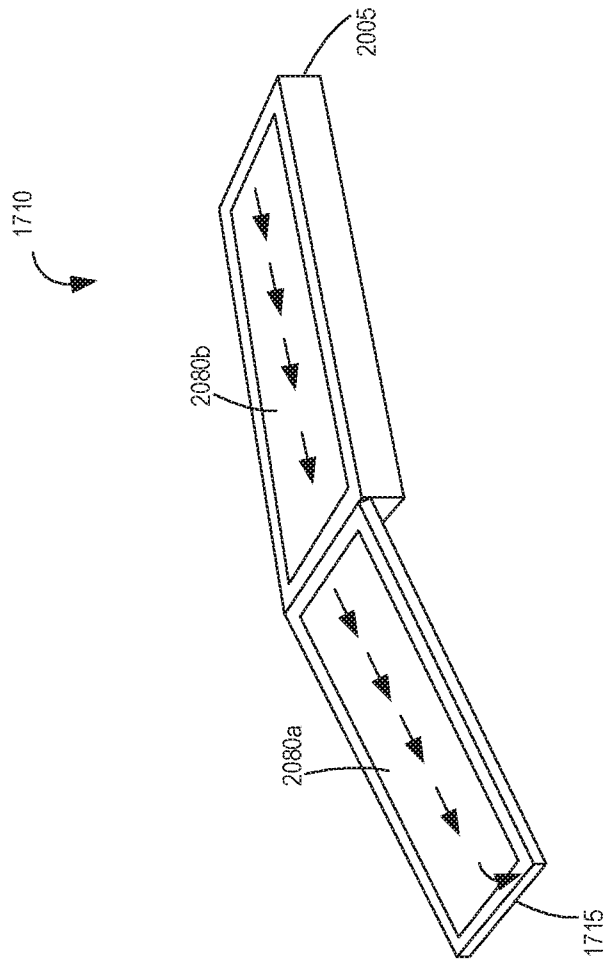


Fig. 20C

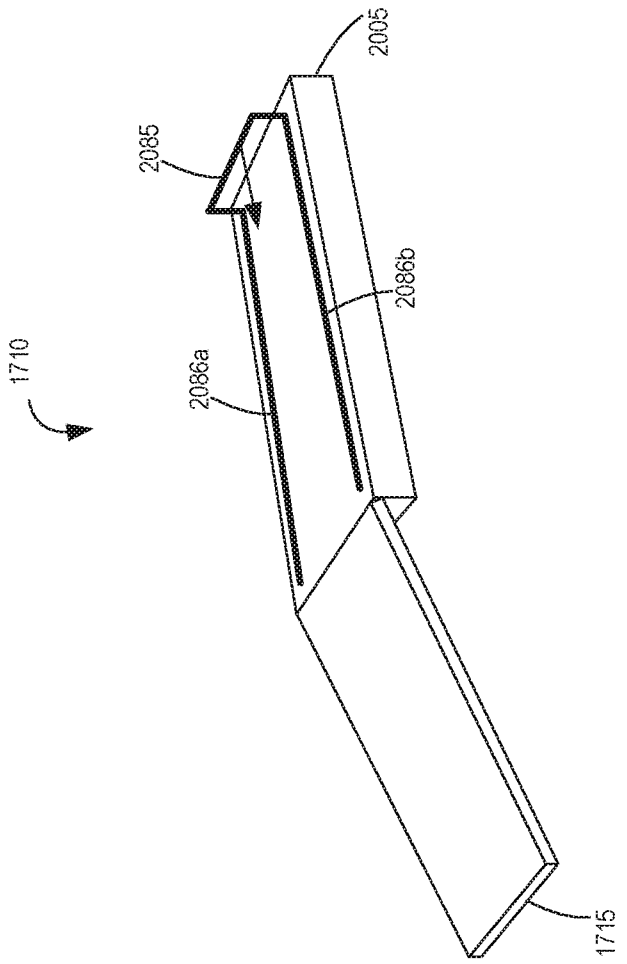


Fig. 20D

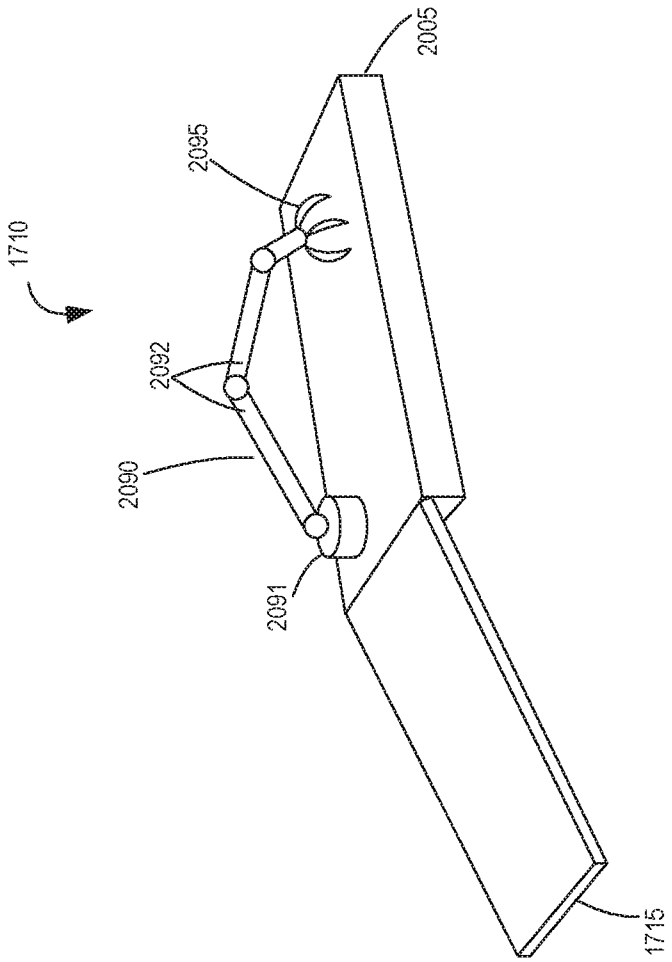


Fig. 20E

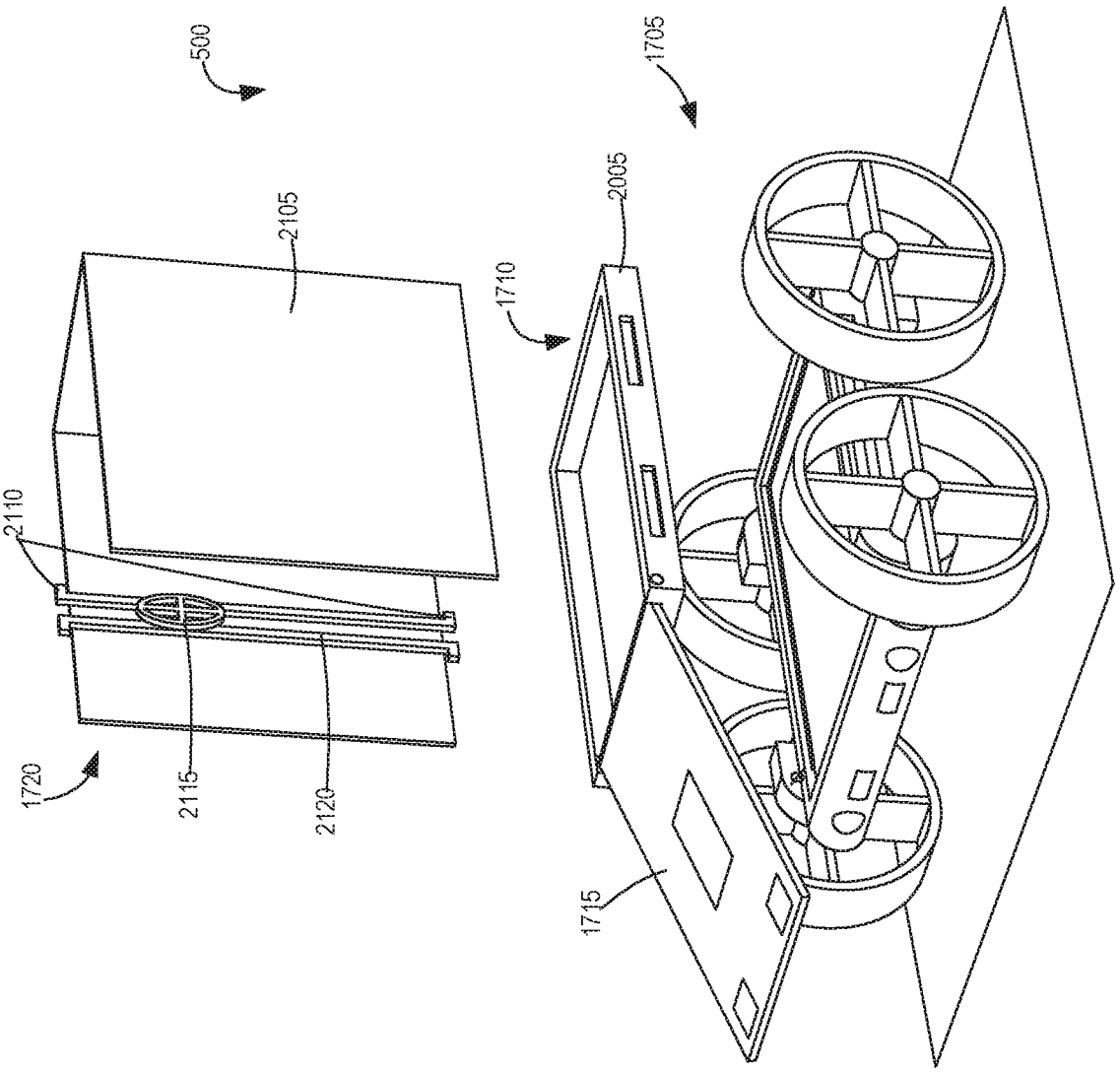


Fig. 21

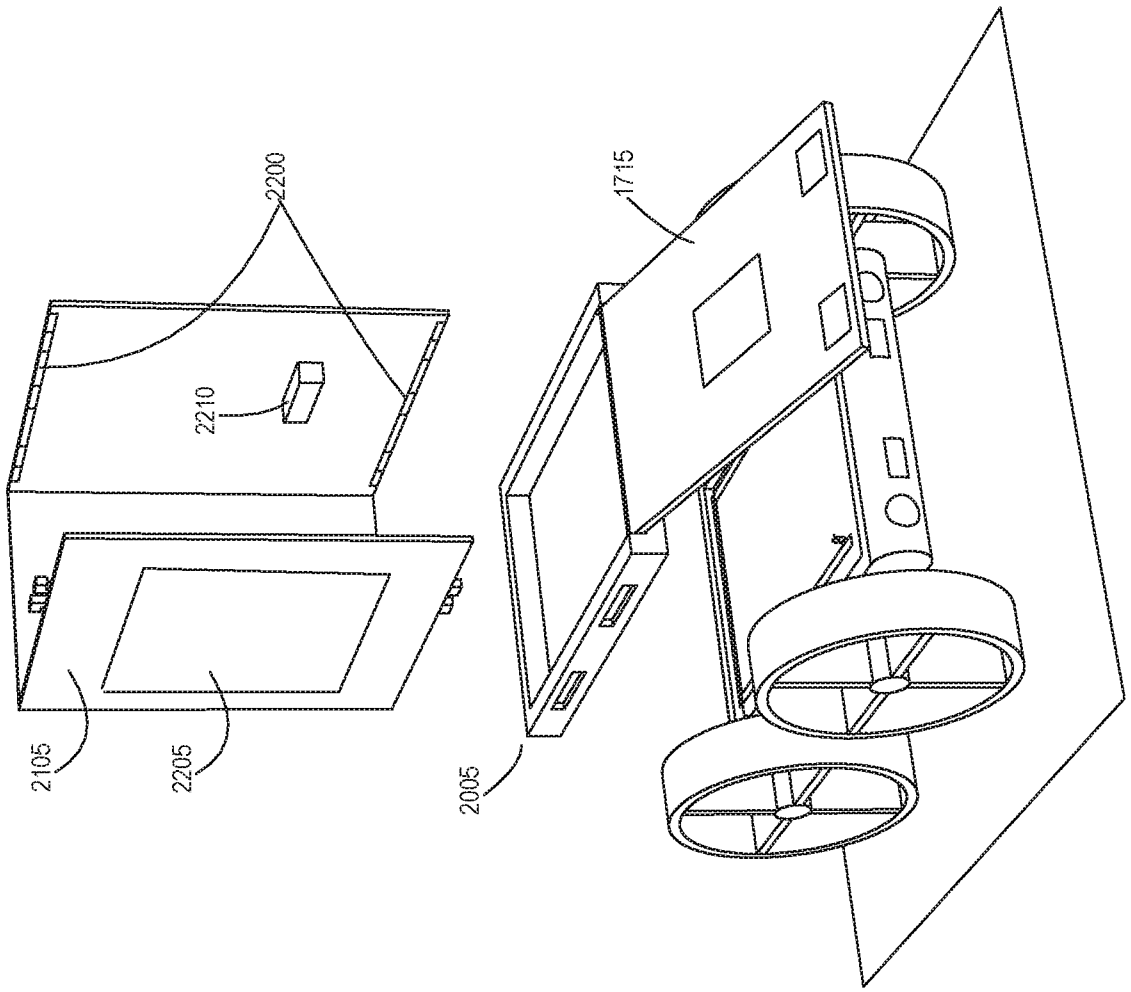


Fig. 22A

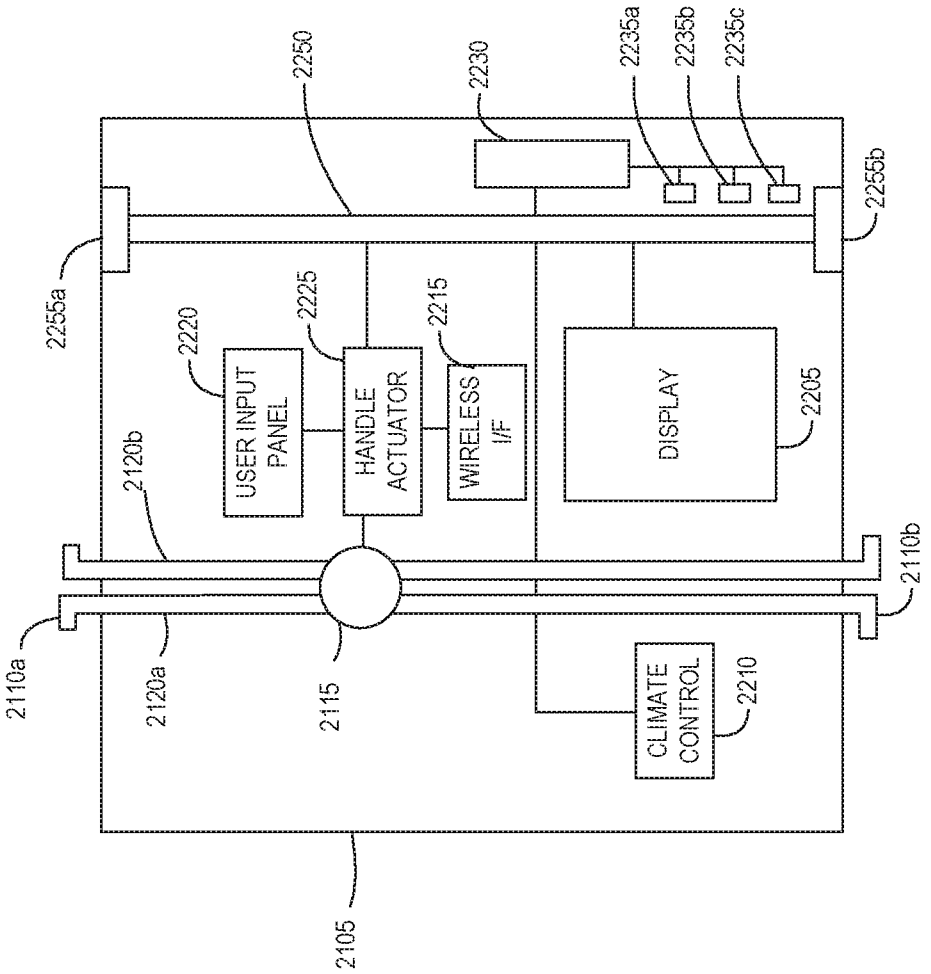

2250
2230
2235a
2235b
2235c
2255b
2255a
2220
2225
2215
USER INPUT PANEL
HANDLE ACTUATOR
WIRELESS I/F
DISPLAY
2205
2120b
2110b
2110a
2120a
2115
CLIMATE CONTROL
2210
2105

Fig. 22B

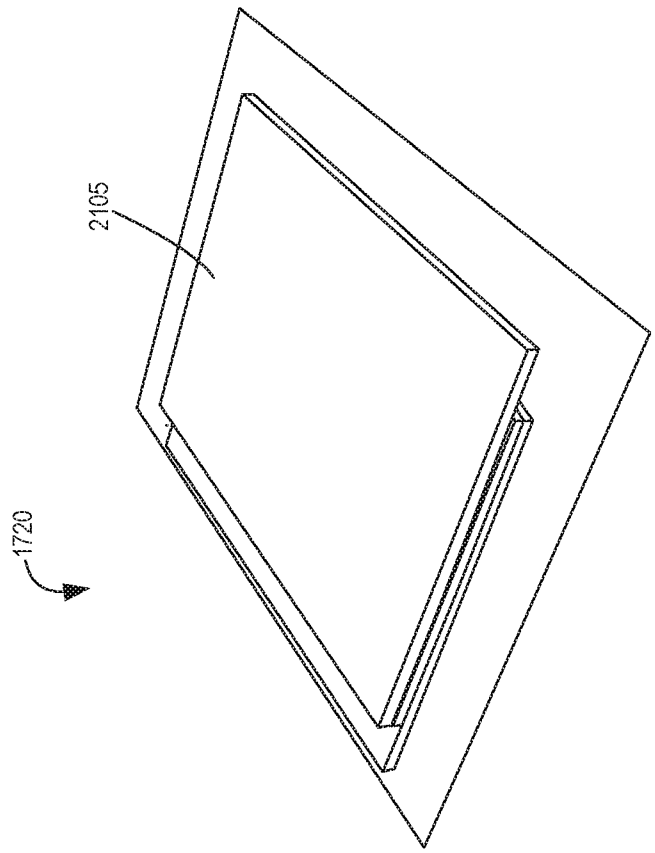


Fig. 23

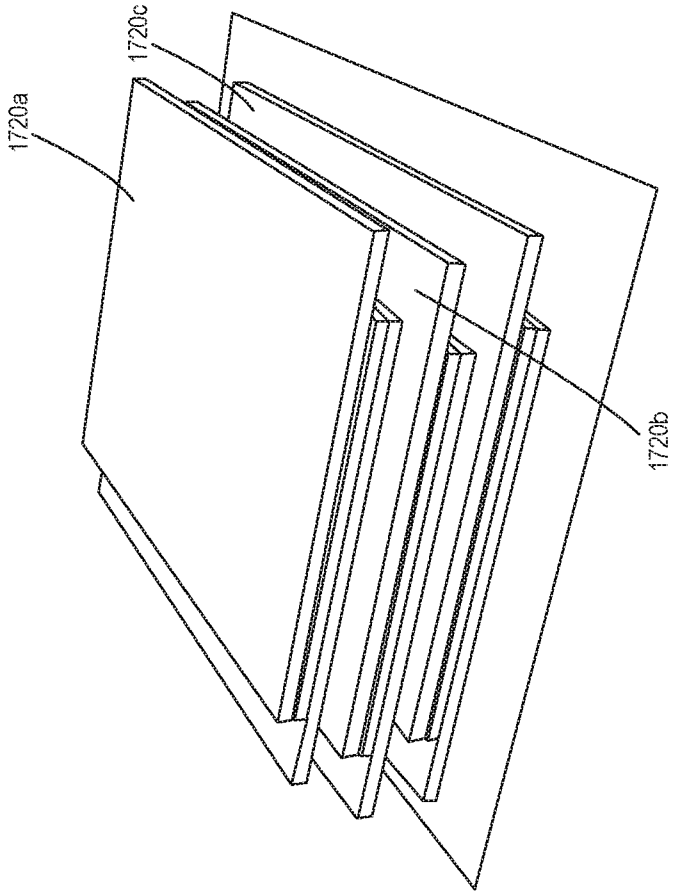


Fig. 24

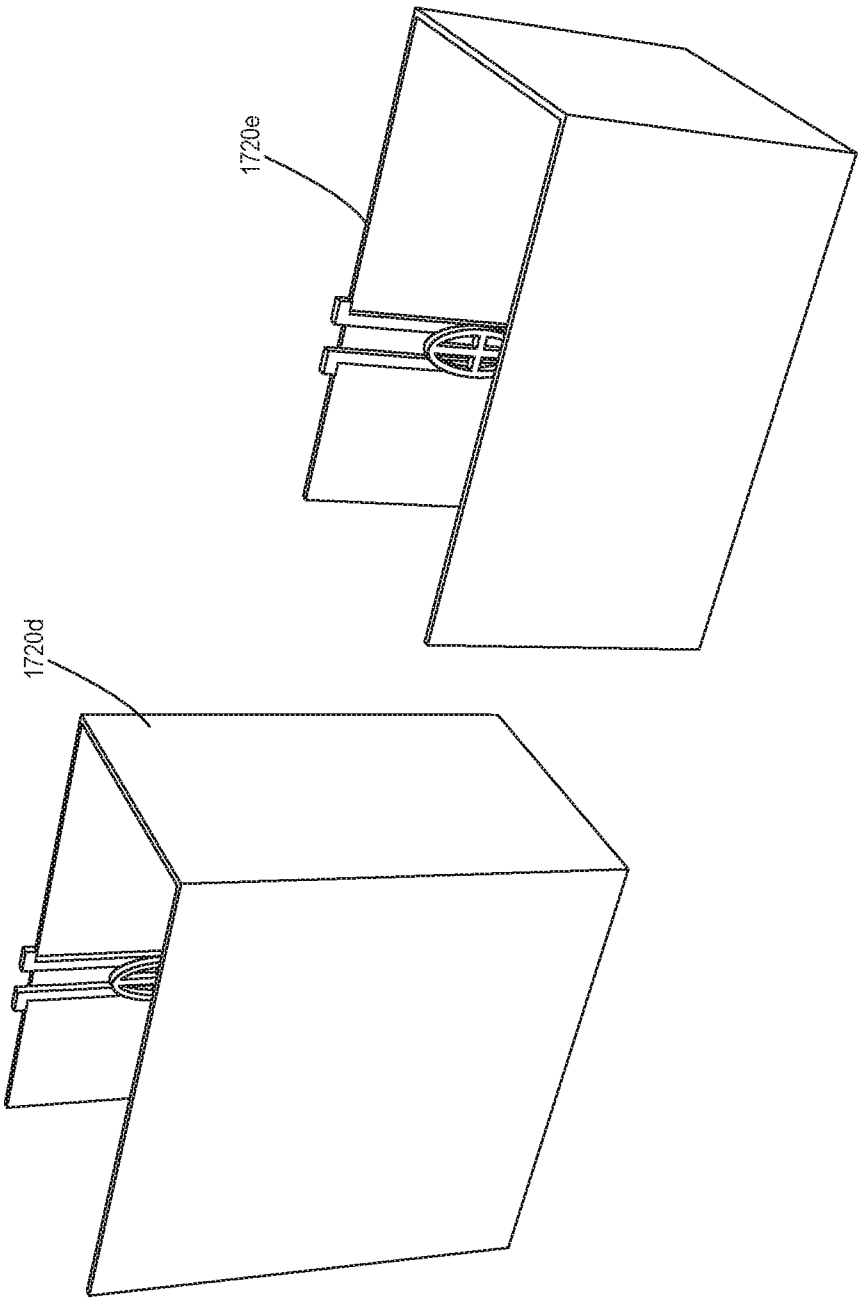


Fig. 25

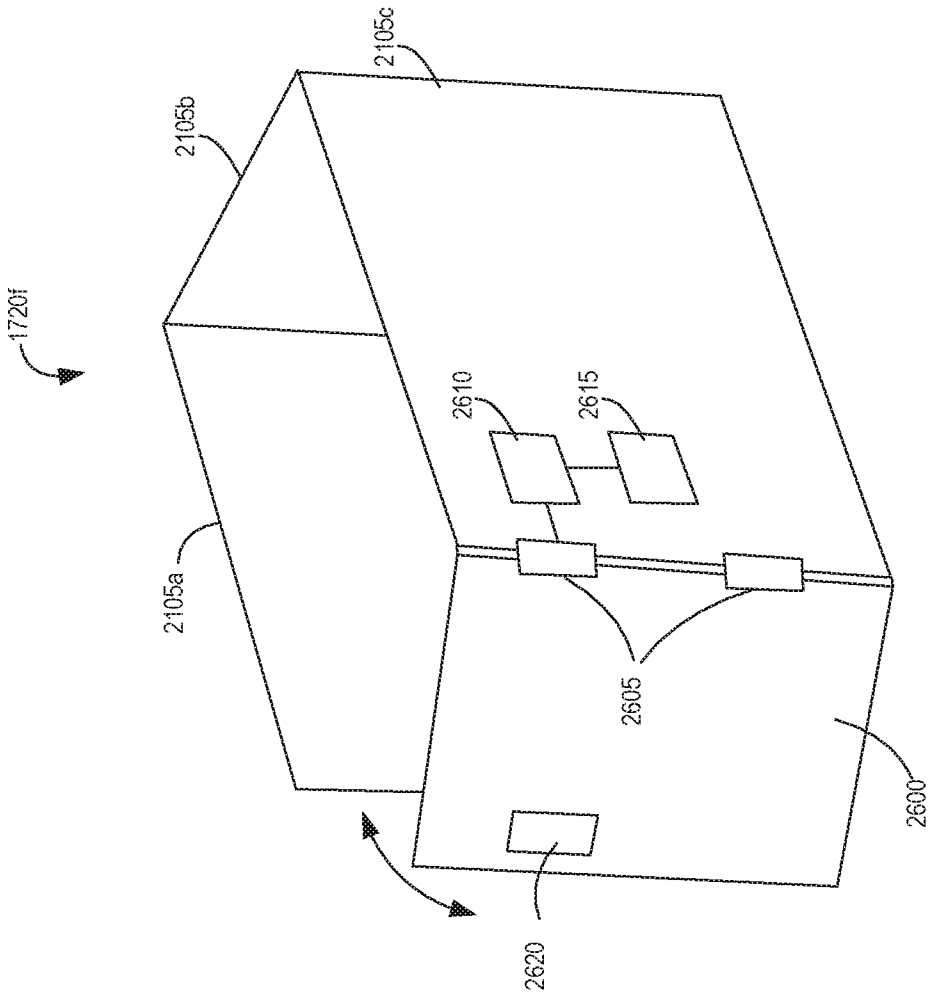


Fig. 26

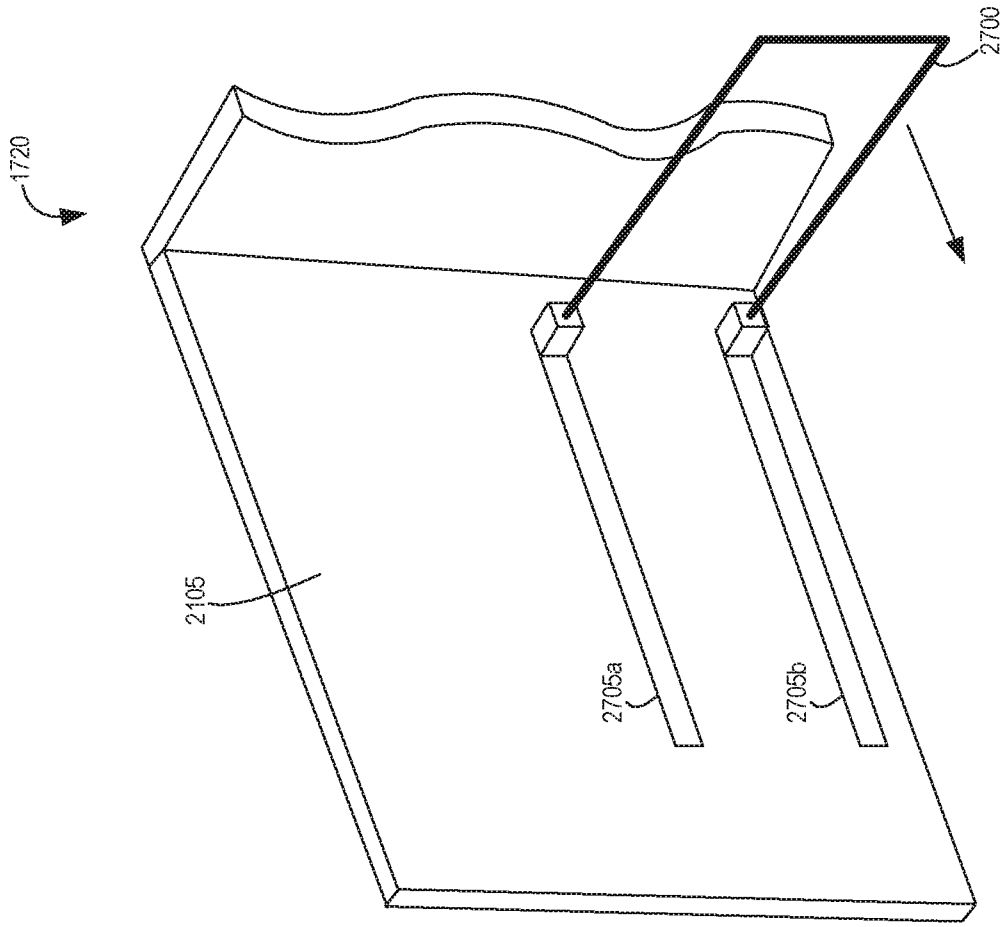


Fig. 27A

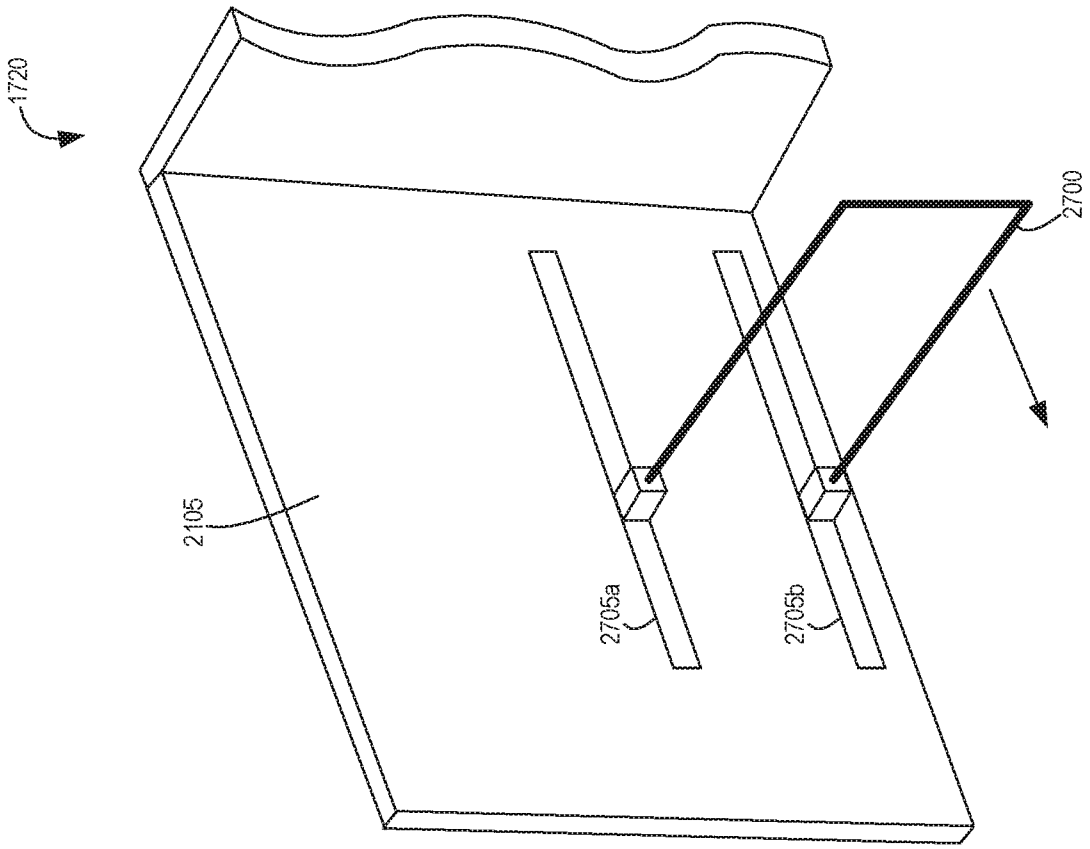


Fig. 27B

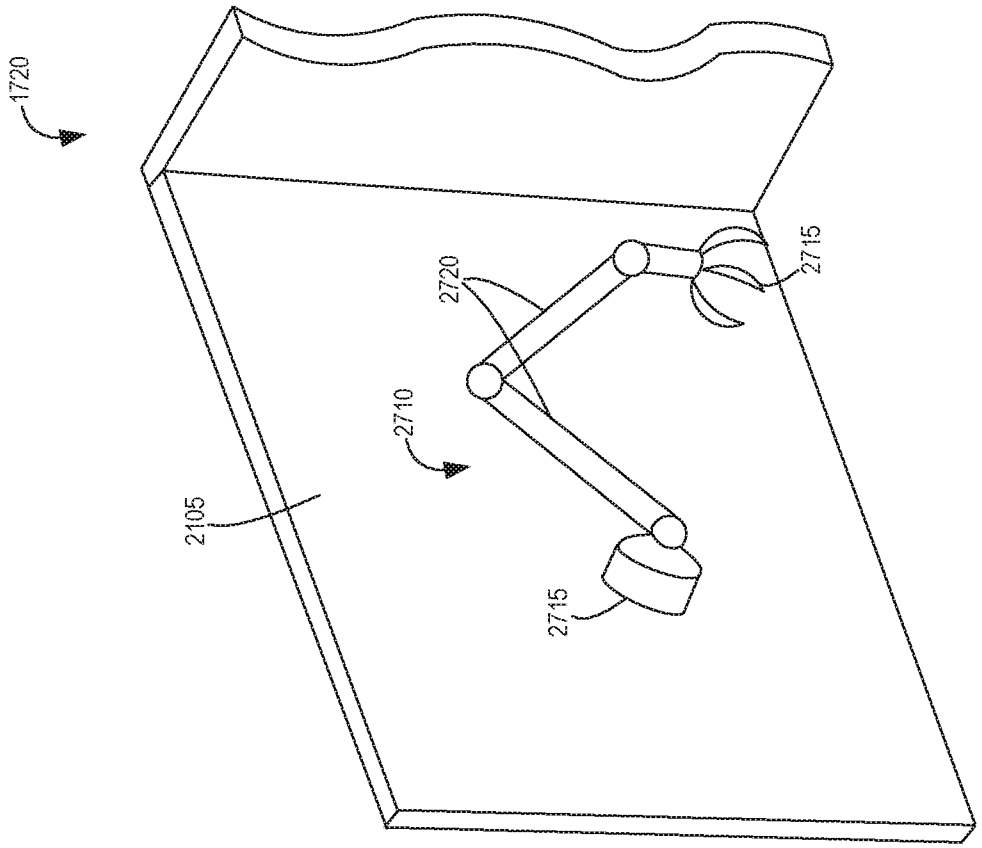


Fig. 27C

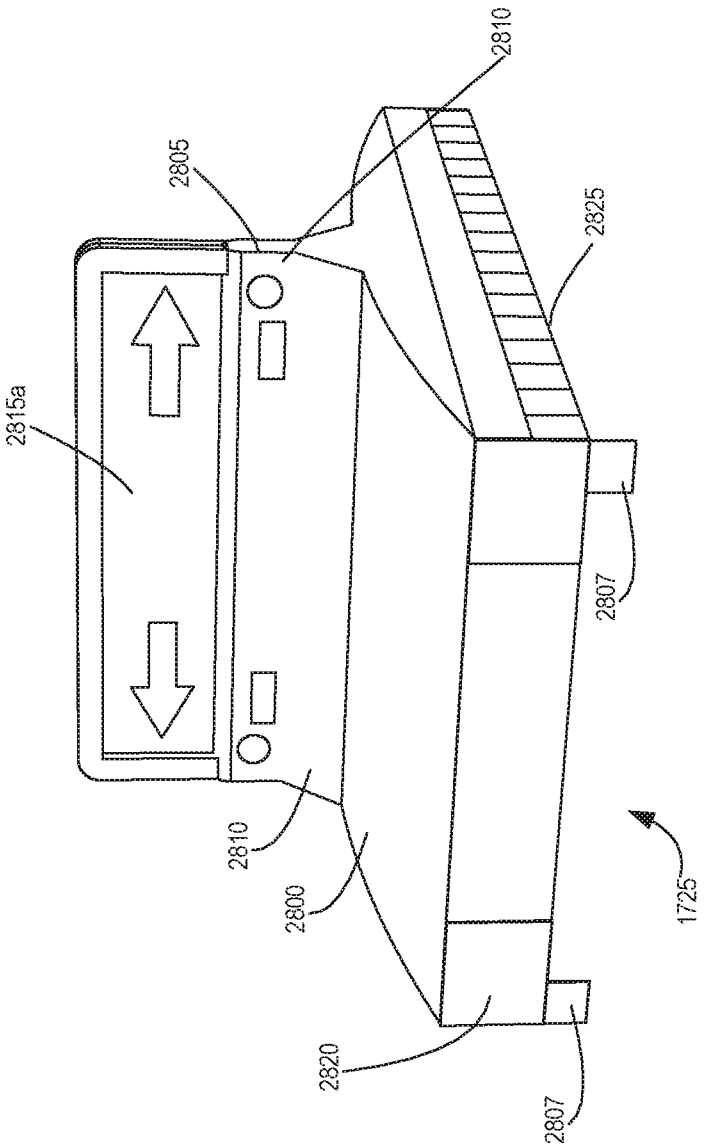


Fig. 28

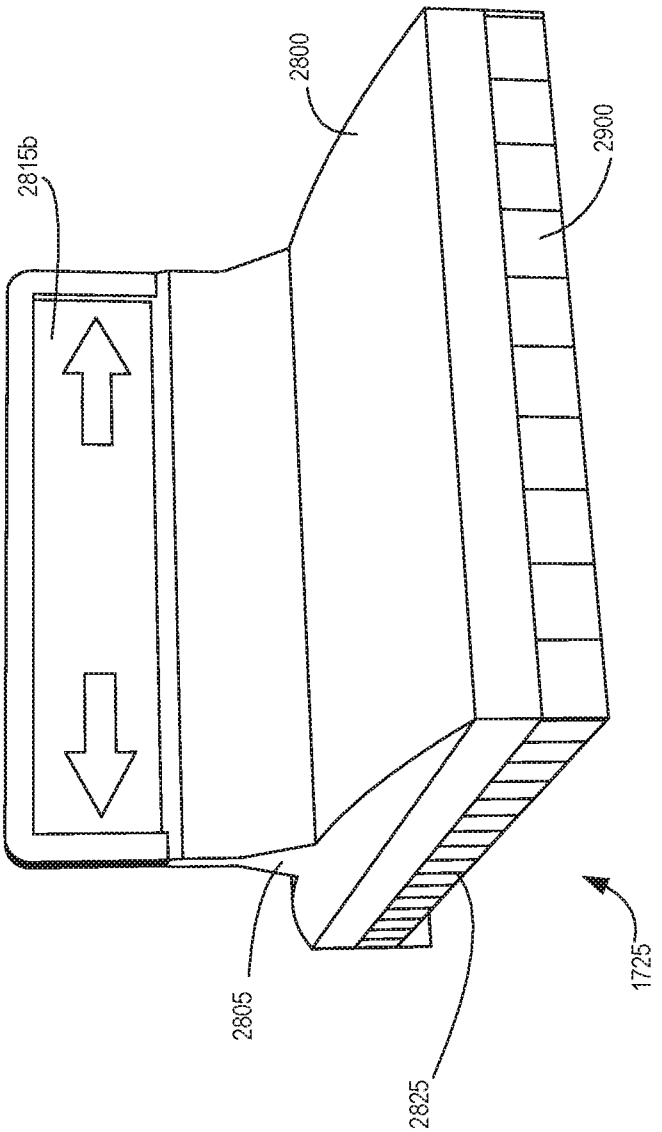


Fig. 29

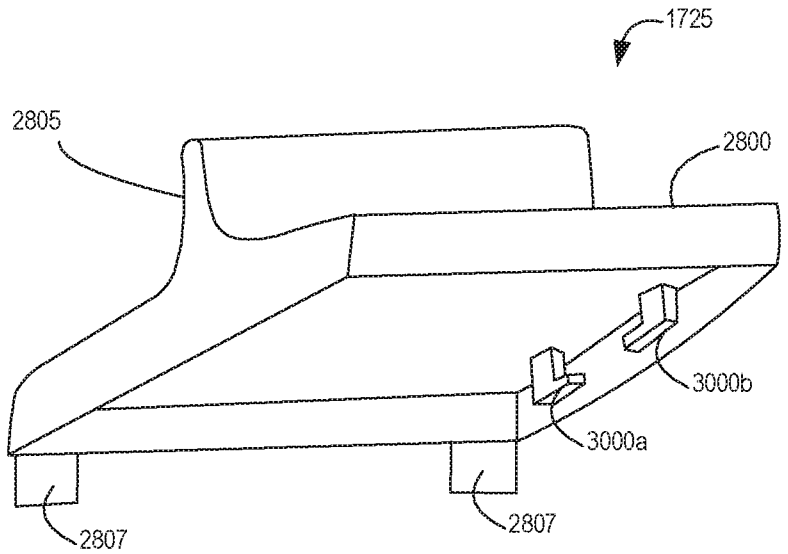


Fig. 30A

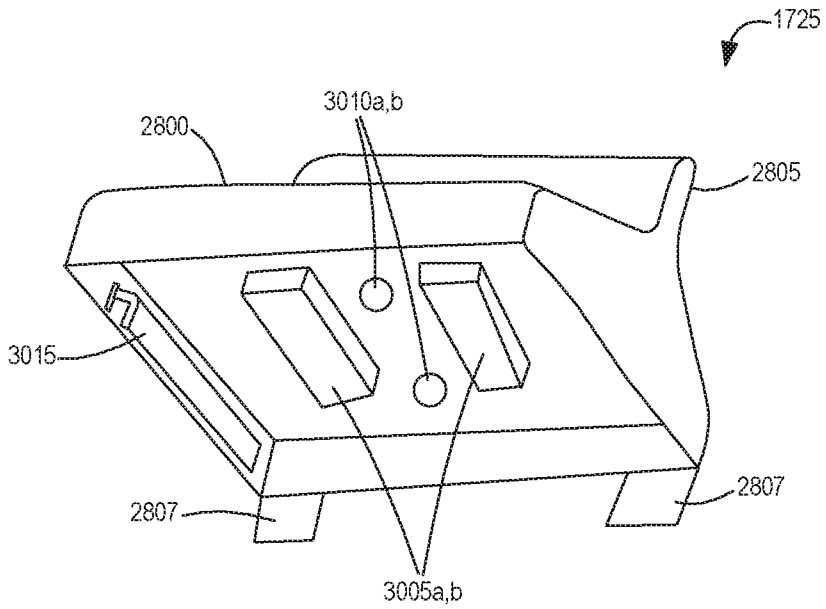


Fig. 30B

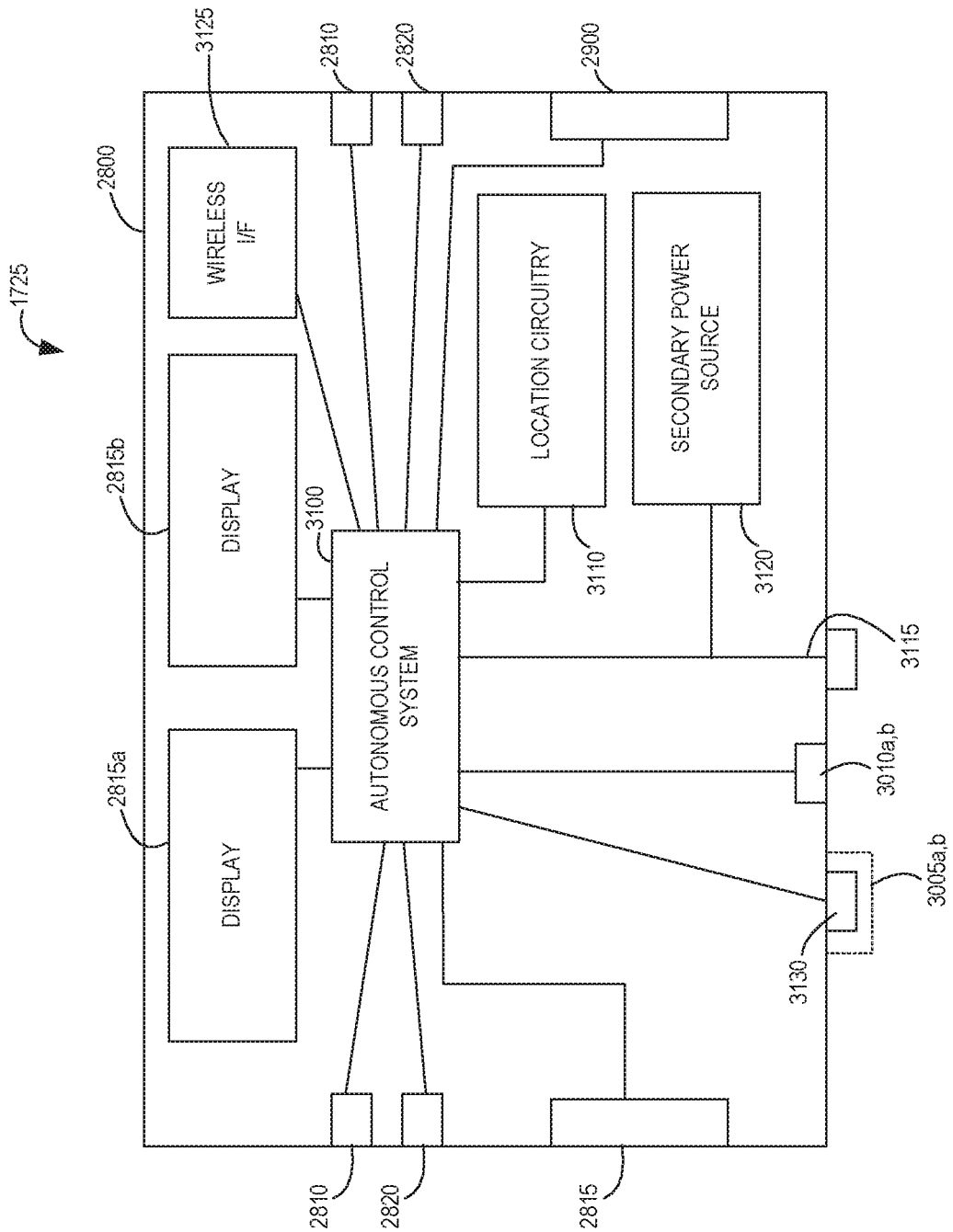

1725
2800
3125
2810
2820
2900
WIRELESS I/F
LOCATION CIRCUITRY
SECONDARY POWER SOURCE
2815b
DISPLAY
3100
AUTONOMOUS CONTROL SYSTEM
3110
3120
3115
2815a
DISPLAY
3010a,b
3005a,b
3130
2810
2820
2815

Fig. 31

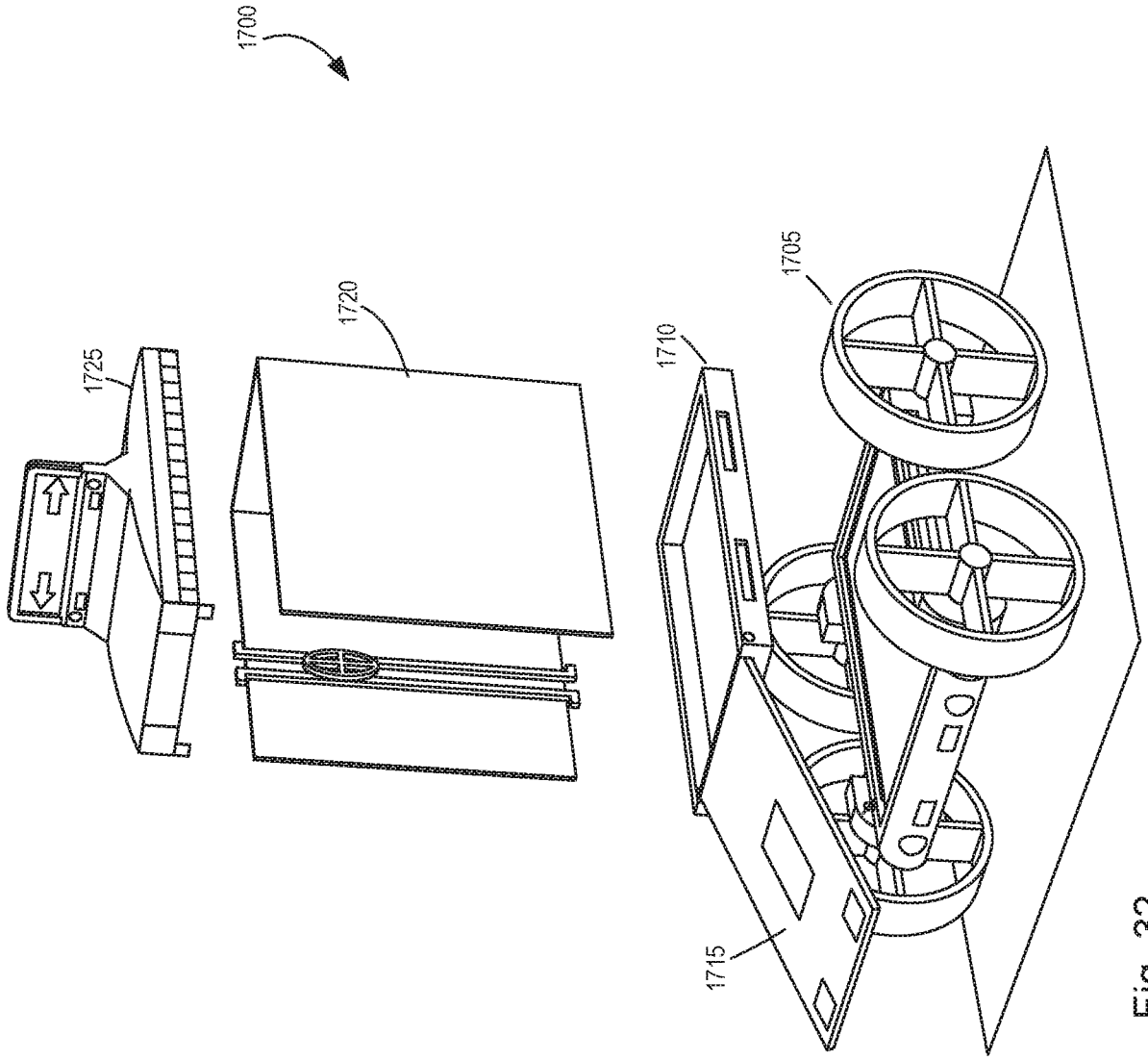


Fig. 32

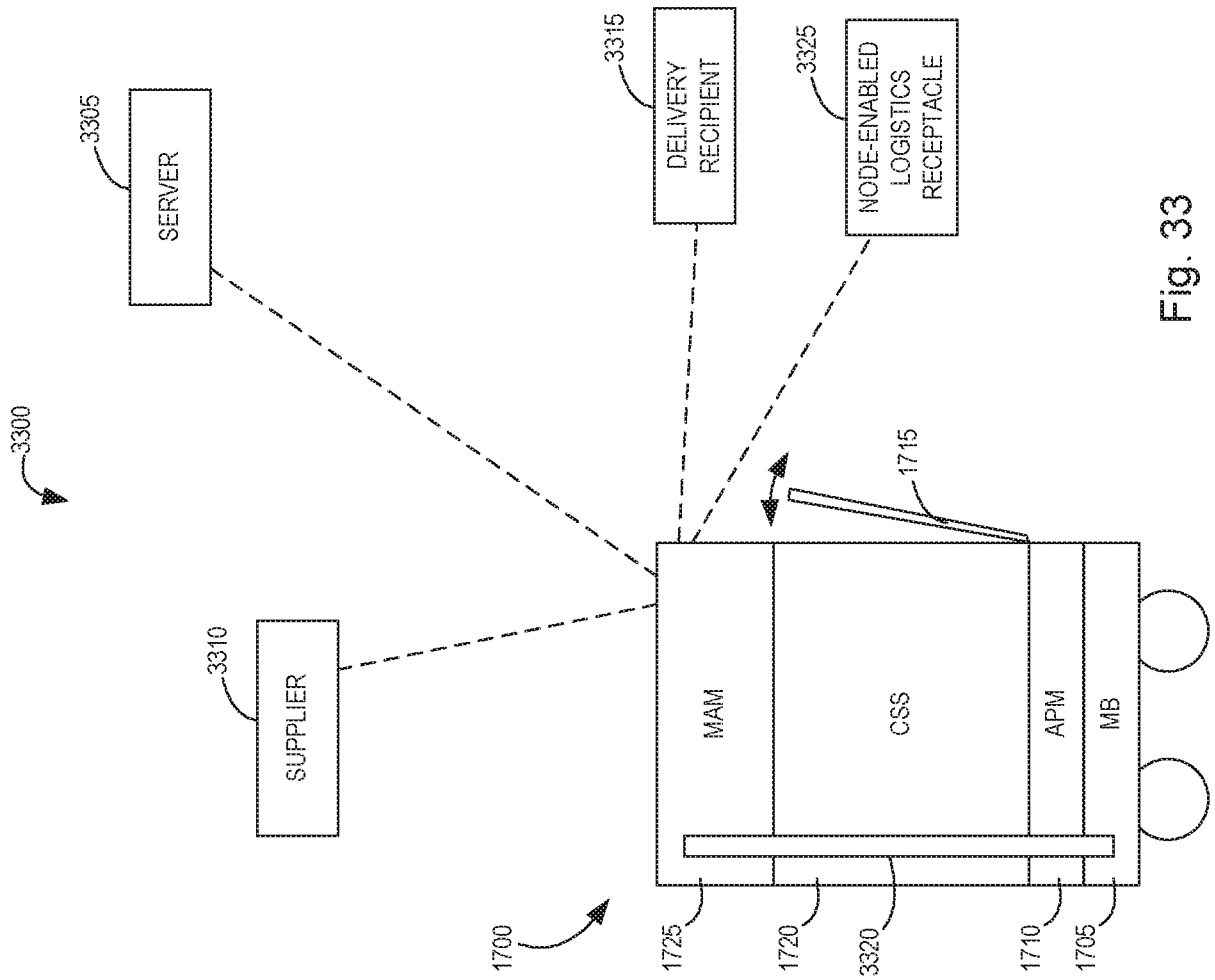

3300
3305
SERVER
3310
SUPPLIER
3315
DELIVERY RECIPIENT
3325
NODE-ENABLED LOGISTICS RECEPTACLE
1715
MAM
CSS
APM
MB
1700
1725
1720
3320
1710
1705

Fig. 33

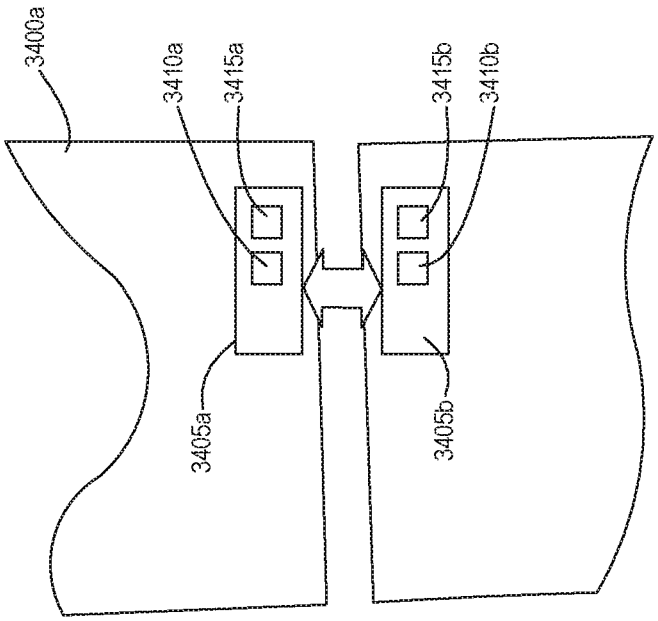


Fig. 34

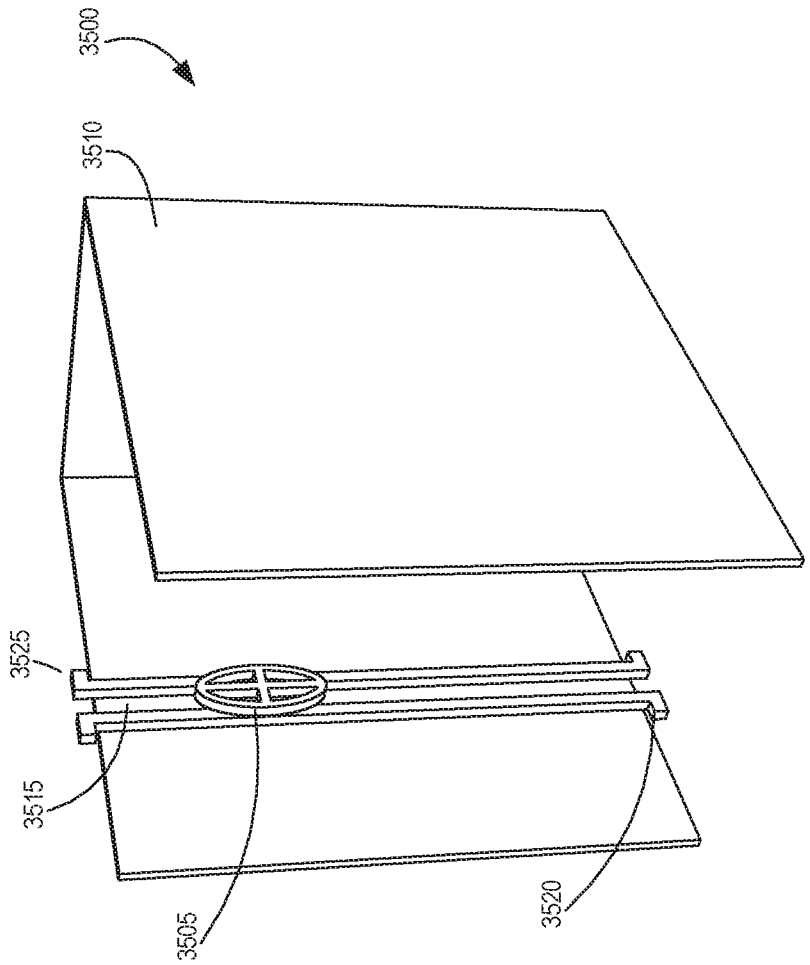


Fig. 35

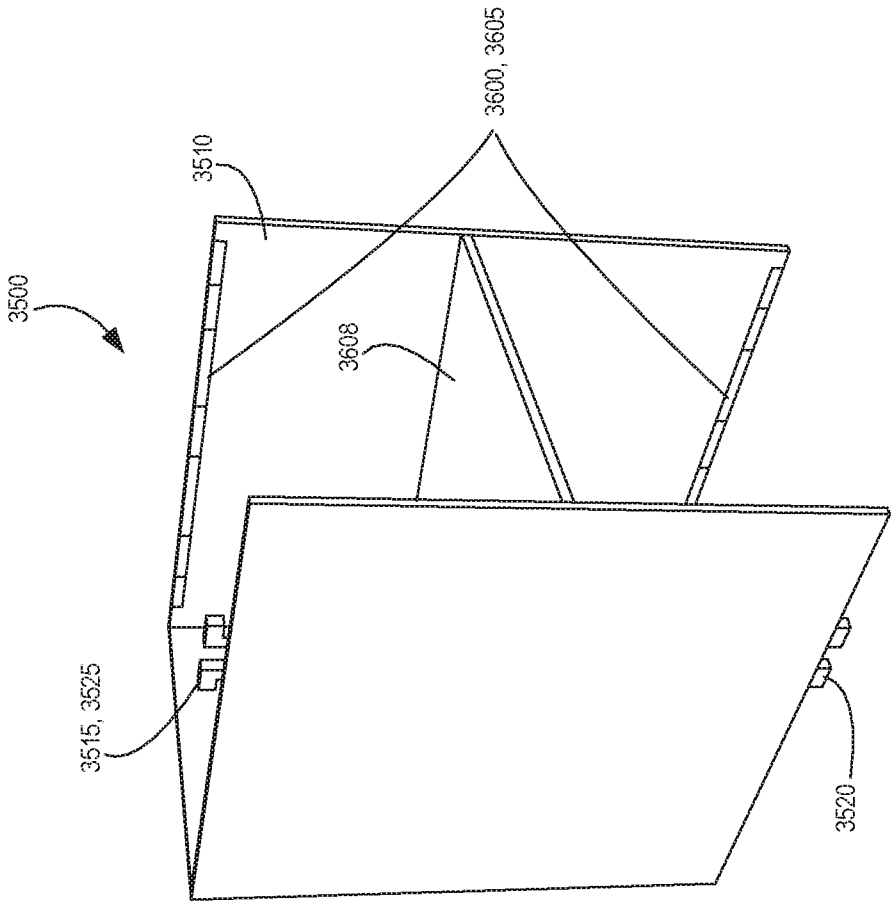


Fig. 36

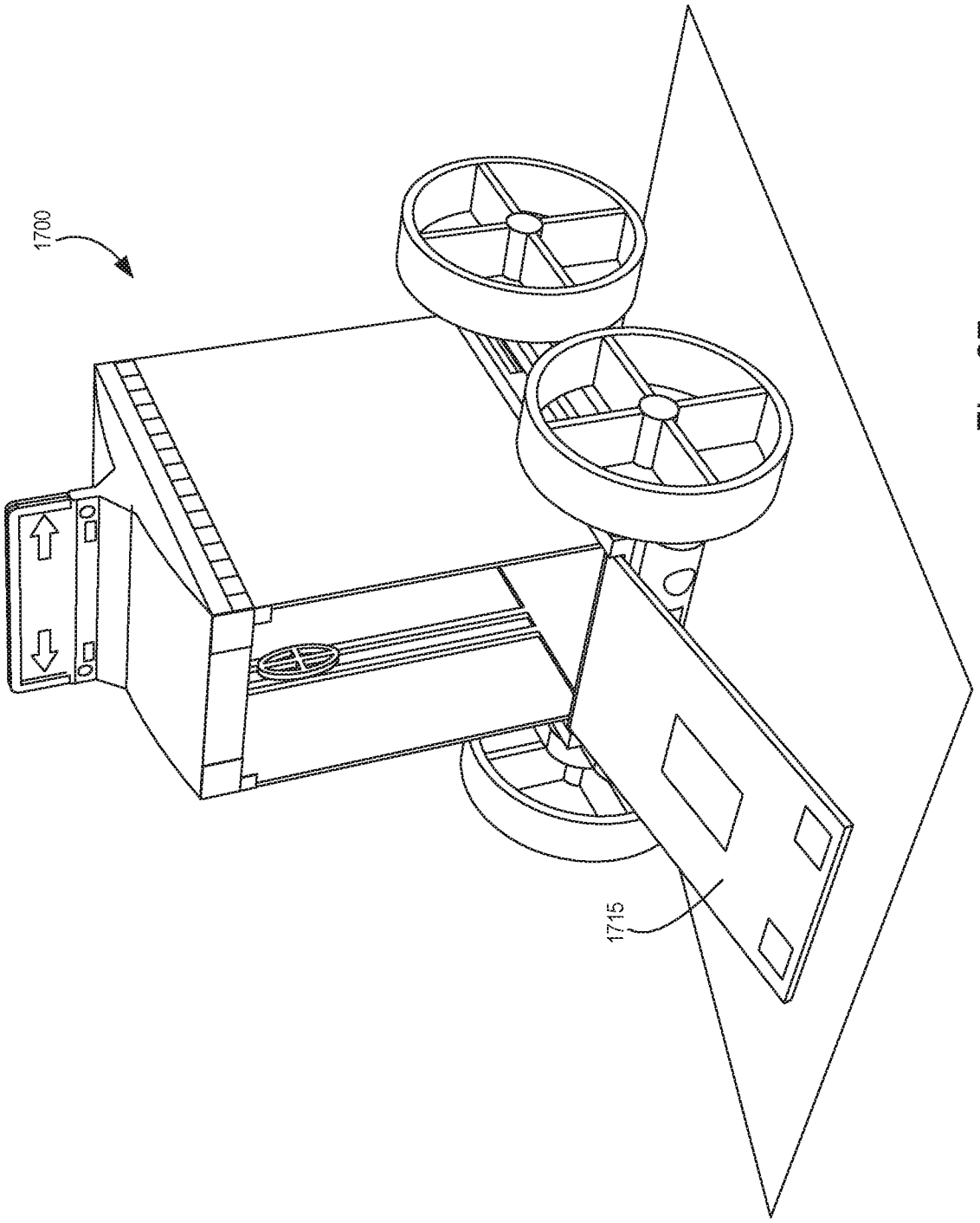


Fig. 37

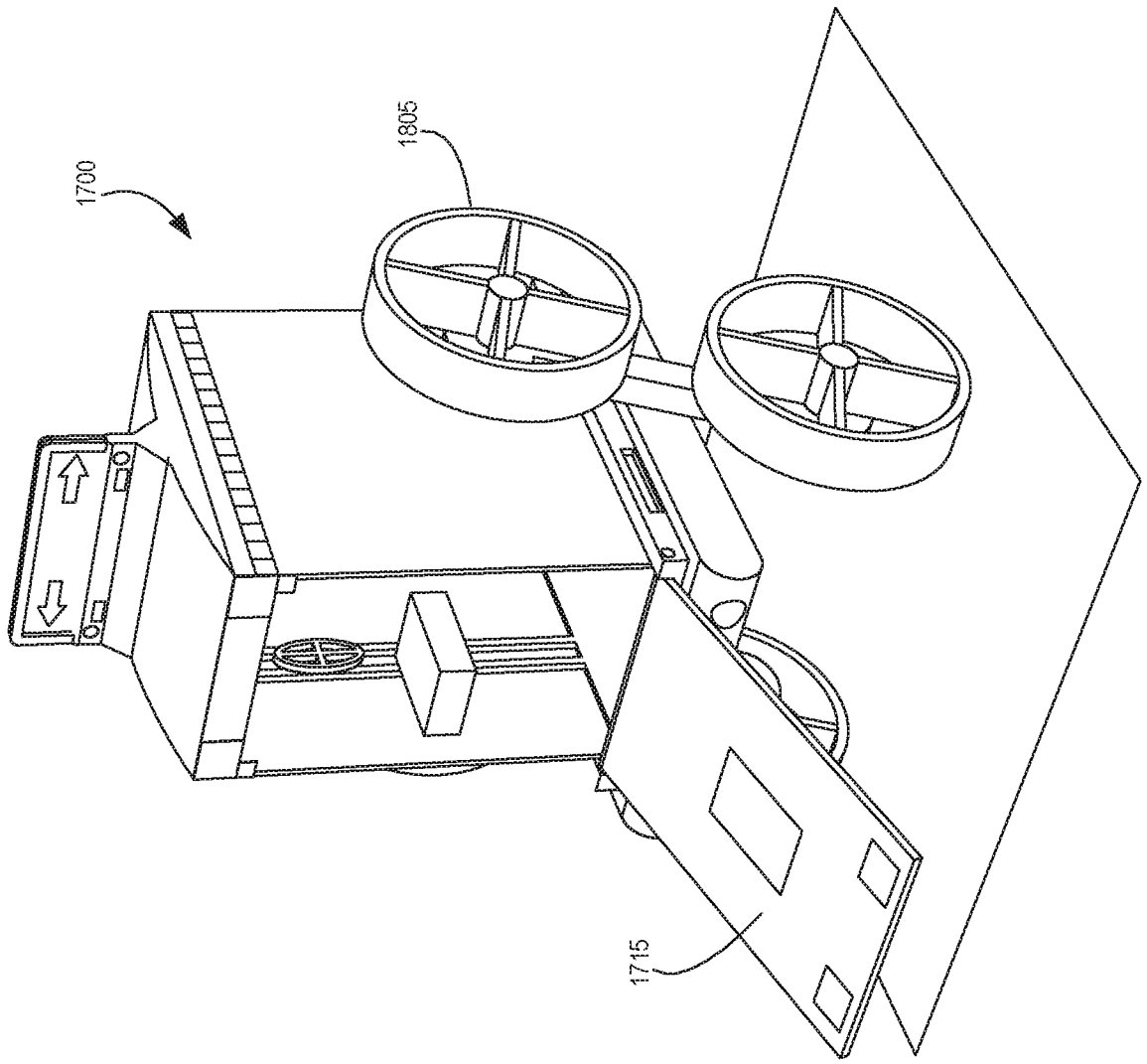


Fig. 38

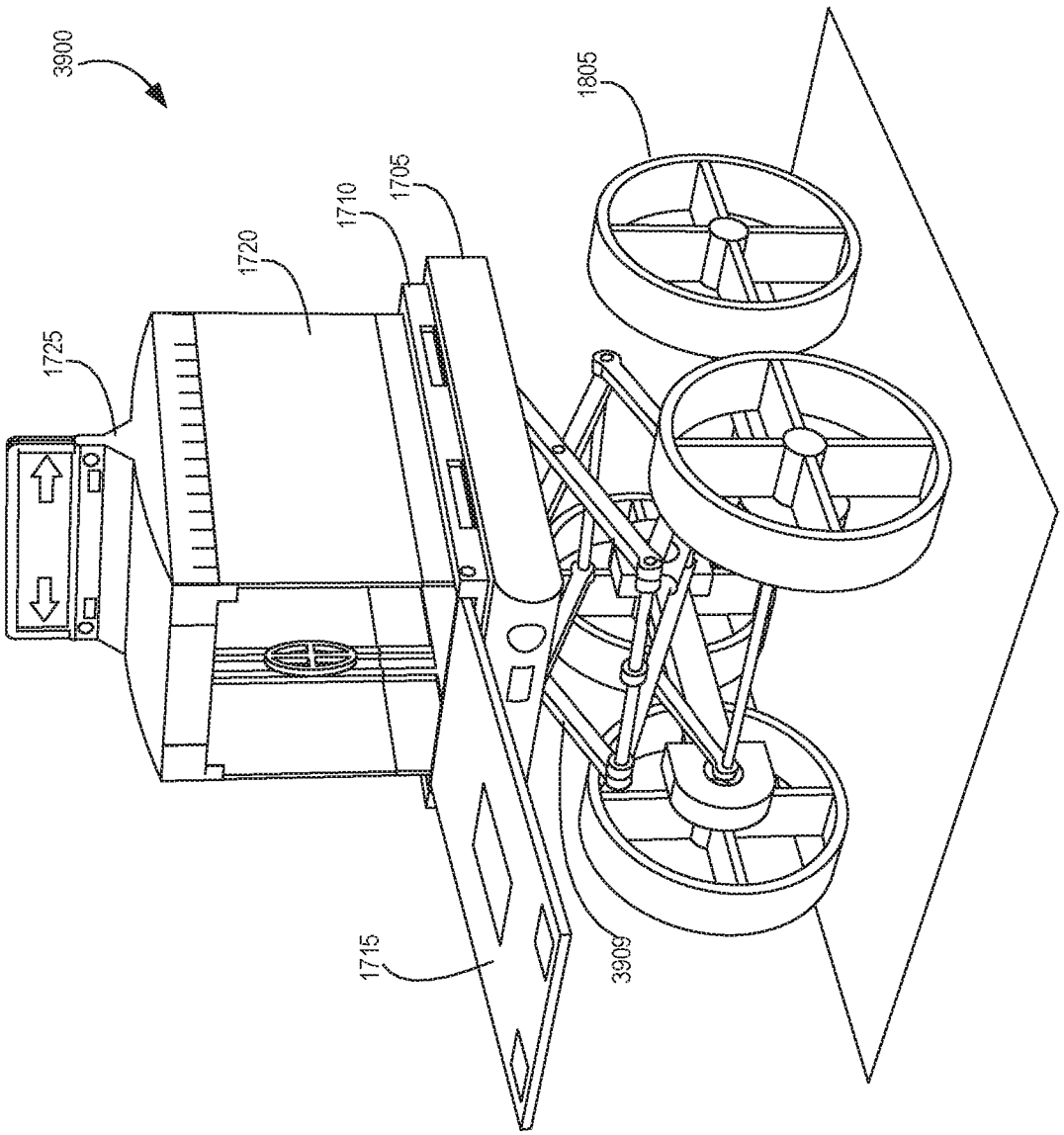


Fig. 39

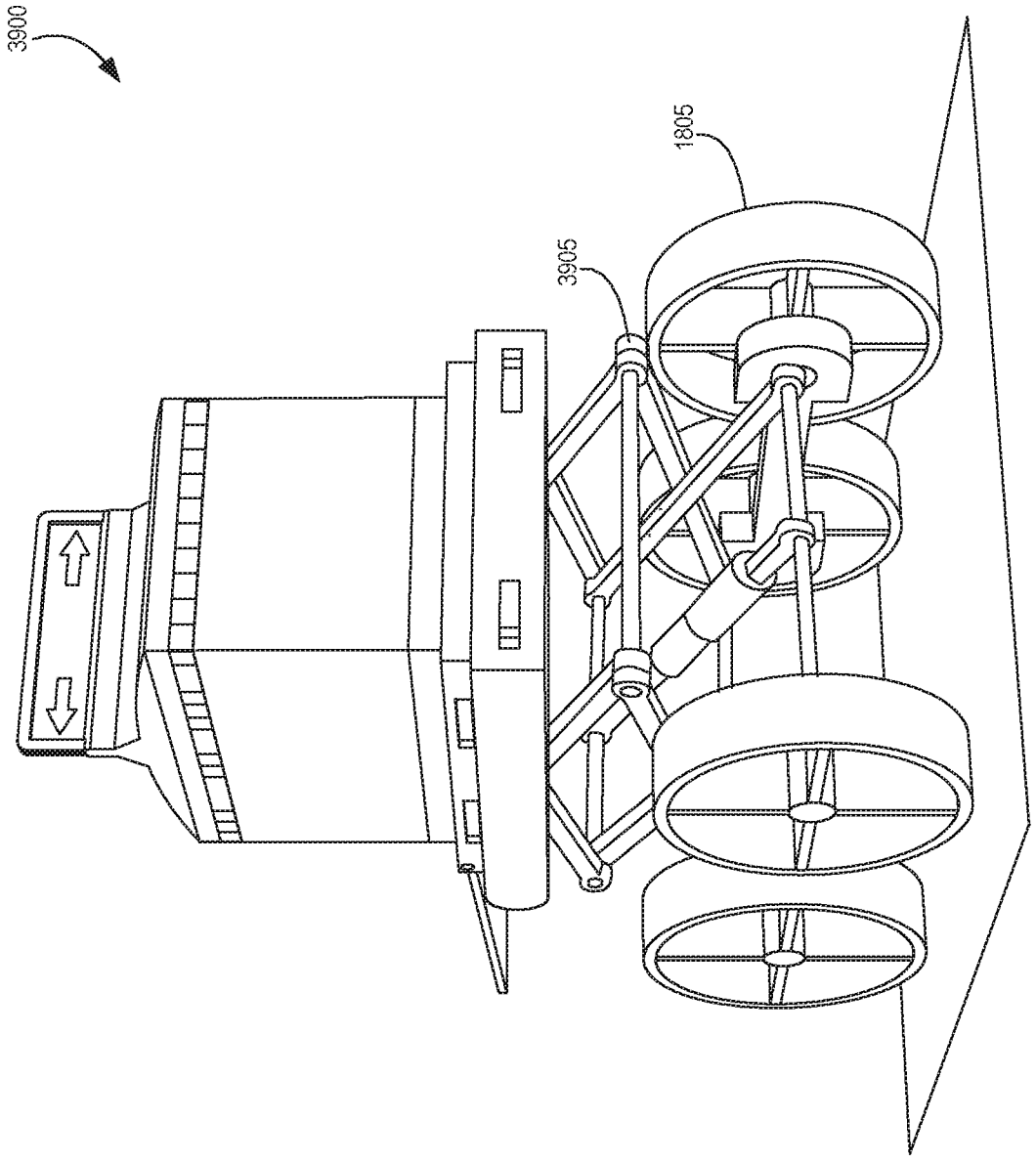


Fig. 40

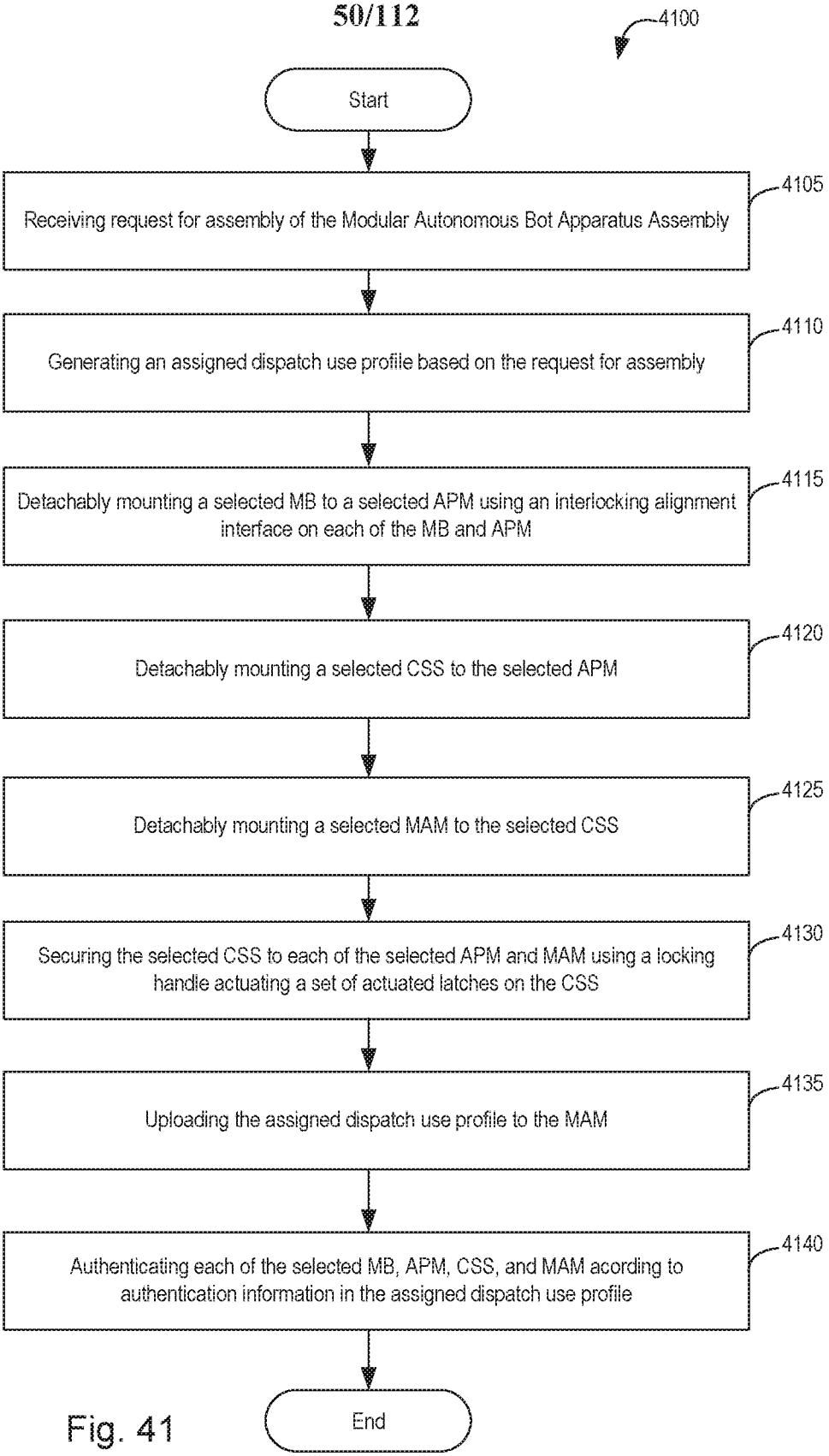

4100
Start
Receiving request for assembly of the Modular Autonomous Bot Apparatus Assembly
4105
Generating an assigned dispatch use profile based on the request for assembly
4110
Detachably mounting a selected MB to a selected APM using an interlocking alignment interface on each of the MB and APM
4115
Detachably mounting a selected CSS to the selected APM
4120
Detachably mounting a selected MAM to the selected CSS
4125
Securing the selected CSS to each of the selected APM and MAM using a locking handle actuating a set of actuated latches on the CSS
4130
Uploading the assigned dispatch use profile to the MAM
4135
Authenticating each of the selected MB, APM, CSS, and MAM acording to authentication information in the assigned dispatch use profile
4140
End

Fig. 41

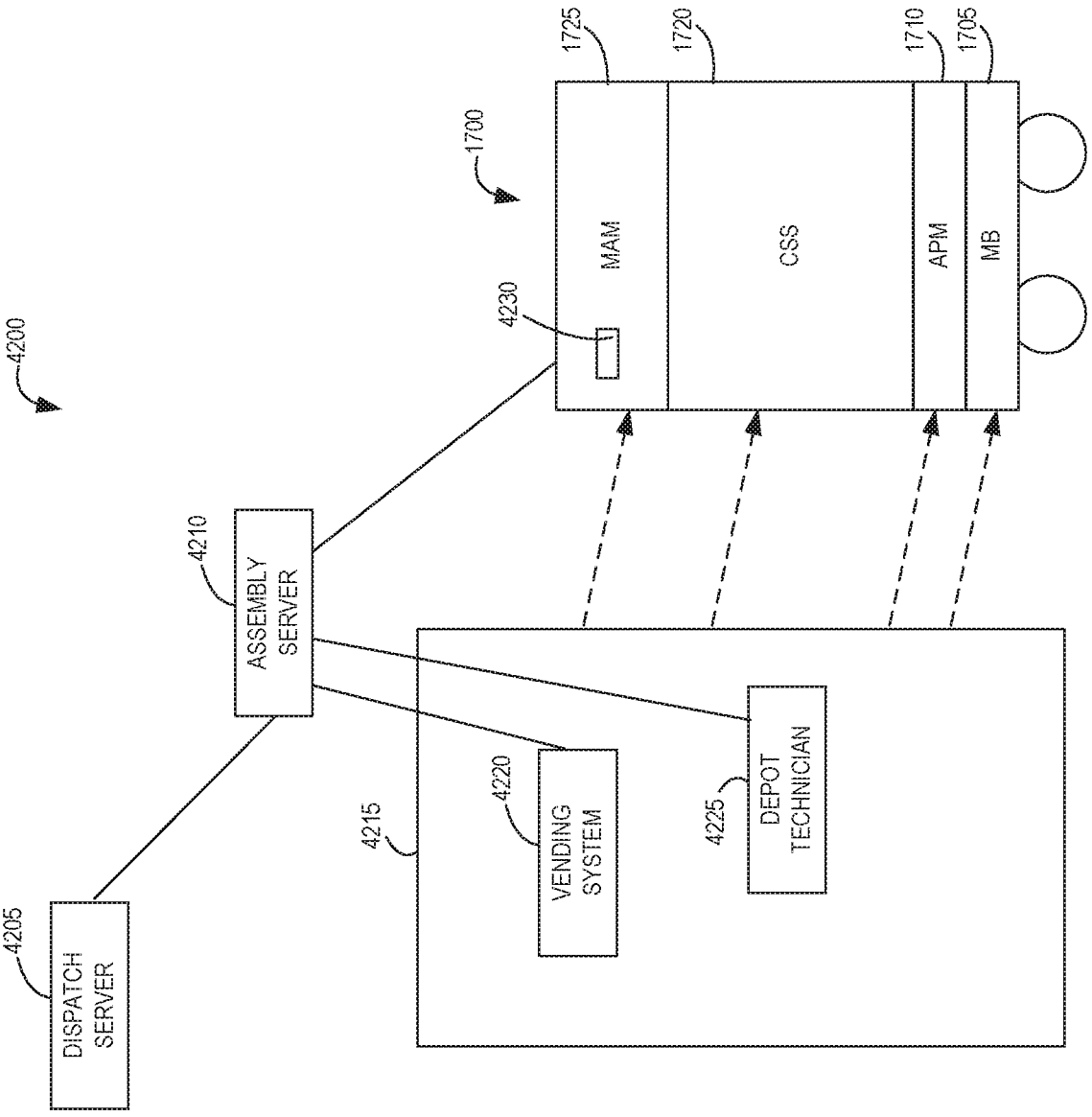

4200
4205
DISPATCH SERVER
4210
ASSEMBLY SERVER
4215
4220
VENDING SYSTEM
4225
DEPOT TECHNICIAN
1700
4230
1725
MAM
1720
CSS
1710
APM
1705
MB

Fig. 42

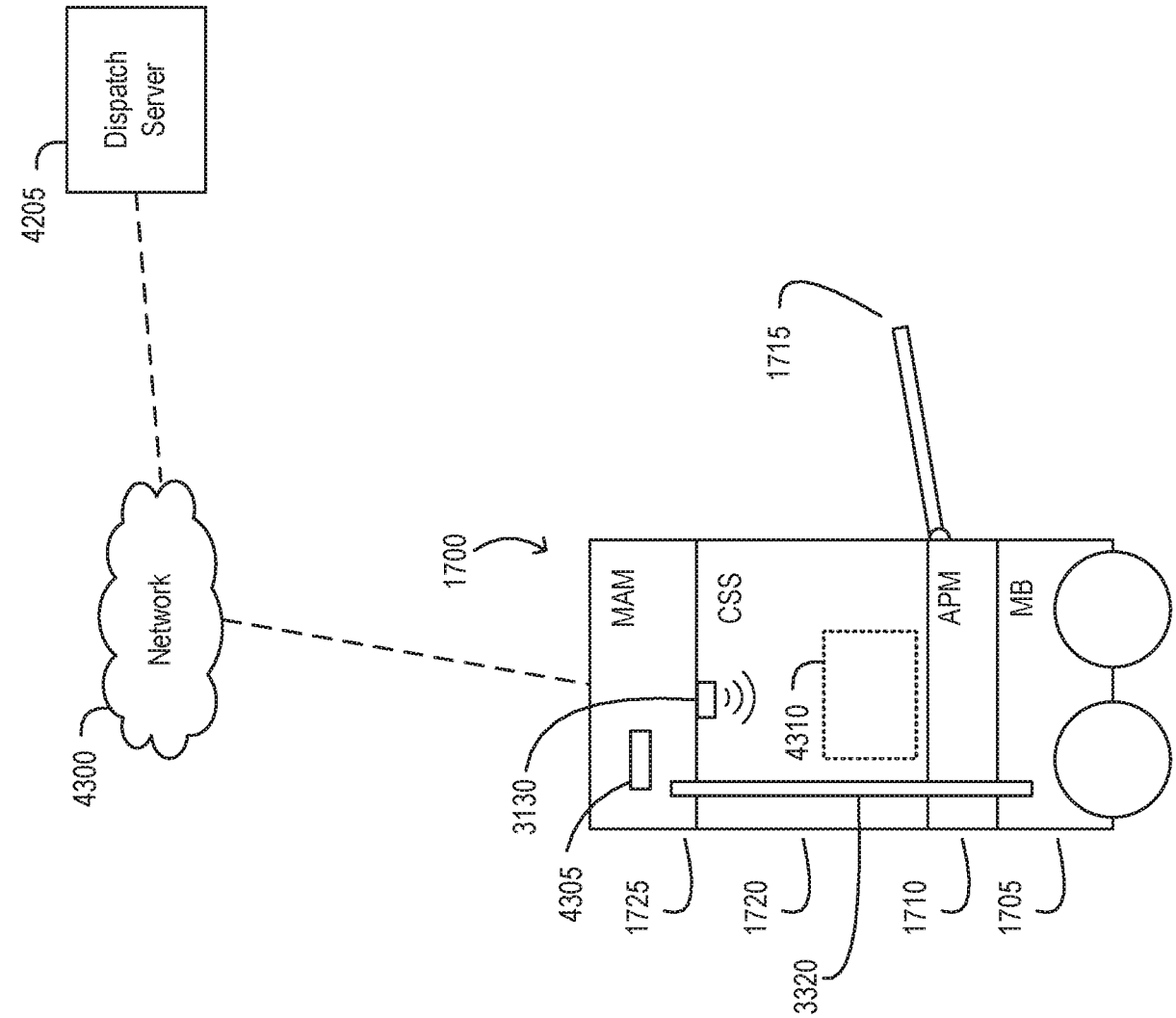

Dispatch Server
4205
Network
4300
1700
MAM
CSS
APM
MB
1715
4310
3130
4305
1725
1720
1710
1705
3320

FIG. 43A

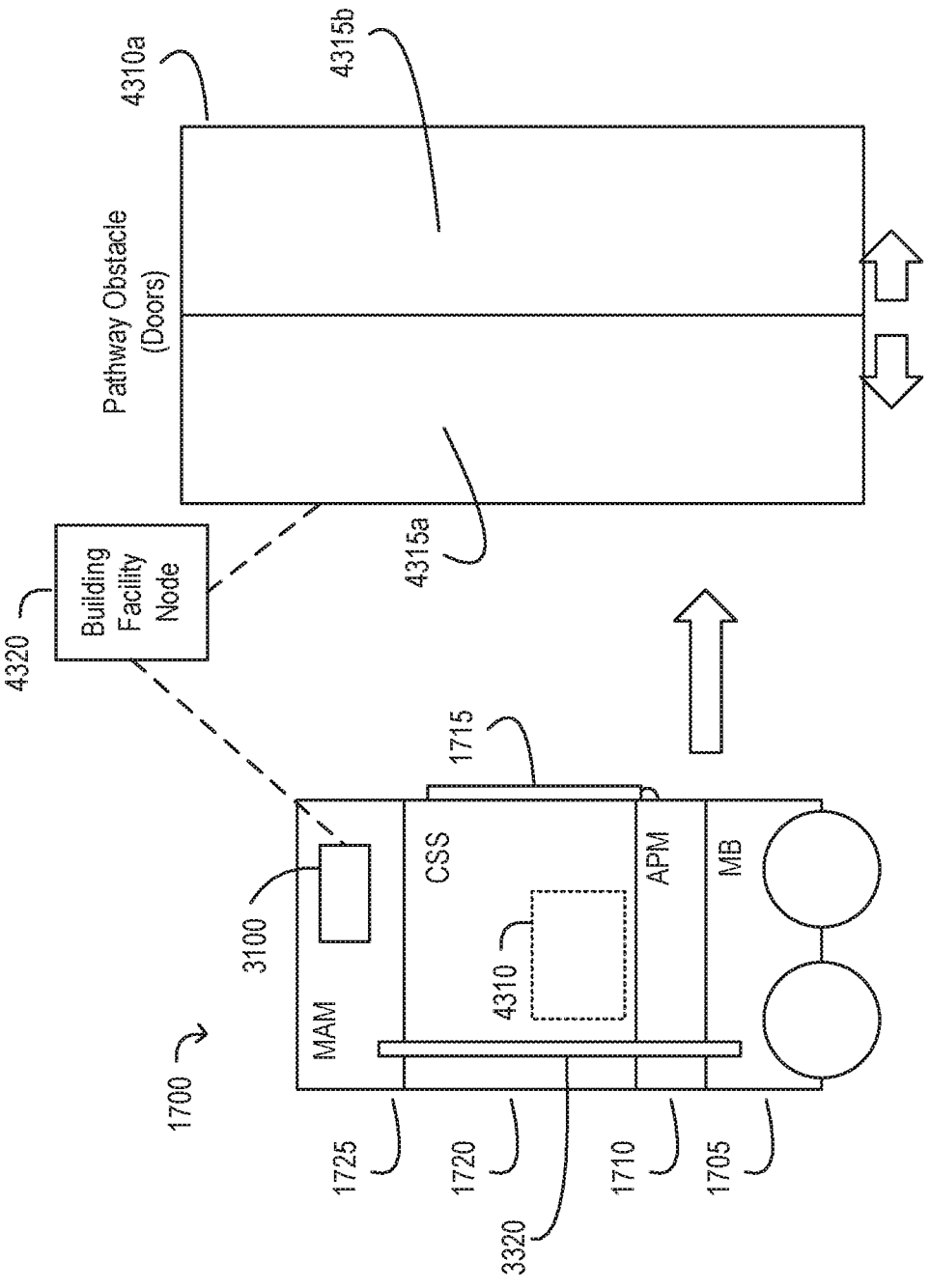

4310a
4315b
Pathway Obstacle (Doors)
4315a
Building Facility Node
4320
1715
3100
CSS
APM
MB
4310
MAM
1700
1725
1720
1710
1705
3320

FIG. 43B

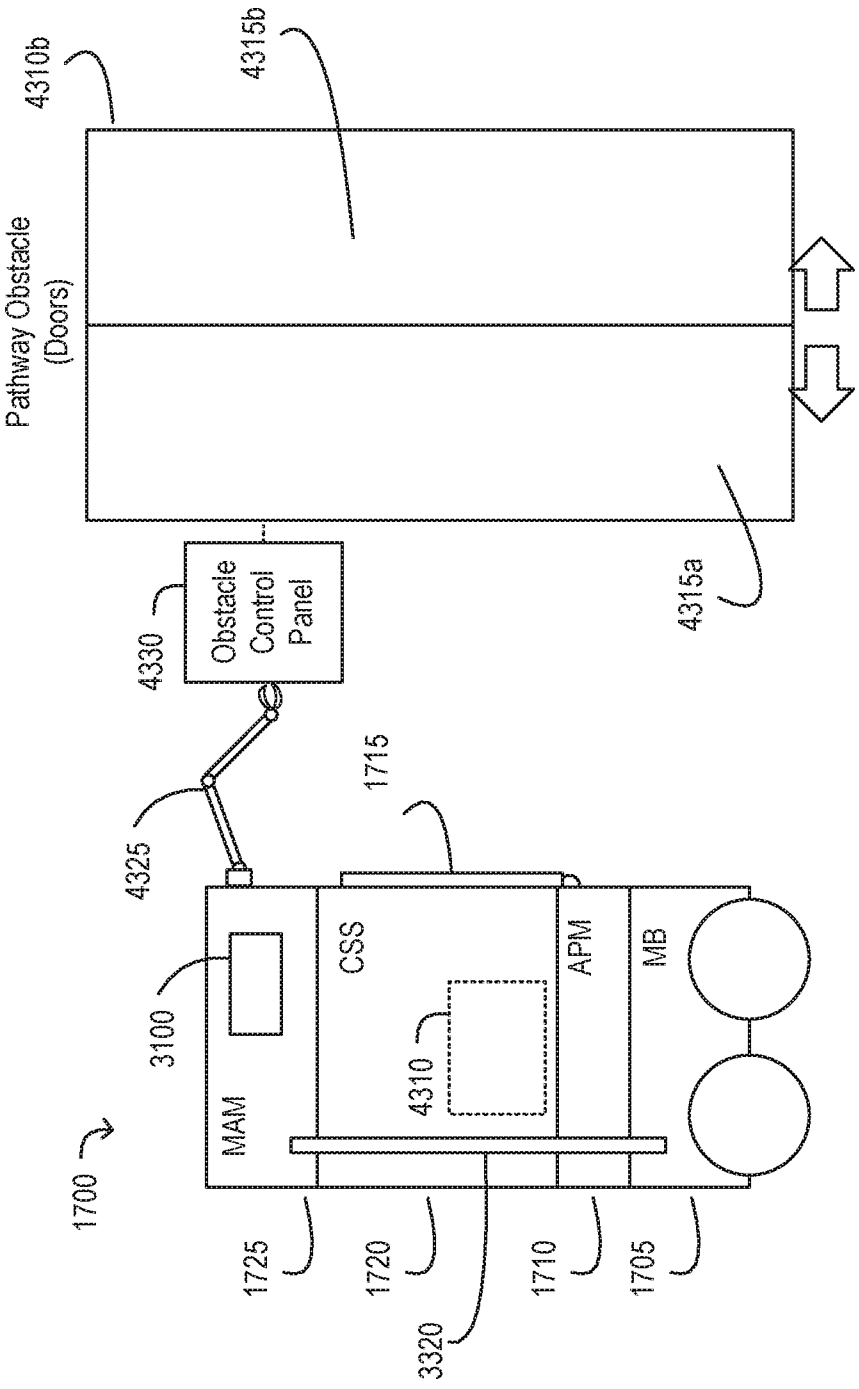

4310b
4315b
Pathway Obstacle (Doors)
4315a
4330
Obstacle Control Panel
4325
1715
3100
CSS
APM
MB
MAM
4310
1700
1725
1720
1710
1705
3320

FIG. 43C

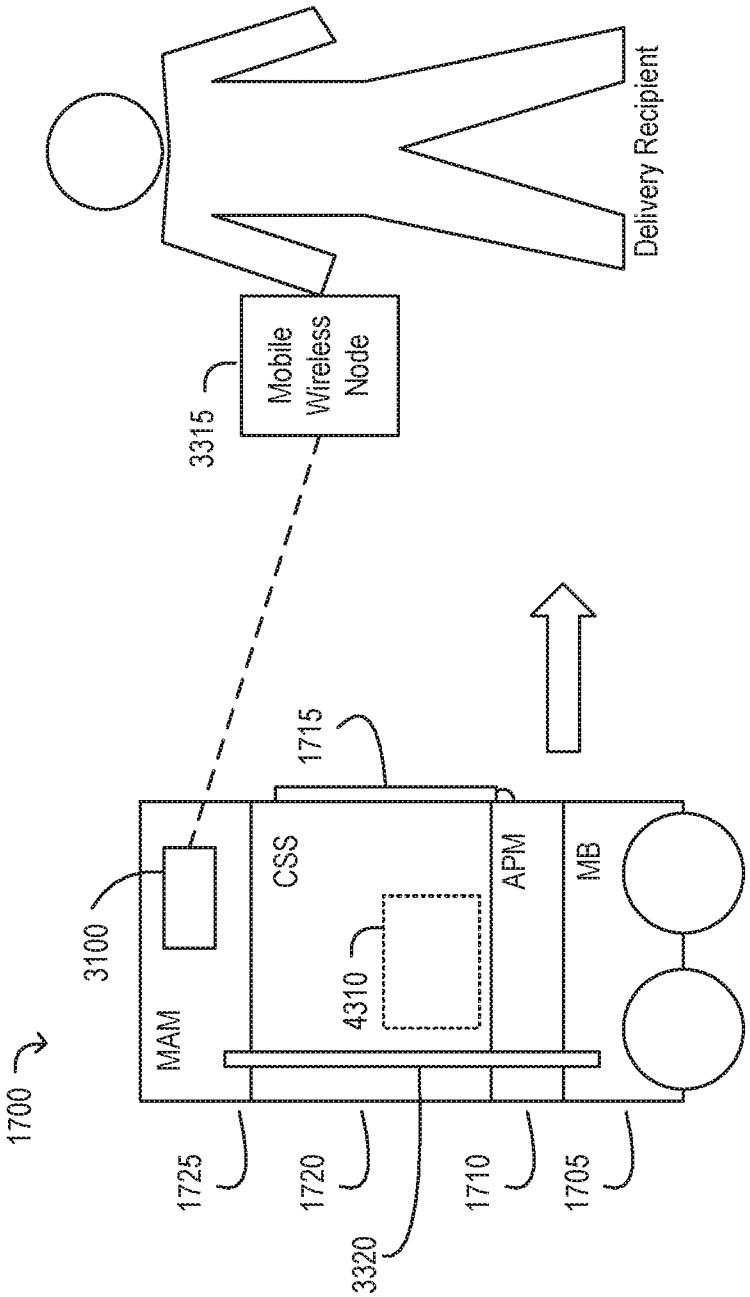

Delivery Recipient
Mobile Wireless Node
3315
1715
3100
CSS
APM
MB
4310
MAM
1700
1725
1720
3320
1710
1705

FIG. 43D

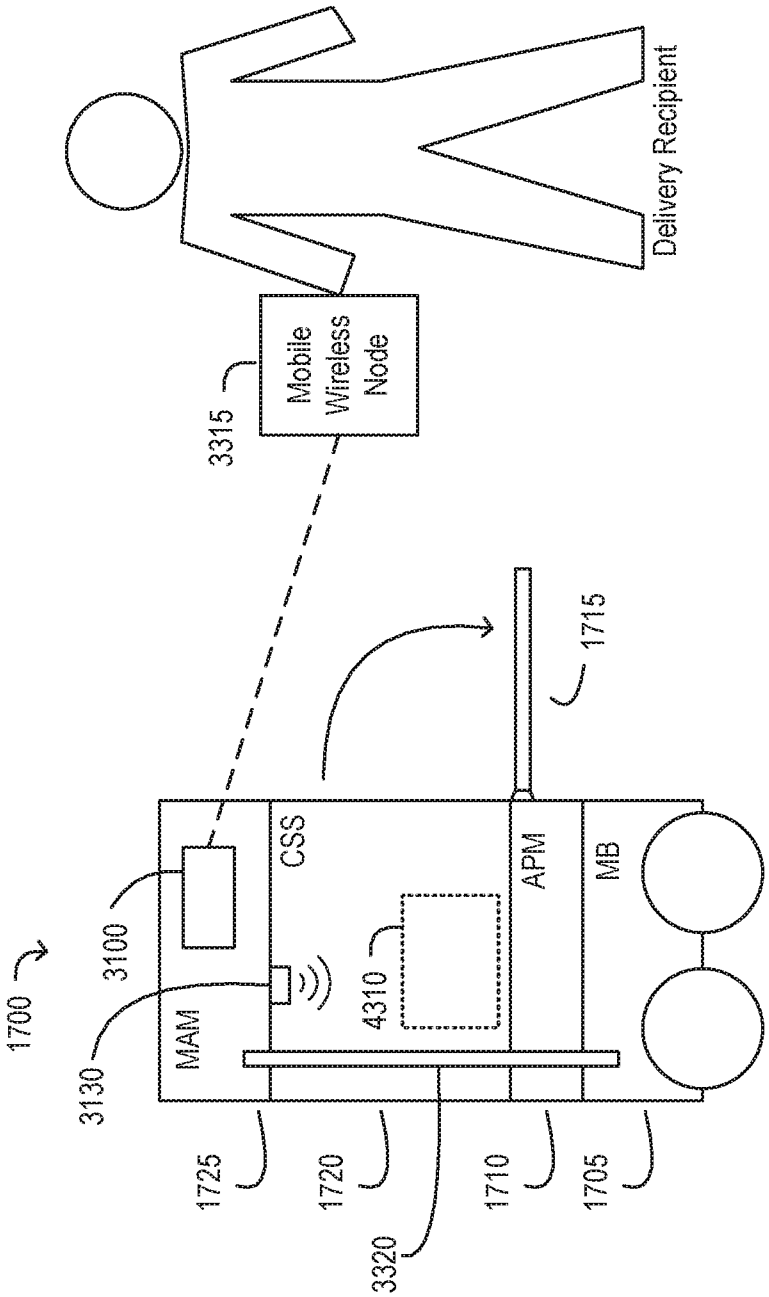

Delivery Recipient
Mobile Wireless Node
3315
1715
1700
3100
CSS
APM
MB
4310
MAM
3130
1725
1720
1710
1705
3320

FIG. 43E

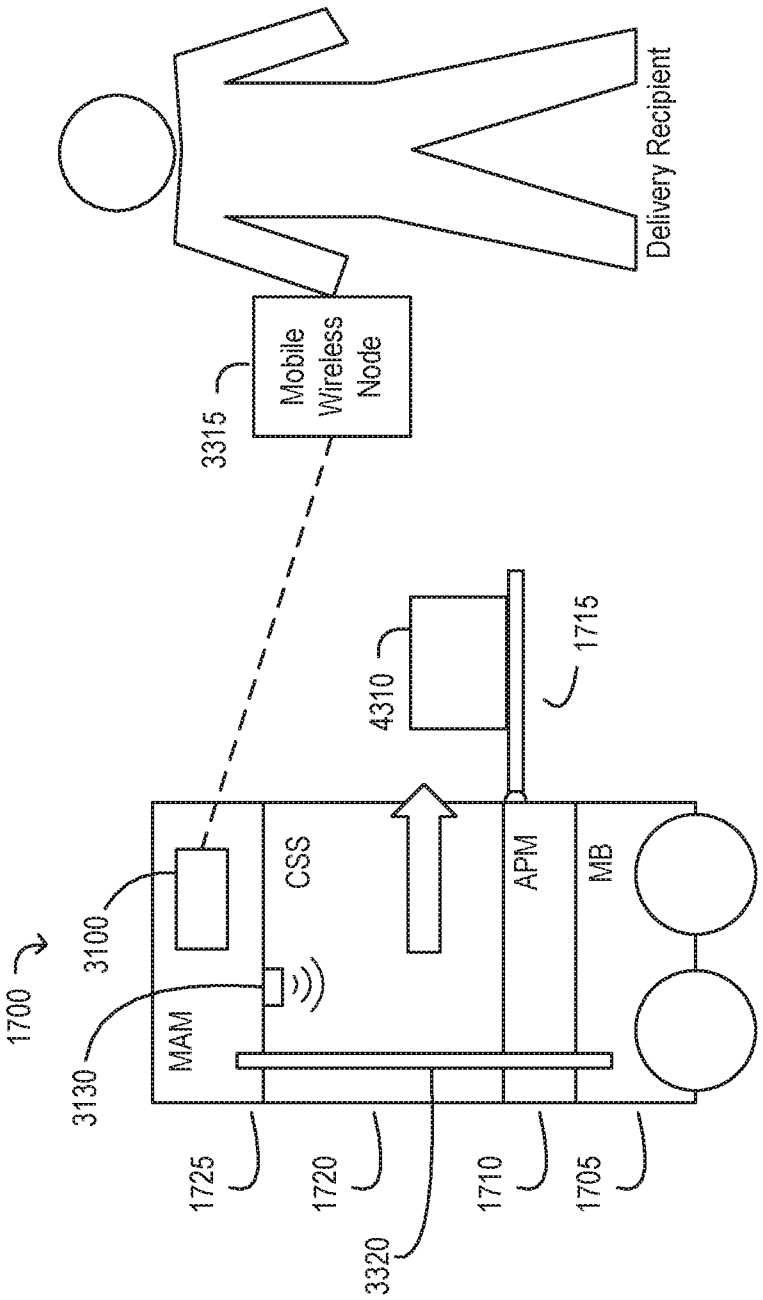

Delivery Recipient
Mobile Wireless Node
3315
4310
1715
1700
3100
3130
MAM
CSS
APM
MB
1725
1720
3320
1710
1705

FIG. 43F

FIG. 44

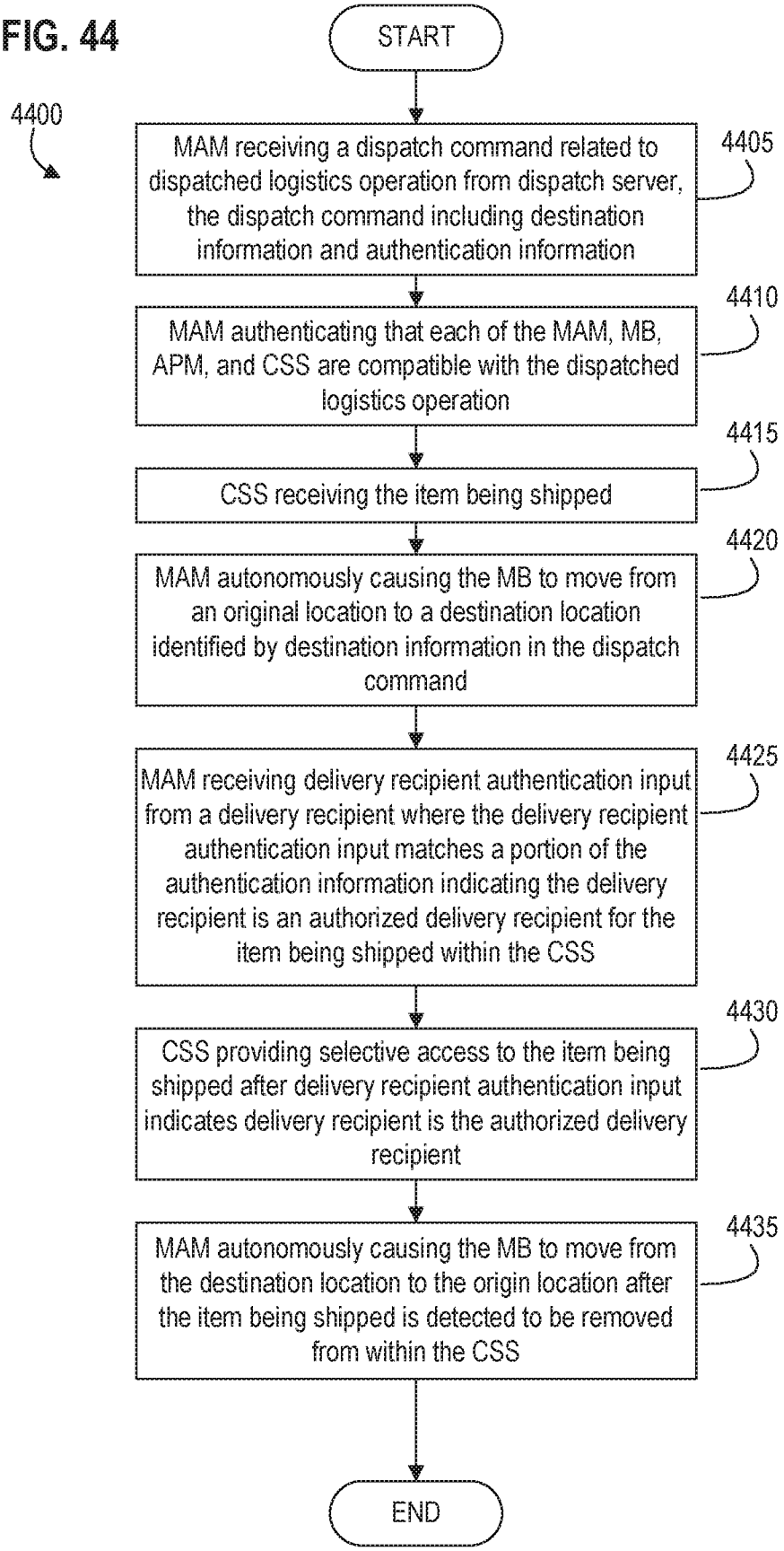

START
4400
MAM receiving a dispatch command related to dispatched logistics operation from dispatch server, the dispatch command including destination information and authentication information
4405
MAM authenticating that each of the MAM, MB, APM, and CSS are compatible with the dispatched logistics operation
4410
CSS receiving the item being shipped
4415
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from an original location to a destination location identified by destination information in the dispatch command
4420
MAM receiving delivery recipient authentication input from a delivery recipient where the delivery recipient authentication input matches a portion of the authentication information indicating the delivery recipient is an authorized delivery recipient for the item being shipped within the CSS
4425
CSS providing selective access to the item being shipped after delivery recipient authentication input indicates delivery recipient is the authorized delivery recipient
4430
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the destination location to the origin location after the item being shipped is detected to be removed from within the CSS
4435
END

FIG. 45

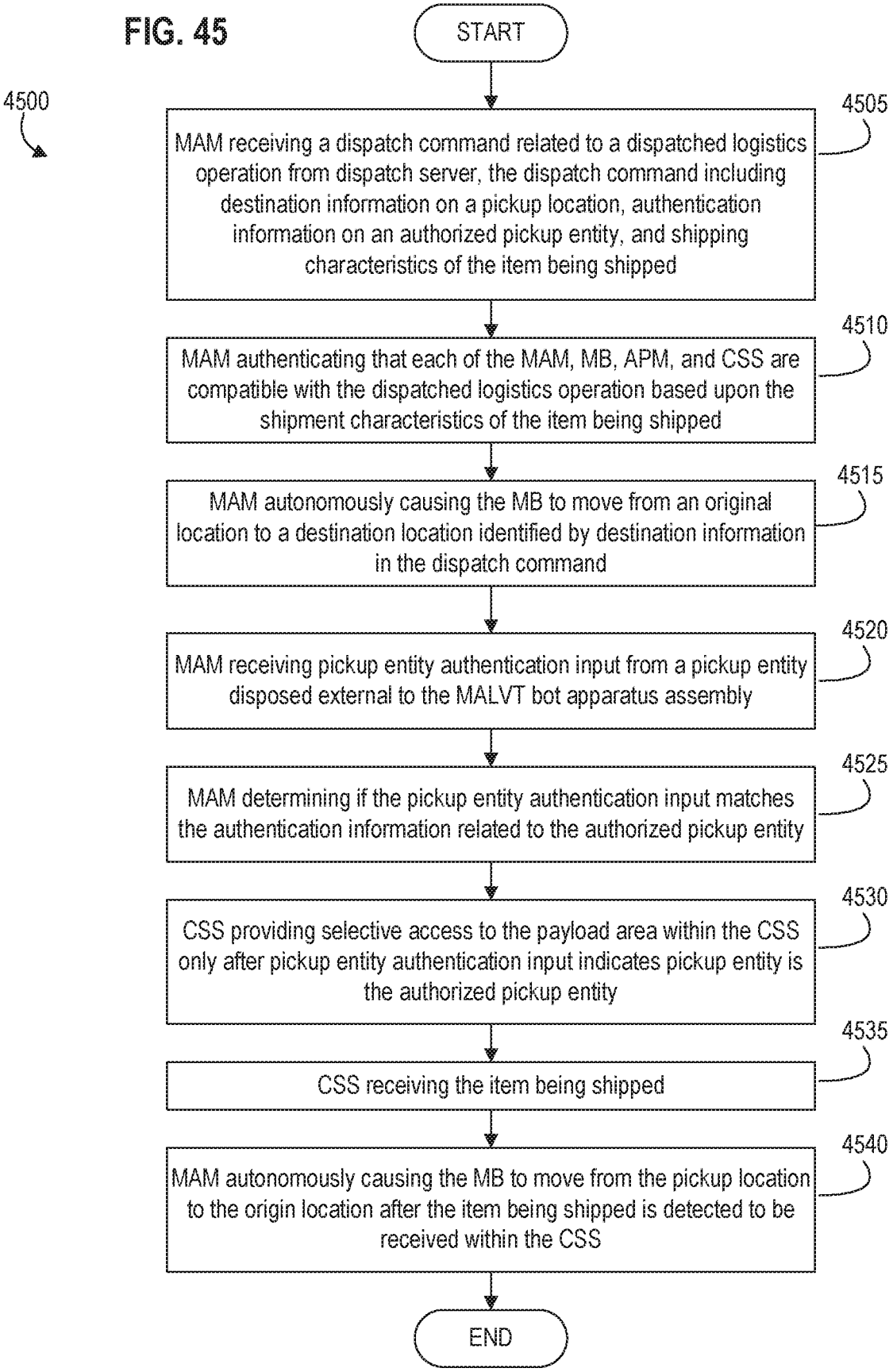
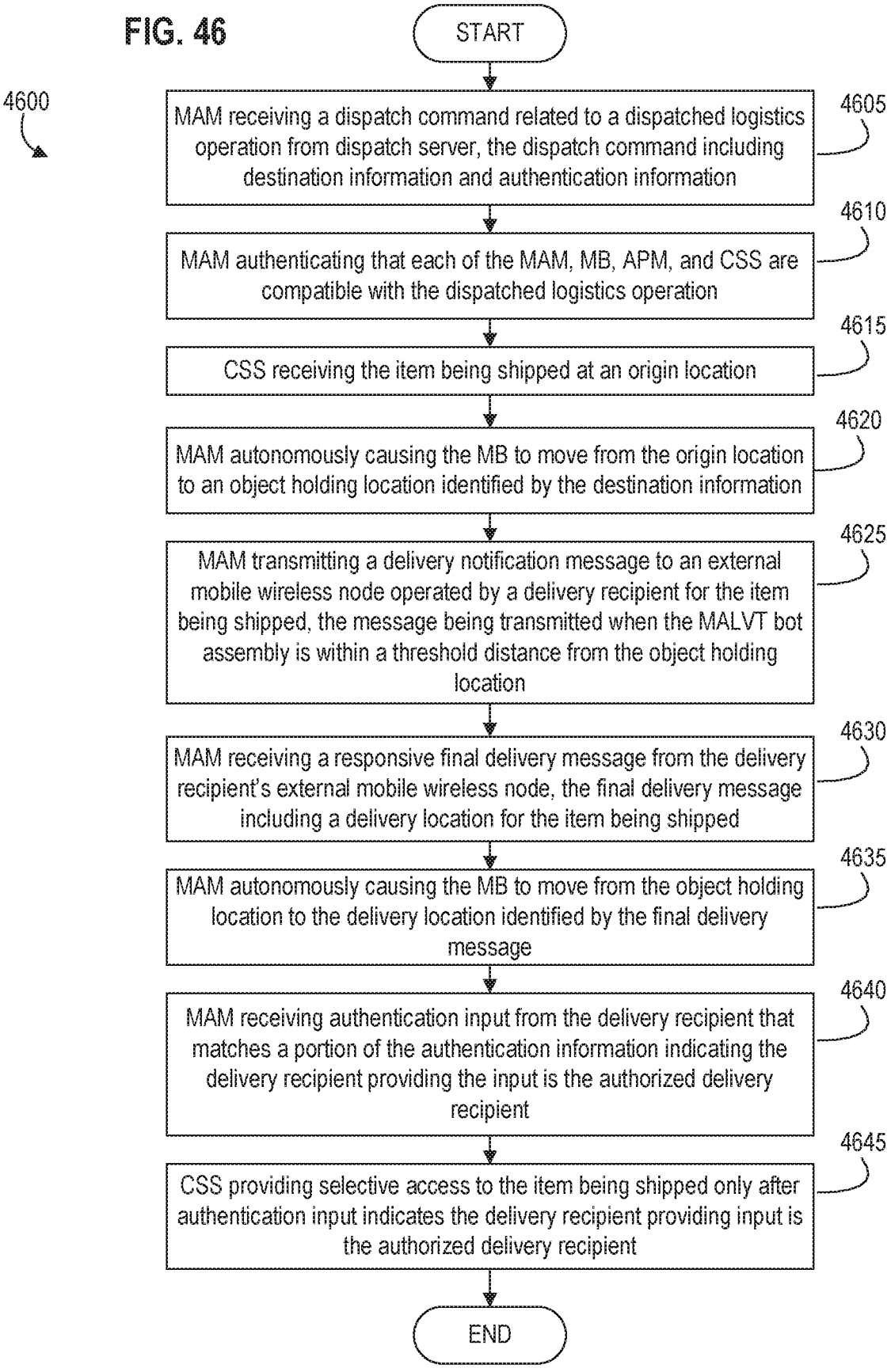

START
4500
4505
MAM receiving a dispatch command related to a dispatched logistics operation from dispatch server, the dispatch command including destination information on a pickup location, authentication information on an authorized pickup entity, and shipping characteristics of the item being shipped
4510
MAM authenticating that each of the MAM, MB, APM, and CSS are compatible with the dispatched logistics operation based upon the shipment characteristics of the item being shipped
4515
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from an original location to a destination location identified by destination information in the dispatch command
4520
MAM receiving pickup entity authentication input from a pickup entity disposed external to the MALVT bot apparatus assembly
4525
MAM determining if the pickup entity authentication input matches the authentication information related to the authorized pickup entity
4530
CSS providing selective access to the payload area within the CSS only after pickup entity authentication input indicates pickup entity is the authorized pickup entity
4535
CSS receiving the item being shipped
4540
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the pickup location to the origin location after the item being shipped is detected to be received within the CSS
END

FIG. 46


START
4600
MAM receiving a dispatch command related to a dispatched logistics operation from dispatch server, the dispatch command including destination information and authentication information
4605
MAM authenticating that each of the MAM, MB, APM, and CSS are compatible with the dispatched logistics operation
4610
CSS receiving the item being shipped at an origin location
4615
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the origin location to an object holding location identified by the destination information
4620
MAM transmitting a delivery notification message to an external mobile wireless node operated by a delivery recipient for the item being shipped, the message being transmitted when the MALVT bot assembly is within a threshold distance from the object holding location
4625
MAM receiving a responsive final delivery message from the delivery recipient's external mobile wireless node, the final delivery message including a delivery location for the item being shipped
4630
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the object holding location to the delivery location identified by the final delivery message
4635
MAM receiving authentication input from the delivery recipient that matches a portion of the authentication information indicating the delivery recipient providing the input is the authorized delivery recipient
4640
CSS providing selective access to the item being shipped only after authentication input indicates the delivery recipient providing input is the authorized delivery recipient
4645
END

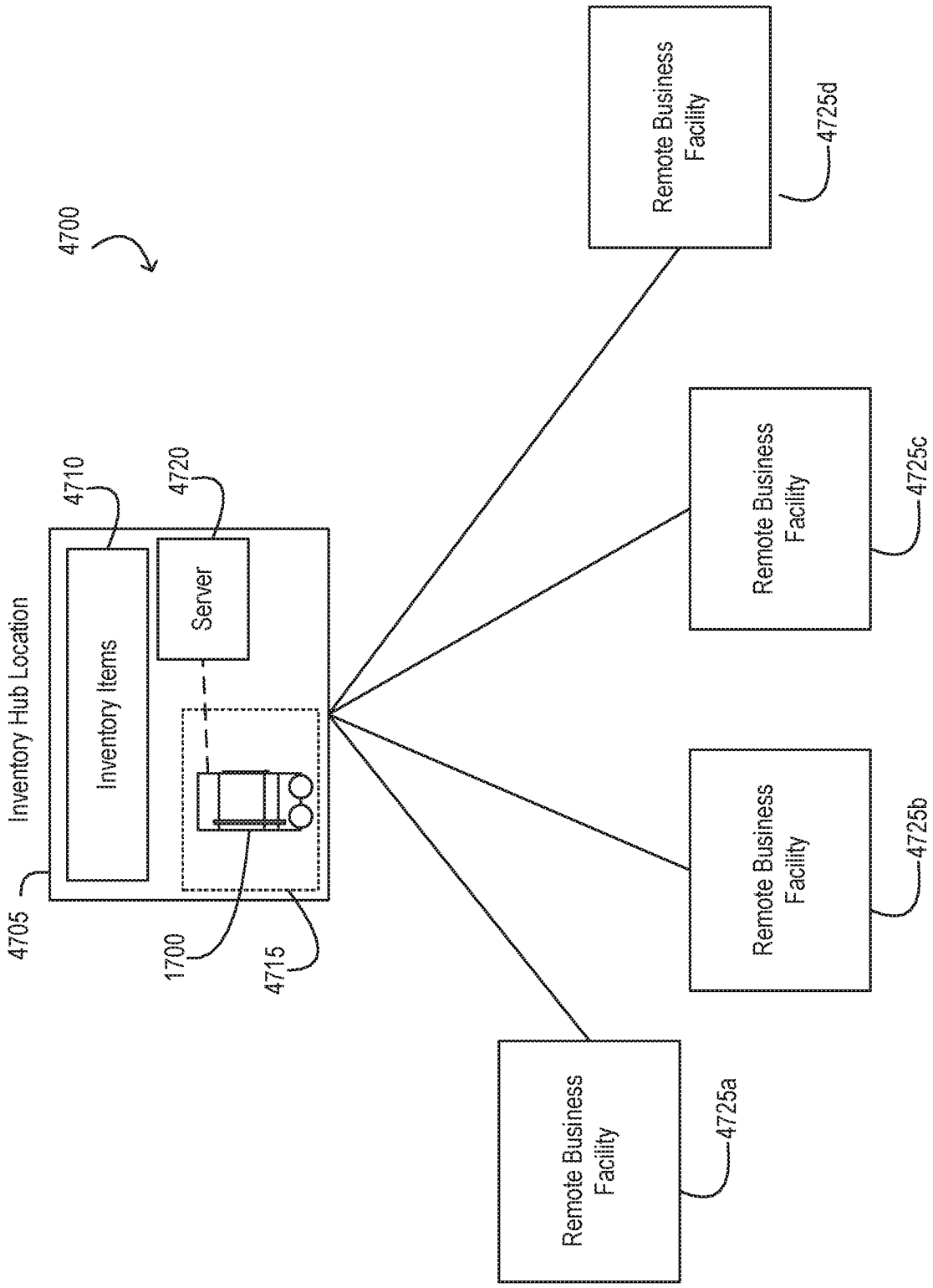

4700
Inventory Hub Location
4705
4710
Inventory Items
4720
Server
1700
4715
Remote Business Facility
4725a
Remote Business Facility
4725b
Remote Business Facility
4725c
Remote Business Facility
4725d

FIG. 47A

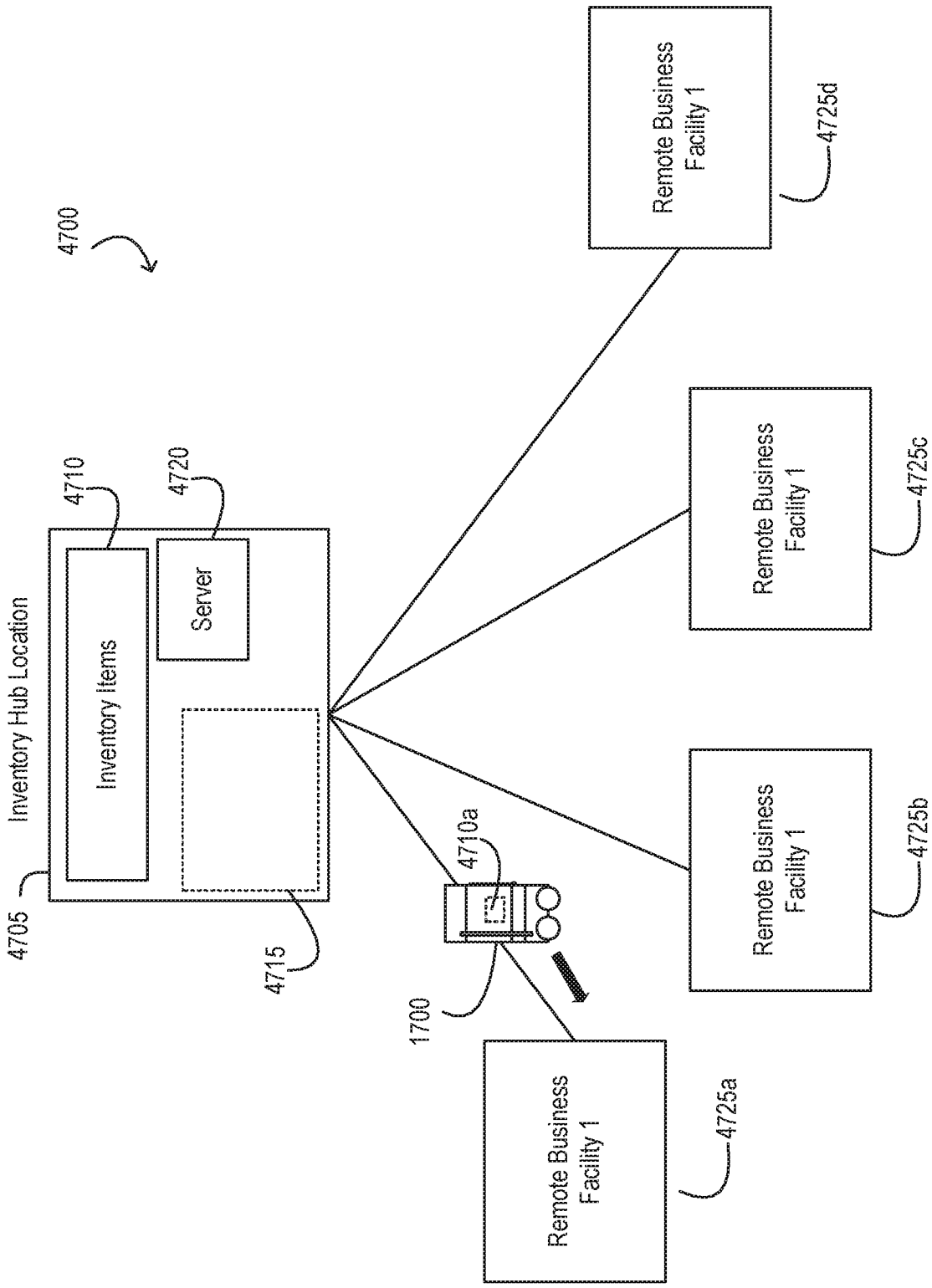

4700
Inventory Hub Location
4710
Inventory Items
4720
Server
4705
4715
4710a
1700
Remote Business Facility 1
4725a
Remote Business Facility 1
4725b
Remote Business Facility 1
4725c
Remote Business Facility 1
4725d

FIG. 47B

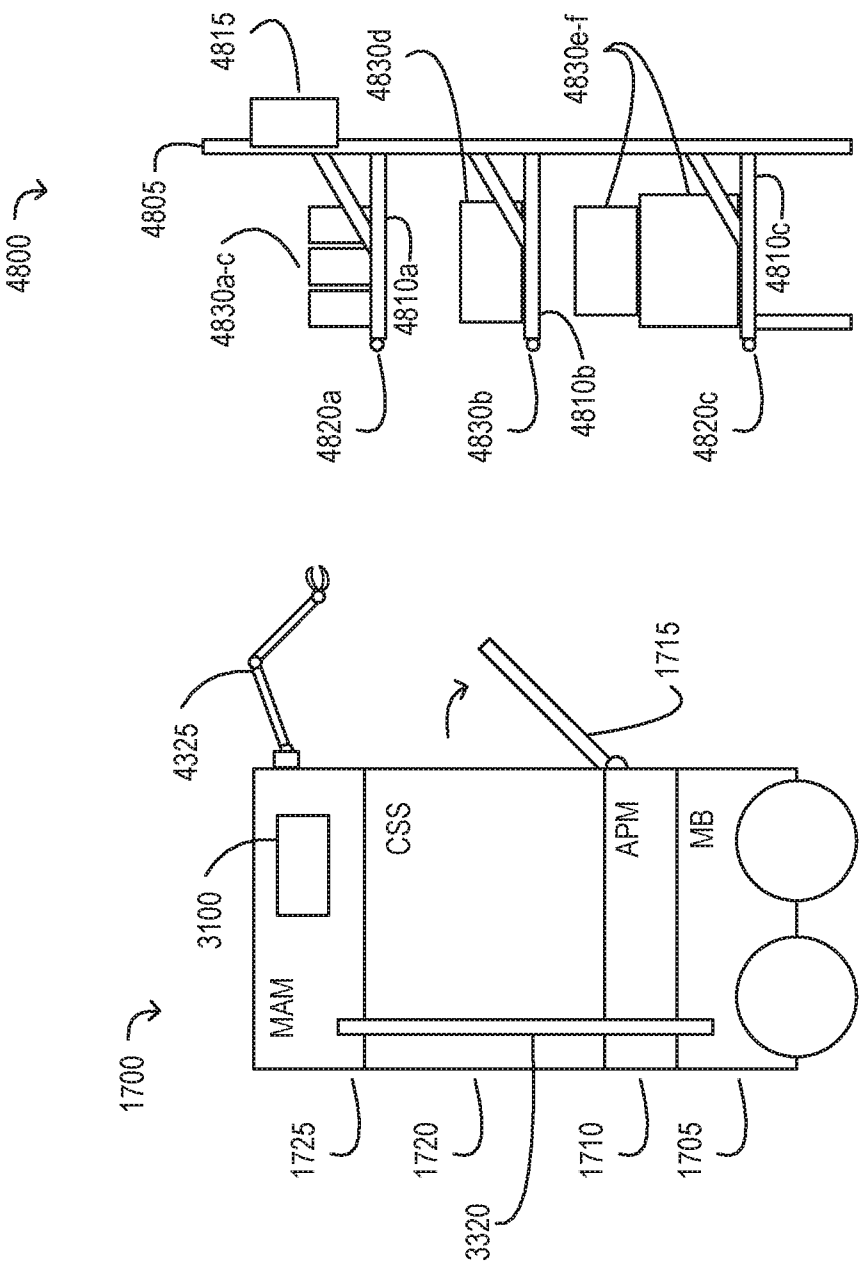

4800
4805
4815
4830d
4830e-f
4830a-c
4810a
4810c
4820a
4830b
4810b
4820c
1700
4325
1715
3100
CSS
APM
MB
MAM
1725
1720
1710
1705
3320

FIG. 48A

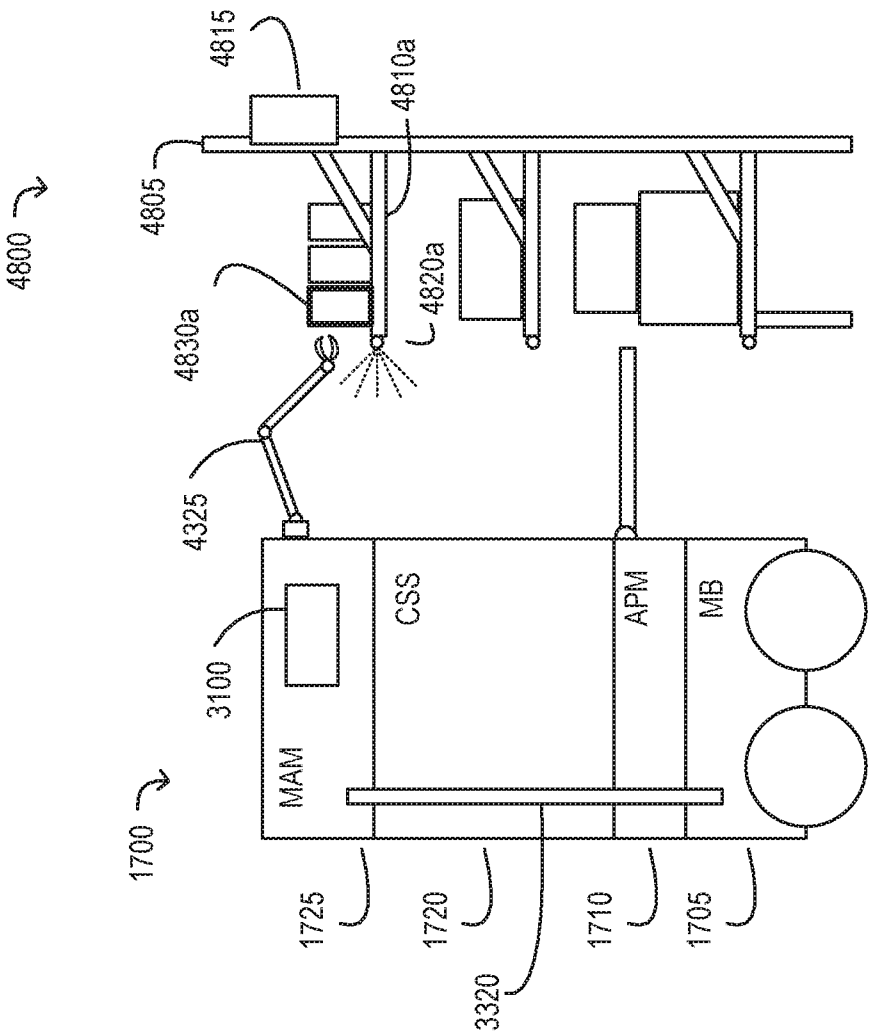

4800
4815
4810a
4805
4820a
4830a
4325
3100
CSS
APM
MB
MAM
1700
1725
1720
1710
1705
3320

FIG. 48B

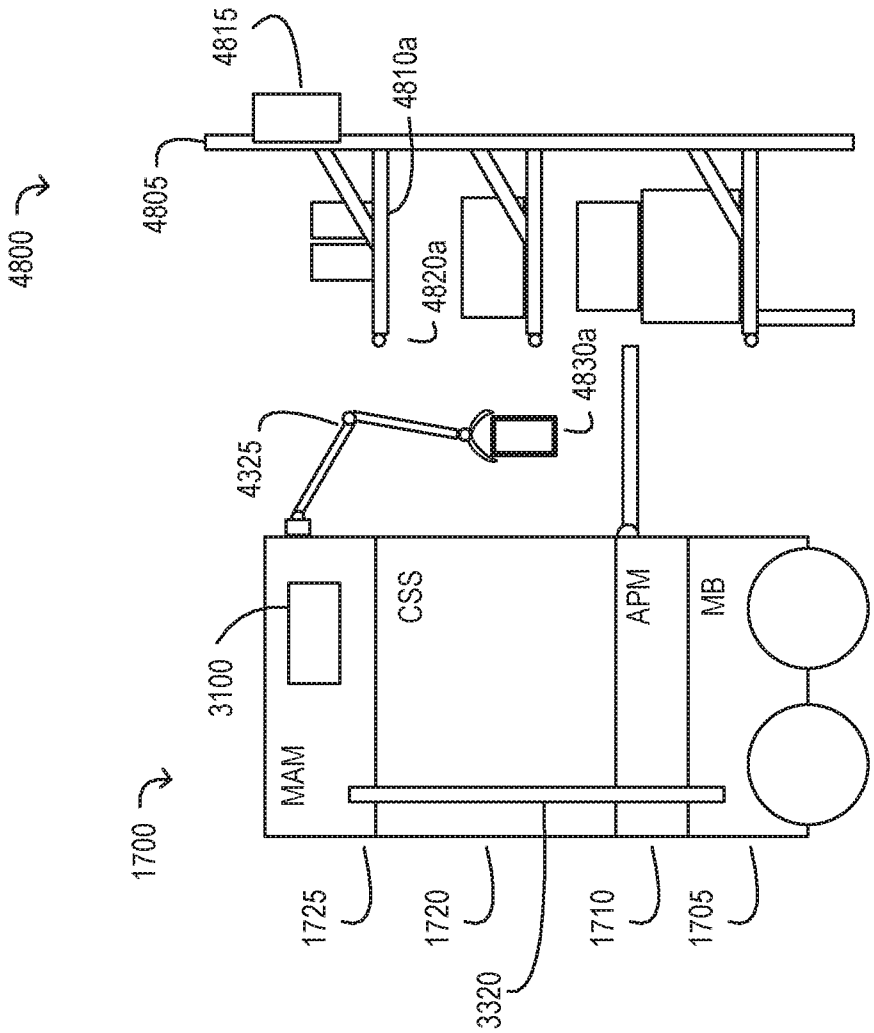

4800
4815
4810a
4805
4820a
4830a
4325
3100
CSS
APM
MB
MAM
1700
1725
1720
1710
1705
3320

FIG. 48C

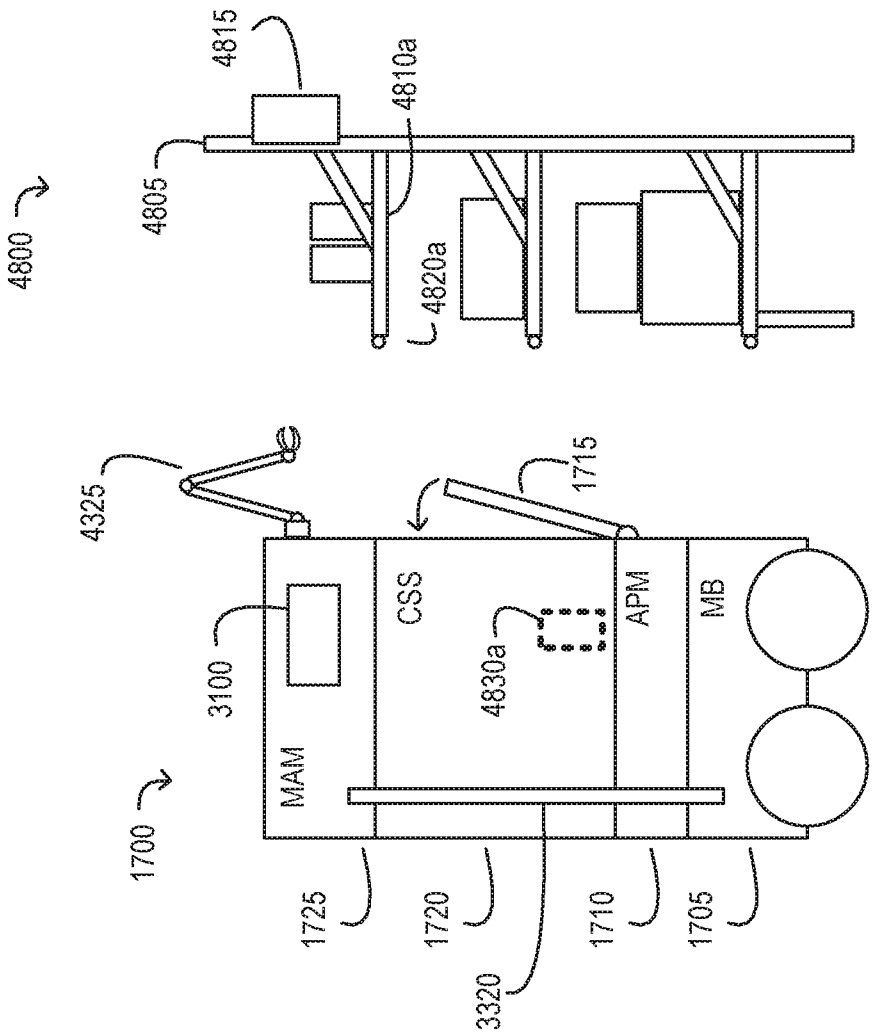

4800
4815
4810a
4805
4820a
4325
1715
3100
CSS
4830a
APM
MB
MAM
1700
1725
1720
1710
1705
3320

FIG. 48D

FIG. 49

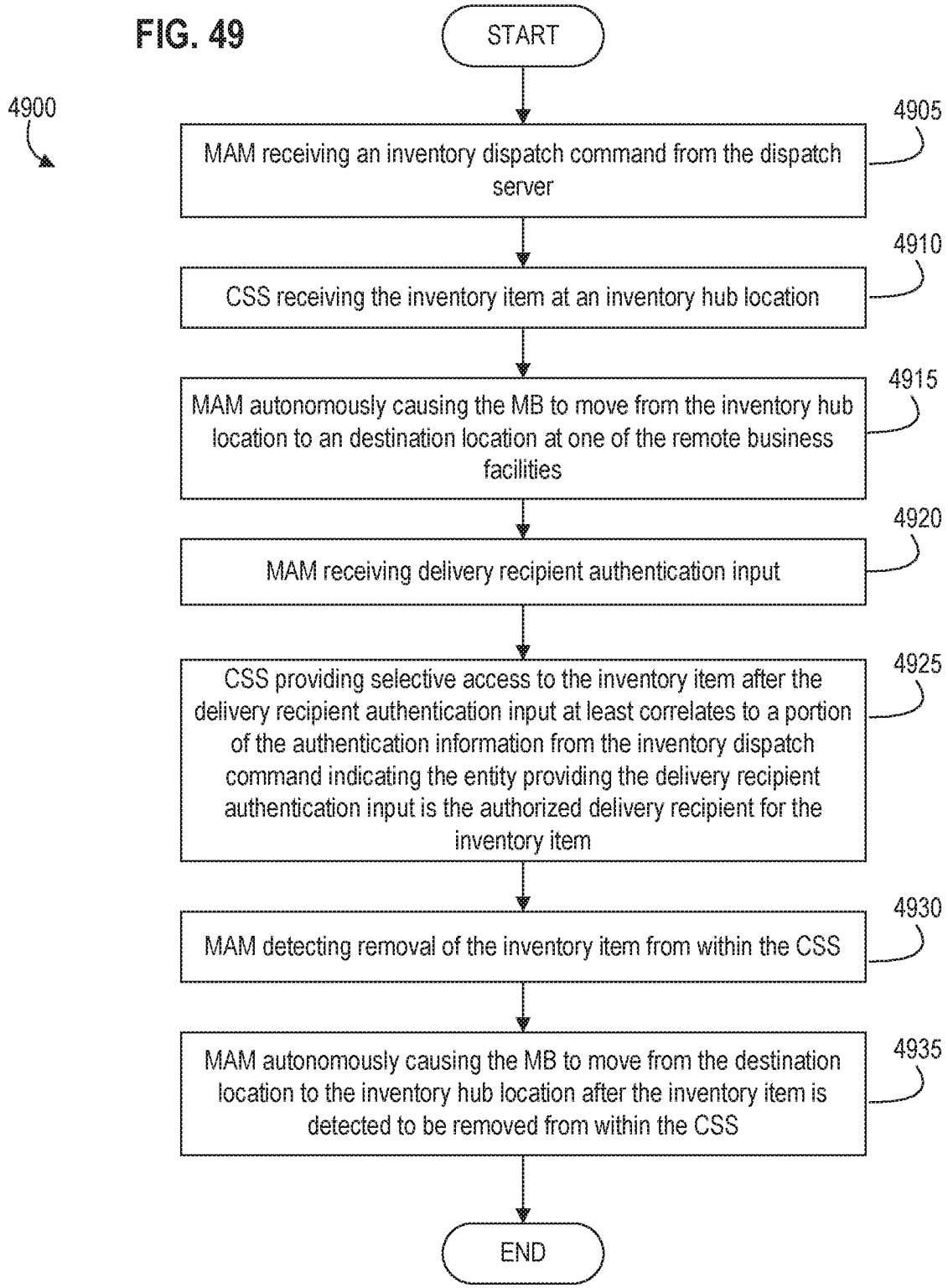

START
4900
4905
MAM receiving an inventory dispatch command from the dispatch server
4910
CSS receiving the inventory item at an inventory hub location
4915
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the inventory hub location to an destination location at one of the remote business facilities
4920
MAM receiving delivery recipient authentication input
4925
CSS providing selective access to the inventory item after the delivery recipient authentication input at least correlates to a portion of the authentication information from the inventory dispatch command indicating the entity providing the delivery recipient authentication input is the authorized delivery recipient for the inventory item
4930
MAM detecting removal of the inventory item from within the CSS
4935
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the destination location to the inventory hub location after the inventory item is detected to be removed from within the CSS
END

FIG. 50A

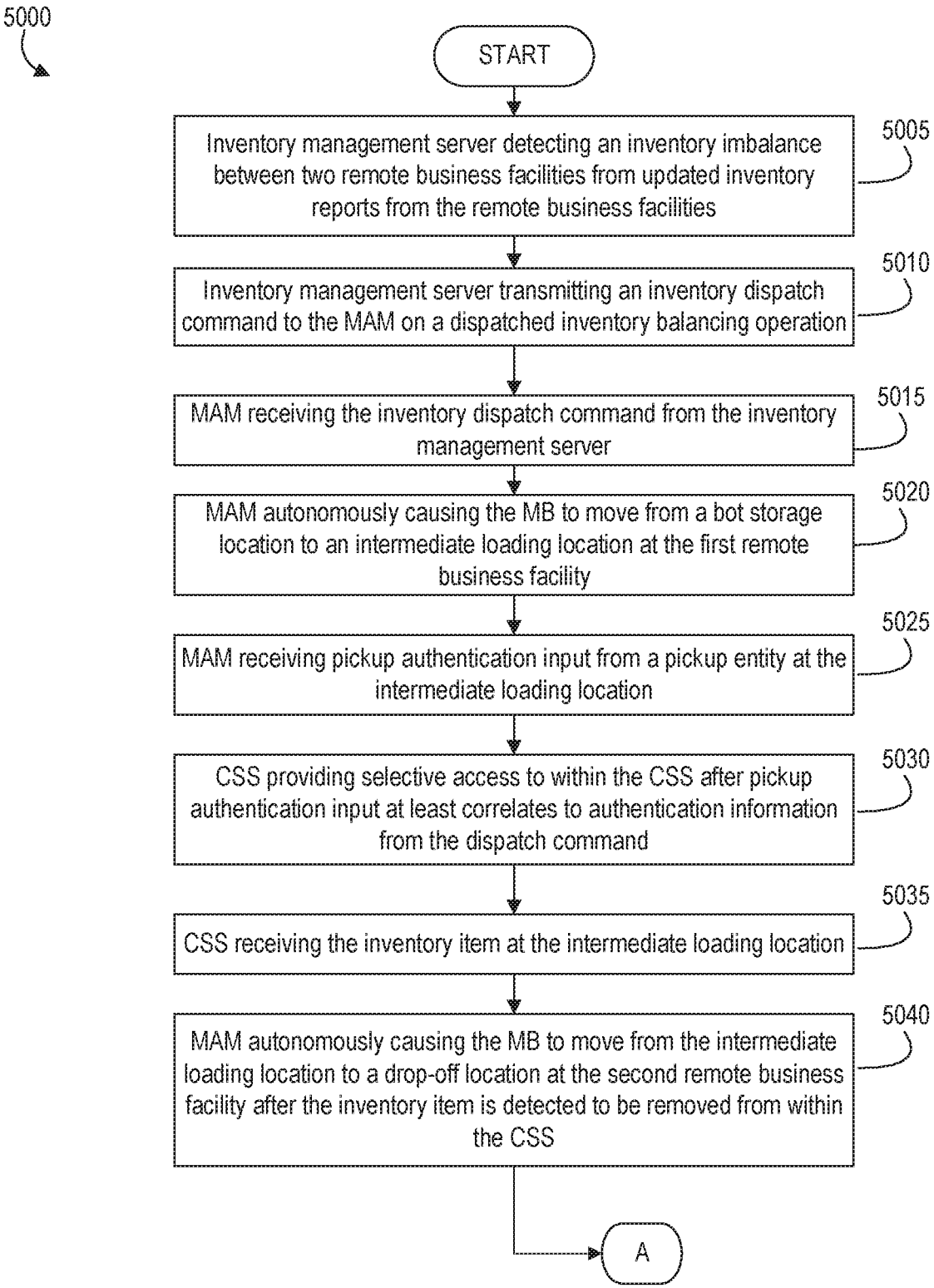

5000
START
Inventory management server detecting an inventory imbalance between two remote business facilities from updated inventory reports from the remote business facilities
5005
Inventory management server transmitting an inventory dispatch command to the MAM on a dispatched inventory balancing operation
5010
MAM receiving the inventory dispatch command from the inventory management server
5015
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from a bot storage location to an intermediate loading location at the first remote business facility
5020
MAM receiving pickup authentication input from a pickup entity at the intermediate loading location
5025
CSS providing selective access to within the CSS after pickup authentication input at least correlates to authentication information from the dispatch command
5030
CSS receiving the inventory item at the intermediate loading location
5035
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the intermediate loading location to a drop-off location at the second remote business facility after the inventory item is detected to be removed from within the CSS
5040
A

FIG. 50B

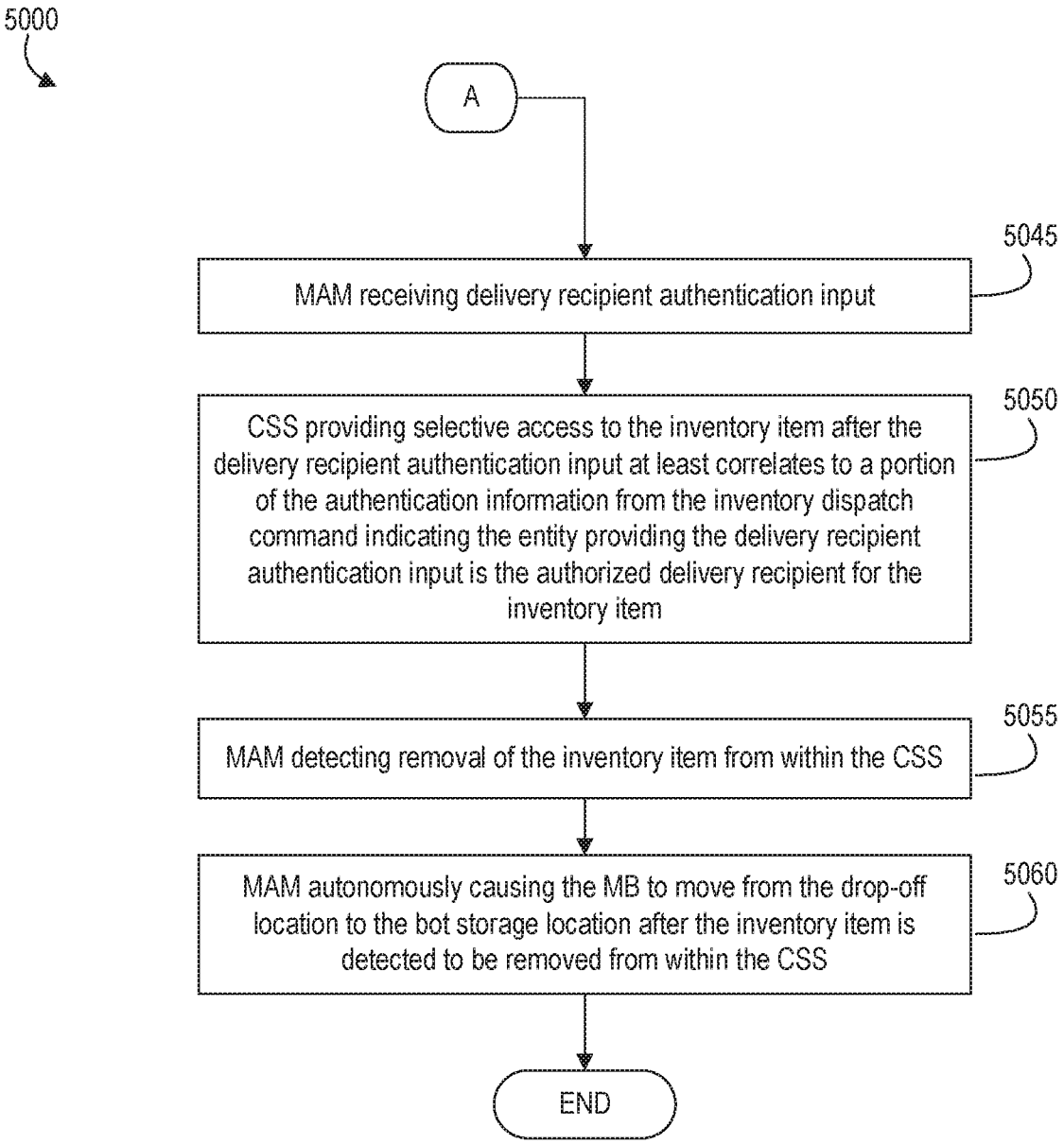
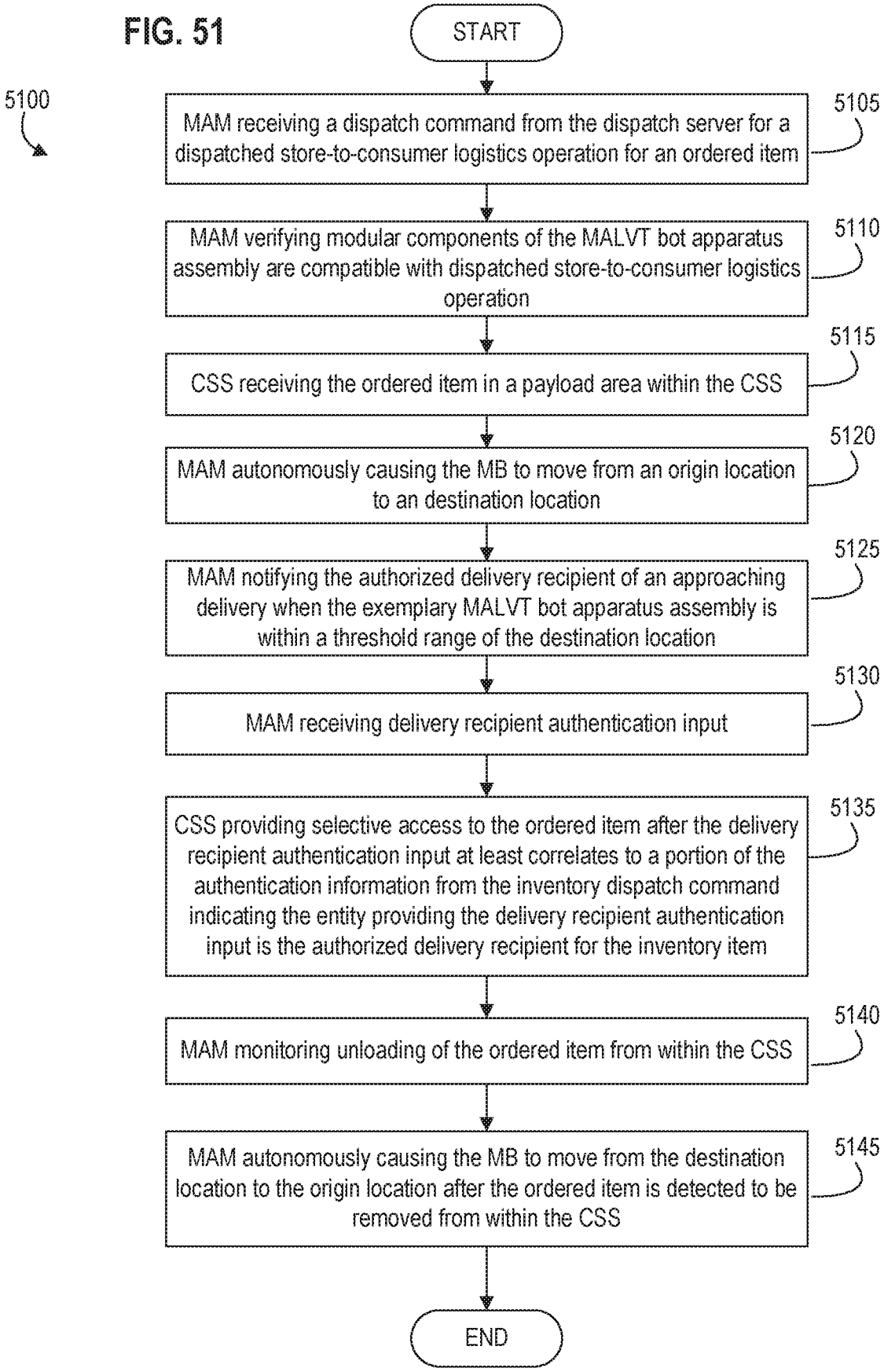

5000
A
5045
MAM receiving delivery recipient authentication input
5050
CSS providing selective access to the inventory item after the delivery recipient authentication input at least correlates to a portion of the authentication information from the inventory dispatch command indicating the entity providing the delivery recipient authentication input is the authorized delivery recipient for the inventory item
5055
MAM detecting removal of the inventory item from within the CSS
5060
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the drop-off location to the bot storage location after the inventory item is detected to be removed from within the CSS
END

FIG. 51


START
5100
MAM receiving a dispatch command from the dispatch server for a dispatched store-to-consumer logistics operation for an ordered item
5105
MAM verifying modular components of the MALVT bot apparatus assembly are compatible with dispatched store-to-consumer logistics operation
5110
CSS receiving the ordered item in a payload area within the CSS
5115
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from an origin location to an destination location
5120
MAM notifying the authorized delivery recipient of an approaching delivery when the exemplary MALVT bot apparatus assembly is within a threshold range of the destination location
5125
MAM receiving delivery recipient authentication input
5130
CSS providing selective access to the ordered item after the delivery recipient authentication input at least correlates to a portion of the authentication information from the inventory dispatch command indicating the entity providing the delivery recipient authentication input is the authorized delivery recipient for the inventory item
5135
MAM monitoring unloading of the ordered item from within the CSS
5140
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the destination location to the origin location after the ordered item is detected to be removed from within the CSS
5145
END

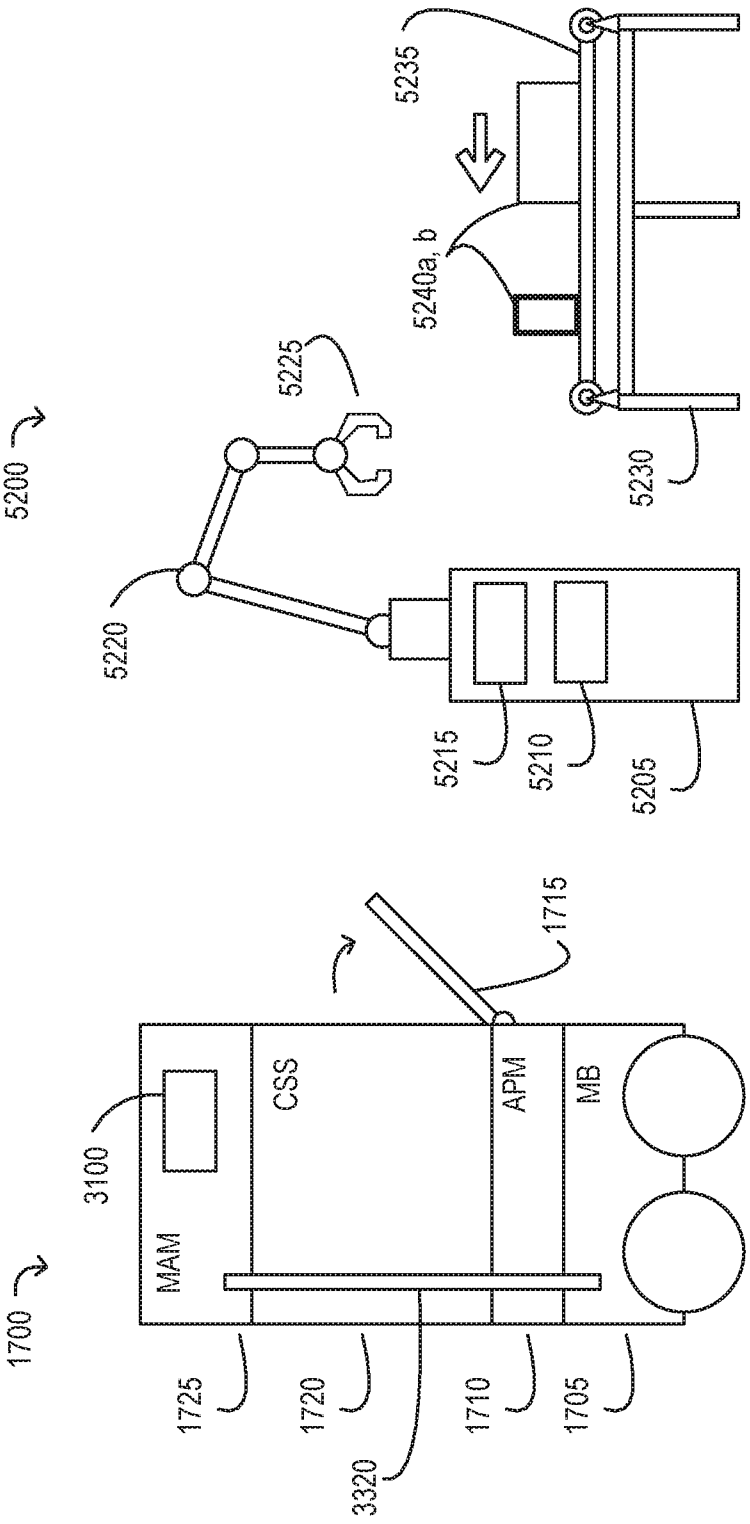

5200
5220
5225
5235
5240a, b
5230
5215
5210
5205
1700
1715
3100
MAM
CSS
APM
MB
1725
1720
1710
1705
3320

FIG. 52A

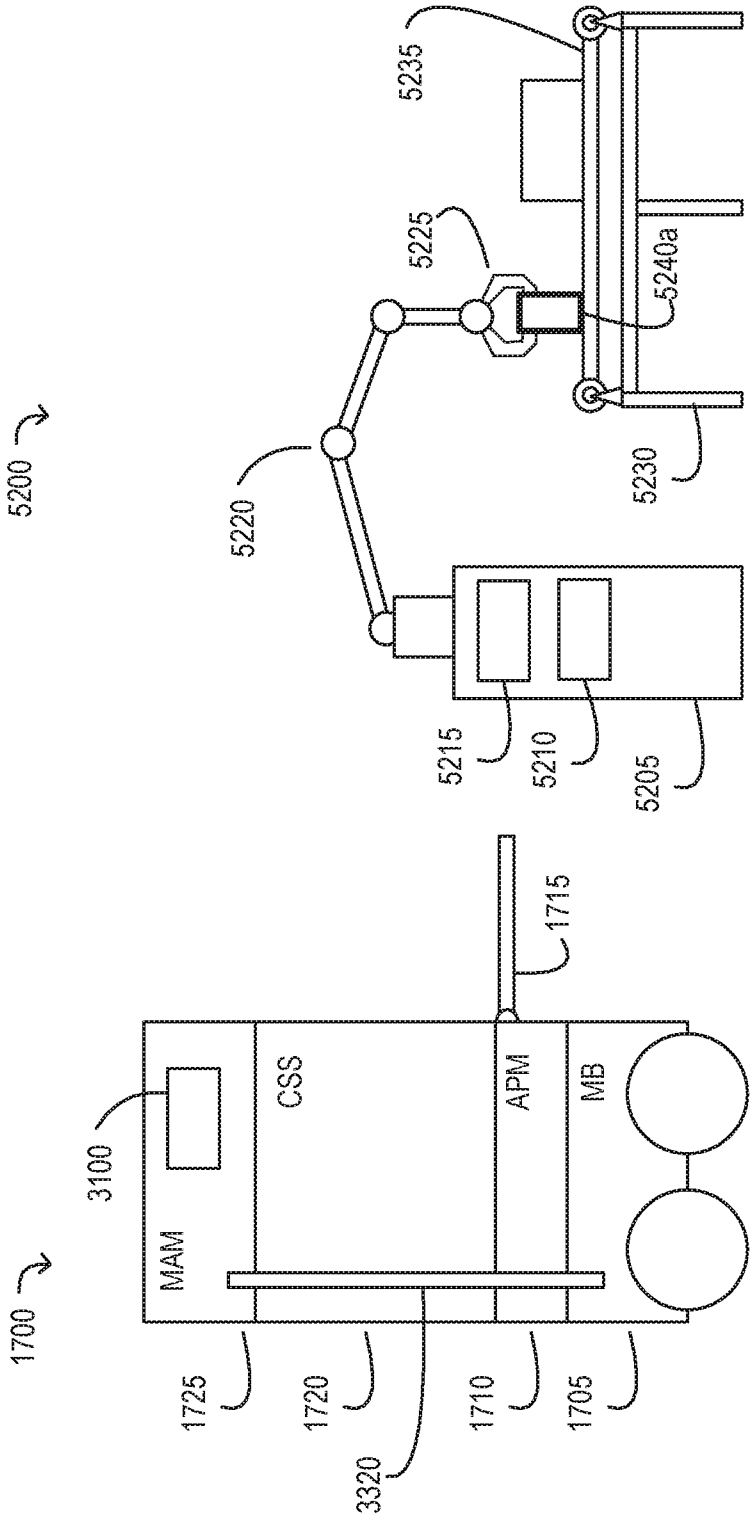

5200
5235
5225
5240a
5230
5220
5215
5210
5205
1715
1700
3100
MAM
CSS
APM
MB
1725
1720
1710
1705
3320

FIG. 52B

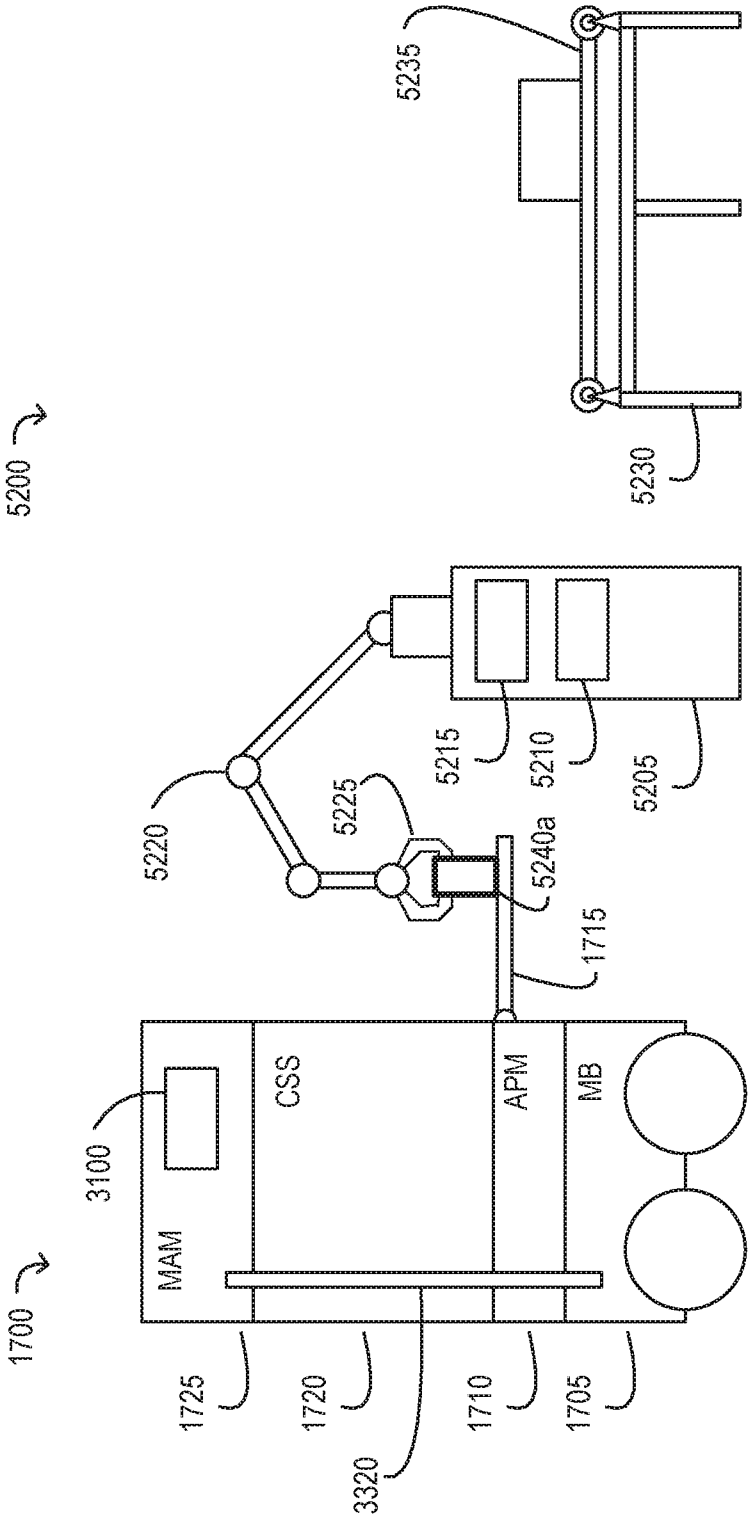

5235
5230
5200
5205
5210
5215
5220
5225
5240a
1715
3100
MAM
CSS
APM
MB
1700
1725
1720
3320
1710
1705

FIG. 52C

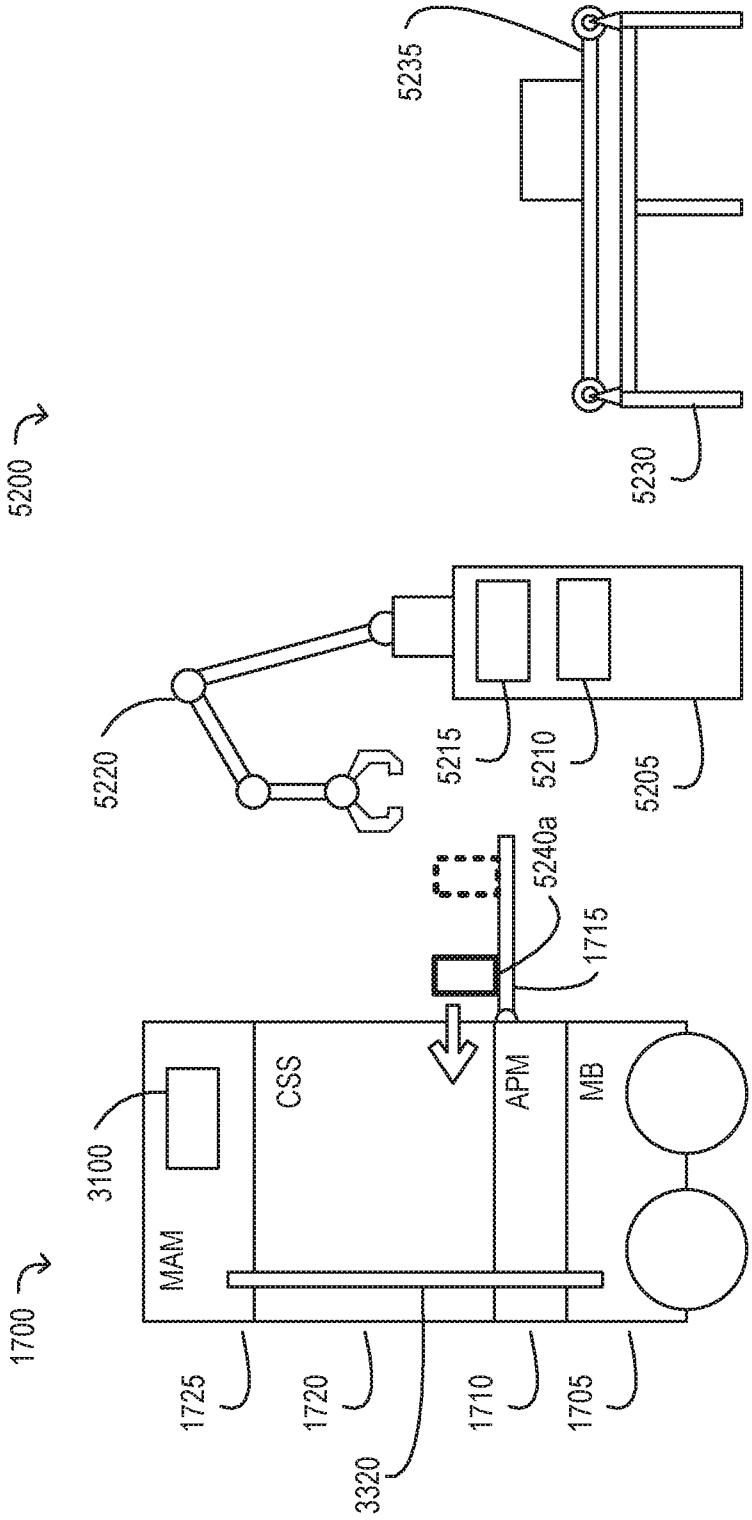

5235
5200
5230
5220
5215
5210
5205
5240a
1715
3100
CSS
APM
MB
MAM
1700
1725
1720
1710
1705
3320

FIG. 52D

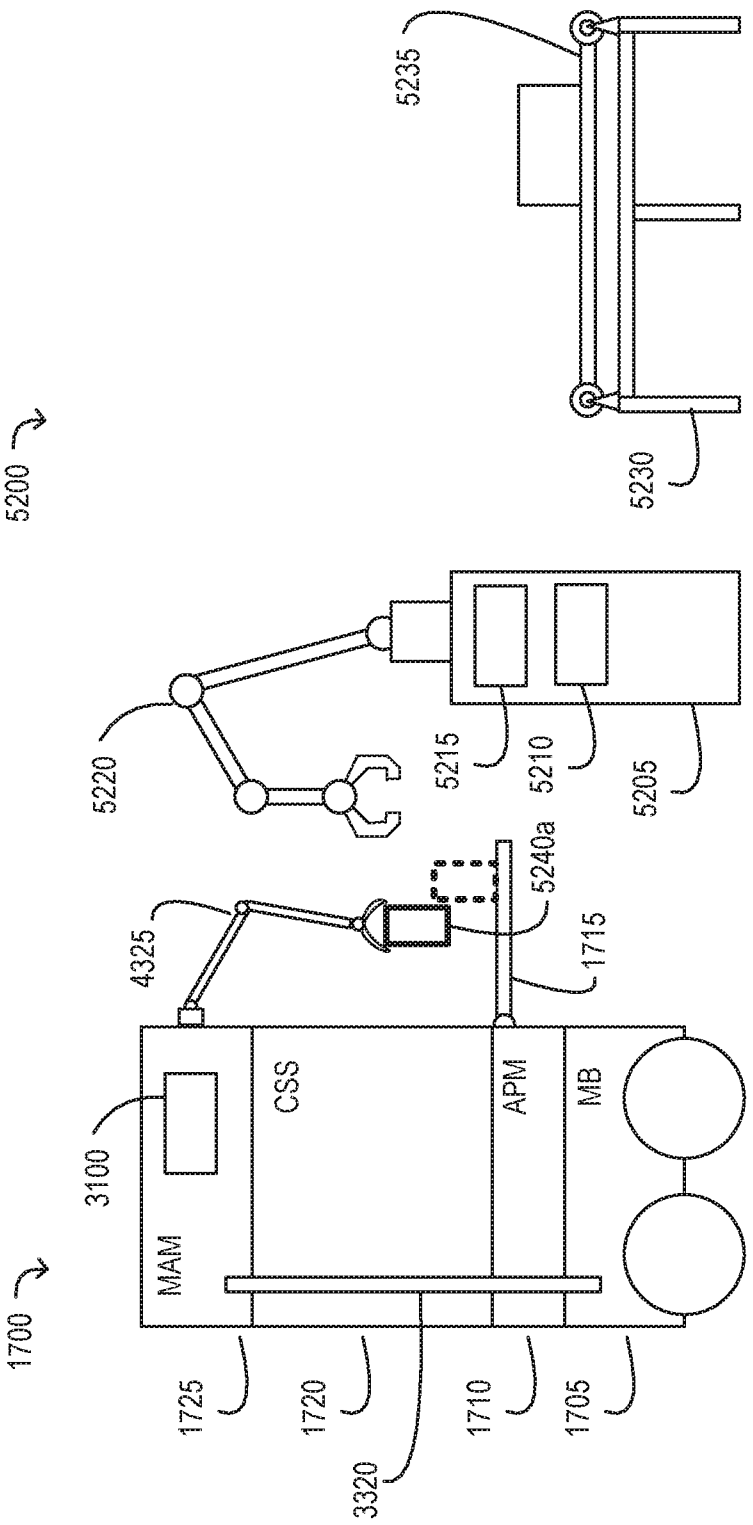

5235
5200
5230
5220
5215
5210
5205
5240a
4325
1715
3100
CSS
APM
MB
MAM
1700
1725
1720
1710
1705
3320

FIG. 52E

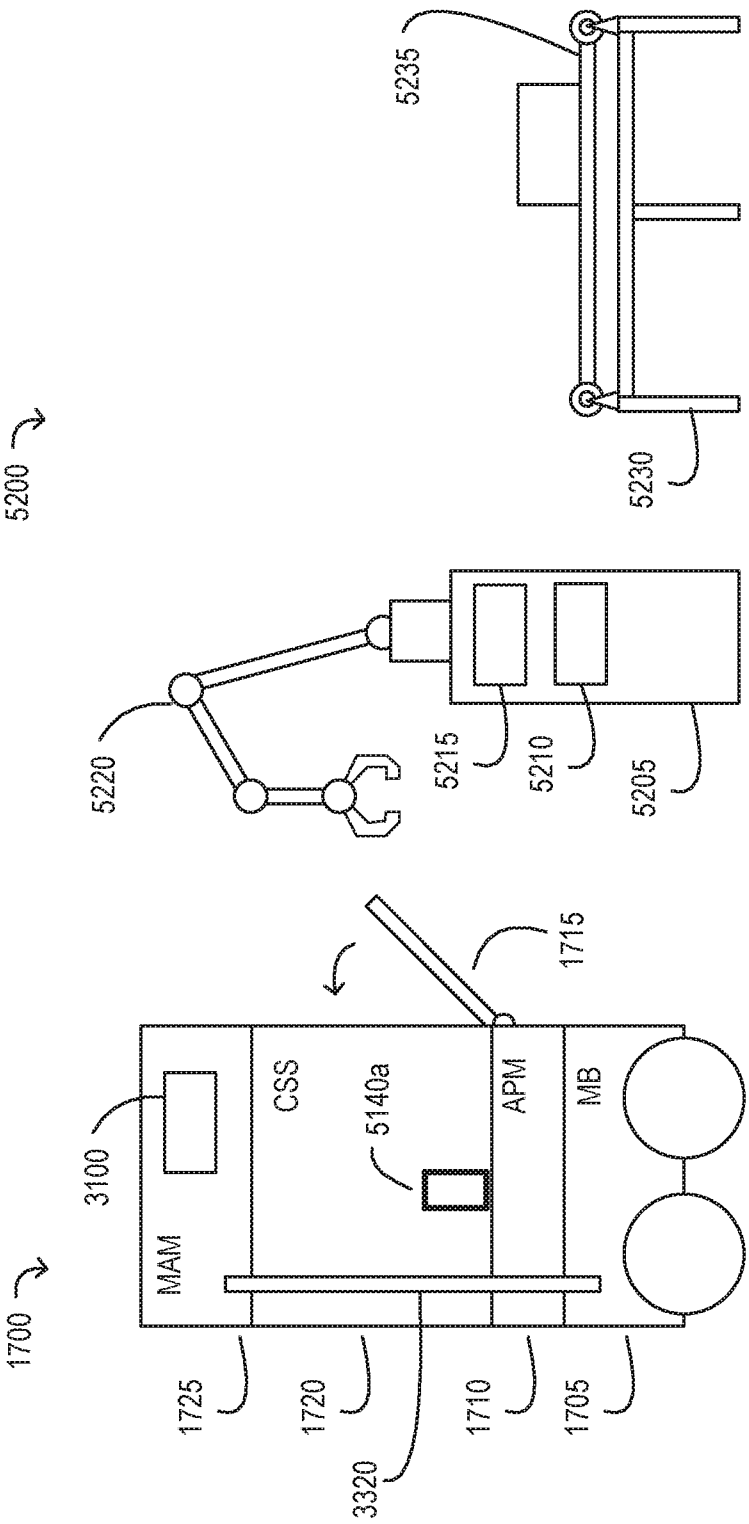

5235
5200
5230
5220
5215
5210
5205
1715
CSS
5140a
APM
MB
3100
MAM
1700
1725
1720
1710
1705
3320

FIG. 52F

FIG. 53

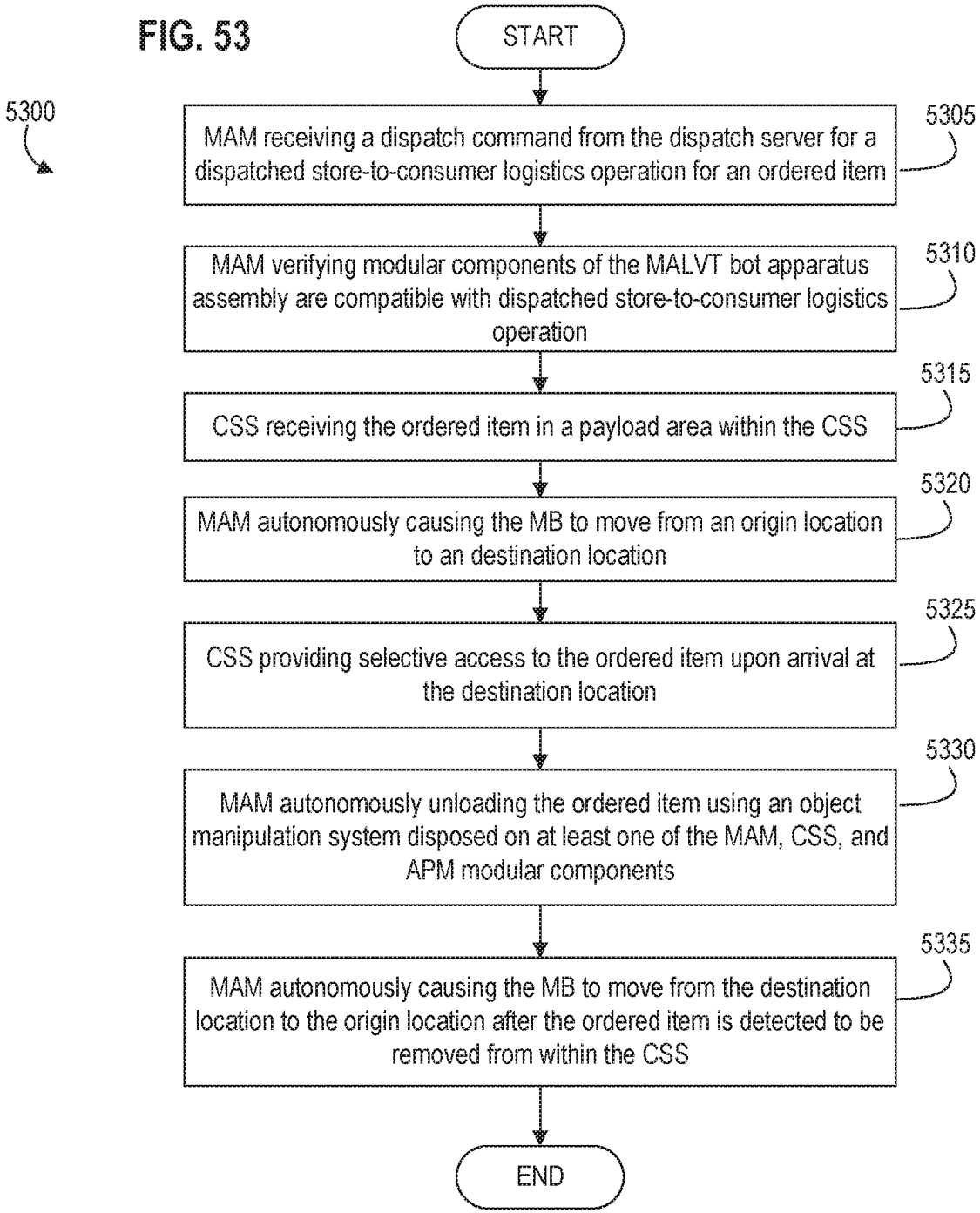

START
5300
MAM receiving a dispatch command from the dispatch server for a dispatched store-to-consumer logistics operation for an ordered item
5305
MAM verifying modular components of the MALVT bot apparatus assembly are compatible with dispatched store-to-consumer logistics operation
5310
CSS receiving the ordered item in a payload area within the CSS
5315
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from an origin location to an destination location
5320
CSS providing selective access to the ordered item upon arrival at the destination location
5325
MAM autonomously unloading the ordered item using an object manipulation system disposed on at least one of the MAM, CSS, and APM modular components
5330
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the destination location to the origin location after the ordered item is detected to be removed from within the CSS
5335
END

FIG. 54

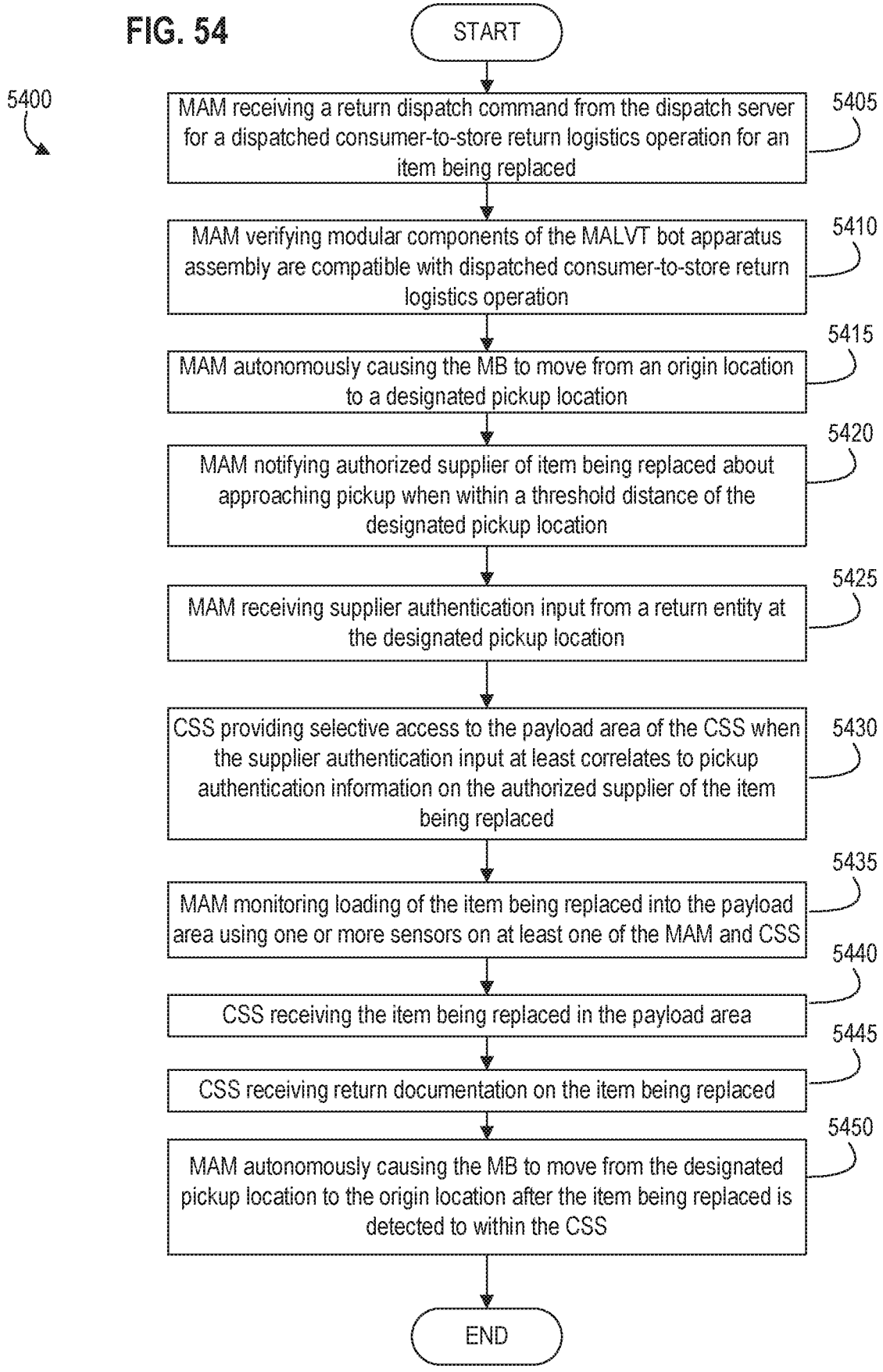

START
5400
MAM receiving a return dispatch command from the dispatch server for a dispatched consumer-to-store return logistics operation for an item being replaced
5405
MAM verifying modular components of the MALVT bot apparatus assembly are compatible with dispatched consumer-to-store return logistics operation
5410
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from an origin location to a designated pickup location
5415
MAM notifying authorized supplier of item being replaced about approaching pickup when within a threshold distance of the designated pickup location
5420
MAM receiving supplier authentication input from a return entity at the designated pickup location
5425
CSS providing selective access to the payload area of the CSS when the supplier authentication input at least correlates to pickup authentication information on the authorized supplier of the item being replaced
5430
MAM monitoring loading of the item being replaced into the payload area using one or more sensors on at least one of the MAM and CSS
5435
CSS receiving the item being replaced in the payload area
5440
CSS receiving return documentation on the item being replaced
5445
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the designated pickup location to the origin location after the item being replaced is detected to within the CSS
5450
END

FIG. 55

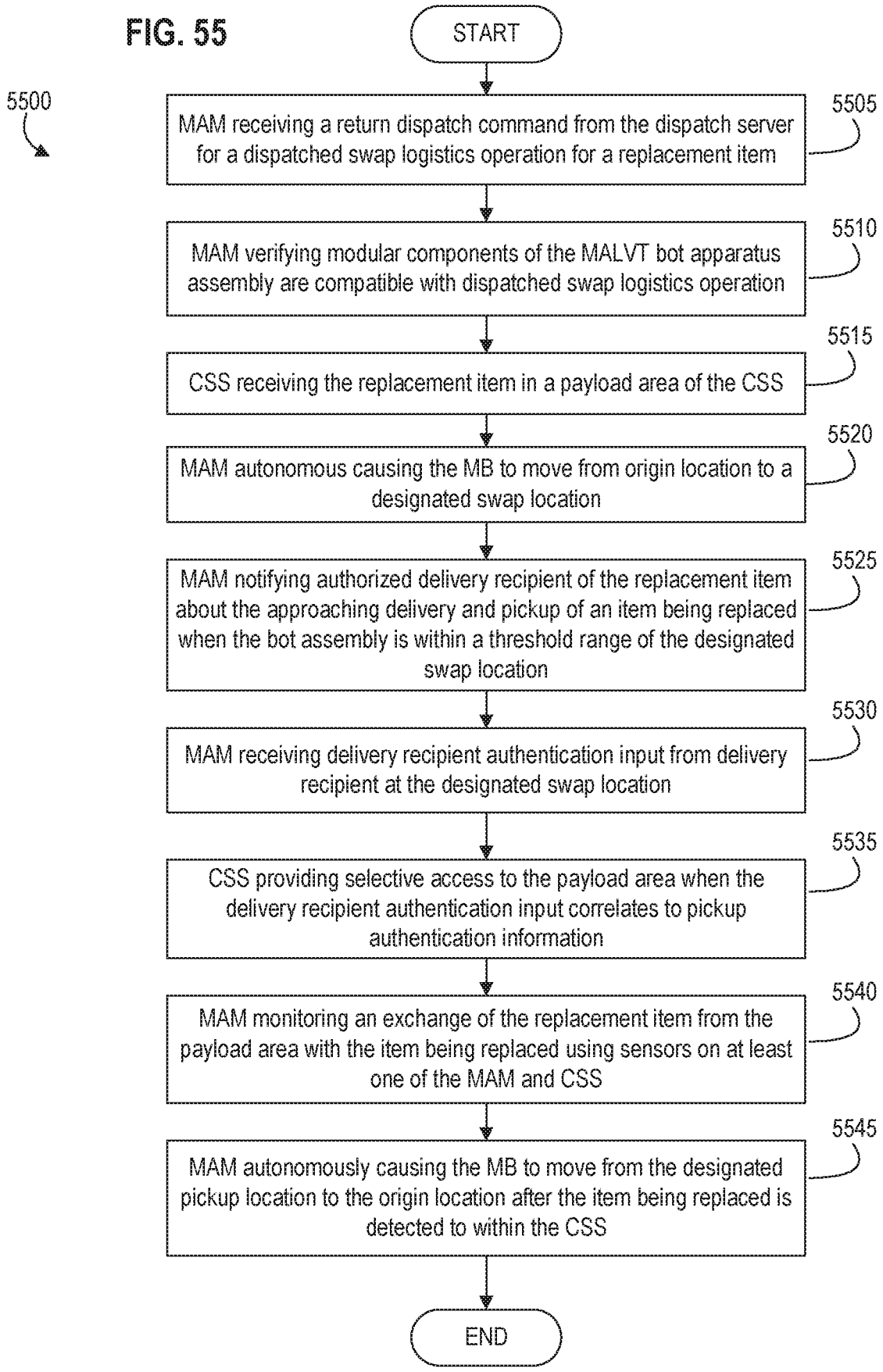

START
5500
MAM receiving a return dispatch command from the dispatch server for a dispatched swap logistics operation for a replacement item
5505
MAM verifying modular components of the MALVT bot apparatus assembly are compatible with dispatched swap logistics operation
5510
CSS receiving the replacement item in a payload area of the CSS
5515
MAM autonomous causing the MB to move from origin location to a designated swap location
5520
MAM notifying authorized delivery recipient of the replacement item about the approaching delivery and pickup of an item being replaced when the bot assembly is within a threshold range of the designated swap location
5525
MAM receiving delivery recipient authentication input from delivery recipient at the designated swap location
5530
CSS providing selective access to the payload area when the delivery recipient authentication input correlates to pickup authentication information
5535
MAM monitoring an exchange of the replacement item from the payload area with the item being replaced using sensors on at least one of the MAM and CSS
5540
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the designated pickup location to the origin location after the item being replaced is detected to within the CSS
5545
END

FIG. 56A

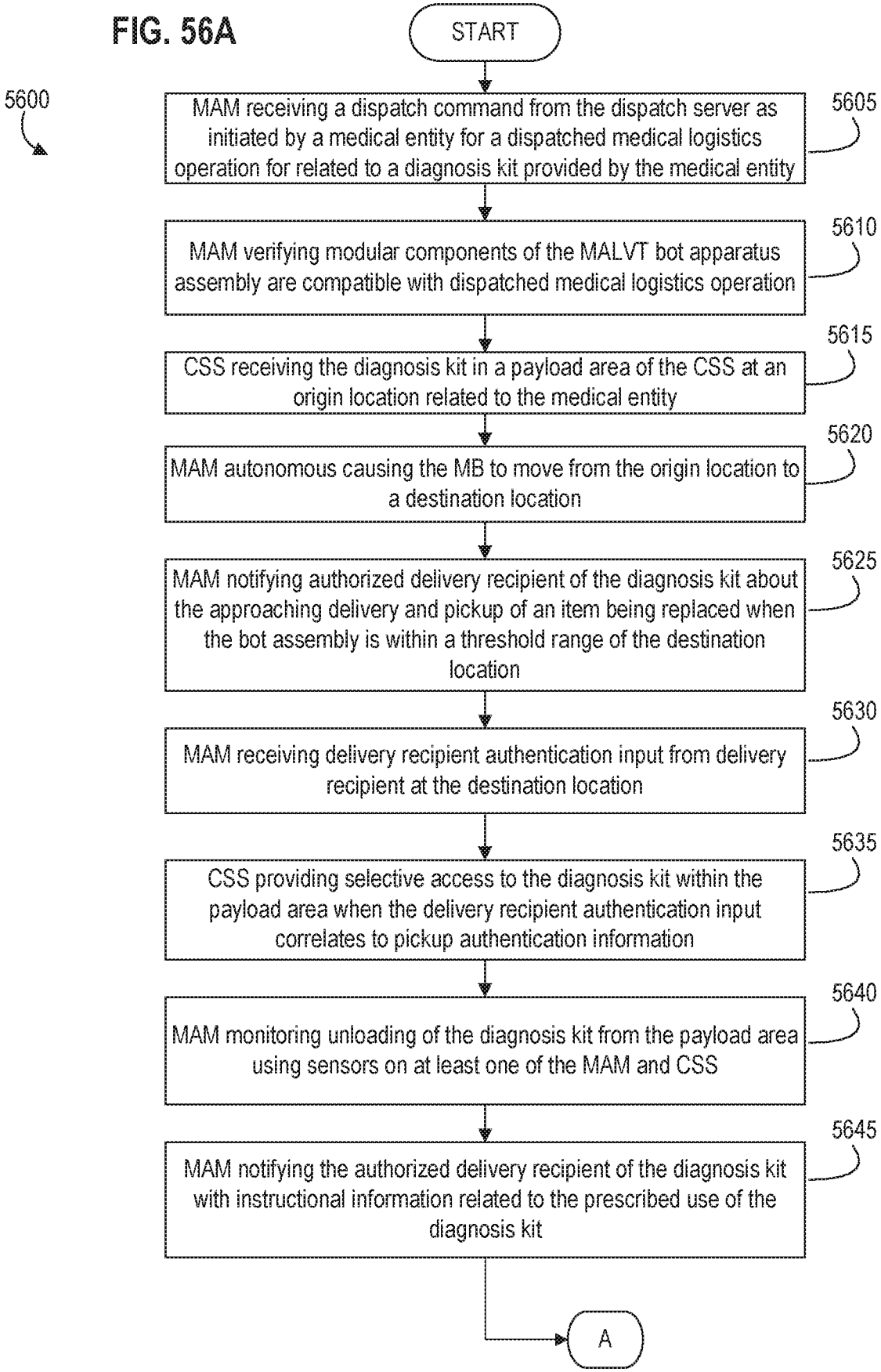
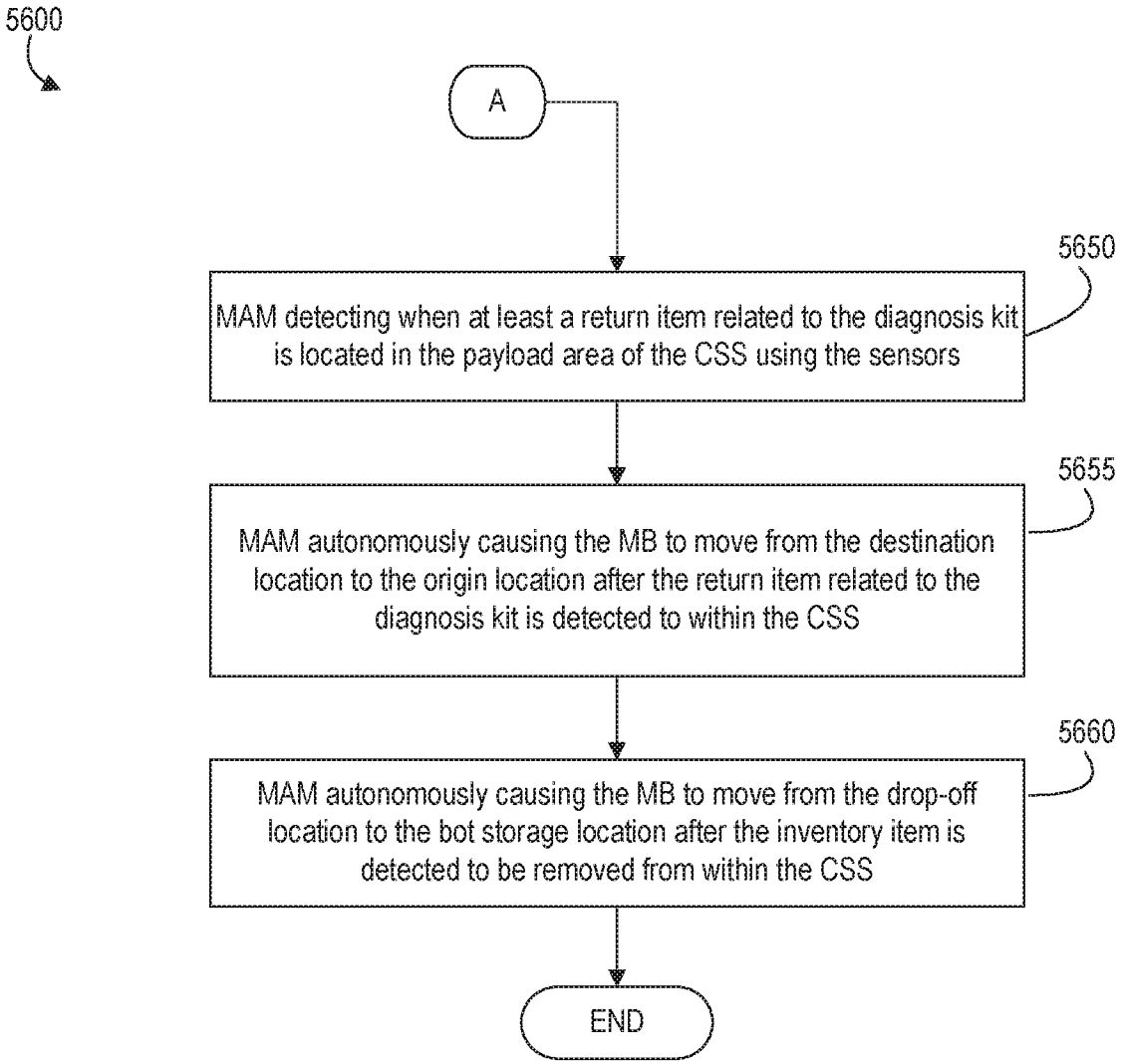

START
5600
MAM receiving a dispatch command from the dispatch server as initiated by a medical entity for a dispatched medical logistics operation for related to a diagnosis kit provided by the medical entity
5605
MAM verifying modular components of the MALVT bot apparatus assembly are compatible with dispatched medical logistics operation
5610
CSS receiving the diagnosis kit in a payload area of the CSS at an origin location related to the medical entity
5615
MAM autonomous causing the MB to move from the origin location to a destination location
5620
MAM notifying authorized delivery recipient of the diagnosis kit about the approaching delivery and pickup of an item being replaced when the bot assembly is within a threshold range of the destination location
5625
MAM receiving delivery recipient authentication input from delivery recipient at the destination location
5630
CSS providing selective access to the diagnosis kit within the payload area when the delivery recipient authentication input correlates to pickup authentication information
5635
MAM monitoring unloading of the diagnosis kit from the payload area using sensors on at least one of the MAM and CSS
5640
MAM notifying the authorized delivery recipient of the diagnosis kit with instructional information related to the prescribed use of the diagnosis kit
5645
A

FIG. 56B


5600
A
5650
MAM detecting when at least a return item related to the diagnosis kit is located in the payload area of the CSS using the sensors
5655
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the destination location to the origin location after the return item related to the diagnosis kit is detected to within the CSS
5660
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the drop-off location to the bot storage location after the inventory item is detected to be removed from within the CSS
END

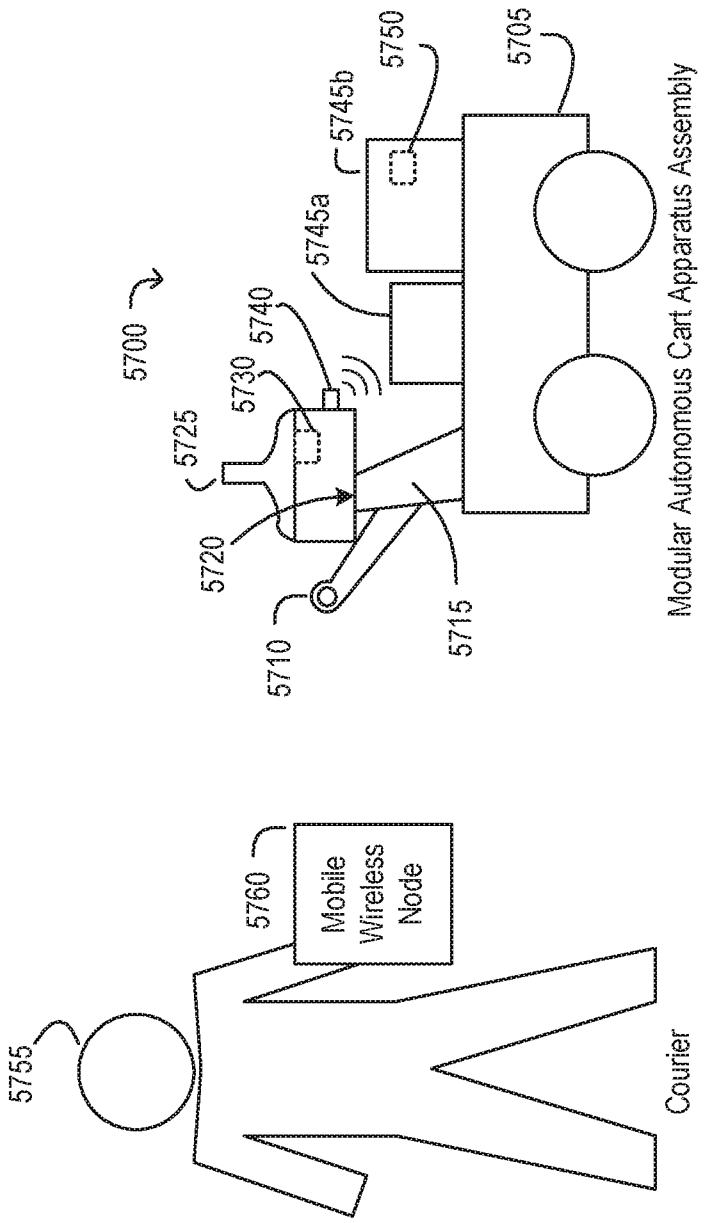

5700
5705
5710
5715
5720
5725
5730
5740
5745a
5745b
5750
5755
5760
Mobile Wireless Node
Courier
Modular Autonomous Cart Apparatus Assembly

FIG. 57A

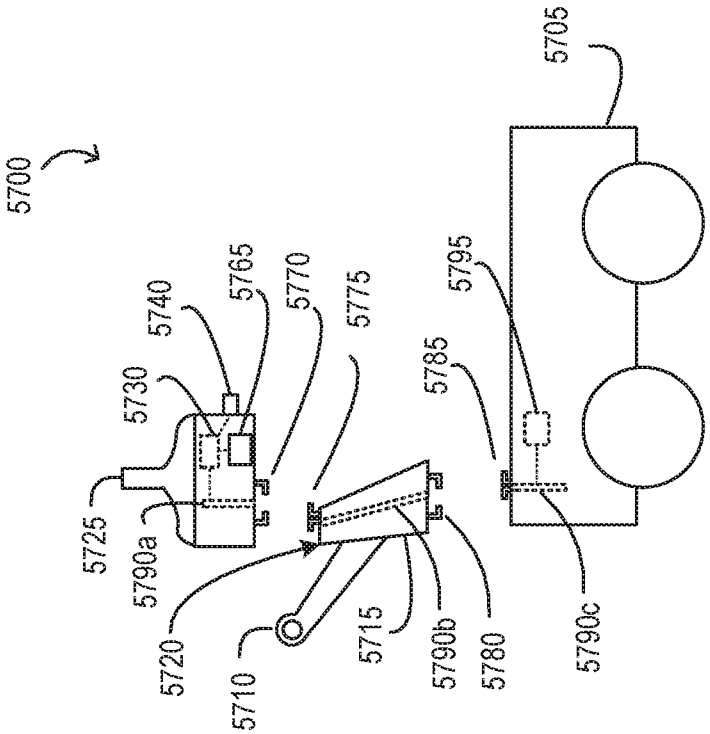

5700
5705
5795
5785
5765
5770
5775
5740
5730
5725
5790a
5720
5710
5715
5790b
5780
5790c

FIG. 57B

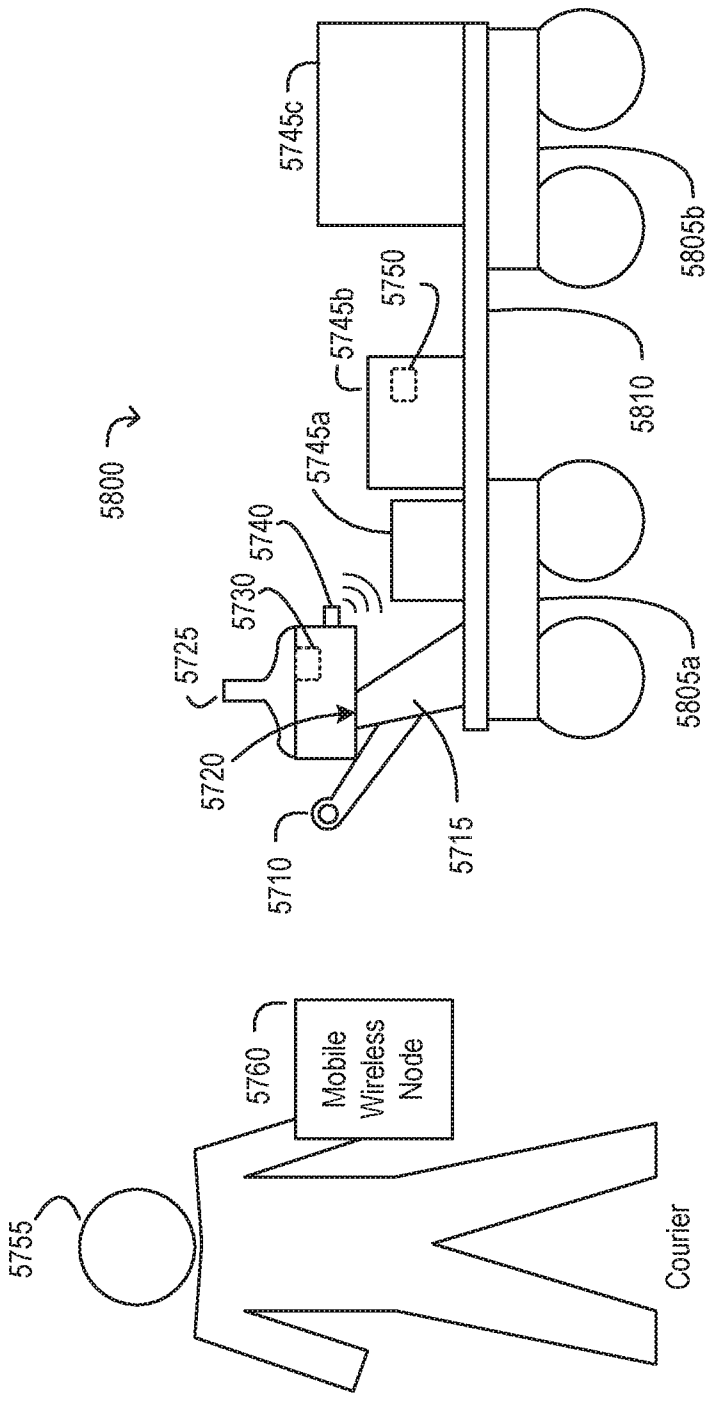

5800
5745c
5805b
5750
5745b
5810
5745a
5740
5730
5725
5720
5805a
5710
5715
5760
Mobile Wireless Node
5755
Courier

FIG. 58

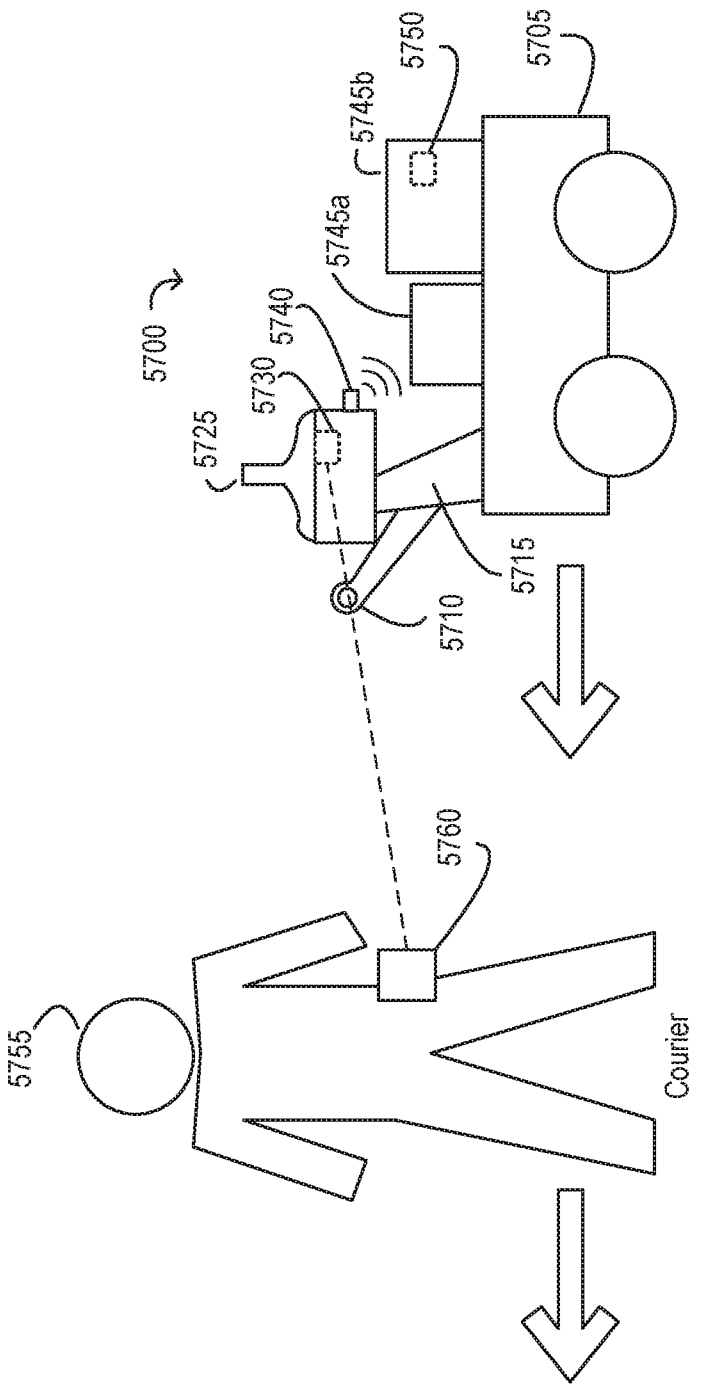

5700
5705
5750
5745b
5745a
5740
5730
5725
5715
5710
5760
5755
Courier

FIG. 59A

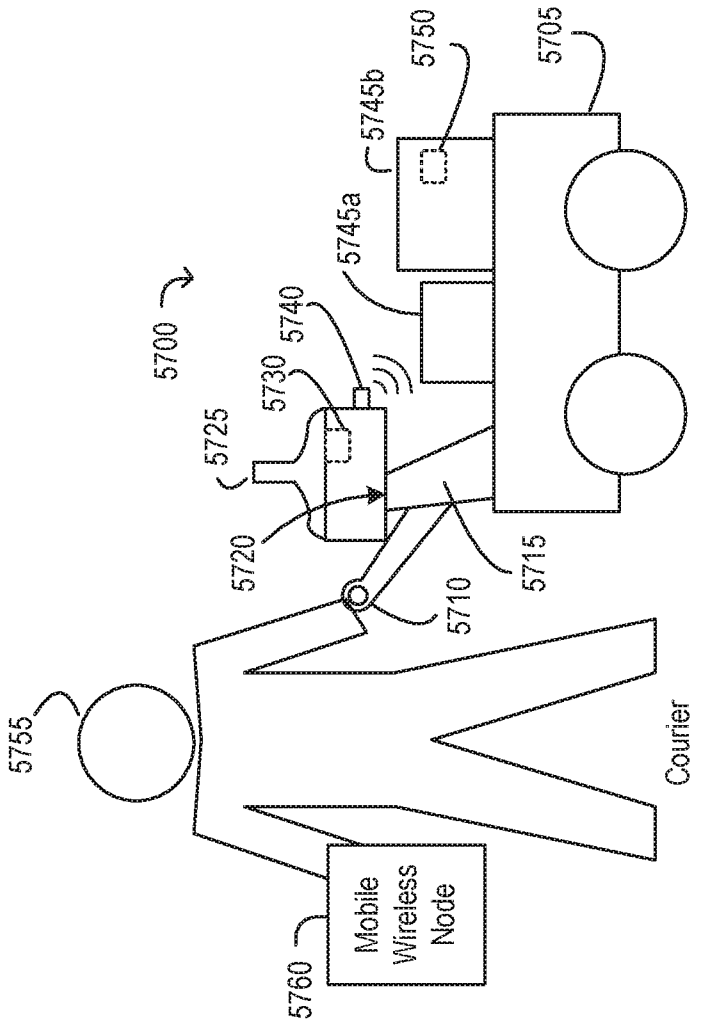

5700
5705
5710
5715
5720
5725
5730
5740
5745a
5745b
5750
5755
5760
Mobile Wireless Node
Courier

FIG. 59B

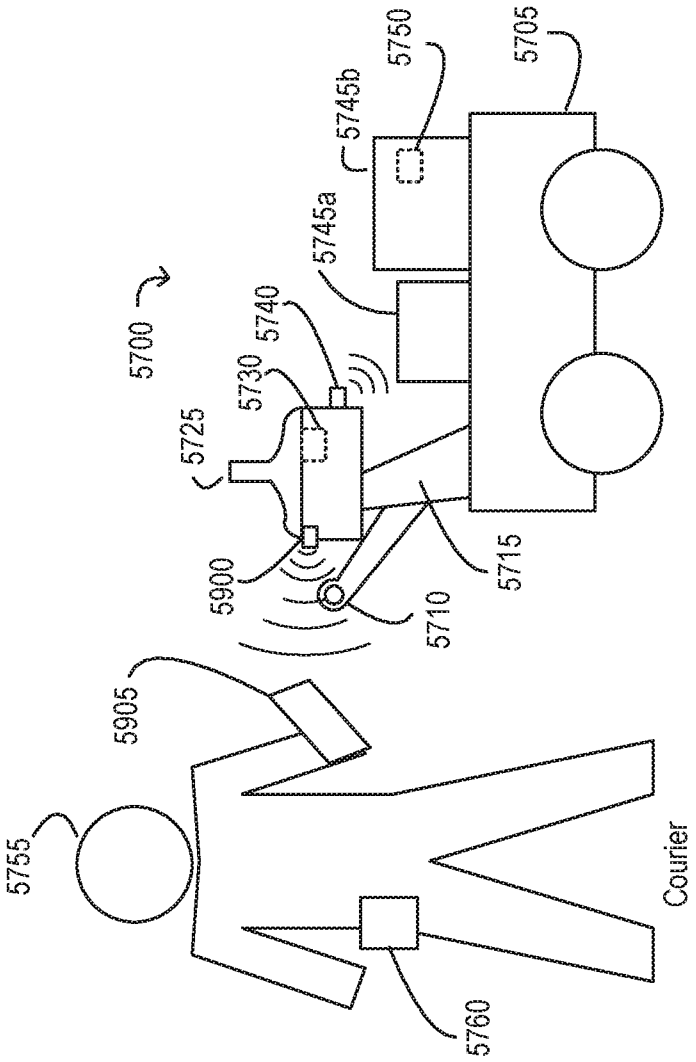

5700
5705
5710
5715
5725
5730
5740
5745a
5745b
5750
5755
5760
5900
5905
Courier

FIG. 59C

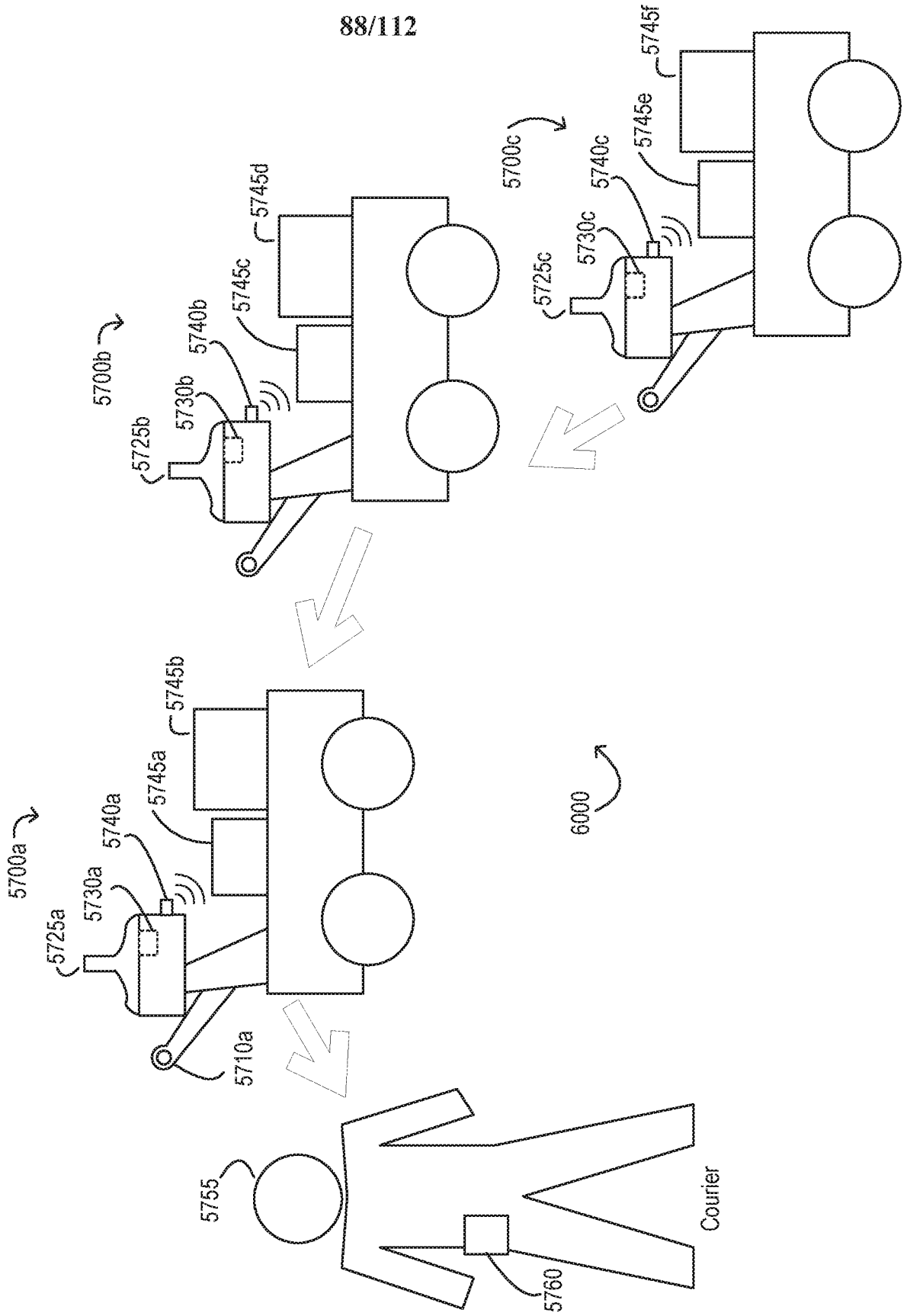

5700a
5730a
5740a
5745a
5745b
5725a
5710a
5755
5760
Courier
6000
5700b
5730b
5740b
5745c
5745d
5725b
5700c
5730c
5740c
5745e
5745f
5725c

FIG. 60

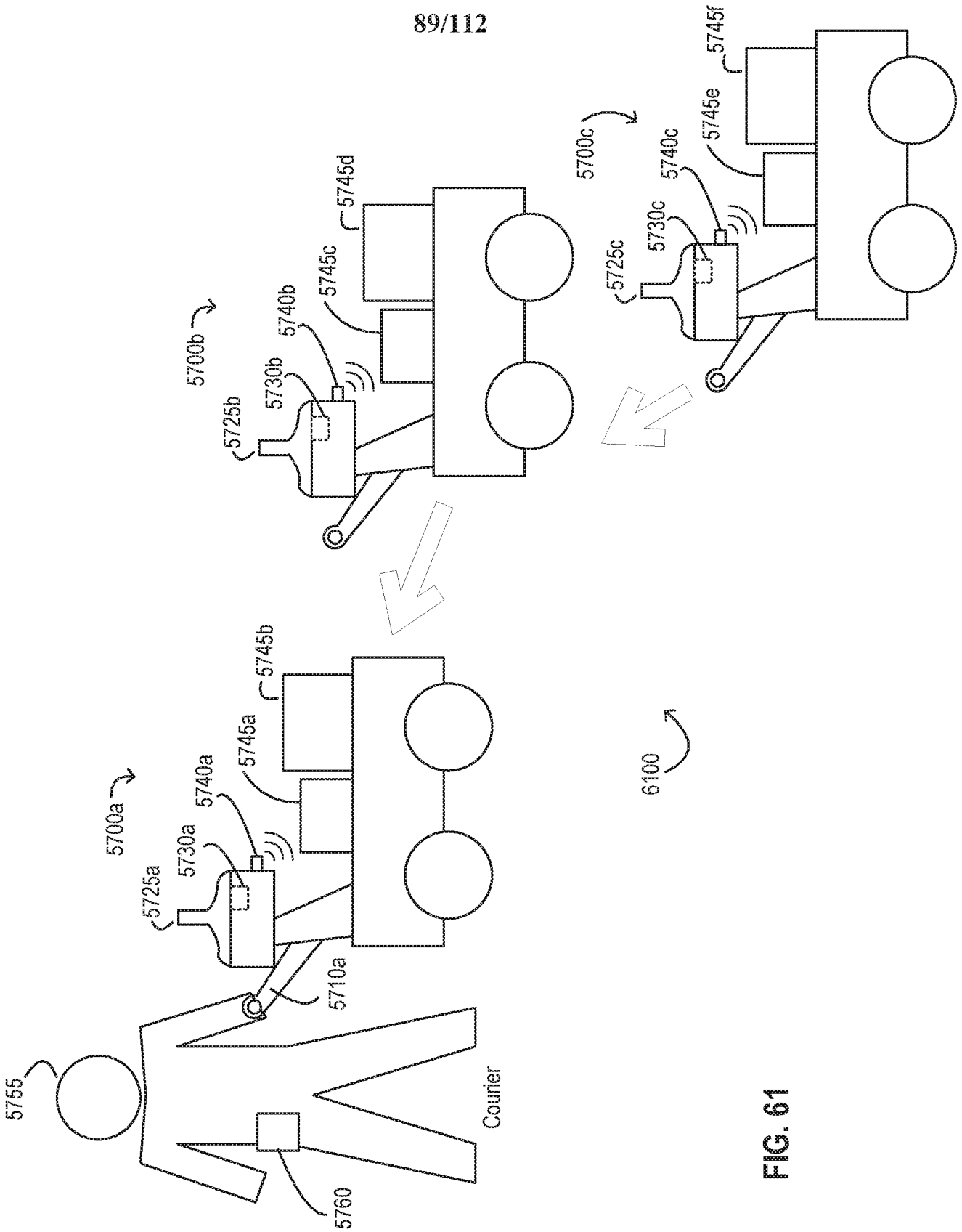

5755
5760
Courier
5710a
5700a
5725a
5730a
5740a
5745a
5745b
5700b
5725b
5730b
5740b
5745c
5745d
5700c
5725c
5730c
5740c
5745e
5745f
6100

FIG. 61

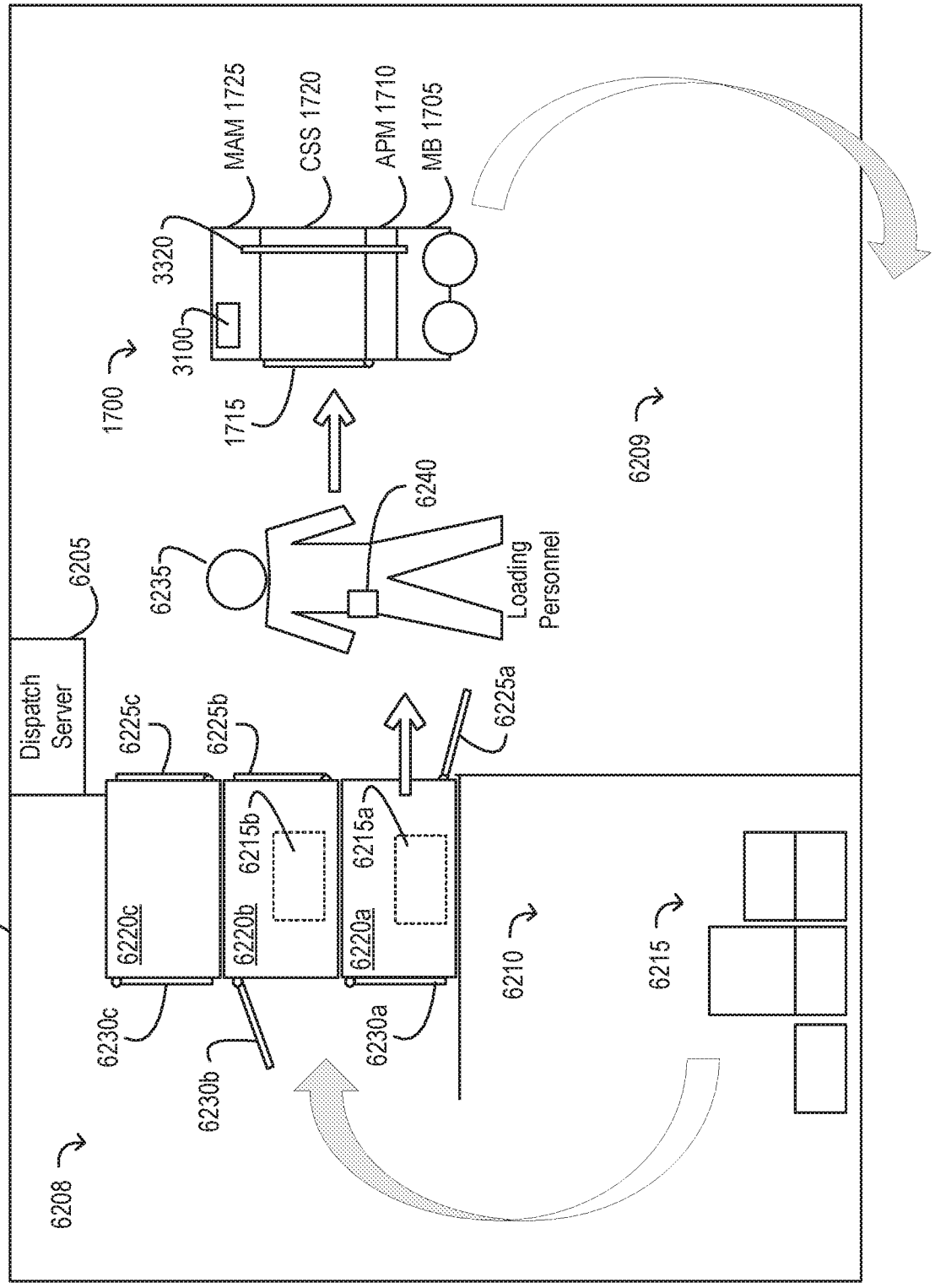
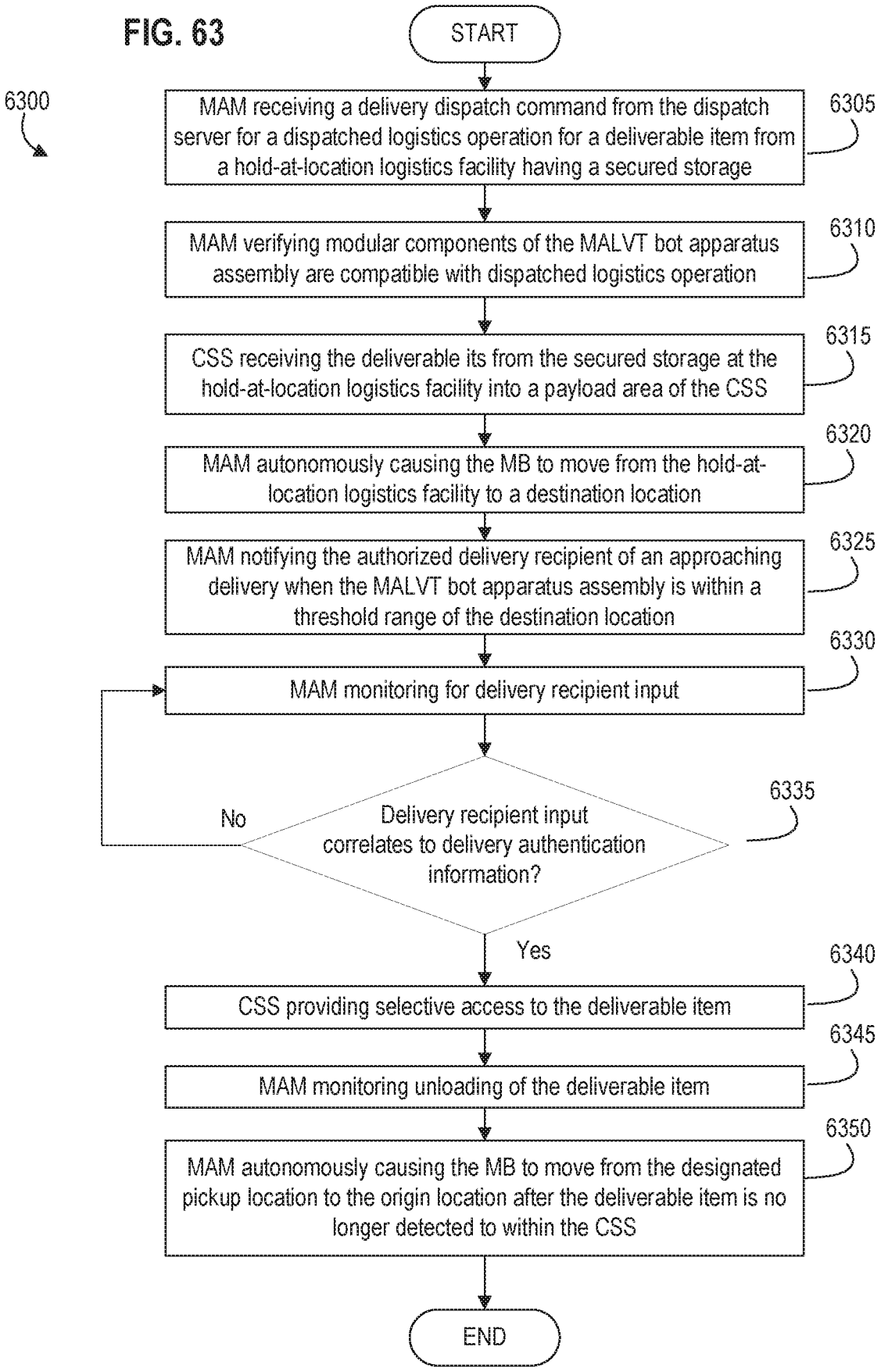

6200
6205
Dispatch Server
6208
6209
6210
6215
6220c
6220b
6220a
6225c
6225b
6225a
6215b
6215a
6230c
6230b
6230a
6235
6240
Loading Personnel
1700
3100
3320
1715
MAM 1725
CSS 1720
APM 1710
MB 1705

FIG. 62

FIG. 63


START
6300
MAM receiving a delivery dispatch command from the dispatch server for a dispatched logistics operation for a deliverable item from a hold-at-location logistics facility having a secured storage
6305
MAM verifying modular components of the MALVT bot apparatus assembly are compatible with dispatched logistics operation
6310
CSS receiving the deliverable its from the secured storage at the hold-at-location logistics facility into a payload area of the CSS
6315
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the hold-at-location logistics facility to a destination location
6320
MAM notifying the authorized delivery recipient of an approaching delivery when the MALVT bot apparatus assembly is within a threshold range of the destination location
6325
MAM monitoring for delivery recipient input
6330
Delivery recipient input correlates to delivery authentication information?
6335
No
Yes
CSS providing selective access to the deliverable item
6340
MAM monitoring unloading of the deliverable item
6345
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the designated pickup location to the origin location after the deliverable item is no longer detected to within the CSS
6350
END

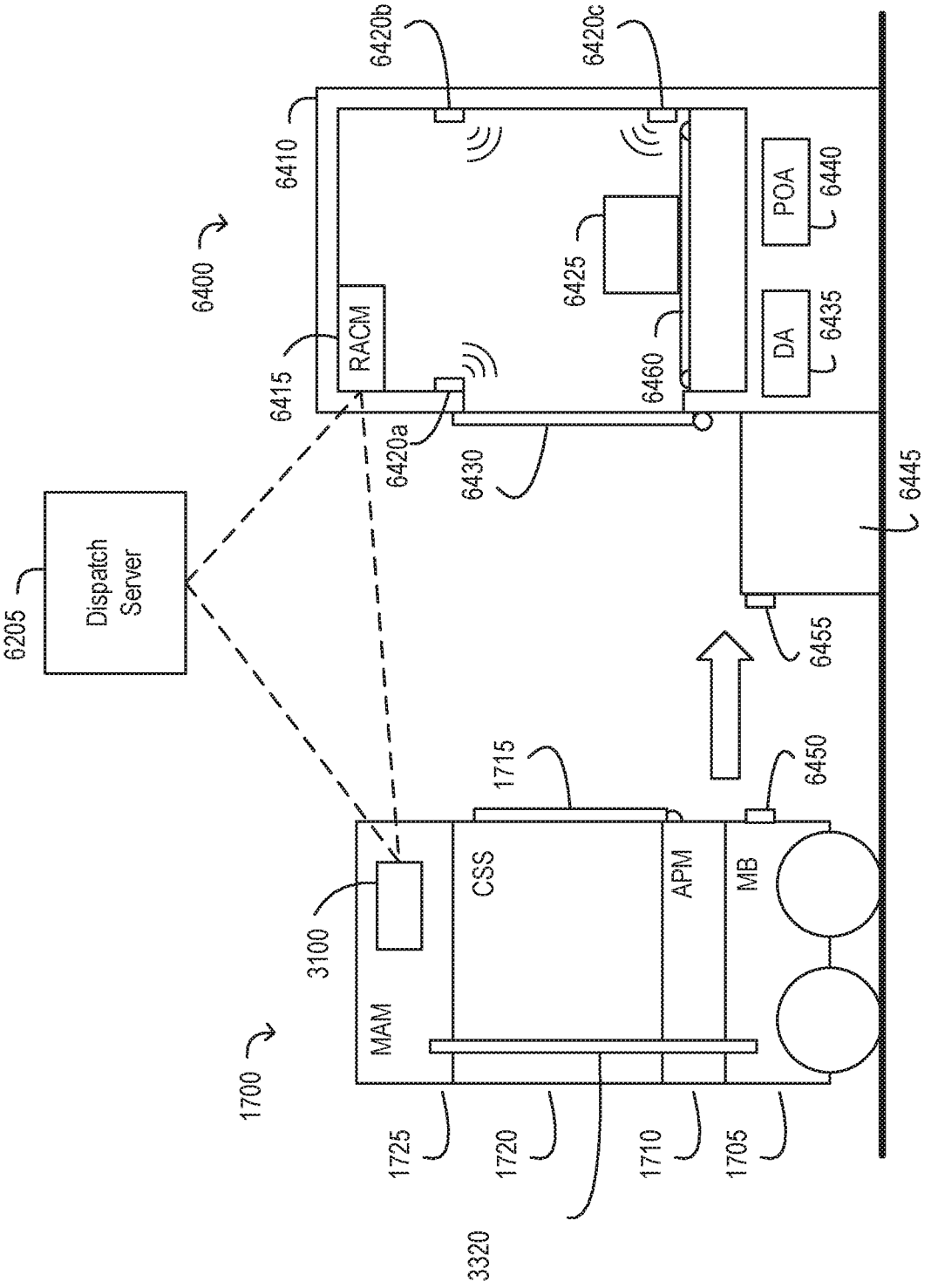

6205
Dispatch Server
6400
6410
6420b
6420c
6415
RACM
6420a
6425
6460
6430
POA
6440
DA
6435
6445
6455
6450
1715
1700
3100
MAM
CSS
APM
MB
1725
1720
1710
1705
3320

FIG. 64A

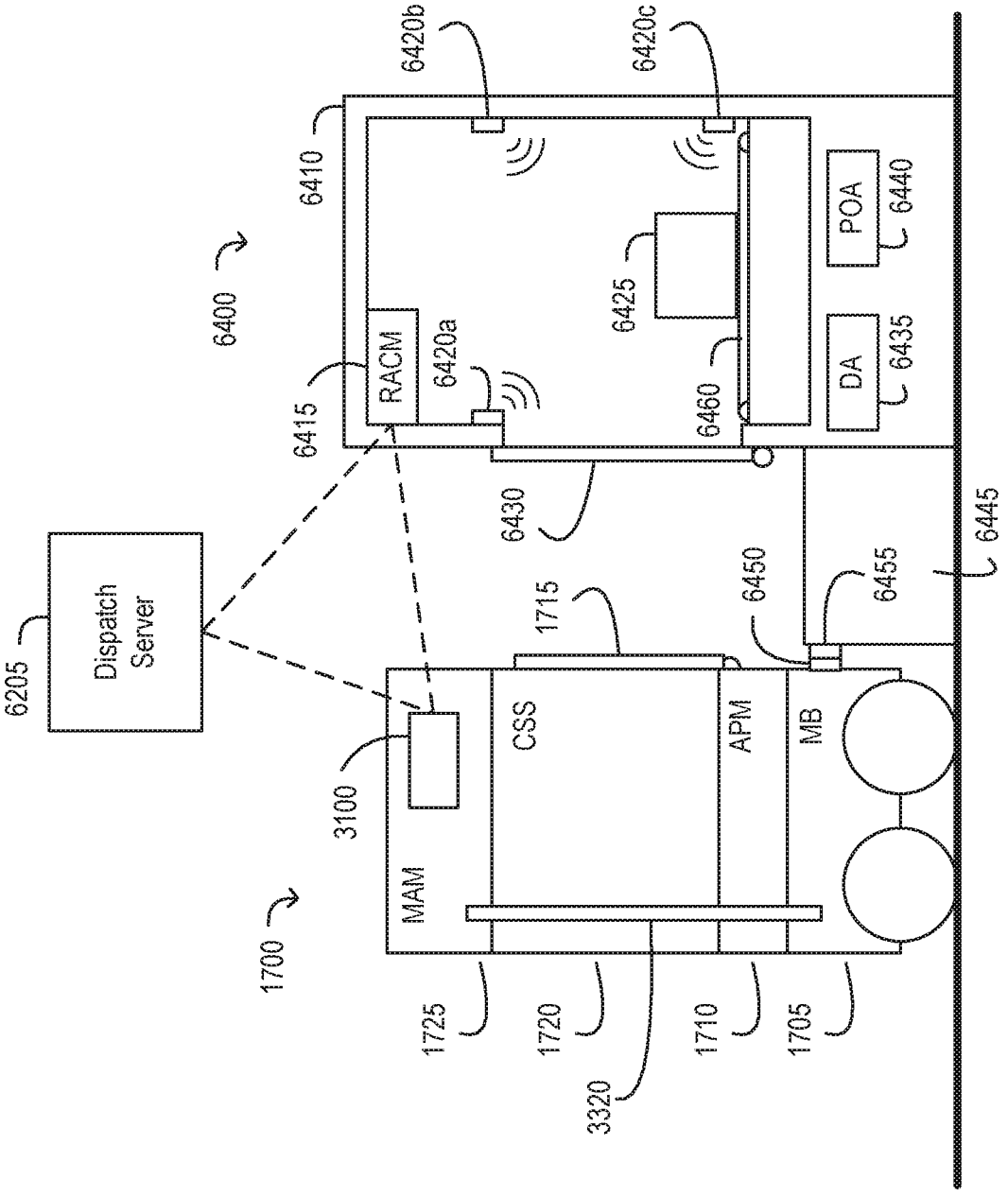

6205
Dispatch Server
6400
6410
6420b
6420c
6415
RACM
6420a
6425
6460
POA
6440
DA
6435
6430
6445
6455
6450
1715
3100
CSS
APM
MB
MAM
1700
1725
1720
1710
1705
3320

FIG. 64B

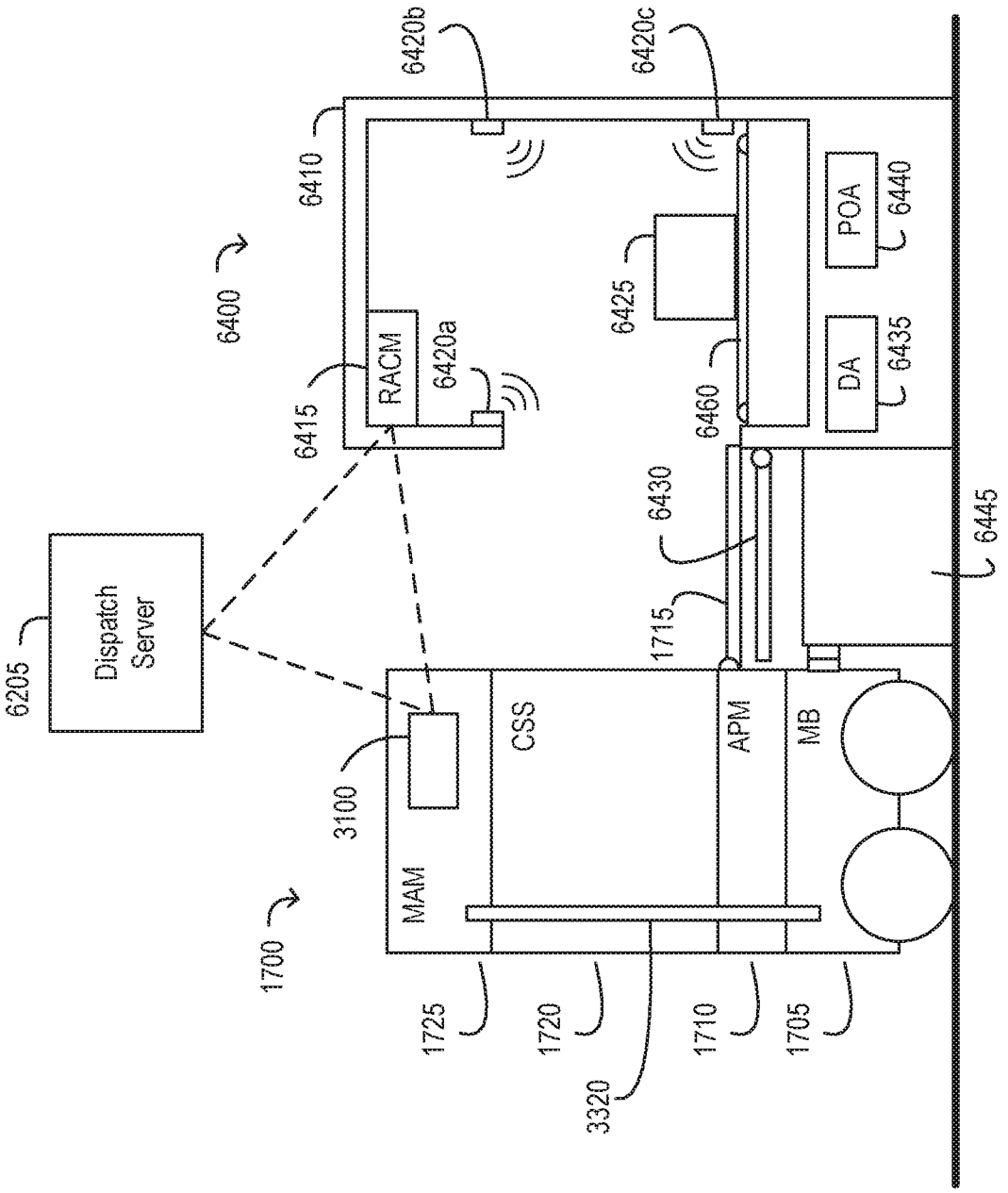

6205
Dispatch Server
6400
6410
6420b
6420c
6415
RACM
6420a
6425
6460
POA
6440
DA
6435
6430
6445
1715
3100
CSS
APM
MB
MAM
1700
1725
1720
3320
1710
1705

FIG. 64C

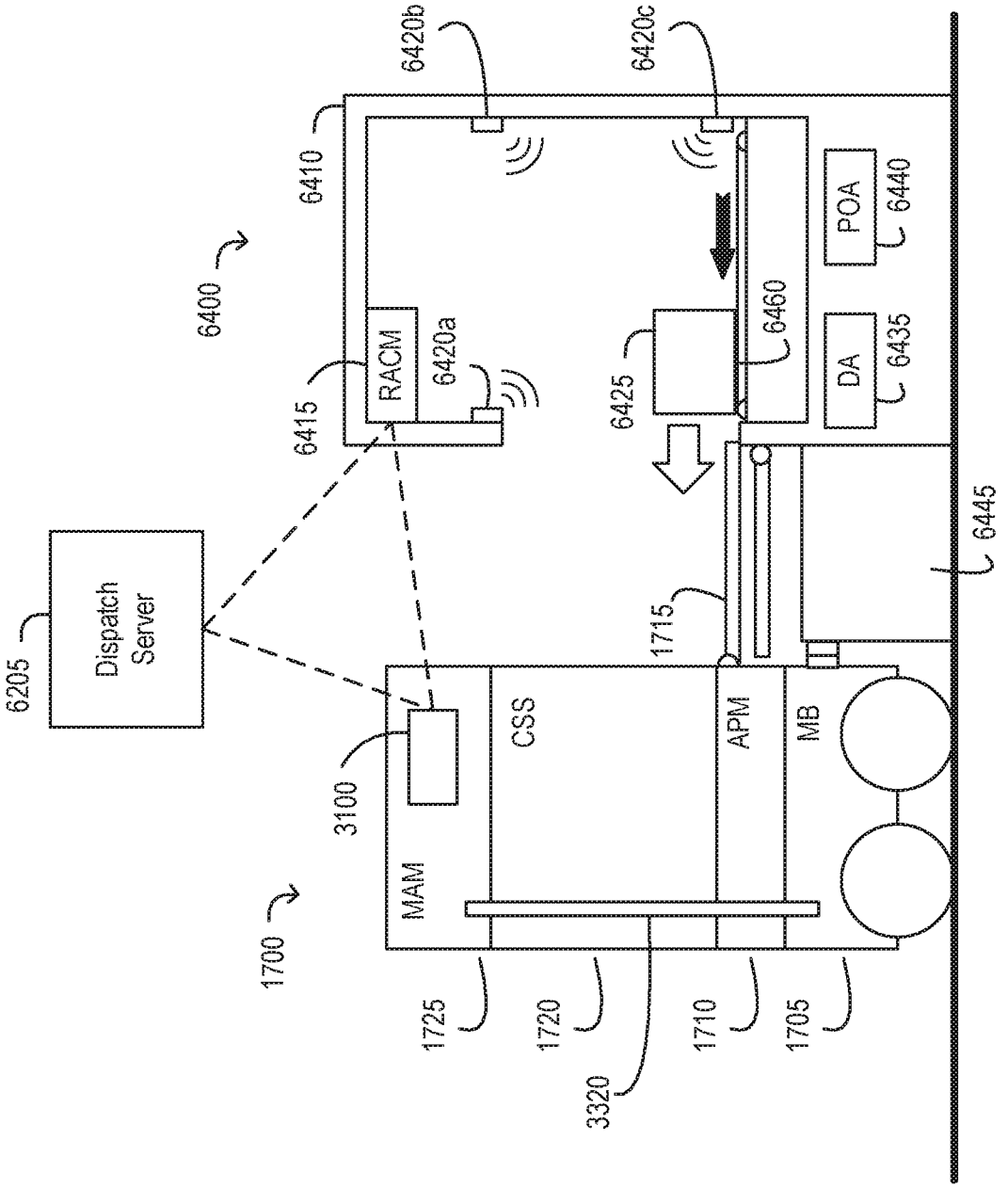

6420b
6420c
6410
6400
6440
POA
6460
6420a
RACM
6415
6425
6435
DA
6445
Dispatch Server
6205
1715
3100
CSS
APM
MB
MAM
1700
1725
1720
1710
1705
3320

FIG. 64D

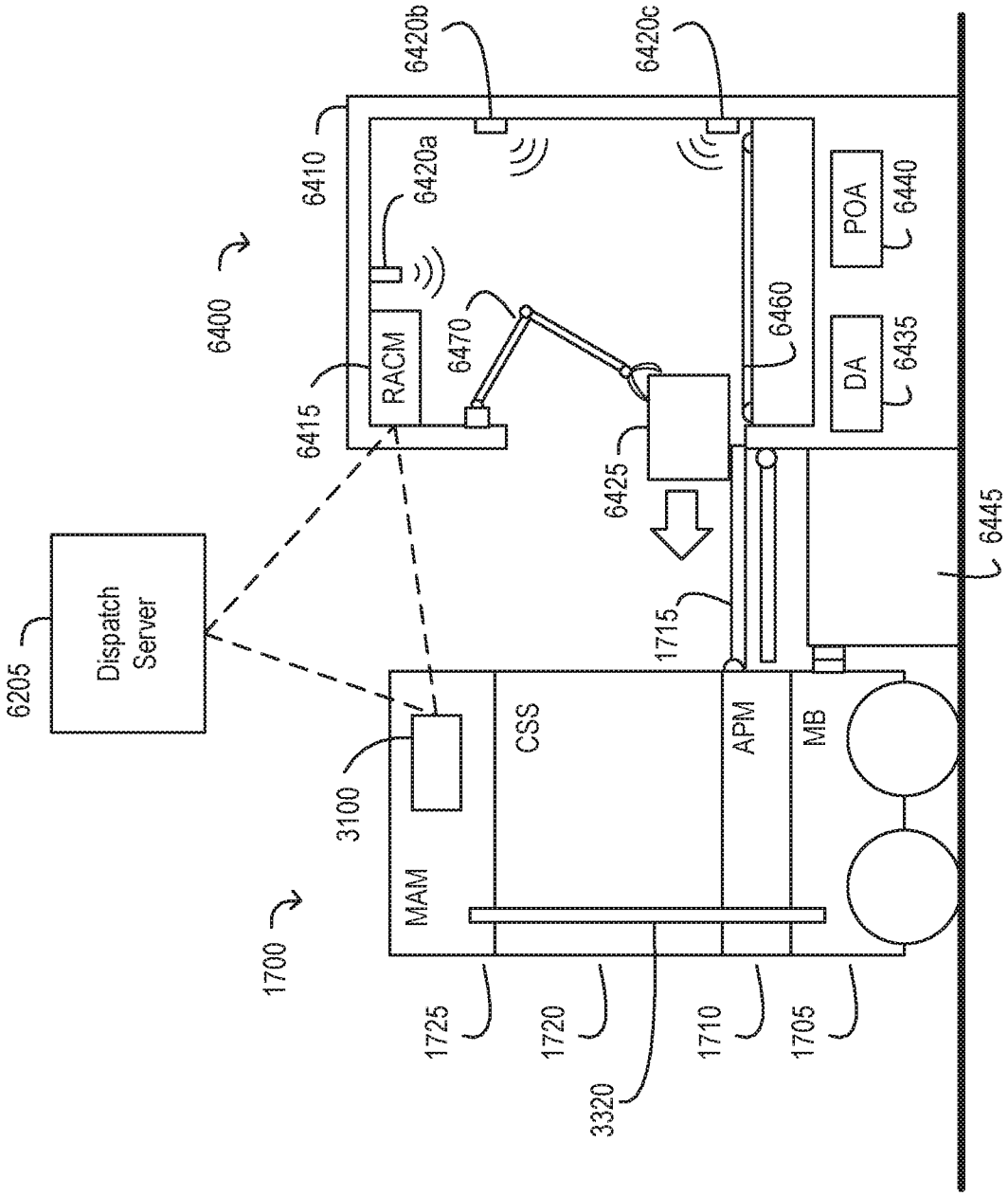

6205
Dispatch Server
6400
6410
6420a
6420b
6420c
6415
RACM
6470
6425
6460
POA
6440
DA
6435
6445
1715
3100
MAM
CSS
APM
MB
1700
1725
1720
3320
1710
1705

FIG. 64E

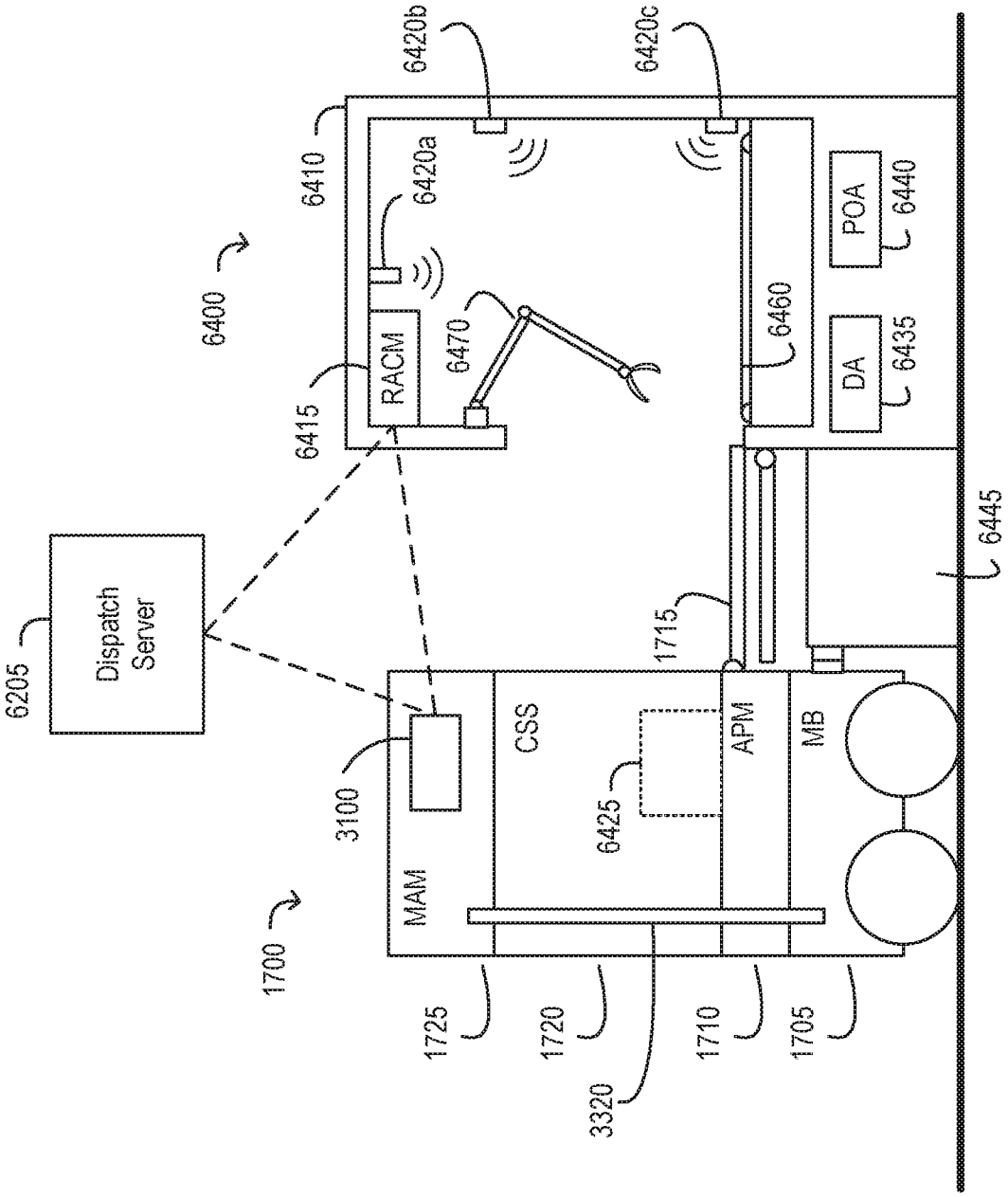

6400
6410
6420a
6420b
6420c
6415
RACM
6470
6460
POA
6440
DA
6435
6445
6205
Dispatch Server
1715
3100
CSS
APM
MB
6425
MAM
1700
1725
1720
1710
1705
3320

FIG. 64F

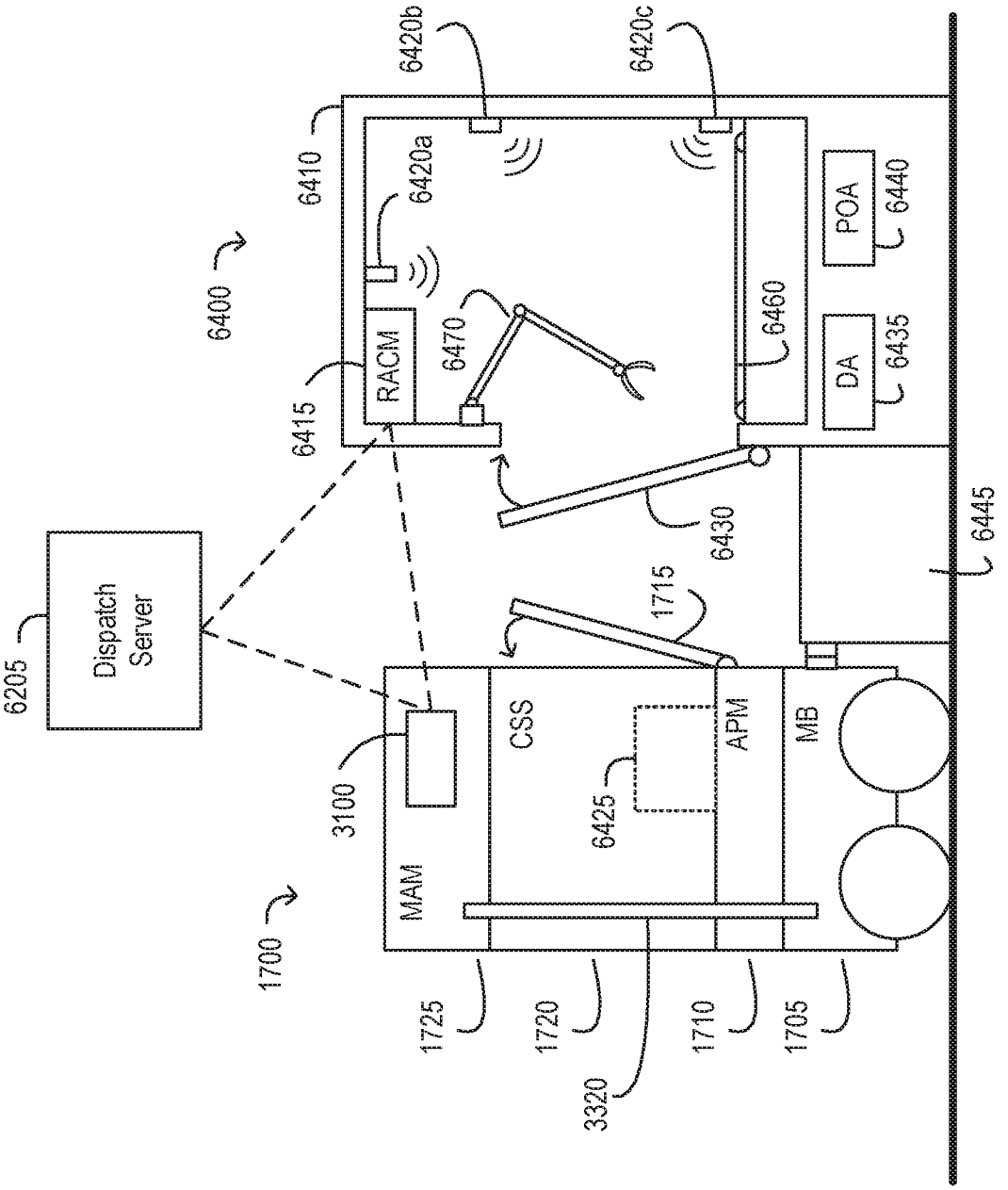

6205
Dispatch Server
6400
6410
6420a
6420b
6420c
6415
RACM
6470
6460
POA
6440
DA
6435
6430
6445
1715
3100
CSS
6425
APM
MB
MAM
1700
1725
1720
3320
1710
1705

FIG. 64G

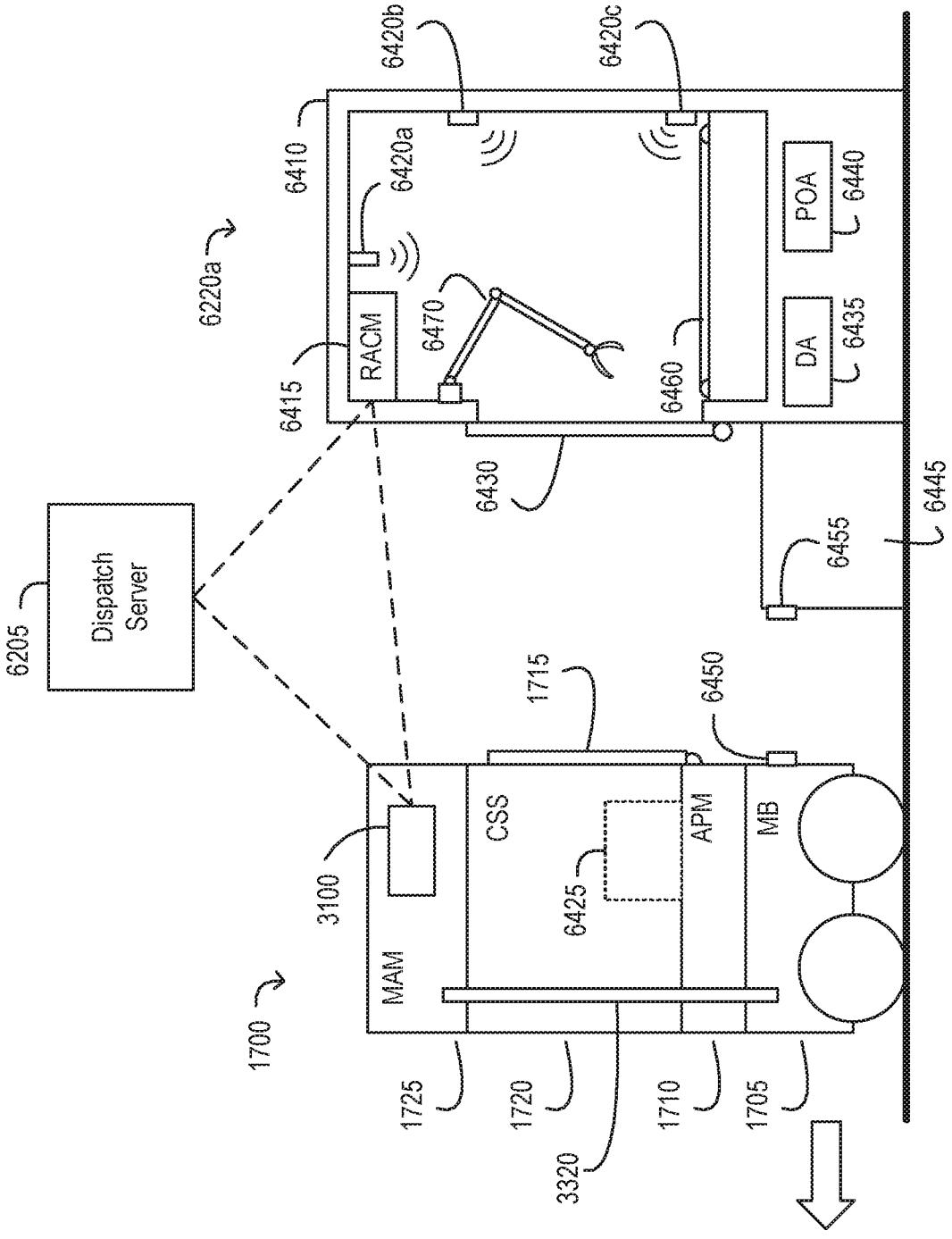

6205
Dispatch Server
6220a
6410
6420a
6420b
6420c
6415
RACM
6470
6460
6430
6435
DA
6440
POA
6445
6455
1700
MAM
3100
CSS
6425
APM
MB
1715
6450
1725
1720
3320
1710
1705

FIG. 64H

100/112

FIG. 65A

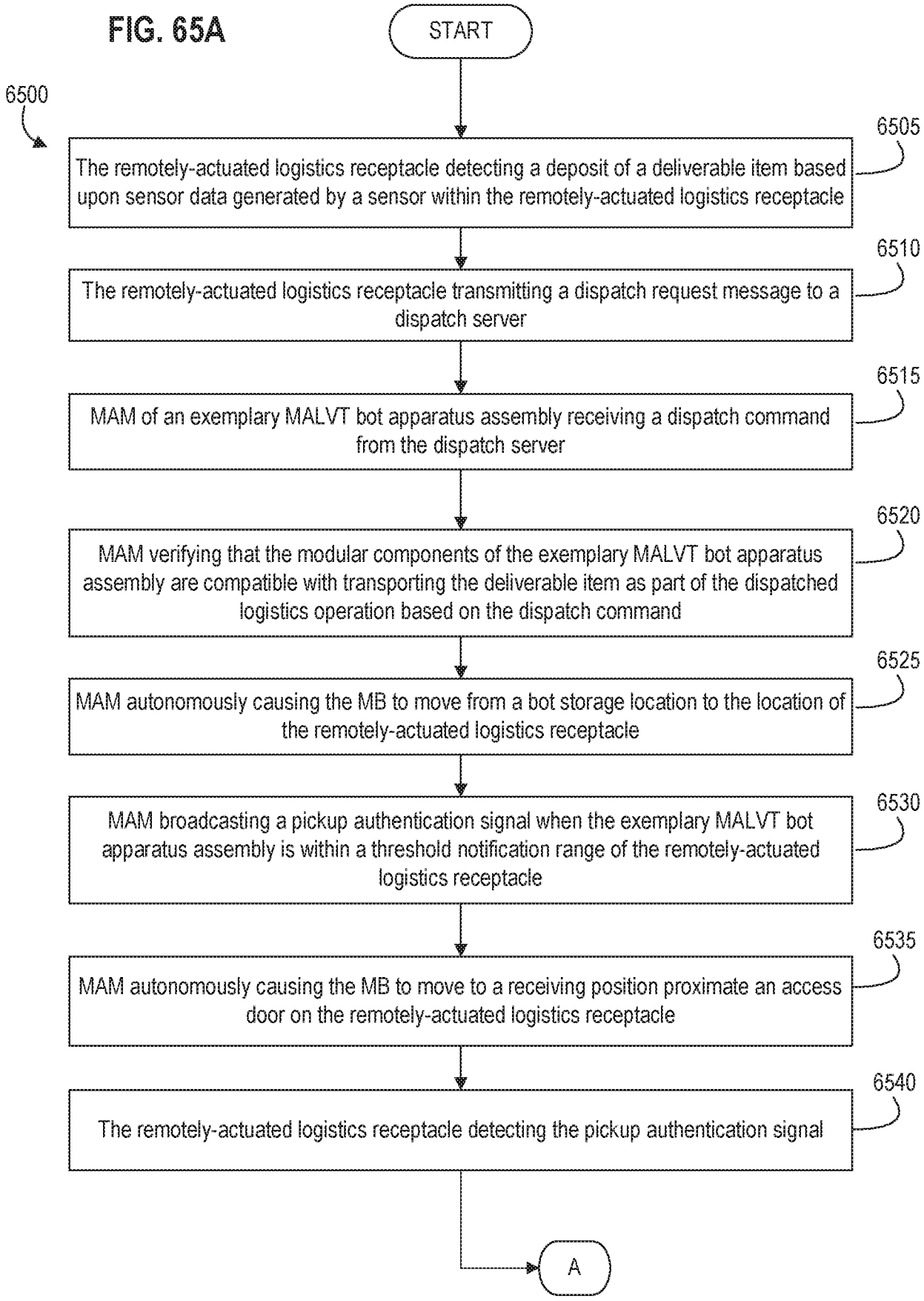


FIG. 65B

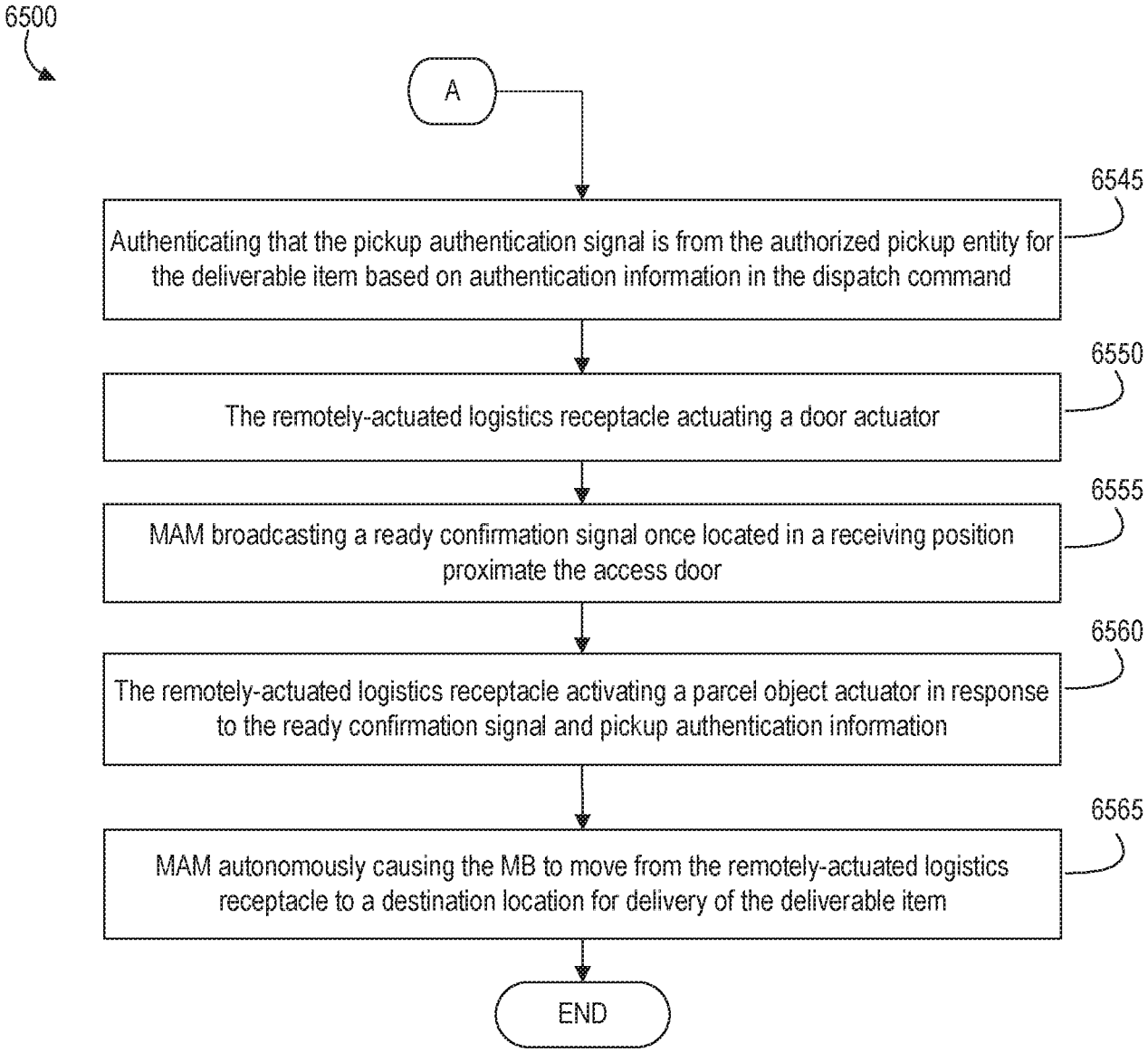
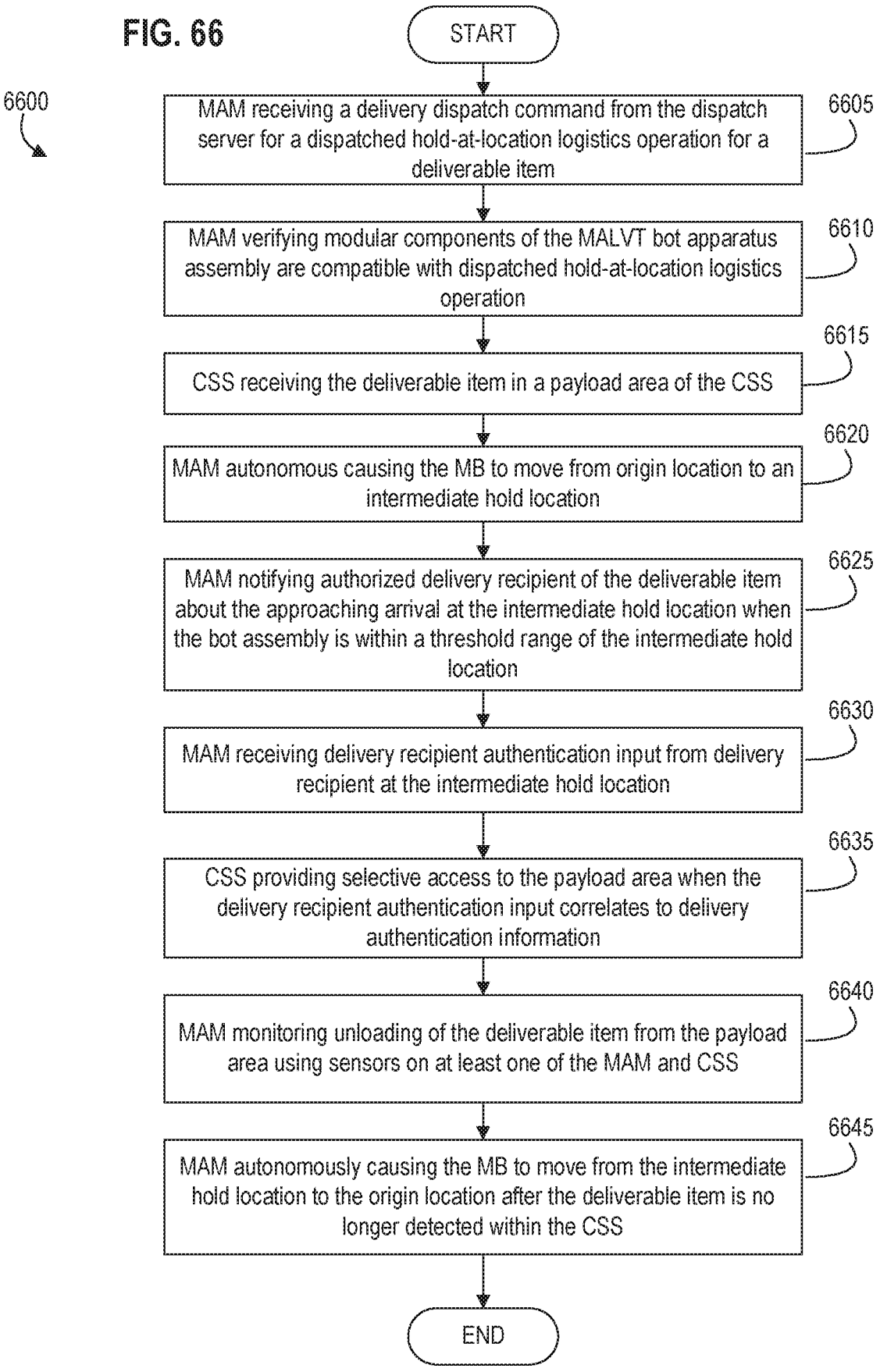

6500
A
6545
Authenticating that the pickup authentication signal is from the authorized pickup entity for the deliverable item based on authentication information in the dispatch command
6550
The remotely-actuated logistics receptacle actuating a door actuator
6555
MAM broadcasting a ready confirmation signal once located in a receiving position proximate the access door
6560
The remotely-actuated logistics receptacle activating a parcel object actuator in response to the ready confirmation signal and pickup authentication information
6565
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the remotely-actuated logistics receptacle to a destination location for delivery of the deliverable item
END

FIG. 66


6600
START
MAM receiving a delivery dispatch command from the dispatch server for a dispatched hold-at-location logistics operation for a deliverable item
6605
MAM verifying modular components of the MALVT bot apparatus assembly are compatible with dispatched hold-at-location logistics operation
6610
CSS receiving the deliverable item in a payload area of the CSS
6615
MAM autonomous causing the MB to move from origin location to an intermediate hold location
6620
MAM notifying authorized delivery recipient of the deliverable item about the approaching arrival at the intermediate hold location when the bot assembly is within a threshold range of the intermediate hold location
6625
MAM receiving delivery recipient authentication input from delivery recipient at the intermediate hold location
6630
CSS providing selective access to the payload area when the delivery recipient authentication input correlates to delivery authentication information
6635
MAM monitoring unloading of the deliverable item from the payload area using sensors on at least one of the MAM and CSS
6640
MAM autonomously causing the MB to move from the intermediate hold location to the origin location after the deliverable item is no longer detected within the CSS
6645
END

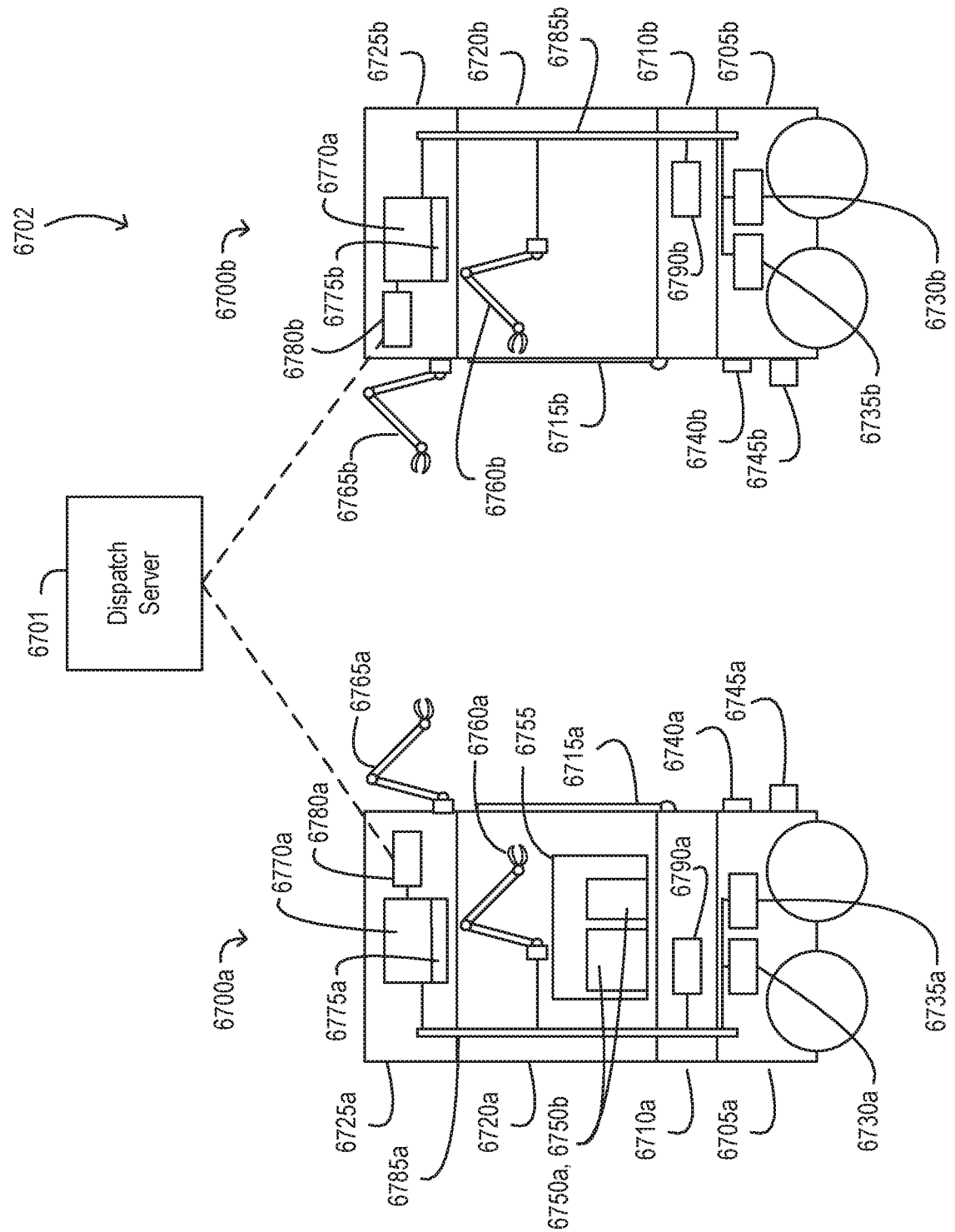

6702
6701
Dispatch Server
6700b
6700a
6725b
6720b
6785b
6710b
6705b
6770a
6775b
6780b
6790b
6730b
6765b
6760b
6715b
6740b
6745b
6735b
6765a
6760a
6755
6715a
6740a
6745a
6780a
6770a
6790a
6775a
6735a
6725a
6785a
6720a
6750b
6750a,
6710a
6705a
6730a

FIG. 67

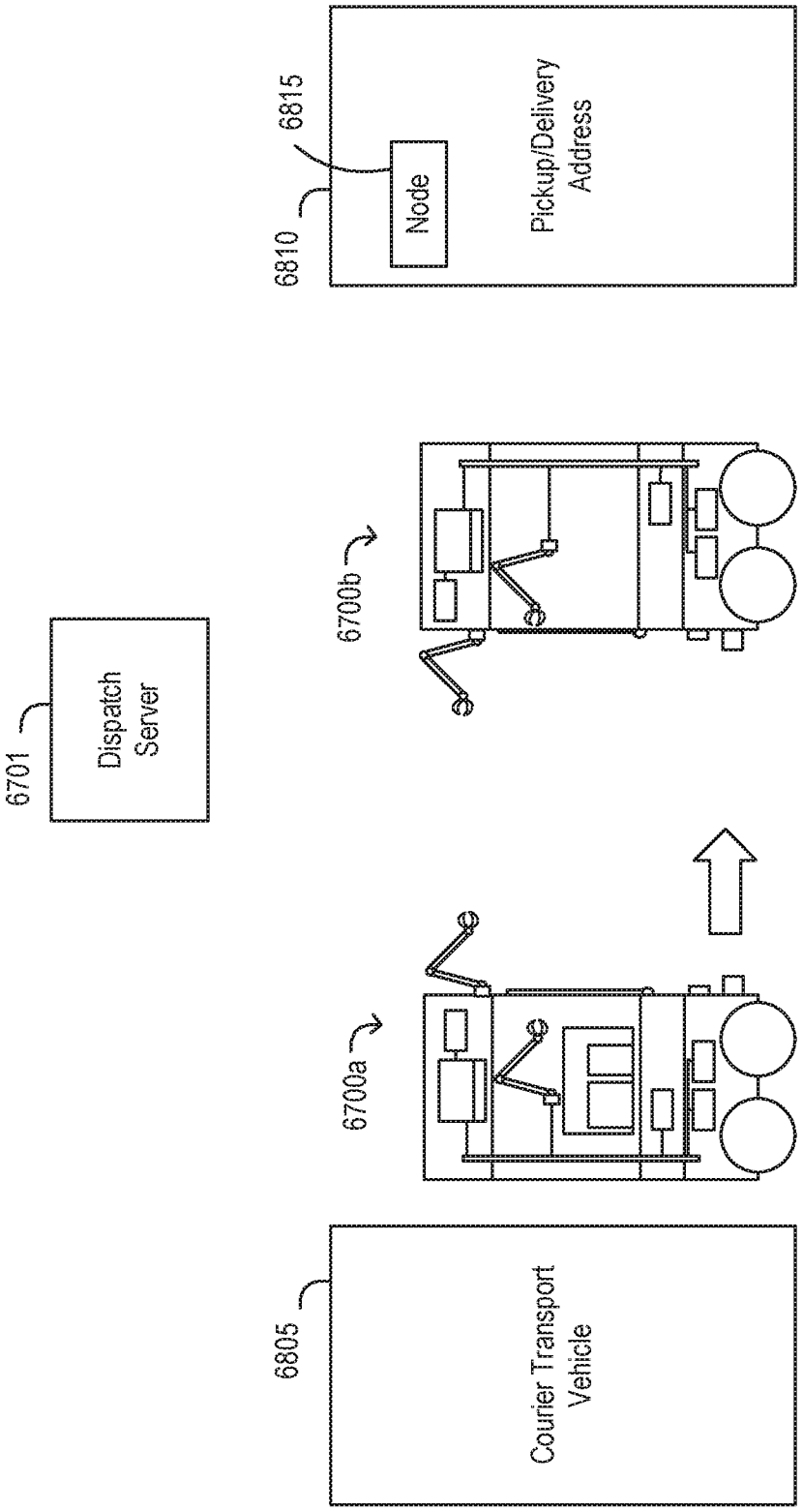

6815
6810
Node
Pickup/Delivery Address
6700b
6701
Dispatch Server
6700a
6805
Courier Transport Vehicle

FIG. 68A

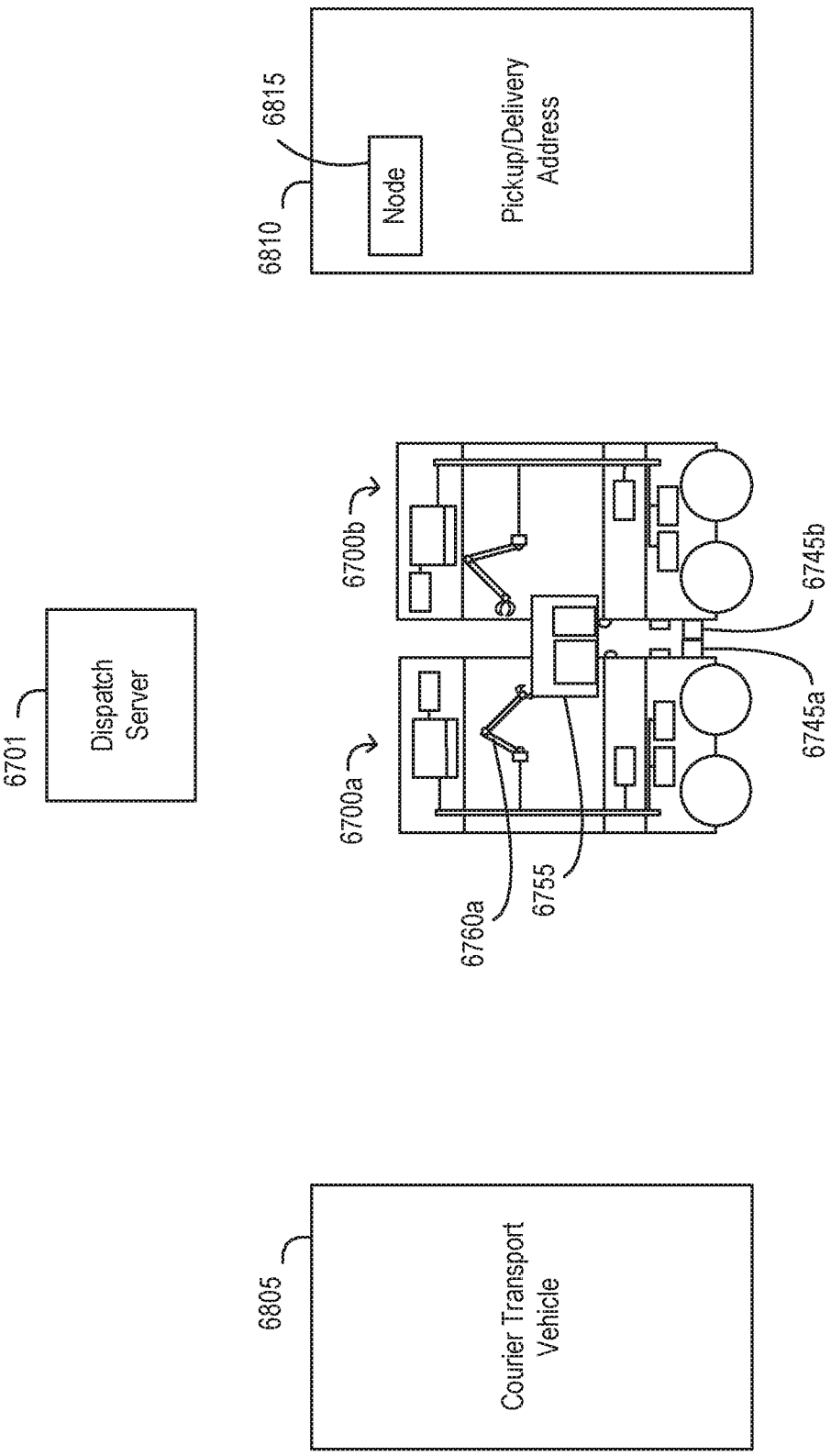

6815
6810
Node
Pickup/Delivery Address
6700b
6745b
6745a
6700a
6760a
6755
6701
Dispatch Server
6805
Courier Transport Vehicle

FIG. 68B

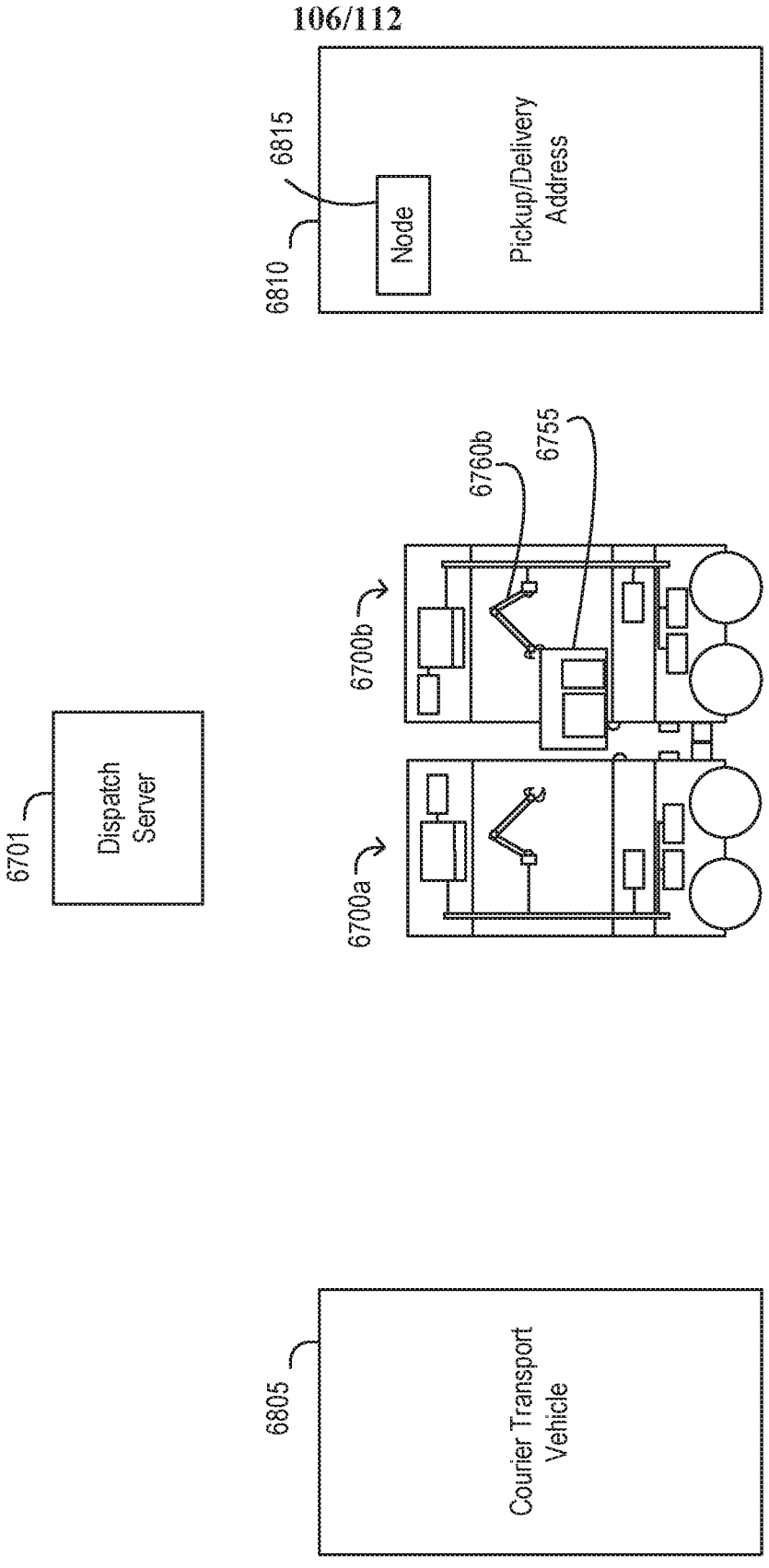

106/112
6815
6810
Node
Pickup/Delivery Address
6760b
6755
6700b
6700a
6701
Dispatch Server
6805
Courier Transport Vehicle

FIG. 68C

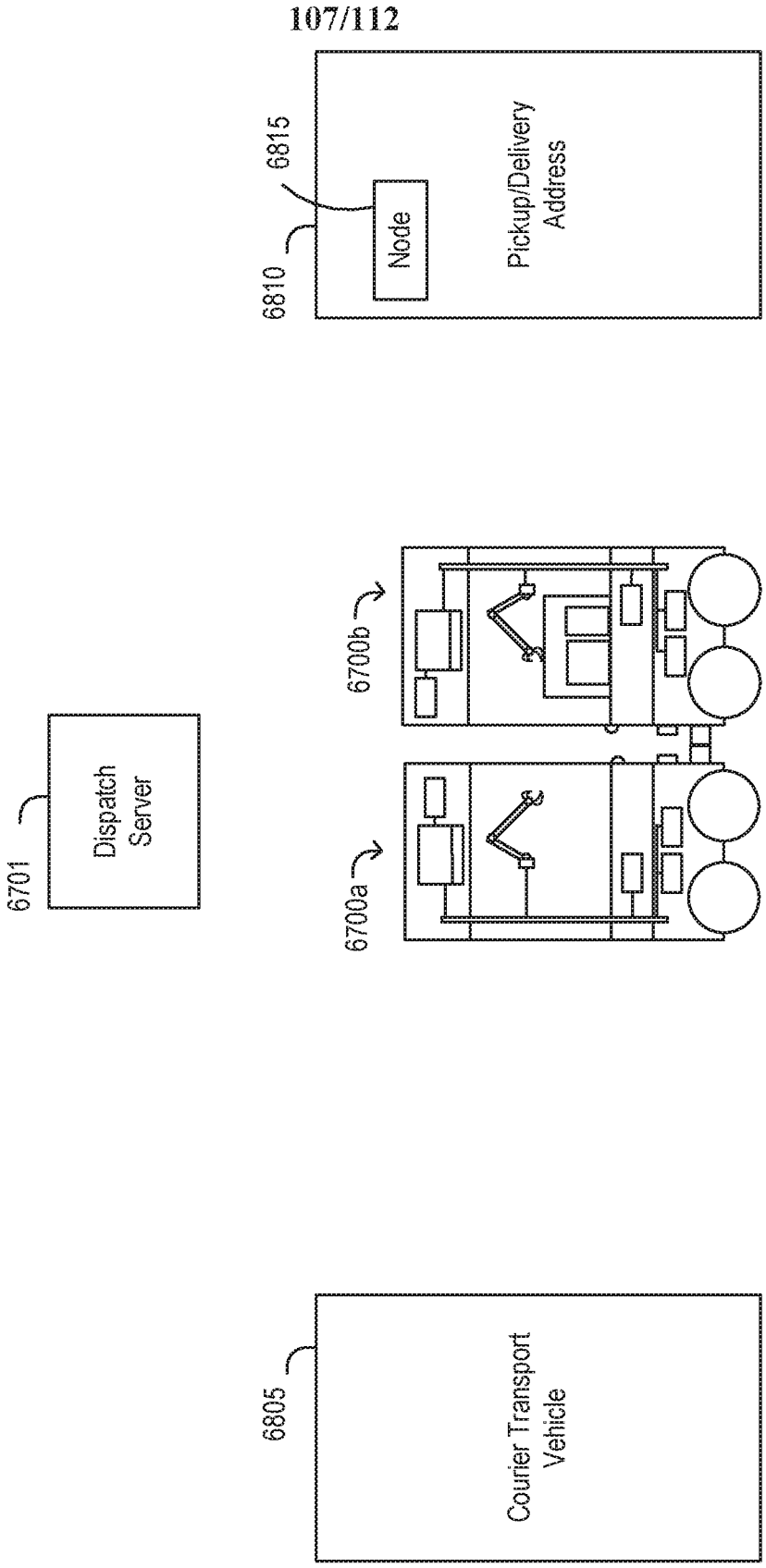

107/112
6815
6810
Node
Pickup/Delivery Address
6701
Dispatch Server
6700b
6700a
6805
Courier Transport Vehicle

FIG. 68D

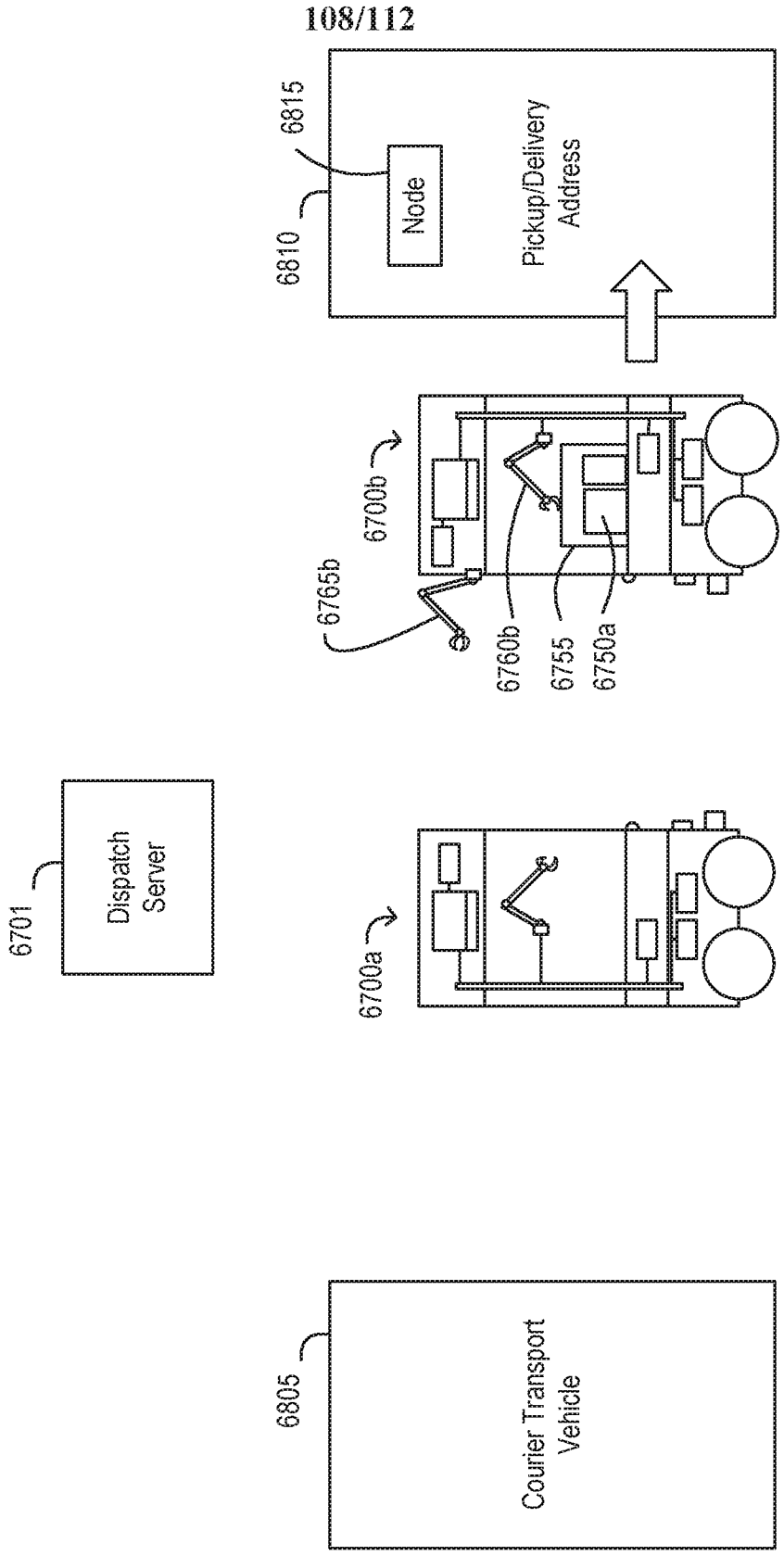

108/112
6815
Node
6810
Pickup/Delivery Address
6700b
6765b
6760b
6755
6750a
6701
Dispatch Server
6700a
6805
Courier Transport Vehicle

FIG. 68E

FIG. 69A

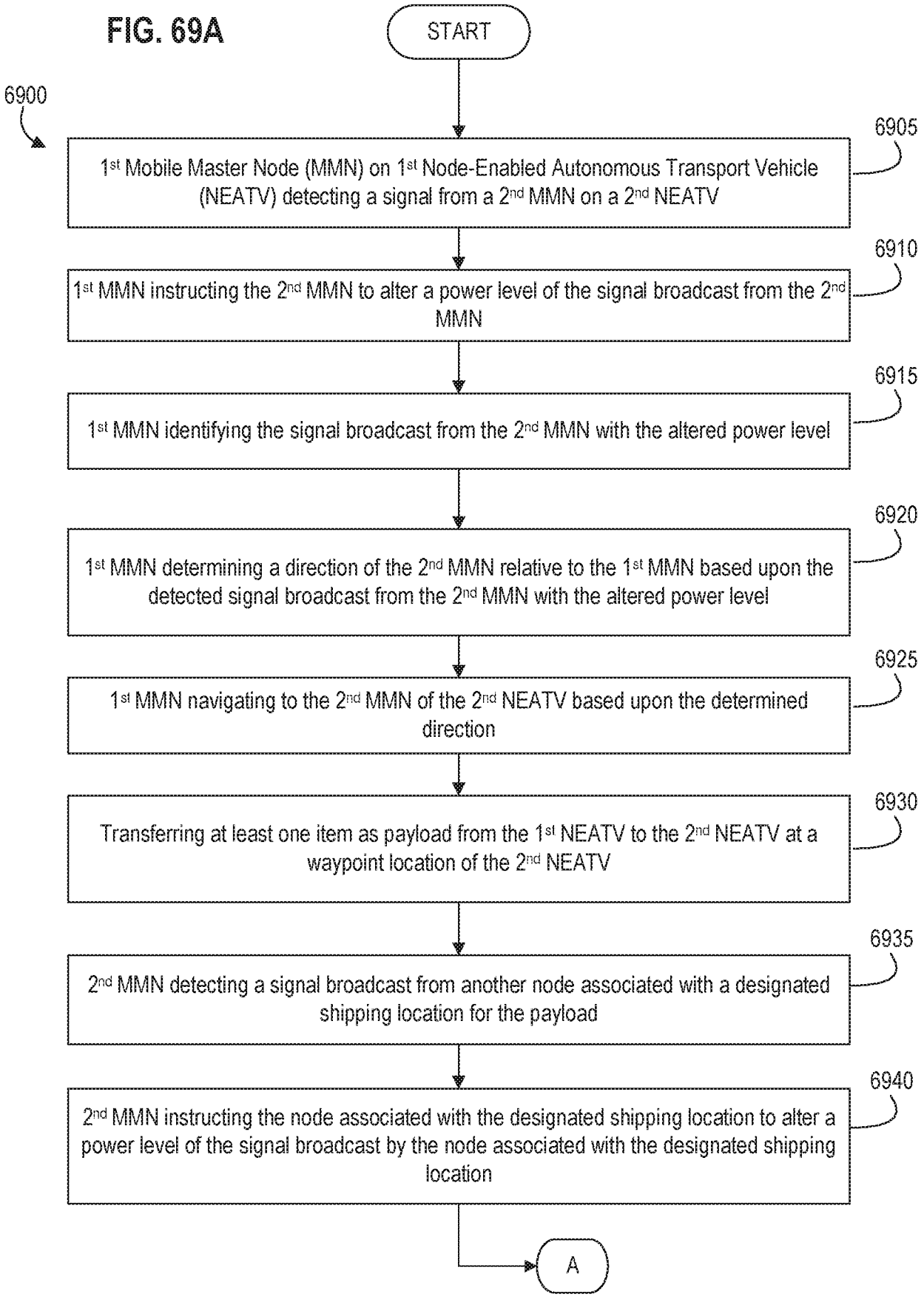

START
6900
6905
1st Mobile Master Node (MMN) on 1st Node-Enabled Autonomous Transport Vehicle (NEATV) detecting a signal from a 2nd MMN on a 2nd NEATV
6910
1st MMN instructing the 2nd MMN to alter a power level of the signal broadcast from the 2nd MMN
6915
1st MMN identifying the signal broadcast from the 2nd MMN with the altered power level
6920
1st MMN determining a direction of the 2nd MMN relative to the 1st MMN based upon the detected signal broadcast from the 2nd MMN with the altered power level
6925
1st MMN navigating to the 2nd MMN of the 2nd NEATV based upon the determined direction
6930
Transferring at least one item as payload from the 1st NEATV to the 2nd NEATV at a waypoint location of the 2nd NEATV
6935
2nd MMN detecting a signal broadcast from another node associated with a designated shipping location for the payload
6940
2nd MMN instructing the node associated with the designated shipping location to alter a power level of the signal broadcast by the node associated with the designated shipping location
A

FIG. 69B

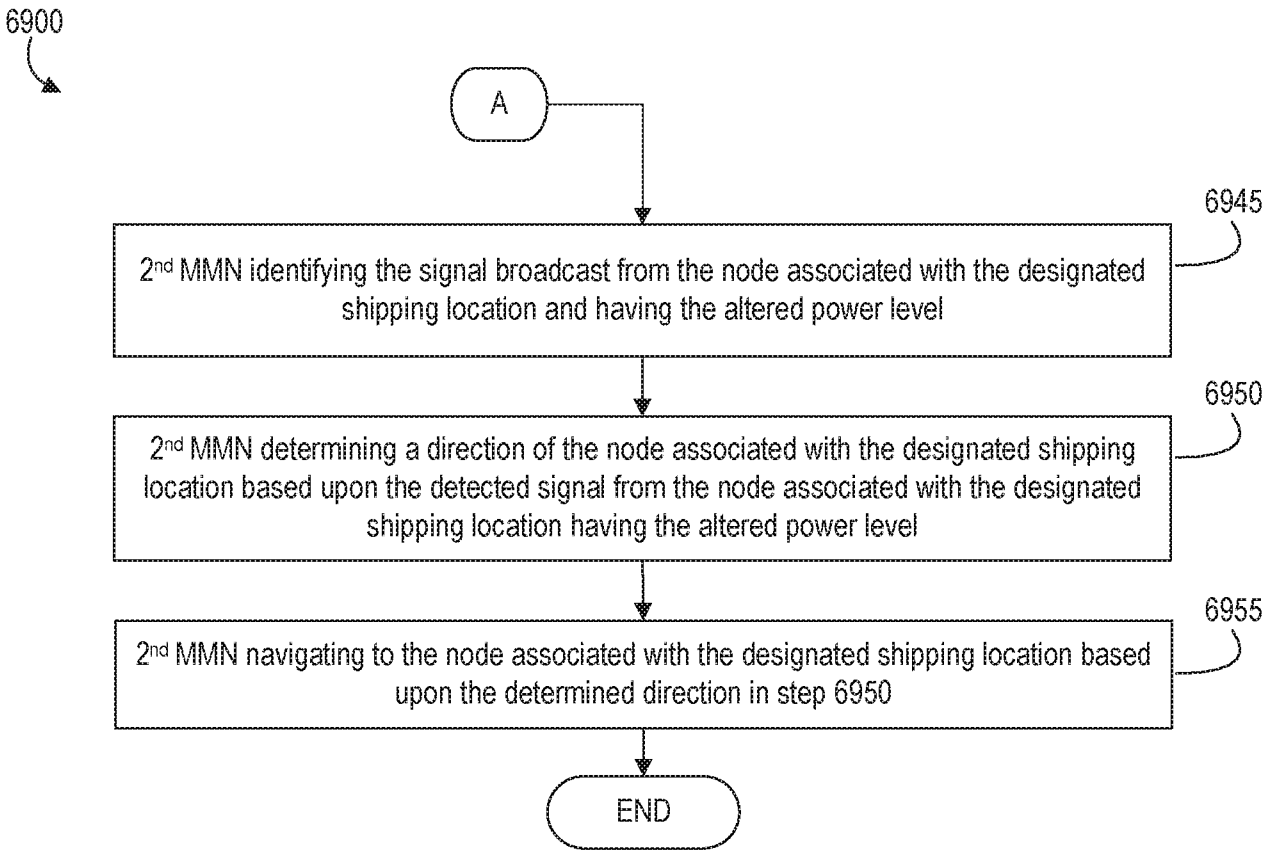

6900
A
6945
2nd MMN identifying the signal broadcast from the node associated with the designated shipping location and having the altered power level
6950
2nd MMN determining a direction of the node associated with the designated shipping location based upon the detected signal from the node associated with the designated shipping location having the altered power level
6955
2nd MMN navigating to the node associated with the designated shipping location based upon the determined direction in step 6950
END

FIG. 70

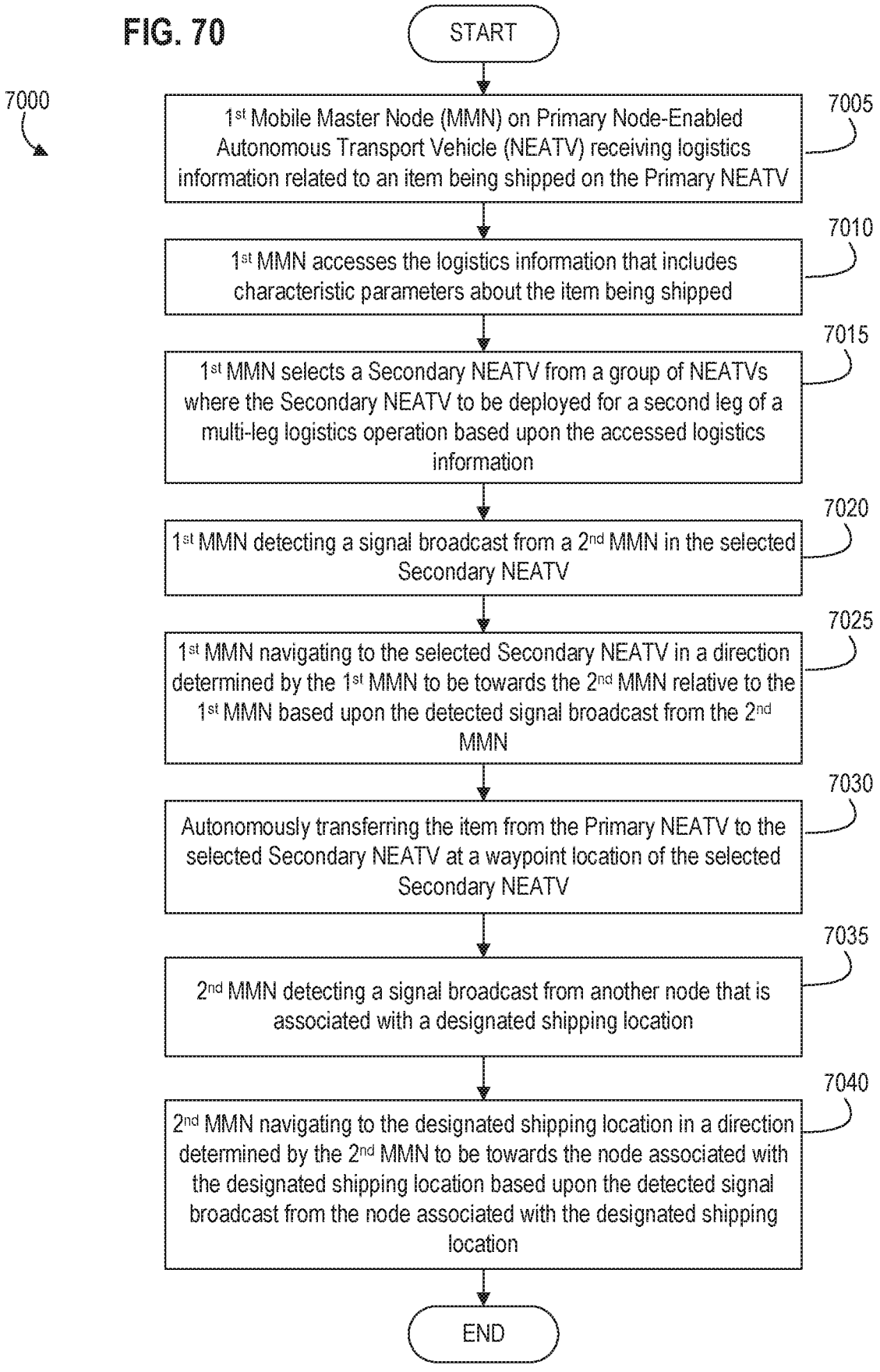
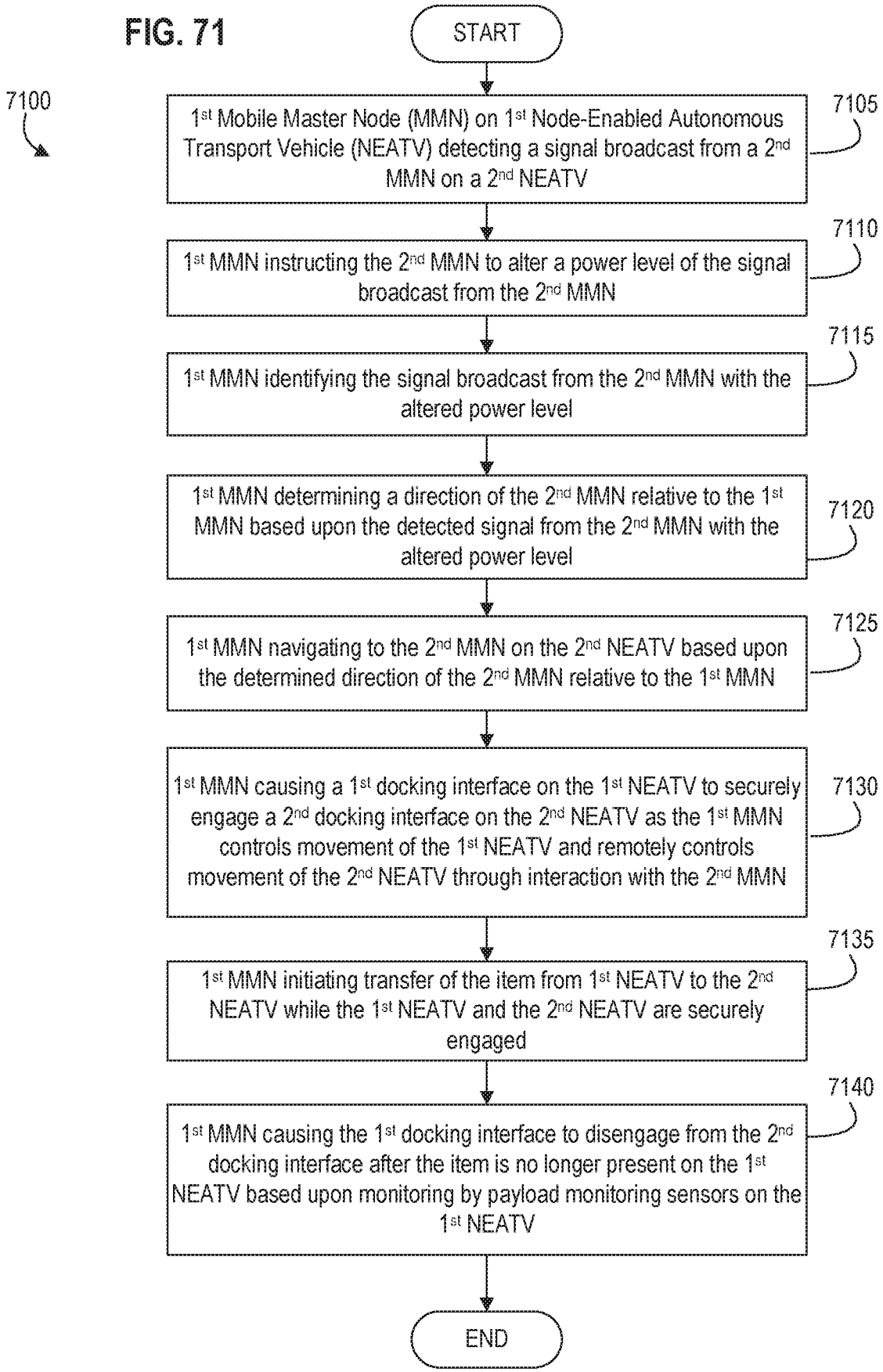
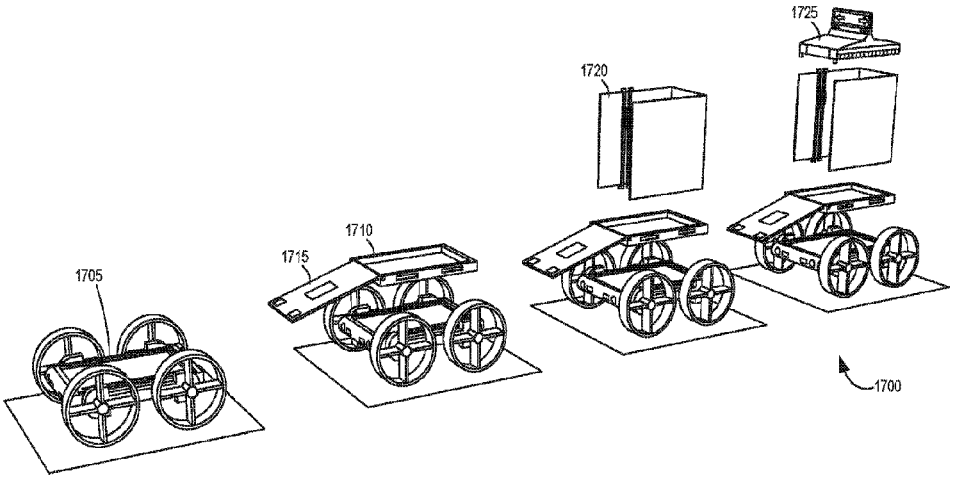

START
7000
1st Mobile Master Node (MMN) on Primary Node-Enabled Autonomous Transport Vehicle (NEATV) receiving logistics information related to an item being shipped on the Primary NEATV
7005
1st MMN accesses the logistics information that includes characteristic parameters about the item being shipped
7010
1st MMN selects a Secondary NEATV from a group of NEATVs where the Secondary NEATV to be deployed for a second leg of a multi-leg logistics operation based upon the accessed logistics information
7015
1st MMN detecting a signal broadcast from a 2nd MMN in the selected Secondary NEATV
7020
1st MMN navigating to the selected Secondary NEATV in a direction determined by the 1st MMN to be towards the 2nd MMN relative to the 1st MMN based upon the detected signal broadcast from the 2nd MMN
7025
Autonomously transferring the item from the Primary NEATV to the selected Secondary NEATV at a waypoint location of the selected Secondary NEATV
7030
2nd MMN detecting a signal broadcast from another node that is associated with a designated shipping location
7035
2nd MMN navigating to the designated shipping location in a direction determined by the 2nd MMN to be towards the node associated with the designated shipping location based upon the detected signal broadcast from the node associated with the designated shipping location
7040
END

FIG. 71


START
7100
1st Mobile Master Node (MMN) on 1st Node-Enabled Autonomous Transport Vehicle (NEATV) detecting a signal broadcast from a 2nd MMN on a 2nd NEATV
7105
1st MMN instructing the 2nd MMN to alter a power level of the signal broadcast from the 2nd MMN
7110
1st MMN identifying the signal broadcast from the 2nd MMN with the altered power level
7115
1st MMN determining a direction of the 2nd MMN relative to the 1st MMN based upon the detected signal from the 2nd MMN with the altered power level
7120
1st MMN navigating to the 2nd MMN on the 2nd NEATV based upon the determined direction of the 2nd MMN relative to the 1st MMN
7125
1st MMN causing a 1st docking interface on the 1st NEATV to securely engage a 2nd docking interface on the 2nd NEATV as the 1st MMN controls movement of the 1st NEATV and remotely controls movement of the 2nd NEATV through interaction with the 2nd MMN
7130
1st MMN initiating transfer of the item from 1st NEATV to the 2nd NEATV while the 1st NEATV and the 2nd NEATV are securely engaged
7135
1st MMN causing the 1st docking interface to disengage from the 2nd docking interface after the item is no longer present on the 1st NEATV based upon monitoring by payload monitoring sensors on the 1st NEATV
7140
END


1705
1710
1715
1720
1725
1700